




3 1761 06141332 4

HANDBOUND  
AT THE



UNIVERSITY OF  
TORONTO PRESS



Digitized by the Internet Archive  
in 2010 with funding from  
University of Toronto









# MURRAY'S STUDENT'S MANUALS :

## A SERIES OF HISTORICAL CLASS BOOKS FOR ADVANCED SCHOLARS.

'This series of "STUDENT'S MANUALS," edited for the most part by DR. WM. SMITH, and published by Mr. MURRAY, possess several distinctive features which render them singularly valuable as educational works. While there is an utter absence of flippancy in them, there is thought in every page which cannot fail to excite thought in those who study them, and we are glad of an opportunity of directing the attention of such teachers as are not familiar with them to these admirable school-books.'—*The Museum*.

### I.—SCRIPTURE AND CHURCH HISTORY.

**THE STUDENT'S MANUAL OF OLD TESTAMENT HISTORY.** FROM THE CREATION TO THE RETURN OF THE JEWS FROM CAPTIVITY. With an Introduction to the Books of the Old Testament. By PHILIP SMITH, B.A. With 50 Maps and Woodcuts. Post 8vo. 7s. 6d.

**THE STUDENT'S MANUAL OF NEW TESTAMENT HISTORY.** With an Introduction, containing the connection of the Old and New Testaments. By PHILIP SMITH, B.A. With 40 Maps and Woodcuts. Post 8vo. 7s. 6d.

**THE STUDENT'S MANUAL OF ECCLESIASTICAL HISTORY.** A HISTORY OF THE CHRISTIAN CHURCH FROM THE TIMES OF THE APOSTLES TO THE FULL ESTABLISHMENT OF THE HOLY ROMAN EMPIRE AND THE PAPAL POWER. By PHILIP SMITH, B.A. With Woodcuts. Post 8vo. 7s. 6d.

**THE STUDENT'S MANUAL OF ENGLISH CHURCH HISTORY.** FROM THE ACCESSION OF HENRY VIII. TO THE SILENCING OF CONVOCATION IN THE EIGHTEENTH CENTURY. By G. G. PERRET, M.A., Canon of Lincoln. Post 8vo. 7s. 6d.

### II.—ANCIENT HISTORY.

**THE STUDENT'S ANCIENT HISTORY OF THE EAST.** FROM THE EARLIEST TIMES TO THE CONQUESTS OF ALEXANDER THE GREAT, including Egypt, Assyria, Babylonia, Media, Persia, Asia Minor, Phœnicia, &c. By PHILIP SMITH, B.A. Woodcuts. Post 8vo. 7s. 6d.

### III.—ROME.

#### (1) *The Republic.*

**THE STUDENT'S HISTORY OF ROME.** FROM THE EARLIEST TIMES TO THE ESTABLISHMENT OF THE EMPIRE. With Chapters on the History of Literature and Art. By DEAN LIDDELL. Woodcuts. Post 8vo. 7s. 6d.

#### (2) *The Empire.*

**THE STUDENT'S GIBBON; AN EPITOME OF THE HISTORY OF THE DECLINE AND FALL OF THE ROMAN EMPIRE.** Incorporating the Researches of recent Historians. By EDWARD GIBBON. Woodcuts. Post 8vo. 7s. 6d.

### IV.—GREECE.

**THE STUDENT'S HISTORY OF GREECE.** FROM THE EARLIEST TIMES TO THE ROMAN CONQUEST. With Chapters on the History of Literature and Art. By WM. SMITH, D.C.L. Woodcuts. Post 8vo. 7s. 6d.

\* \* \* QUESTIONS ON THE 'STUDENT'S GREECE.' 12mo. 2s.

### V.—GEOGRAPHY.

**THE STUDENT'S MANUAL OF ANCIENT GEOGRAPHY.** By REV. W. L. BEVAN, M.A. Woodcuts. Post 8vo. 7s. 6d.

**THE STUDENT'S MANUAL OF MODERN GEOGRAPHY, MATHEMATICAL, PHYSICAL, and DESCRIPTIVE.** By REV. W. L. BEVAN, M.A. Woodcuts. Post 8vo. 7s. 6d.

## STUDENT'S MANUALS--continued.

---

### VI.—EUROPE.

**THE STUDENT'S HISTORY OF THE MIDDLE AGES.**  
INCLUDING THE SUPPLEMENTAL NOTES. By HENRY HALLAM, LL.D. With the  
Author's latest Corrections and Additions. Post svo. 7s. 6d.

### VII.—ENGLAND.

**THE STUDENT'S HUME; A HISTORY OF ENGLAND, FROM THE  
EARLIEST TIMES TO THE REVOLUTION IN 1688.** By DAVID HUME. Incorporating  
the Corrections of recent Historians, and continued to 1868. Woodcuts. Post svo.  
7s. 6d.

\*.\* QUESTIONS ON THE 'STUDENT'S HUME.' 12mo. 2s.

**THE STUDENT'S CONSTITUTIONAL HISTORY OF ENG-  
LAND. FROM THE ACCESSION OF HENRY VII. TO THE DEATH OF GEORGE II.**  
By HENRY HALLAM, LL.D. With the Author's latest Additions and Corrections.  
Post svo. 7s. 6d.

### VIII.—FRANCE.

**THE STUDENT'S HISTORY OF FRANCE. FROM THE EARLIEST  
TIMES TO THE ESTABLISHMENT OF THE SECOND EMPIRE, 1852.** With Notes and  
Illustrations on the Institutions of the Country. By Rev. W. H. JERVIS, M.A.  
Woodcuts. Post svo. 7s. 6d.

### IX.—LANGUAGE, LITERATURE, ETC.

**THE STUDENT'S MANUAL OF THE ENGLISH LANGUAGE.**  
By GEORGE P. MARSH. Post svo. 7s. 6d.

**THE STUDENT'S MANUAL OF ENGLISH LITERATURE.**  
By T. B. SHAW, M.A. Post svo. 7s. 6d.

**THE STUDENT'S SPECIMENS OF ENGLISH LITERATURE.**  
Selected from the CHIEF WRITERS. By THOS. B. SHAW, M.A. Post svo. 7s. 6d.

### X.—PHILOSOPHY AND LAW.

**THE STUDENT'S MANUAL OF MORAL PHILOSOPHY, with  
Quotations and References.** By WILLIAM FLEMING, D.D. Post svo. 7s. 6d.

**THE STUDENT'S BLACKSTONE. A SYSTEMATIC ABRIDGMENT  
OF THE ENTIRE COMMENTARIES ADAPTED TO THE PRESENT STATE OF THE LAW.**  
By R. MALCOLM KERR, LL.D. Post svo. 7s. 6d.

### XI.—SCIENCE.

**THE STUDENT'S ELEMENTS OF GEOLOGY.** By Sir CHARLES  
LYELL, F.R.S. With 600 Woodcuts. Post svo. 9s.

---

JOHN MURRAY, ALBEMARLE STREET.

Lat.Gr  
S6642g

*The Student's Latin Grammar.*

---

A GRAMMAR

OF THE

LATIN LANGUAGE.

BY WILLIAM SMITH, D.C.L., LL.D.,

AND

THEOPHILUS D. HALL, M.A.,

FELLOW OF UNIVERSITY COLLEGE, LONDON.

For the Use of Colleges and the Upper Forms in Schools.

NINTH EDITION.

LONDON:

JOHN MURRAY, ALBEMARLE STREET.

1878.

*Uniform with the present Volume.*

---

**THE STUDENT'S GREEK GRAMMAR.** By DR. GEORGE CURTIUS, Professor in the University of Leipzig. Edited by WM. SMITH, D.C.L. Post 8vo. 6s.

**THE STUDENT'S FRENCH GRAMMAR: A PRACTICAL AND HISTORICAL GRAMMAR OF THE FRENCH LANGUAGE.** By C. HERON-WALL, late Assistant-Master at Brighton College. With an Introduction by M. LITRE. Post 8vo. 7s. 6d.

The special aim of this Grammar is to produce a book which will work well in schools where Latin and Greek form the principal subjects of study. In its preparation all the latest books in French philology have been carefully studied.

5156

2-11-11540

5

## PREFACE.

---

THIS Latin Grammar is intended to supply a twofold want. 1. It is designed, in the first place, to occupy an intermediate position between the elaborate works of Zumpt and Madvig, and the elementary treatises which still continue to be used even in the higher forms of our public and private schools. Our object has been to provide a Manual of convenient size, and easy of reference for the class room ; but at the same time presenting a fuller account of the forms and structure of the language than the ordinary grammars, and containing, as far as possible, all that is really needful for the Student. 2. In the second place the Work is designed to introduce the Student to some of the linguistic discoveries of modern philologists ; and more especially to make him acquainted with the laws which regulate the changes of the letters, and the formation of the Cases and Tenses, upon which subjects so much light has been thrown by the study of Comparative Grammar.

The Work consists of four parts :—

I. The *First Part* contains the ACCIDENCE, in which the inflexions are set forth as simply and fully as in a purely elementary work. It has been considered the wiser course

to retain the usual arrangement and nomenclature, which has been in use for so many centuries, and to introduce alterations only where some clear and positive advantage was to be gained; as, for instance, in the classification of the Substantives of the Third Declension according to the final letter of the stem. But though the ordinary arrangement of the Accidence has been retained, nothing is inserted which the pupil will have afterwards to *unlearn*; he is taught from the beginning to distinguish between the stem and the inflexional element, and is gradually introduced to a knowledge of the laws regulating the formation of the Cases and Tenses, of which a full account is given in the Fourth Part. In drawing up the Accidence our great object has been practical utility. By taking great pains with the arrangement of the page, and the use of different forms of type, the Declensions and Conjugations are presented in a clearer and more distinct form than in any other grammar with which we are acquainted. This portion of the work ends with a chapter on the *Formation of Words*—an important subject, but one omitted in most elementary grammars in use in our country.

II. The *Second Part* contains the SYNTAX, in which care has been taken to present such an explanation of the structure of the language as experience has shown to be most suitable to Students, and in particular to give as clear and full a treatment as possible of the Subjunctive Mood. It has been thought desirable to arrange the Syntax in two parts: the ordinary, and the extraordinary or *Syntaxis Ornata*. The latter subject furnishes an opportunity for noticing various peculiarities of construction or style



which ought to be known to the accurate Student, while the substantial structure of the language is, for the most part, independent of them. In this portion, several valuable sections have been derived from the excellent work of Nägelsbach—*Lateinische Stilistik*. To this part are added an entirely new chapter on the Order of Words, and some remarks on the styles of the principal prose writers. In the chapter on the Order of Words, it is stated, in opposition to Zumpt and Madvig, that the more emphatic position of an Attributive Adjective is *after* rather than before its Substantive. The question is a somewhat difficult one, but it is believed that examination will serve to establish the rule given. Also, with reference to the expression of *Questions* in the *Oratio Obliqua*, a different view of the use of the Subjunctive and Infinitive Moods in such cases has been presented from that of those Grammarians. But in a field so thoroughly worked as that of Latin Grammar, the proper merits of treatment to be looked for in a new work, are clearness and logical arrangement rather than any novelty. And throughout the Syntax, especially, the assistance of the eminent Grammarians referred to, as also that of Silcher (author of a School Grammar on a somewhat similar scale to the present, widely used in Germany) has been freely, though it is believed fairly, used. Many of the examples, in particular, have been taken from the afore-mentioned and similar works: but such have been carefully selected and revised; while a large number, especially of those intended to illustrate the more delicate points, are quite new. The English has in almost every case been given;

partly because it is desirable that illustrative sentences should be themselves as clear as possible, and partly with a view to the formation of a good style of translation.

III. The *Third Part* contains the PROSODY, which has been treated at sufficient length to dispense with the necessity of a separate work on the subject. It is mainly derived from an excellent treatise by Habenicht, published in 1860.

IV. The *Fourth Part*, which is entitled ETYMOLOGY, is designed for the more advanced Student, and treats at length of the Latin Alphabet, and of the formation of the Cases and Tenses; with constant reference, as already remarked, to the results obtained by the study of Comparative Philology. In this part we are specially indebted to Corssen's admirable works, 'Ueber Aussprache, Vokalismus, und Betonung der Lateinischen Sprache' (1858-1859), and 'Kritische Beiträge zur Lateinischen Formenlehre' (1863), which are a perfect storehouse of information respecting the forms of the Latin language.

Short Appendices are added upon the Latin Authors, the Roman Calendar, Money, Names, and ancient and modern Abbreviations.

The present edition has been carefully revised, and many alterations and improvements introduced: the chapters in the Fourth Part on the formation of the Cases and Tenses are entirely new.

# CONTENTS.



## PART I.—ACCIDENCE.

CHAP.	PAGE
I. THE ALPHABET .. .. .	1
II. PARTS OF SPEECH, INFLEXION, STEM .. .. .	3
III. THE SUBSTANTIVE .. .. .	4
IV. THE FIRST DECLENSION .. .. .	5
V. THE SECOND DECLENSION .. .. .	6
VI. THE THIRD DECLENSION .. .. .	8
VII. REMARKS ON THE CASES OF THE THIRD DECLENSION (INCLUDING ADJECTIVES) .. .. .	17
VIII. GREEK SUBSTANTIVES OF THE THIRD DECLENSION	20
IX. THE FOURTH DECLENSION .. .. .	22
X. THE FIFTH DECLENSION .. .. .	23
XI. IRREGULAR SUBSTANTIVES .. .. .	24
XII. DECLENSION OF ADJECTIVES .. .. .	26
XIII. COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES .. .. .	29
XIV. THE NUMERALS .. .. .	32
XV. THE PRONOUNS .. .. .	36
XVI. THE VERB .. .. .	41
XVII. THE VERB SUM AND THE FOUR CONJUGATIONS..	44
XVIII. DEPONENT VERBS .. .. .	64
XIX. PERIPHRASTIC CONJUGATION.. .. .	66
XX. STEMS OF VERBS, FORMATION OF TENSES, AND PECULIAR FORMS .. .. .	67
XXI. IRREGULAR VERBS .. .. .	74
XXII. DEFECTIVE VERBS .. .. .	82
XXIII. IMPERSONAL VERBS .. .. .	84
XXIV. ADVERBS .. .. .	85
XXV. PREPOSITIONS .. .. .	91
XXVI. CONJUNCTIONS.. .. .	93
XXVII. INTERJECTIONS.. .. .	94
XXVIII. APPENDIX A.—THE GENDERS OF SUBSTANTIVES	95
XXIX. APPENDIX B.—PERFECTS AND SUPINES OF VERBS	102

PART I.—ACCIDENCE—*continued.*

CHAP.	PAGE
XXX. FORMATION OF WORDS. DERIVATION OF SUBSTANTIVES .. .. .	121
XXXI. DERIVATION OF ADJECTIVES .. .. .	127
XXXII. DERIVATION OF VERBS .. .. .	130
XXXIII. DERIVATION OF ADVERBS .. .. .	132
XXXIV. COMPOSITION OF WORDS .. .. .	132

## PART II.—SYNTAX.

## BOOK I.

XXXV. OF SENTENCES .. .. .	135
XXXVI. CONCORD AND GOVERNMENT .. .. .	137
XXXVII. THE NOMINATIVE CASE .. .. .	142
XXXVIII. THE ACCUSATIVE CASE .. .. .	143
XXXIX. THE GENITIVE .. .. .	152
XL. THE DATIVE .. .. .	162
XLI. THE ABLATIVE .. .. .	170
XLII. THE VOCATIVE .. .. .	179
XLIII. ADJECTIVES .. .. .	180
XLIV. PRONOUNS .. .. .	185
XLV. THE VERB : INDICATIVE MOOD .. .. .	193
XLVI. THE IMPERATIVE MOOD .. .. .	198
XLVII. THE SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD .. .. .	200
XLVIII. THE INFINITIVE MOOD .. .. .	223
XLIX. PARTICIPLES .. .. .	228
L. THE GERUND AND GERUNDIVE PARTICIPLE ..	231
LI. THE SUPINES .. .. .	234
LII. ADVERBS .. .. .	235
LIII. PREPOSITIONS .. .. .	237
LIV. CONJUNCTIONS .. .. .	248

## BOOK II.—SYNTAXIS ORNATA.

LV. PECULIARITIES IN THE USE OF SUBSTANTIVES ..	255
LVI. DITTO           DITTO           OF ADJECTIVES ..	260
LVII. DITTO           DITTO           OF PRONOUNS .. ..	261
LVIII. DITTO          DITTO           OF VERBS .. .. .	266
LIX. DITTO           DITTO           { OF ADVERBS AND PREPOSITIONS }	271
LX. CONJUNCTIONS AND OTHER WORDS AS PARTICLES	273
LXI. ON THE ORDER OF WORDS .. .. .	276

## BOOK III.—STYLES OF AUTHORS.

CHAP.	PAGE
LXII. STYLE OF SALLUST .. .. .	284
LXIII. STYLE OF CAESAR .. .. .	287
LXIV. STYLE OF CICERO .. .. .	288
LXV. STYLE OF LIVY .. .. .	290
LXVI. STYLE OF TACITUS .. .. .	292

## PART III.—PROSODY.

LXVII. QUANTITY .. .. .	297
LXVIII. METRE .. .. .	305

## PART IV.—ETYMOLOGY.

LXIX. THE ALPHABET .. .. .	329
LXX. FORMATION OF THE CASES .. .. .	350
LXXI. FORMATION OF THE COMPARATIVE AND SUPERLATIVE	364
LXXII. FORMATION OF THE PERSONS AND TENSES OF THE VERBS .. .. .	365

## APPENDICES.

I. LATIN AUTHORS .. .. .	374
II. THE CALENDAR .. .. .	377
III. MONEY .. .. .	380
IV. ROMAN NAMES .. .. .	381
V. ABBREVIATIONS .. .. .	382

INDEX .. .. .	384
---------------	-----



# THE STUDENT'S LATIN GRAMMAR.

## PART I.—ACCIDENCE.

### CHAPTER I.—THE ALPHABET.

§ 1. The Latin Language was the language of *Latium*, of which Rome was the chief city. The conquests of the Romans caused it to spread over the rest of Italy, and over the greater part of France and Spain. The Latin Language is no longer spoken, but the French, Italian, Spanish, and Portuguese languages are mainly derived from it.

§ 2. The Latin Alphabet consists of 25 letters, being the same as the English without *W*.

A, B, C, D, E, F, G, H, I, J, K, L, M, N, O, P,  
a, b, c, d, e, f, g, h, i, j, k, l, m, n, o, p,  
Q, R, S, T, U, V, X, Y, Z.  
q, r, s, t, u, v, x, y, z.

*Obs.* 1. Originally *i* was used to express also the semivowel *j*, and *v* to denote both the vowel sound *u* and the semivowel sound *v*.

*Obs.* 2. The letters *y* and *z* occur only in words borrowed from the Greek. (For a full discussion of the alphabet, see Part IV.)

§ 3. The letters are divided into Vowels, which can be sounded by themselves; and Consonants, which cannot be sounded without a Vowel.

§ 4. The Vowels are *a, e, i, o, u, y*.

§ 5. Consonants are divided into Mutes, Liquids, Sibilants, and Semivowels.

The *Mutes* are divided according to the vocal organ which is chiefly employed in pronouncing them.

	Sharp or Thin.	Flat or Medial.	Aspirated.
<i>Labials</i> (lip-letters)	<i>p</i>	<i>b</i>	<i>f</i>
<i>Gutturals</i> (throat-letters)	<i>c</i> ( <i>k, q</i> )	<i>g</i>	<i>h</i>
<i>Dentals</i> (teeth-letters)	<i>t</i>	<i>d</i>	(none).

The *Liquids* are *l, m, n, r*.

The *Sibilants* are *s, x, and z*. *X* is compounded of *cs* or *gs* : as, *dux* = *ducs*, a leader ; *rex* = *regs*, a king. *X* and *z* are sometimes called double consonants.

The *Semivowels* are *j* and *v*.

*Obs. 1.* *K* is used only before *a* at the beginning of a few words : as, *Kalendariae*, the *Calends*.

*Obs. 2.* *Q* is used only before *u* : as, *sęquor*, I follow.

§ 6. A *Diphthong* is the blended sound of two vowels meeting in one syllable. The diphthongs are *ae, oe, au*, which are in common use ; and *eu, ei, ui*, which occur in only a few words.

*Obs.* The diphthongs *ae* (æ), *oe* (œ), are pronounced as *ē*.

§ 7. A *Syllable* consists of one or more letters pronounced together, and having only one vowel sound.

A *Syllable* is either *short, long, or doubtful*, according as the vowel belonging to it is pronounced rapidly, or slowly, or sometimes rapidly and sometimes slowly. This characteristic of a vowel or syllable is called its *quantity*.

A *short vowel* is marked by (˘) : as, *pāter*, a father.

*Obs.* A vowel followed by another vowel is usually short : as, *pūer*, a boy.

A *long vowel* is marked by (¯), and may be either long by nature : as, *māter*, a mother ; or long by position : as, *mēnsa*, a table ; *dūx*, a leader. A vowel is long by position, when it is followed by two or more consonants or by a double consonant.

*Obs. 1.* These marks of Quantity were not used by the Latin writers ; serving only for grammatical purposes.

*Obs. 2.* All diphthongs are long by nature : as, *āuręe*, breezes.

A *doubtful vowel* is sometimes short, sometimes long : as, *amō* or *amō*, I love, *tenēbrae* or *tenēbrae*, darkness.

*Obs.* A vowel is doubtful when followed by a mute and a liquid, especially *u* or *r*. as, *dūplex* or *dūplex*, twofold ; *tenēbrae* or *tenēbrae*, darkness.

§ 8. *Accent*.—In words of two syllables the accent is on the first syllable : as, *mūsa*, a muse, *dōlus*, deceit.

In words of three or more syllables the accent is on the last syllable but one, if this syllable is long : as, *Rōmānus*, a Roman ; or on the last syllable but two, if the last syllable but one is short : as, *dōmīnus*, a lord.



## CHAPTER II.—PARTS OF SPEECH. INFLEXION. STEM.

§ 9. There are eight parts of speech :

I. The **NOUN SUBSTANTIVE**, or simply **SUBSTANTIVE**, is the name (*Nōmen*) of a person or thing : as, *Caesār, Caesar* ; *vir, a man* ; *dōmūs, a house* ; *virtūs, valour*.

*Obs.* Names of persons and places are called *Proper Nouns* : all other Substantives are called *Common Nouns* or *Appellatives*.

II. The **NOUN ADJECTIVE**, or simply **ADJECTIVE** (*Adjectivum, joined to*), is joined to a Substantive to express its quality or nature : as, *bōnus vir, a good man*.

III. The **PRONOUN** (*Prōnōmen*) is used instead of a Substantive : as, *ēgo, I* ; *tū, thou*.

IV. The **VERB** (*Verbum, word*) is the word by which we make an assertion about something : as, *ēquus currit, the horse runs* ; *vir sēdet, the man sits*.

V. The **ADVERB** (*Adverbium*) is joined to Verbs, Adjectives, and other Adverbs, to qualify their meaning : as, *cēlērīter currit, he runs quickly* ; *māgis pius, more dutiful* ; *sātis diū, long enough*.

VI. The **PREPOSITION** (*Praepōsītio*) is placed before Substantives to mark their relation to other words : as, *in, in* ; *habito in urbē, I dwell in the city*.

VII. The **CONJUNCTION** (*Conjunctio*) unites words and sentences : as, *et, and* ; *ūt, in order that* : *vir et femīna, the man and the woman* ; *ēdimūs ūt vivāmus, we eat in order that we may live*.

VIII. The **INTERJECTION** (*Interjectio*) is a word of exclamation : as, *heu, alas* !

§ 10. There is no article in the Latin language : thus *dōmus* may be translated by either *house*, or *a house*, or *the house*.

§ 11. Substantives, Adjectives, Pronouns, and Verbs are inflected : that is, their final syllables are changed in order to mark their number or relation to other words.

The inflexion of Substantives, Adjectives, and Pronouns is called *Declension* (*Dēclensio*) : the inflexion of Verbs is called *Conjugation* (*Conjūgātio*).

Adverbs, Prepositions, Conjunctions, and Interjections are not inflected, and are frequently called **PARTICLES**.

§ 12. The *Stem* of inflected words is that part of the word which remains after the changeable endings are taken away : thus, in *trab-s, a plank*, *trāb-is, of a plank*, *trāb-i, to a plank*, the Stem is *trāb* : and in *lēg-o, I read*, *lēg-is, thou readest*, the Stem is *lēg*. (See § 179.)

## CHAPTER III.—THE SUBSTANTIVE.

§ 13. There are three *Genders*: the *Masculine* (Masculinum), the *Feminine* (Femininum), and the *Neuter* (Neutrum).

*Obs.* Substantives which are either Masculine or Feminine are called *Common*. The rules for the Genders are collected in §§ 141-148.

§ 14. There are two *Numbers* (Nūmēri): the *Singular* (Singulāris), which designates one, and the *Plural* (Plūrālis), which designates more than one.

§ 15. There are six *Cases* (Cāsūs):

I. The *Nominative* (Nōminātīvus) Case answers the question *Who?* or *What?* denoting the Subject of a sentence: as, māgister dōcēt, *the master teaches*; dōmus est amplā, *the house is large*.

II. The *Genitive* (Gēnītīvus) Case answers the question *Whose?* or *of What?* as, māgistri dōmus, *the master's house*; fōlia arbōrum, *the leaves of trees*.

III. The *Dative* (Dātīvus) Case answers the question *To* or *for whom?* *To* or *for what?* as, dō librum māgistro, *I give the book to the master*.

IV. The *Accusative* (Accūsātīvus) Case answers the question *Whom?* or *What?* as, āmo māgistrum, *I love the master*. It also signifies motion *towards*: as, eo Rōmam, *I go to Rome*.

V. The *Vocative* (Vōcātīvus) Case is used for addressing: as, O māgistēr, *O master!*

VI. The *Ablative* (Ablātīvus) Case answers the questions *By* or *with what?* *When?* &c.: as, Hastā interfectūs est, *he was killed with a spear*; aestātē, *in the summer*. It also signifies motion or separation *from*: as, ābeo Rōmā, *I depart from Rome*.

§ 16. All the Substantives in the Latin language are arranged in five classes, called *Declensions*, which may be distinguished by the endings of the Genitive Case.

	I.	II.	III.	IV.	V.
<i>Gen. Sing.</i>	ae	ī	is	ūs	ei
<i>Gen. Plur.</i>	ā-rum	ō-rum	-um i-um	ū-um	ē-rum

The *Stems* of Substantives can generally be ascertained by taking away the terminations *um* or *rum* of the Genitive Plural. Hence the final letter of the Stem is in:—

I.	II.	III.	IV.	V.
a	o	consonant or i	u	e

## CHAPTER IV.—THE FIRST OR A DECLENSION.

§ 17. The Nominative Singular of Substantives of the First Declension, with the exception of a few Greek nouns, ends in *ā*.

	Sing.		Plur.
Nom.	Mens- <i>ā</i> , a table	Mens- <i>ae</i> ,	tables
Gen.	Mens- <i>ae</i> , of a table	Mens- <i>arum</i> ,	of tables
Dat.	Mens- <i>ae</i> , to or for a table	Mens- <i>is</i> ,	to or for tables
Acc.	Mens- <i>am</i> , a table	Mens- <i>ās</i> ,	tables
Voc.	Mens- <i>ā</i> , O table [table.]	Mens- <i>ae</i> ,	O tables
abl.	Mens- <i>ā</i> , by, with, or from a	Mens- <i>is</i> ,	by, with, or from tables.

Obs. The meanings here and in subsequent examples assigned to the *Genitive*, *Dative*, and *Ablative* cases are the usual ones; but it must not be supposed that these cases can always be thus translated.

GENDER.—All Substantives of the First Declension are Feminine, unless they designate males: as, *nauta* (masc.), a sailor.

## Examples for Declension.

<i>ala</i> , a wing.	<i>hōra</i> , an hour.	<i>silva</i> , a wood.
<i>barba</i> , a beard.	<i>poena</i> , a punishment.	<i>stella</i> , a star.
<i>causa</i> , a cause.	<i>fēmīna</i> , a woman.	<i>vīa</i> , a way.
<i>coena</i> , a supper.	<i>porta</i> , a gate.	<i>victōria</i> , a victory.

Obs. 1. The stems of all substantives of the first declension end in *a*.

Obs. 2. The *Genitive Singular* ended originally in *ās* (a contraction of *a-is*). This ending is kept in *fāmīlia*, when compounded with *pāter*, *māter*, *filius* or *filia*: as, *pāterfāmīliās*, the father of a family; *Gen. patris fāmīliās*; *Dat. patri fāmīliās*, &c. In poetry the old form of the *Genitive ai* instead of *ais*, is sometimes found: as, *aquāi*, of the water; *terrāi*, of the earth.

Obs. 3. The *Genitive Plural* of some substantives ends in *um* instead of *arum*. The ending in *um* is found in the compounds of *cōlā* and *gēnā*: as *coellicōlum* from *coellicōla*, an inhabitant of heaven; *terrīgēnum* from *terrīgēna*, earth-born: also in *drachmum*, *amphōrum*, from *drachma*, *amphōra* (with numerals): and in Greek patronymics: as, *Aeneādum*, from *Aeneādēs*, a descendant of *Aeneas*.

Obs. 4. The *Dative* and *Ablative Plural* of some words end in *abus*: as, *deābus* from *dea*, a goddess; *filīabus* from *filia*, a daughter. This ending distinguishes them from corresponding masculine substantives of the second declension: as, *deis* from *deus*, a god; *filīs* from *filius*, a son. So likewise *duābus* from *duae*, two; *ambūbus* from *ambae*, both. See § 68.

## § 18. DECLENSION OF GREEK SUBSTANTIVES.

Greek Substantives of this declension employed in Latin end in *ē*, as, *ēs* in the Nominative Singular, and are thus declined:—

Feminine.	Masculine.	Masculine.
Nom. Ēpītōm-ē, abridgment	Aenē-ās (proper name)	Anchīs-ēs (proper name)
Gen. Ēpītōm-ēs	Aenē-ae	Anchīs-ae
Dat. Ēpītōm-ae	Aenē-ae	Anchīs-ae
Acc. Ēpītōm-ēn	Aenē-ān (am)	Anchīs-ēn (am)
Voc. Ēpītōm-ē	Aenē-ā	Anchīs-ē (ā, ā)
Abl. Ēpītōm-ē	Aenē-ā	Anchīs-ē (ā).

## CHAPTER V—THE SECOND OR O DECLENSION.

§ 19. The Nominative Singular of Masculine Substantives of the Second Declension ends in *ūs* and *ēr* (ir), and o Neuter Substantives in *um*.

## A. Masculine.

	Sing.	1.	Plur.
Nom.	Dōmīn-ūs, a lord	Dōmīn-ī,	lords
Gen.	Dōmīn-ī, of a lord	Dōmīn-ōrum,	of lords
Dat.	Dōmīn-ō, to or for a lord	Dōmīn-īs,	to or for lords
Acc.	Dōmīn-um, a lord	Dōmīn-ōs,	lords
Voc.	Dōmīn-ē, O lord [a lord.	Dōmīn-ī,	O lords (lords.
Abl.	Dōmīn-ō, by, with, or from	Dōmīn-īs,	by, with, or from

	Sing.	2.	Plur.
Nom.	Māgistr-ēs, a master	Māgistr-ī,	masters
Gen.	Māgistr-ī, of a master	Māgistr-ōrum,	of masters
Dat.	Māgistr-ō, to or for a master	Māgistr-īs,	to or for masters
Acc.	Māgistr-um, a master	Māgistr-ōs,	masters
Voc.	Māgistr-ē, O master	Māgistr-ī,	O masters
Abl.	Māgistr-ō, by, with, or from a master.	Māgistr-īs,	by, with, or from masters.

	Sing.	3.	Plur.
Nom.	Puēr, a boy	Puēr-ī,	boys
Gen.	Puēr-ī, of a boy	Puēr-ōrum,	of boys
Dat.	Puēr-ō, to or for a boy	Puēr-īs,	to or for boys
Acc.	Puēr-um, a boy	Puēr-ōs,	boys
Voc.	Puēr, O boy [boy.	Puēr-ī,	O boys
Abl.	Puēr-ō, by, with, or from a	Puēr-īs,	by, with, or from boys

## B. Neuter.

	Sing.	Plur.
Nom.	Regn-um, a kingdom	Regn-ā, kingdoms
Gen.	Regn-ī, of a kingdom	Regn-ōrum, of kingdoms
Dat.	Regn-ō, to or for a kingdom	Regn-īs, to or for kingdoms
Acc.	Regn-um, a kingdom	Regn-ā, kingdoms
Voc.	Regn-um, O kingdom	Regn-ā, O kingdoms
Abl.	Regn-ō, by, with, or from a kingdom.	Regn-īs, by, with, or from kingdoms.

GENDER.—1. A few Substantives in *us* of the Second Declension are Feminine; the names of Trees, Towns, and Countries: as, *pirus*, a pear tree, *Cōrinthus*, Corinth; and a few other words: as, *hūmus*, the ground, *alvus*, the belly, *colus*, a distaff, *vannus*, a winnowing fan.

2. Three in *us* are Neuter: *virus*, poison; *pēlagus*, the ocean; and *vulgus*, the multitude. The last is sometimes Masculine.

3. All Neuter Substantives have the Nominative, Accusative, and Vocative Cases alike in each Number; and in the Plural these Cases always end in *ă*.

Examples for Declension like *dōmīnās*.

fr̥bus, food.	annus, a year.	nīdus, a nest.
ŭpus, a wolf.	rāmus, a branch.	hortus, a garden.
ŭmērus, a number.	rīvus, a stream.	cervus, a stag.
āalus (f.), an apple-tree.	ulmus (f.), an elm.	prūnus (f.), a plum-tree.

Examples for Declension like *māgīstēr*.

ager, a field.	cancer, a crab.	fāber, a smith.
per, a boar.	cāper, a he-goat.	liber, a book.

Examples for Declension like *puēr*.

ŏcer, a father-in-law.	gēner, a son-in-law.	Liber, Bacchus.
vesper, evening.	ādulter, an adulterer.	libērī (pl.), children.

NOTE 1. The above are the only Substantives in *er* which preserve the *s* in all the cases. The Adjectives which preserve the *e* are given in § 56, Obs. 1.

NOTE 2. *Vesper* is irregular. See § 53, Obs. 2.

Examples for Declension like *regnum*.

lōnum, a gift.	scūtum, a shield.	bellum, war.
tectum, a roof.	vinum, wine.	templum, a temple.

Obs. 1. The stems of all substantives of the second declension end in *o*, as *dōmīno*, *regno*, *puēro*, *māgīstēro*. The *Nominative Singular* originally ended in *ōs*, and the *Accusative* in *om*: as, *dōmīnō-s*, *dōmīno-m*: *puēro-s*, *puēro-m*. In the older writers and poets the *o* is usually found after *r*: as *servō-s*, *servo-m*, a slave.

Obs. 2. When the *Genitive Singular* ends in *ii*, it is often contracted into *i*: as, *filii* instead of *filii*, of a son; *ōti* instead of *ōtīi*, of leisure.

Obs. 3. The *Vocative Singular* of *filius*, a son, *gēnius*, a guardian spirit, and of Proper Names in *ius* ends in *i*: as, *filii*, O son; *gēni*, O guardian spirit; *Laeli*, O Laelius; *Tulli*, O Tullius.

Obs. 4. The *Genitive Plural* of some words ends in *um* instead of *ōrum*. This is especially the case with words signifying money, weights, measures, and trades: as, *nummum* from *nummus*, a piece of money; *sestertium* from *sestertius*, a sesterce, a silver coin (about 2d.); *mōdium* from *mōdius*, a Roman corn-measure, a peck; *fabrum*, from *fāber*, a smith.

Obs. 5. The only substantives of the second declension ending in *ir* are *vīr*, a man, *Gen. vīr-i*, &c., with its compounds, *triumvīr*, &c.; and *levīr*, *frī*, a husband's brother, a brother-in-law.

Obs. 6. *Deūs*, God, is declined in the following manner:

	Sing.		Plur.
Nom.	Deūs, God	Deī, Dīī, or Dī,	Gods
Gen.	Deī, of God	Deōrum or Deām,	of Gods
Dat.	Deō, to God	Deīs, Dīīs, or Dīs,	to Gods
Acc.	Deum, God	Deōs,	Gods
Voc.	Deūs, O God	Deī, Dīī, or Dī,	O Gods
Abl.	Deō, by, with, or from	Deīs, Dīīs, or Dīs,	by, with, or from

The forms *Dei* (pl.) and *Deis* are rarely used.

## § 20. DECLENSION OF GREEK SUBSTANTIVES.

Greek Substantives of this declension employed in Latin differ from the ordinary declension in the following points:—

1. Greek Substantives in *ōs* frequently have the Greek endings *ōs* and *ōn* instead of the Latin *ūs* and *um* in the *Nom.* and *Acc. Sing.*

2. Greek Substantives in *ōs* (*ωs*) of the Attic Second Declension generally retain the Greek declension, but they sometimes have in the *Gen.* *i* as well as *o*:

<i>Nom.</i> Dēlōs	Andrōgēōs
<i>Gen.</i> Dēlī	Andrōgēī, Andrōgēō
<i>Dat.</i> Dēlō	Andrōgēō
<i>Acc.</i> Dēlōn, Dēlum	Andrōgēōn, Andrōgēō
<i>Voc.</i> Dēlē	Andrōgēōs
<i>Abi.</i> Dēlō	Andrōgēō

*Ōs.* Substantives in *ōs* sometimes form their Accusatives in *ōnā*: as, *Andrōgēōnā*: so, *Nom.* Athōs, *Acc.* Athōnā.

3. Greek Substantives in *eus* (*εύs*) of the Third Declension sometimes follow the Second Declension (except in the Nominative and Vocative), but frequently preserve the Greek declension:

<i>Nom.</i> Orphēus	Orphēus
<i>Gen.</i> Orphēī, Orphēi	Orphēōs
<i>Dat.</i> Orphēō	Orphēī, Orphī
<i>Acc.</i> Orphēum	Orphēa
<i>Voc.</i> Orphēū	Orphēū
<i>Abi.</i> Orphēō	

4. The *Genitive Plural* in some titles of books has the Greek ending *ōn* instead of the Latin *rum* or *um*: as, *Geōrgicōn librī*, *the books of the Georgics*.

## CHAPTER VI.—THE THIRD OR CONSONANT AND I DECLENSION.

§ 21. The Nominative Singular of Substantives of the Third Declension ends in various letters. Their stems end in some consonant or *i*.

## A. Masculine and Feminine Substantives.

I. Substantives the stems of which end in the labial mutes *p*, *b*, and in the labial liquid *m*.

Sing.	1.	Plur.
<i>Nom.</i> Trab-s (f.), a beam	Trāb-ēs, beams	
<i>Gen.</i> Trāb-īs, of a beam	Trāb-um, of beams	
<i>Dat.</i> Trāb-ī, to or for a beam	Trāb-ībūs, to or for beams	
<i>Acc.</i> Trāb-em, a beam	Trāb-ēs, beams	
<i>Voc.</i> Trab-s, O beam [beam.	Trāb-ēs, O beams	
<i>Abl.</i> Trāb-ě, by, with, or from a	Trāb-ībūs, by, with, or from beams.	

Sing.	2.	Plur.
<i>Nom.</i> Princēp-s (m.), a chief	Princīp-ēs, chiefs	
<i>Gen.</i> Princīp-īs, of a chief	Princīp-um, of chiefs	
<i>Dat.</i> Princīp-ī, to or for a chief	Princīp-ībūs, to or for chiefs	
<i>Acc.</i> Princīp-em, a chief	Princīp-ēs, chiefs	
<i>Voc.</i> Princeps, O chief [a chief.	Princīp-ēs, O chiefs [chiefs.	
<i>Abl.</i> Princīp-ě, by, with, or from	Princīp-ībūs, by, with, or from	

Sing.	3.	Plur.
<i>Nom.</i> Hiēm-s (f.), winter	Hiēm-ēs, winters	
<i>Gen.</i> Hiēm-īs, of winter	Hiēm-um, of winters	
<i>Dat.</i> Hiēm-ī, to or for winter	Hiēm-ībūs, to or for winters	
<i>Acc.</i> Hiēm-em, winter	Hiēm-ēs, winters	
<i>Voc.</i> Hiēm-s, O winter [winter.	Hiēm-ēs, O winters [ters.	
<i>Abl.</i> Hiēm-ě, by, with, or from	Hiēm-ībūs, by, with, or from win-	

Sing.	4.	Plur.
<i>Nom.</i> Urb-s (f.), a city	Urb-ēs, cities	
<i>Gen.</i> Urb-is, of a city	Urb-ium, of cities	
<i>Dat.</i> Urb-ī, to or for a city	Urb-ībūs, to or for cities	
<i>Acc.</i> Urb-em, a city	Urb-ēs, cities	
<i>Voc.</i> Urb-s, O city [city.	Urb-ēs, O cities	
<i>Abl.</i> Urb-ě, by, with, or from a	Urb-ībūs, by, with, or from cities.	

*Obs. 1.* When a monosyllabic Stem ends in two consonants, the *Gen. pl.* ends in *ium*, not *um*: as *urb-ium*. So also below: *arx*, *Gen. Pl. arc-ium*; *mona*, *Gen. Pl. mont-ium*.

*Obs. 2.* When a Stem of more than one syllable has *ě* in the last syllable, that *ě* is changed into *ī* when another syllable follows: as, *Stem princēp*, *Gen. princīp-is*. So also below: *Stem jūdēc*, *Gen. jūdēc-is*; *Stem mlēt*, *Gen. mlēt-is*; *Stem nōmēn*, *Gen. nōmēn-is*.

§ 22. II. Substantives the stems of which end in the guttural mutes *c, g*.

Sing.	1.	Plur.
<i>Nom.</i> Dux (c.g.), a leader	Dūc-ēs, leaders	
<i>Gen.</i> Dūc-īs, of a leader	Dūc-um, of leaders	
<i>Dat.</i> Dūc-ī, to or for a leader	Dūc-ībūs, to or for leaders	
<i>Acc.</i> Dūc-em, a leader	Dūc-ēs, leaders	
<i>Voc.</i> Dux, O leader [leader.	Dūc-ēs, O leaders	
<i>Abl.</i> Dūc-ě, by, with, or from a	Dūc-ībūs, by, with, or from leaders.	

	Sing.	2.	Plur.
Nom.	Lex (f.), a law	Lēg-ēs,	laws
Gen.	Lēg-is, of a law	Lēg-um,	of laws
Dat.	Lēg-i, to or for a law	Lēg-ībūs,	to or for laws
Acc.	Lēg-em, a law	Lēg-ēs,	laws
Voc.	Lex, O law	Lēg-ēs,	O laws
Abl.	Lēg-ē, by, with, or from a	Lēg-ībūs,	by, with, or from laws.

	Sing.	3.	Plur.
Nom.	Jūdex (c.), a judge	Jūdic-ēs,	judges
Gen.	Jūdic-is, of a judge	Jūdic-um,	of judges
Dat.	Jūdic-i, to or for a judge	Jūdic-ībūs,	to or for judges
Acc.	Jūdic-em, a judge	Jūdic-ēs,	judges
Voc.	Jūdex, O judge	Jūdic-ēs,	O judges
Abl.	Jūdic-ē, by, with, or from a	Jūdic-ībūs,	by, with, or from judges.

	Sing.	4.	Plur.
Nom.	Arx (f.), a citadel	Arc-ēs,	citadels
Gen.	Arc-is, of a citadel	Arc-um,	of citadels
Dat.	Arc-i, to or for a citadel	Arc-ībūs,	to or for citadels
Acc.	Arc-em, a citadel	Arc-ēs,	citadels
Voc.	Arx, O citadel	Arc-ēs,	O citadels
Abl.	Arc-ē, by, with, or from a	Arc-ībūs,	by, with, or from citadels.

## Examples for Declension.

nux (f.),	nūc-is,	a nut.	grex (m.),	grēg-is,	a flock.
fax (f.),	fāc-is,	a torch.	rēmex (m.),	rēmīg-is,	a rover.
pax (f.),	pāc-is,	peace.	pollex (m.),	pollīc-is,	the thumb.
fornax (f.),	fornāc-ir,	an oven.	index (c.),	indīc-is,	an informer.
vox (f.),	vōc-is,	a voice.	vertex (m.),	vertīc-is,	an eddy.
rālix (f.),	rādic-is,	a root.	falx (f.),	falc-is,	a sickle.
rex (m.),	rēg-is,	a king.	merx (f.),	merc-is,	merchandise.

*Obs.* Cs and gs are contracted into x: as, dux instead of duc-s, lex instead of leg-s. In nix, snow, Gen. nīv-is, Dat. nīv-i, &c., the Nom. ends in x, because the Stem originally ended in a guttural.

### § 23. III. Substantives the Stems of which end in the dental mutes t, d.

	Sing.	1.	Plur.
Nom.	Aetā-s (f.), an age	Aetāt-ēs,	ages
Gen.	Aetāt-is, of an age	Aetāt-um,	of ages
Dat.	Aetāt-i, to or for an age	Aetāt-ībūs,	to or for ages
Acc.	Aetāt-em, an age	Aetāt-ēs,	ages
Voc.	Aetā-s, O age	Aetāt-ēs,	O ages
Abl.	Aetāt-ē, by, with, or from	Aetāt-ībūs,	by, with, or from ages.



	Sing.	2.	Plur.
Nom.	Lāpī-s (m.), a stone	Lāpīd-ēs,	stones
Gen.	Lāpīd-īs,	Lāpīd-um,	of stones
Dat.	Lāpīd-ī,	Lāpīd-ībūs,	to or for stones
Acc.	Lāpīd-em,	Lāpīd-ēs,	stones
Voc.	Lāpī-s,	Lāpīd-ēs,	O stones
Abl.	Lāpīd-ē,	Lāpīd-ībūs,	by, with, or from stones.

	Sing.	3.	Plur.
Nom.	Mīlē-s (c.), a soldier	Mīlīt-ēs,	soldiers
Gen.	Mīlīt-īs,	Mīlīt-um,	of soldiers
Dat.	Mīlīt-ī,	Mīlīt-ībūs,	to or for soldiers
Acc.	Mīlīt-em,	Mīlīt-ēs,	soldiers
Voc.	Mīlē-s,	Mīlīt-ēs,	O soldiers [divers.]
Abl.	Mīlīt-ē,	Mīlīt-ībūs,	by, with, or from soldiers.

	Sing.	4.	Plur.
Nom.	Mon-s (m.), a mountain	Mont-ēs,	mountains
Gen.	Mont-īs,	Mont-ium,	of mountains
Dat.	Mont-ī,	Mont-ībūs,	to or for mountains
Acc.	Mont-em,	Mont-ēs,	mountains
Voc.	Mon-s,	Mont-ēs,	O mountains
Abl.	Mont-ē,	Mont-ībūs,	by, with, or from mountains.

## Examples for Declension.

civltās (f.),	civltāt-is,	a state.	obs-ēs (c.),	obsīl-is,	a hostage.
virtūs (f.),	virtūt-is,	virtue.	pars (f.),	part-is,	a part.
sācerdōs (c.),	sācerdōt-is,	a priest,	serpens (c.),	serpent-is,	a serpent.
		priestess.	ars (f.),	art-is	an art.
cascl-s (f.),	cascll-is,	a helmet.	frons (f.),	front-is,	a forehead.
cōmēs (c.),	cōmīt-is,	a companion.			

Obs. 1. *T* and *d* are dropped before *s*: as, actū-s, lāpī-s, mīlē-s, mon-s, ins:ead of actat-s, lāpīd-s, mīlet-s, mont-s.

Obs. 2. In *nox*, noct-is, *night*, the Stem is noct: in the Nom. *t* is dropped before *s*, and the letters *cs* are contracted into *x*: noct-s = noc-s = *nox*.

§ 24. IV. Substantives the Stems of which end in the liquids *l*, *r*, and the sibilant *s*.

	Sing.	1.	Plur.
Nom.	Consul (m.), a consul	Consul-ēs,	consuls
Gen.	Consul-īs,	Consul-um,	of consuls
Dat.	Consul-ī,	Consul-ībūs,	to or for consuls
Acc.	Consul-em,	Consul-ēs,	consuls
Voc.	Consul,	Consul-ēs,	O consuls
Abl.	Consul-ē,	Consul-ībūs,	by, with, or from a consul.

	Sing.	2.	Plur.
<i>Nom.</i>	Clâmör (m.), <i>a shout</i>		Clâmör-ēs, <i>shouts</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	Clâmör-is, <i>of a shout</i>		Clâmör-um, <i>of shouts</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	Clâmör-i, <i>to or for a shout</i>		Clâmör-ibūs, <i>to or for shouts</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	Clâmör-em, <i>a shout</i>		Clâmör-ēs, <i>shouts</i>
<i>Voc.</i>	Clâmör, <i>O shout</i> [ <i>a shout</i> ]		Clâmör-ēs, <i>O shouts</i> [ <i>shouts</i> ]
<i>Abl.</i>	Clâmör-ě, <i>by, with, or from</i>		Clâmör-ibūs, <i>by, with, or from</i>

	Sing.	3.	Plur.
<i>Nom.</i>	Ansēr (m.), <i>a goose</i>		Ansēr-ēs, <i>geese</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	Ansēr-is, <i>of a goose</i>		Ansēr-um, <i>of geese</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	Ansēr-i, <i>to or for a goose</i>		Ansēr-ibūs, <i>to or for geese</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	Ansēr-em, <i>a goose</i>		Ansēr-ēs, <i>geese</i>
<i>Voc.</i>	Ansēr, <i>O goose</i> [ <i>a goose</i> ]		Ansēr-ēs, <i>O geese</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	Ansēr-ě, <i>by, with, or from</i>		Ansēr-ibūs, <i>by, with, or from geese</i>

	Sing.	4.	Plur.
<i>Nom.</i>	Pătēr, <i>a father</i>		Patr-ēs, <i>fathers</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	Patr-is, <i>of a father</i>		Patr-um, <i>of fathers</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	Patr-i, <i>to or for a father</i>		Patr-ibūs, <i>to or for fathers</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	Patr-em, <i>a father</i>		Patr-ēs, <i>fathers</i>
<i>Voc.</i>	Păter, <i>O father</i> [ <i>father</i> ]		Patr-ēs, <i>O fathers</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	Patr-ě, <i>by, with, or from a</i>		Patr-ibūs, <i>by, with, or from fathers</i>

	Sing.	5.	Plur.
<i>Nom.</i>	Flōs (m.), <i>a flower</i>		Flōr-ēs, <i>flowers</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	Flōr-is, <i>of a flower</i>		Flōr-um, <i>of flowers</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	Flōr-i, <i>to or for a flower</i>		Flōr-ibūs, <i>to or for flowers</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	Flōr-em, <i>a flower</i>		Flōr-ēs, <i>flowers</i>
<i>Voc.</i>	Flōs, <i>O flower</i> [ <i>flower</i> ]		Flōr-ēs, <i>O flowers</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	Flōr-ě, <i>by, with, or from a</i>		Flōr-ibūs, <i>by, with, or from flowers</i>

#### Examples for Declension.

sōl (m.),	sōl-is,	the sun.	aggēr (m.),	aggēr-is,	a mound.
exsūl (c.),	exsūl-is,	an exile.	carcēr (m.),	carcēr-is,	a prison.
cōlōr (m.),	cōlōr-is,	colour.	māliēr,	māliēr-is,	a woman.
timōr (m.),	timōr-is,	fear.	mātr,	mātr-is,	a mother.
mōs (m.),	mōr-is,	a custom.	frātēr,	frātēr-is,	a brother.

*Obs. 1.* In some Substantives ending in *ēr*, the *ē* is dropped in all cases except the *Nom.* and *Voc. Sing.*: as *păter*, *măter*, etc.

*Obs. 2.* The *s* of the Stem is changed into *r*, when another syllable follows, as, *Stem* and *Nom.* *flōs*, *Gen.* *flōr-is*: *Stem* and *Nom.* *pulvis*, *dust*, *Gen.* *pulvēr-is*.

## § 25. V. Substantives the Stems of which end in on.

	Sing.	1.	Plur.
Nom.	Leo (m.), a lion	Leōn-ēs,	lions
Gen.	Leōn-is, of a lion	Leōn-um,	of lions
Dat.	Leōn-i, to or for a lion	Leōn-ībūs,	to or for lions
Acc.	Leōn-em, a lion	Leōn-ēs,	lions
Voc.	Leo, O lion [lion.	Leōn-ēs,	O lions
Abl.	Leōn-ē, by, with, or from a	Leōn-ībūs,	by, with, or from lions.

	Sing.	2.	Plur.
Nom.	Virgo, a maiden	Virgīn-ēs,	maidens
Gen.	Virgīn-is, of a maiden	Virgīn-um,	of maidens
Dat.	Virgīn-i, to or for a maiden	Virgīn-ībūs,	to or for maidens
Acc.	Virgīn-em, a maiden	Virgīn-ēs,	maidens
Voc.	Virgo, O maiden [maiden.	Virgīn-ēs,	O maidens [maidens
Abl.	Virgīn-ē, by, with, or from a	Virgīn-ībūs,	by, with, or from

## Examples for Declension.

sermo (m.), sermōn-is, a discourse.	hōmo (c.), hōmīn-is, a man or wo-
pūgio (m.), pūgiōn-is, a dagger.	grando (f.), grandīn-is, hail. [man.
lātro (m.), lātrōn-is, a robber.	ordo (m.), ordin-is, a rank.
præco (m.), præcōn-is, a crier.	īmāgo (f.), imāgīn-is, a likeness.
ōrātiō (f.), ōrātiōn-is, a speech.	hīrundo (f.), hīrundīn-is, a swallow.
pāvō (m.), pāvōn-is, a peacock.	ārundo (f.), ārundīn-is, a reed.

Obs. 1. If the Stem ends in ōn (short), the ō is changed into ī, when another syllable follows: as, Stem virgōn, Gen. virgīn-is. Comp. § 21, Obs. 2.

Obs. 2. Cāro (Stem cārōn) flesh, drops the ō in all cases except the Nom. and Voc. Sing.: as, Nom. cāro, Gen. carn-is, Dat. carn-i, &c.

## § 26. VI. Substantives the Stems of which end in i.

	Sing.	1.	Plur.
Nom.	Host-is (c.), an enemy	Host-ēs,	enemies
Gen.	Host-is, of an enemy	Host-ium,	of enemies
Dat.	Host-i, to or for an enemy	Host-ībūs,	to or for enemies
Acc.	Host-em, an enemy	Host-ēs,	enemies
Voc.	Host-is, O enemy [enemy.	Host-ēs,	O enemies [mies.
Abl.	Host-ē, by, with, or from an	Host-ībūs,	by, with, or from ene-

## Examples for Declension.

civīs (c.), a citizen.	ovīs (f.), a sheep.	vestīs (f.), a garment
avis (f.), a bird.	fells (f.), a cat.	classis (f.), a fleet.

Some Stems end in *i* or *e*, and are thus declined:—

	Sing.	2.	Plur.
Nom.	Nūb-ēs, a cloud	Nūb-ēs,	clouds
Gen.	Nūb-īs, of a cloud	Nūb-īum,	of clouds
Dat.	Nūb-ī, to or for a cloud	Nūb-ībūs,	to or for clouds
Acc.	Nūb-em, o cloud	Nūb-ēs,	clouds
Voc.	Nūb-ēs, O cloud [cloud.	Nūb-ēs,	O clouds
Abl.	Nūb-ē, by, with, or from a	Nūb-ībūs,	by, with, or from clouds.

Examples for Declension.

clāēs, a defeat. | rūpēs, a rock. | sēlēs, a seat.

B. Neuter Substantives.

§ 27. The Nominative, Accusative, and Vocative Singular of Substantives of the Third Declension are properly the same as the Stem. The Nom., Acc., and Voc. Plural always end in *ā*, as in the Second Declension.

§ 28. I. Substantives the Stems of which end in *n*, *r*, *s*.

	Sing.	1.	Plur.
Nom.	Nōmēn, a name	Nōmīn-ā,	names
Gen.	Nōmīn-īs, of a name	Nōmīn-um,	of names
Dat.	Nōmīn-ī, to or for a name	Nōmīn-ībūs,	to or for names
Acc.	Nōmēn, a name	Nōmīn-ā,	names
Voc.	Nōmēn, O name [name.	Nōmīn-ā,	O names [names.
Abl.	Nōmīn-ē, by, with, or from a	Nōmīn-ībūs,	by, with, or from

	Sing.	2.	Plur.
Nom.	Fulgūr, lightning	Fulgūr-ā,	lightnings
Gen.	Fulgūr-īs, of lightning	Fulgūr-um,	of lightnings
Dat.	Fulgūr-ī, to or for lightning	Fulgūr-ībūs,	to or for lightnings
Acc.	Fulgūr, lightning	Fulgūr-ā,	lightnings
Voc.	Fulgūr, O lightning	Fulgūr-ā,	O lightnings
Abl.	Fulgūr-ē, by, with, or from lightning.	Fulgūr-ībūs,	by, with, or from lightnings.

	Sing.	3.	Plur.
Nom.	Crūs, a leg	Crūr-ā,	legs
Gen.	Crūr-īs, of a leg	Crūr-um,	of legs
Dat.	Crūr-ī, to or for a leg	Crūr-ībūs,	to or for legs
Acc.	Crūs, a leg	Crūr-ā,	legs
Voc.	Crūs, O leg [leg.	Crūr ā,	O legs
Abl.	Crūr-ē, by, with, or from a	Crūr-ībūs,	by, with, or from legs.

	Sing.	4.	Plur.
Nom.	Ōpūs, a work	Ōpēr-ā,	works
Gen.	Ōpēr-is, of a work	Ōpēr-um,	of works
Dat.	Ōpēr-i, to or for a work	Ōpēr-ībūs,	to or for works
Acc.	Ōpūs, a work	Ōpēr-ā,	works
Voc.	Ōpūs, O work [work.	Ōpēr-ā,	O works
Abl.	Ōpēr-ē, by, with, or from a	Ōpēr-ībūs,	by, with, or from works.

	Sing.	5.	Plur.
Nom.	Corpūs, a body	Corpōr-ā,	bodies
Gen.	Corpōr-is, of a body	Corpōr-um,	of bodies
Dat.	Corpōr-i, to or for a body	Corpōr-ībūs,	to or for bodies
Acc.	Corpūs, a body	Corpōr-ā,	bodies
Voc.	Corpūs, O body [body.	Corpōr-ā,	O bodies [bodies
Abl.	Corpōr-ē, by, with, or from a	Corpōr-ībūs,	by, with, or from

	Sing.	6.	Plur.
Nom.	Căpūt, a head	Căpīt-ā,	heads
Gen.	Căpīt-is, of a head	Căpīt-um,	of heads
Dat.	Căpīt-i, to or for a head	Căpīt-ībūs,	to or for heads
Acc.	Căpūt, a head	Căpīt-ā,	heads
Voc.	Căpūt, O head [head.	Căpīt-ā,	O heads
Abl.	Căpīt-ē, by, with, or from a	Căpīt-ībūs,	by, with, or from heads.

NOTE.—A few Substantives ending in *en* and *us* are not Neuter: as, *flămēn, inis* (m.), a special priest; *Vēnūs, ēris*, the goddess of love; *lēpūs, ōris* (m.), a hare.

#### Examples for Declension.

flămēn,	inis,	a river.	fūnūs,	ēris,	a funeral.
carmēn,	inis,	a song.	lātūs,	ēris,	a side.
fulmēn,	inis,	a thunderbolt.	sīdūs,	ēris,	a constellation.
sēmēn,	inis,	a seed.	vulnūs,	ēris,	a wound.
murmūr,	ūris,	a murmur.	littūs,	ōris,	a shore.
guttūr,	ūris,	a throat.	pignūs,	ōris,	a pledge.
ōs,	ōris,	a mouth.	tempūs,	ōris,	a time.
gēnūs,	ēris,	a race.	nēmūs,	ōris,	a grove.
foedūs,	ēris,	a treaty.	pectūs,	ōris,	a breast.

Obs. 1. The substitution of *r* for the final *s* of the Stem, when another syllable follows, is an euphonic change: as, *crūs, crūr-is*, instead of *crūs-is*; *ōpēs, ōpēr-is*, instead of *ōpēs-is*; *corpōs, corpōr-is*, instead of *corpōs-is*.

Obs. 2. The *u* in *ūs* of the *Nom. Sing.* is only an euphonic change of the *ē* and *ō* of the Stem: as, *Stems ōpēs, corpōs*; *Nom. ōpūs, corpūs*.

Obs. 3. In *căpūt, căpīt-is*, the *ū* of the Stem is changed into *ī* when another syllable follows, like the *ē* in *nōmēn, nōmīn-is*. See § 21, Obs. 2.

§ 29. II. Substantives the Stems of which end in *i* (the *Nom.* in *e*, *al*, *ar*).

	Sing.	1.	Plur.
<i>Nom.</i>	Măr- <i>ē</i> , <i>the sea</i>	Măr- <i>iā</i> ,	<i>seas</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	Măr- <i>is</i> , <i>of the sea</i>	Măr- <i>ium</i> ,	<i>of seas</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	Măr- <i>i</i> , <i>to or for the sea</i>	Măr- <i>ibūs</i> ,	<i>to or for seas</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	Măr- <i>ē</i> , <i>the sea</i>	Măr- <i>iā</i> ,	<i>seas</i>
<i>Voc.</i>	Măr- <i>ē</i> , <i>O sea</i>	[ <i>sea.</i> Măr- <i>iā</i> ,	<i>O seas</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	Măr- <i>i</i> , <i>by, with, or from the</i>	Măr- <i>ibūs</i> ,	<i>by, with, or from seas.</i>

	Sing.	2.	Plur.
<i>Nom.</i>	Ănīmāl, <i>an animal</i>	Ănīmāl- <i>iā</i> ,	<i>animals</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	Ănīmāl- <i>is</i> , <i>of an animal</i>	Ănīmāl- <i>ium</i> ,	<i>of animals</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	Ănīmāl- <i>i</i> , <i>to or for an animal</i>	Ănīmāl- <i>ibūs</i> ,	<i>to or for animals</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	Ănīmāl, <i>an animal</i>	Ănīmāl- <i>iā</i> ,	<i>animals</i>
<i>Voc.</i>	Ănīmāl, <i>O animal</i>	Ănīmāl- <i>iā</i> ,	<i>O animals</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	Ănīmāl- <i>i</i> , <i>by, with, or from an animal.</i>	Ănīmāl- <i>ibūs</i> ,	<i>by, with, or from animals.</i>

	Sing.	3.	Plur.
<i>Nom.</i>	Calcăr, <i>a spur</i>	Calcăr- <i>iā</i> ,	<i>spurs</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	Calcăr- <i>is</i> , <i>of a spur</i>	Calcăr- <i>ium</i> ,	<i>of spurs</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	Calcăr- <i>i</i> , <i>to or for a spur</i>	Calcăr- <i>ibūs</i> ,	<i>to or for spurs</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	Calcăr, <i>a spur</i>	Calcăr- <i>iā</i> ,	<i>spurs</i>
<i>Voc.</i>	Calcăr, <i>O spur</i>	[ <i>spur.</i> Calcăr- <i>iā</i> ,	<i>O spurs</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	Calcăr- <i>i</i> , <i>by, with, or from a</i>	Calcăr- <i>ibūs</i> ,	<i>by, with, or from spurs.</i>

Examples for Declension.

rătē, <i>a net.</i>	mōnīlē, <i>a necklace.</i>	cervicāl, <i>a pillow.</i>
ōvīlē, <i>a sheepfold.</i>	vectīgāl, <i>a tax.</i>	exemplār, <i>an example.</i>

*Obs. 1.* The Stems of *mărē* and similar Substantives end in *i*, the final *ē* of the *Nom.* being only an euphonic change of the *i*: as, *Stem mări*, *Nom. inăre*.

*Obs. 2.* The Stems of words whose Nominatives end in *āl* and *ār*, end in *āl* and *ār*, the *i* being dropped and the *a* shortened in the *Nom. Sing.*: as, *Stem ănīmāl*, *Nom. ănīmāl*; *Stem calcări*, *Nom. calcăr*. Hence the *Abl.* in *i*, see §§ 32, 33.

§ 30. The following irregular Substantives are thus declined :

Bōs (*c.*), *an ox or cow.*

	Sing.	Plur.
<i>Nom.</i>	Bōs	Bōv- <i>ēs</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	Bōv- <i>is</i>	Bōv- <i>um</i> or bō- <i>um</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	Bōv- <i>i</i>	Bō-būs or bā-būs
<i>Acc.</i>	Bōv- <i>em</i>	Bōv- <i>ēs</i>
<i>Voc.</i>	Bōs	Bōv- <i>ēs</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	Bōv- <i>ē</i>	Bō-būs or bābūs.

Sēnex, an old man.		Jūptēr — Jōv-plitēr, i. e. Jātēr,
Sing.	Plur.	the god.
Nom. Sēnex	Sēn-ēs	Nom. Jūptēr
Gen. Sēn-is	Sēn-um	Gen. Jōv-is
Dat. Sēn-i	Sēn-ibūs	Dat. Jōv-i
Acc. Sēn-em	Sēn-ēs	Acc. Jōv-em
Voc. Sēnex	Sēn-ēs	Voc. Jūptēr
Abl. Sēn-ē	Sēn-ibūs	Abl. Jōv-ē.

## CHAPTER VII.—REMARKS ON THE CASES OF THE THIRD DECLENSION (INCLUDING ADJECTIVES).

### § 31. Accusative Singular in *im*.

The *Acc. Sing.* of many Substantives, of which the *Nom.* ends in *i*: has *īm*, not *em*:

#### 1. Always in the five words:—

āmussīs, rāvis, sitīs, tussīs, vīs,

and in the names of cities and rivers; as, *Hispaniās, Seville; Tibēris, the Tiber.*

āmussīs (f.), a rule.	tussīs (f.), a cough.
rāvis (f.), hoarseness.	vīs (f.), violence.
sitīs (f.), thirst.	

#### 2. Generally in the six words:

febris, pelvis, puppis,  
restis, turris, securis.

febris (f.), fever.	restis (f.), a rope.
pelvis (f.), a basin.	turris (f.), a tower.
puppis (f.), the stern of a ship.	securis (f.), an axe.

#### 3. Sometimes in the three words:

clavis, messis, navis.

clavis (f.), a key. | messis (f.), a harvest. | navis (f.), a ship.

### § 32. Ablative Singular in *i*.

The *Abl. Sing.* has *i*, not *ē*:

1. In all words of which the Accusative ends in *im* only: as, *siti, Tibēri.*

2. In Neuters in *ē, āl*, and *ār*, (Gen. *āris*): as, *māri, animalī, calcāri.*

*Obs.* 1. Sometimes, but very rarely, these Substantives have *ē* in the Ablative: as, *mārē* (Varr., Lucr.).

*Obs.* 2. Names of towns in *e* always have *ē* in the Abl.: as, *Praenestē*.

*Obs.* 3. Substantives in *ar*, the Gen. of which is not *āris*, have *ē* in the Abl.: as, *far*, *farris*, *spelt*; *baccār*, *baccāris*, *a sweet herb*; *jūbār*, *jūbāris*, *a sun-beam*; *nectār*, *nectāris*, *nectar*.

3. In Adjectives ending in *is*, *e*, and *er*, *is*, *e*: as, *fācili* from *fācilis*, *easy*; *ācri* from *ācēr*, *sharp*.

### § 33. Ablative Singular in *ī* and *ē*.

The Abl. Sing. has both *ī* and *ē*:

1. In most words the Acc. of which ends both in *im* and *em*: as, *puppī* and *puppē*.

Also in *ignīs*, *āvīs*, *imbēr*, *vesper*, *sūpellex*.

*ignīs* (m.), *fire*.

*āvīs* (f.), *a bird*.

*imbēr*, n. (Abl. *imbri* &

*imbrē*), *rain*.

*sūpellex*, f. (Abl. *sūpellectūī*, or *sūpellectīlē*), *household utensils*.

*vesper*, m. (Abl. *vespēri* or *vespērē*), *evening*.

*Obs.* *Restīs* has only *restē*; *sēcūrīs* only *sēcūrī*.

2. In Adjectives of one termination and in the Comparatives: as, *prudenti* and *prudentē* from *prūdēns*, *experienced*; *altiorī* and *altiorē* from *altior*, *higher*. The Comparatives usually have *ē*.

*Obs.* 1. The following Adjectives have *ē* only:

*paupēr*, *pūbēs*, *dēsēs*,  
*compōs*, *impōs*, *caelebs*,  
princeps and *sūperstēs*.

*paupēr*, *ēris*,

*pūbēs* (ēr), *ēris*,

*dēsēs*, *Idis*,

*compōs*, *ōtis*,

*poor*.

*an adult*.

*lazy*.

*having the mastery of*.

*impōs*, *ōtis*,

*caelebs*, *Ibis*,

*princeps*, *Ipis*,

*sūperstēs*, *Itis*,

*not master of*.

*unmarried*.

*chief*.

*surviving*.

*Obs.* 2. *Pār*, *equal*, and *mēmōr*, *mindful*, have only *ī*. But *pār*, *a pair* (subst.), has *ē* also.

*Obs.* 3. The Participles in *ns* generally have *ī* when used as Adjectives, but otherwise *ē*.

### § 34. Nominative, Accusative, and Vocative Plural in *ī*.

The Nom., Acc., and Voc. Plur. of Neuter Nouns have *ī*:

1. In Substantives, the Nom. Sing. of which end in *e*, *al*, *ar* (Gen. *āris*): as, *mārī*, *ānīmālī*, *calcārī*.

2. In Adjectives which have the Abl. Sing. either in *ī* alone, or in *ī* and *ē*, except the Comparatives: as, *grāvī*, *ācī*, *prudentī*; but *altiorī*.

*Obs.* Except *vētūs*, *old*, which has *vētērī*. *Complūrēs*, *several*, has both *complūrā* and *complūrī*.



§ 35. *Genitive Plural in ĭum.*

The *Gen. Plur.* has *ĭum*, not *um* :

1. In Substantives the *Nom. Sing.* of which ends in *is* or *es*, not increasing in the *Gen.* : *as*, *hostis*, *hostĭum* ; *aedēs*, *aedĭum*.

*Exceptions.*

*Ambāgēs*, *struēs*, *jūvēnĭs*,  
*Vātēs*, *cānĭs*, *vōlūcrĭs*,  
 In genitive have *um*,  
 While *āplĭs*, *mensĭs*, *sēdēs*,  
 Have either *um* or *ĭum*.

<i>ambāgēs*</i> (f.),	<i>a winding.</i>	<i>vōlūcrĭs</i> (f.),	<i>a bird.</i>
<i>struēs</i> (f.),	<i>a heap.</i>	<i>āplĭs</i> (f.),	<i>a bee.</i>
<i>jūvēnĭs</i> (c.),	<i>a youth.</i>	<i>mensĭs</i> (m.),	<i>a month.</i>
<i>vātēs</i> (c.),	<i>a prophet.</i>	<i>sēdēs</i> (f.),	<i>a seat.</i>
<i>cānĭs</i> (c.),	<i>a dog.</i>		

\* See § 52, *Obs.* 3.

2. In the words :

*Imbēr*, *ūtēr*, *lintēr*,  
*Insūbēr*, *cāro*, *ventēr* :

*as*, *imbrĭum*, *carnĭum*, &c.

<i>imbēr</i> (m.),	<i>rain.</i>	<i>Insūbēr</i> (m.),	<i>name of a Gallic tribe.</i>
<i>ūtēr</i> (m.),	<i>a bag made of leather.</i>	<i>cāro</i> (f.),	<i>flesh.</i>
<i>lintēr</i> (m.),	<i>a cherry.</i> [ <i>ther.</i> ]	<i>ventēr</i> (m.),	<i>the belly.</i>

3. In monosyllabic words, the stems of which end in two consonants : *as*, *urbs*, *urb-ium* ; *arx*, *arc-ium* ; *mons*, *mont-ium*. so also *os* (*Stem oss*, *n.*, *a bone*, *Gen. Pl.* *oss-ium* ; *as* (*Stem ass*, *m.*, *a small coin*, *Gen. Pl.* *ass-ium*).

4. Also in the following monosyllabic words in which the stem ends in a single consonant :

*Lis*, *glis*, and *vīs*,  
*Mūs*, *mās*, and *nix*,  
 Add *faux* and *strix*.

<i>lis</i> ( <i>litium</i> ), f.	<i>a lawsuit.</i>	<i>mās</i> ( <i>mārium</i> ),	<i>a male.</i>
<i>glis</i> ( <i>glirium</i> ), m.	<i>a dormouse.</i>	<i>nix</i> ( <i>nĭvium</i> ), f.	<i>snow.</i>
<i>vīs</i> ( <i>virium</i> ), f.	<i>force.</i>	<i>faux</i> ( <i>faucium</i> ), f.	<i>the throat.</i>
<i>mūs</i> ( <i>mūrium</i> ), m.	<i>a mouse.</i>	<i>strix</i> ( <i>strĭgium</i> ), f.	<i>an owl.</i>

*Obs.* The *Nom.* *faux* is not used. See § 52, *Obs.* 3.

5. In all neuter substantives which have the *Nom. Pl.* in *ia* : *as*, *mārium* ; *ānīmālium* ; *calcārium*.

§ 36. *Genitive Plural in ĭum (rarely um).*

The *Gen. Plur.* generally ends in *ĭum*, rarely in *um* :

1. In words of more than one syllable, the *Nom. Sing.* of which

ends in *ns*: as, *cliens* (*clientium*, rarely *clientum*), a *client*; *adulescens* (*adulescentium*, rarely *adulescentum*), a *young man*; *prudens* (*prudantium*, rarely *prudantum*), *prudent*.

2. In national names: as, *Quiris* (*Quiritium*), a *Roman*; *Arpinās* (*Arpinātium*), a *native of Arpinum*. Also *Pēnātēs* (*Pēnātium*), the *household gods*; *optimātēs* (*optimātium*), the *nobles*.

### § 37. Accusative Plural in *is* and *ēs*.

The *Acc. Plur.* of most masculine and feminine nouns, the *Gen. Pl.* of which ends in *ium*, has *is* as well as *ēs* (old form *eis*): as, *hostis* and *hostēs*; *artis* and *artēs*; *praesentis* and *praesentēs*.

*Obs.* The words which have in the *Sing.* the case-endings *im* and *i*, and in the *Plural* the case-endings *ia*, *ium*, and *is*, generally have Stems ending in *i*. The cases are thus formed according to the analogy of words of other declensions of which the Stems end in a vowel: as,

<i>Acc. Sing.</i>	<i>puppi-m</i>	like	<i>gradu-m</i> ;
<i>Abl. Sing.</i>	<i>puppi</i>	„	<i>gradu</i> ;
<i>Nom. Pl.</i>	<i>mari-ī</i>	„	<i>genu-ī</i> ;
<i>Gen. Pl.</i>	<i>mari-um</i>	„	<i>genu-um</i> ;
<i>Acc. Pl.</i>	<i>puppi-s</i>	„	<i>manū-s</i> .

But many such words follow the analogy of words of the third declension, the Stems of which end in a consonant: thus we have also the forms *puppem*, *puppē*, *puppēs*, &c. The *i* of the Stem is frequently dropped in the *Nom. Sing.*: see § 29, *Obs.* 2.

## CHAPTER VIII.—GREEK SUBSTANTIVES OF THE THIRD DECLENSION.

### § 38. Nominative Singular.

The *Nom. Sing.* of many Proper Names ends in the Greek *ων* (*on*) as well as the Latin *ō*: as, *Agāmemnōn*, rarely *Agāmemnō*.

### § 39. Genitive Singular.

1. The *Gen. Sing.* of Proper Names in *es* ends in *i* more frequently than in *is*: as, *Nom. Pēriclēs*, *Gen. Pēricl-i* and *Pēricl-is*.

2. The *Gen. Sing.* of Proper Names in the poets frequently ends in the Greek *ος* (*os*); instead of in the Latin *s*: as, *Thētis*, *Gen. Thētid-ος*; *Pallās*, *Gen. Pallād-ος*.

3. The *Gen. Sing.* of Feminine Names in *ō* generally ends in the Greek *ως* (*os*); instead of in the Latin *onis*: as, *Sapphō*, *Gen. Sapphūs*. The *Dat.*, *Acc.*, and *Abl.* are usually *Sapphō*, rarely *Sapphōn-i*, *-em*, *-ē*.

### § 40. Accusative Singular.

1. The *Acc. Sing.* frequently ends in the Greek *ᾱ* instead of in the Latin *em*: as, *ᾱēr*, *Acc. ᾱēr-ᾱ*; *Agāmemnōn*, *Acc. Agāmemnōn-ᾱ*.

2. The *Acc. Sing.* of Substantives in *is* (with the Stem in *i*) ends either in *im* or in the Greek *in* (*ιν*): as, *poësis*, *Acc.* *poësim* and *poësin*; *Chärybdīs*, *Acc.* *Chärybdim* and *Chärybdin*.

3. The *Acc. Sing.* of Proper Names in *es* frequently ends in the Greek *ēn* *ην*, which is the *Acc.* of the first Greek Declension: as, *Aeschīnēs*, *Acc.* *Aeschīnēn* and *Aeschīnem*.

### § 41. Vocative Singular.

1. The *Voc. Sing.* of Substantives in *is*, *ys* (*υσ*), *eus* (*ευς*), and *as* (*Gen. antis*), ends, as in Greek, without *s*: as, *Phyllīs*, *Voc.* *Phyllī*; *Cōtys*, *Voc.* *Cōtŷ*; *Orpheus*, *Voc.* *Orpheu* (see § 20; *Calchās*, *Voc.* *Calchā*.

2. The *Voc. Sing.* of Proper Names in *ēs*, *Gen. īs*, ends in *ēs*, *ēs*, and *ē*: as *Sōcrātēs*, *Sōcrātēs*, and *Sōcrātē*.

### § 42. Nominative Plural.

The *Nom. Plur.* in the poets frequently ends in the Greek *ēs* (*ες*) instead of in the Latin *ēs*: as, *Arcādēs*.

### § 43. Genitive Plural.

The *Gen. Plur.* in *ōn* (*ων*) is found in the titles of books only: as, *Mētāmorphōseōn libri*.

### § 44. Accusative Plural.

The *Acc. Plur.* in the poets frequently ends in the Greek *ās* instead of in the Latin *ēs*: as, *Arcād-ās*.

### § 45. Dative and Ablative Plural.

The *Dat.* and *Abl. Plur.* of Greek Substantives in *ma*, *Gen. mātis*, frequently end in *īs* 'according to the Second Declension' instead of in *ībūs*: as, *poēmāt-īs* from *poēmā* *ποίημα*.

#### Examples.

	Sing.		Sing.
<i>Nom.</i>	<i>Pēriclēs</i>		<i>Pallas</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>Pēriclīs</i> , <i>Pēriclī</i>		<i>Pallādīs</i> , <i>Pallādos</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>Pēricli</i>		<i>Pallādī</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>Pēriclem</i> , <i>Pēricleā</i>		<i>Pallādem</i> , <i>Pallādē</i>
<i>Voc.</i>	<i>Pēriclē</i> s, <i>Pēriclē</i> s, <i>Pēriclē</i>		<i>Pallas</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>Pēriclē</i> .		<i>Pallādē</i> .
<i>Nom.</i>	<i>Pārīs</i>		<i>Sapphō</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>Pāridīs</i> , <i>Pāridōs</i>		<i>Sapphūs</i> , <i>Sapphōn</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>Pāridī</i>		<i>Sapphō</i> , <i>Sapphōnī</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>Pāridem</i> , <i>Pāridā</i> , <i>Pārin</i>		<i>Sapphō</i> , <i>Sapphōnem</i>
<i>Voc.</i>	<i>Parī</i>		<i>Sapphō</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>Paridē</i> .		<i>Sapphōnē</i> .

Sing.	Plur.
Nom. chlāmýs, <i>a cloak.</i>	chlāmýdēs or -ēs
Gen. chlāmýdis, chlāmýdōs	chlāmýdum
Dat. chlāmýdi	chlāmýdibūs
Acc. chlāmýdem, chlāmýdā	chlāmýdēs, chlāmýdās
Abl. chlāmýdē.	chlāmýdibūs.

## CHAPTER IX.—THE FOURTH OR U DECLENSION.

§ 46. The Nominative Singular of Masculine and Feminine Substantives of the Fourth Declension ends in *ūs*, and of Neuter Substantives in *u*.

Sing.	1.	Plur.
Nom. Grād-ūs, <i>a step</i>	Grād-ūs,	<i>steps</i>
Gen. Grād-ūs, <i>of a step</i>	Grād-uum,	<i>of steps</i>
Dat. Grād-ūi, <i>to or for a step</i>	Grād-ībūs,	<i>to or for steps</i>
Acc. Grād-um, <i>a step</i>	Grād-ūs,	<i>steps</i>
Voc. Grād-ūs, <i>O step</i> [ <i>step.</i> ]	Grād-ūs,	<i>O steps</i>
Abl. Grād-ū, <i>by, with, or from a</i>	Grād-ībūs,	<i>by, with, or from steps.</i>

Sing.	2.	Plur.
Nom. Gēn-u, <i>a knee</i>	Gēn-nā,	<i>knees</i>
Gen. Gēn-ūs, <i>of a knee</i>	Gēn-uum,	<i>of knees</i>
Dat. Gēn-ū, <i>to or for a knee</i>	Gēn-ībūs,	<i>to or for knees</i>
Acc. Gēn-u, <i>a knee</i>	Gēn-ūā,	<i>knees</i>
Voc. Gēn-u, <i>O knee</i> [ <i>knee.</i> ]	Gēn-ūā,	<i>O knees</i>
Abl. Gēn-ū, <i>by, with, or from a</i>	Gēn-ībūs,	<i>by, with, or from knees.</i>

GENDER.—Substantives in *us* of the Fourth Declension are masculine, with the exception of the names of trees and the words mentioned below.

## Examples for Declension.

## Masculine.

fructus, <i>fruit.</i>	mōtus, <i>a movement.</i>	passus, <i>a pace.</i>
currus, <i>a chariot.</i>	ūsus, <i>a use.</i>	cursus, <i>a running.</i>
sensus, <i>a sense.</i>	cāsus, <i>a fall.</i>	cantus, <i>a song.</i>

## Feminine.

mānus, <i>a hand.</i>	nūrus,	<i>a daughter-in-law.</i>
tribus, <i>a tribe (a division of the</i>	socrus,	<i>a mother-in-law.</i>
acus, <i>a needle. [Roman people.]</i>	ānus,	<i>an old-woman.</i>
porticus, <i>a portico.</i>	īdus (pl.),	<i>the Ides (a division of the</i>
dōmus, <i>a house.</i>		<i>Roman month).</i>

*Neuter.*

cornu, a horn. | vĕru, a spit.

*Obs. 1.* The Stems of all Substantives of the Fourth Declension end in *u*.*Obs. 2.* The *Gen. Sing.* *ūs* is a contraction of *uīs* : as, *grādūs* from *grāduīs*.*Obs. 3.* The *Dat. Sing.* *uī* is often contracted into *ū* : as, *grāduī*, *grādū*.*Obs. 4.* The *Dat.* and *Abl. Plur.* of the following words end in *ībūs*, but *portus* and *vĕru* have also *ībūs* :—

quercus, also *ācus*,  
 arcus, *vĕru*, *lācus*,  
 spēcus, *trībus*, *artus*,  
 portus, *pĕcu*, *partus*.

quercus ( <i>f.</i> ), an oak.	<i>lācus</i> ( <i>m.</i> ), a lake, tank. <i>spēcus</i> ( <i>m. f.</i> & <i>n.</i> ) a cave. <i>trībus</i> ( <i>f.</i> ), a tribe.	<i>artus</i> ( <i>m.</i> ), a joint.
<i>ācus</i> ( <i>f.</i> ), a needle.		<i>portus</i> ( <i>m.</i> ), a harbour.
<i>arcus</i> ( <i>m.</i> ), a bow.		<i>pĕcu</i> ( <i>n.</i> ), cattle.
<i>vĕru</i> ( <i>n.</i> ), a spit.		<i>partus</i> ( <i>m.</i> ), a birth.

*Obs. 5.* *Dōmus*, a house, belongs partly to the Second, partly to the Fourth Declension.

Sing.	Plur.
<i>Nom.</i> <i>Dōm-ūs</i>	<i>Dōm-ūs</i>
<i>Gen.</i> <i>Dōm-ūs</i>	<i>Dōm-ūum</i> or <i>dōm-ōrum</i>
<i>Dat.</i> <i>Dōm-uī</i>	<i>Dōm-ībūs</i>
<i>Acc.</i> <i>Dōm-um</i>	<i>Dōm-ōs</i> ( <i>rarely dōm-ūs</i> )
<i>Voc.</i> <i>Dōm-ūs</i>	<i>Dōm-ūs</i>
<i>Abl.</i> <i>Dōm-ō</i>	<i>Dōm-ībūs</i> .

Hence the memorial line :

Tollē mĕ, mū, mī, mīs,  
 SI dēclīnārē dōmus vīs.

*i. e.* leave out the endings *mĕ, mū, mī, mīs*, if you wish to decline *dōmūs*.*Dōmī* is used only with the meaning *at home*, and is probably a dative.CHAPTER X.—THE FIFTH OR **E** DECLENSION.§ 47. The Nominative Singular of Substantives of the Fifth Declension ends in *ēs*.

Sing.	Plur.
<i>Nom.</i> <i>Dī-ēs</i> , a day	<i>Dī-ēs</i> , days
<i>Gen.</i> <i>Dī-ēī</i> , of a day	<i>Dī-ērum</i> , of days
<i>Dat.</i> <i>Dī-ēī</i> , to or for a day	<i>Dī-ēbūs</i> , to or for days
<i>Acc.</i> <i>Dī-em</i> , a day	<i>Dī-ēs</i> , days
<i>Voc.</i> <i>Dī-ēs</i> , O day [day.]	<i>Dī-ēs</i> , O days
<i>Abl.</i> <i>Dī-ē</i> , by, with, or from a	<i>Dī-ēbūs</i> , by, with, or from days.

**GENDER.**—Substantives of the Fifth Declension are Feminine : excepting *dies*, which in the Singular is sometimes Masculine and sometimes Feminine, and in the Plural always Masculine : also *merīdies* (*m.*), *noon*, which is a compound of *dies*.

## Examples for Declension.

rēs, a thing.	effigiēs, a likeness.	spēciēs, appearance.
āciēs, a point.	fidēs, faith.	spēs, hope.
faciēs, a face.	sēriēs, a series.	mēridies (m.), noon.

Obs. 1. The Stems of all Substantives of the Fifth Declension end in *e*.

Obs. 2. In the *Gen.* and *Dat. Sing.* the *e* in *eī* is long after a vowel, but short after a consonant: as, dī-eī, faci-eī; but, rēī, fidēī.

Obs. 3. In the *Gen.* and *Dat. Sing.* the *ei* is sometimes contracted into *ē*: as, diē, fidē.

Obs. 4. Rēs and diēs are the only words of this Declension which have a complete Plural. The words āciēs, faciēs, effigiēs, sēriēs, spēciēs, and spēs occur in the Plural only in the *Nom.*, *Acc.* and *Voc.* cases. No other words of the Declension have any Plural.

## CHAPTER XI.—IRREGULAR SUBSTANTIVES.

§ 48. Some Substantives are not declined: as, fās, *permitted by divine law*; nēfās, *opposed to divine law*; nīlīl, *nothing*; instār, *resemblance*.

§ 49. Some Substantives have no Plural: as, iustitia, *justice*; famēs, *hunger*; aurum, *gold*.

§ 50. Some Substantives have no Singular: as, nuptiae, *a marriage*; feriae, *holidays*; tēbrae, *darkness*; libērī, *children*; arma, *arms*.

§ 51. Some Substantives have a different meaning in the Singular and the Plural: as,

Sing.		Plur.	
Aedēs,	a temple;	aedēs,	a house.
Āqua,	water;	āquae,	medicinal springs.
Auxilium,	help;	auxilia,	auxiliary forces.
Carcēr,	a prison;	carcērēs,	a starting-place.
Castrum,	a fort;	castrā,	a camp.
Cōmītiū,	the place of Assembly;	Cōmītiā,	the Assembly itself.
Cōpia,	plenty;	cōpiae,	forces.
Fortūna,	fortune;	fortūnae,	the gifts of fortune,
Grātia,	favour;	grātiae,	thanks. [property.
Impēdimentum,	a hindrance;	impēdimentā,	baggage.
Littera,	a letter of the alphabet;	litterae,	an epistle.
Lūdus,	play, school; [bet;	lūdī,	public games.
Ōpēra,	exertion;	ōpērae,	workmen.
Ōpis (Gen.),	help;	ōpēs,	power, wealth.
Pars,	a portion;	partes,	a part in a play.
Rostrum,	a beak;	rostrā,	the platform for speakers in the Roman forum (adorned with the beaks of ships,
Tābula,	a board, picture.	tābulae,	writing tablets.

## § 52. Some Substantives want one or more Cases.

1. The following Substantives have no Nominative Singular :

disca, discipuli (f.),	a feast.
ditto, ditionis (f.),	dominion.
frux, frugis (f.),	fruit.
interitio, interitionis (f.),	destruction.

2. The following Substantives have only certain cases :

- fora (f.), *chance*. Only Nom. and Abl. Sing. fortē (without Plural).  
 (opa) opus (f.), *help*. Only Gen., Acc., Abl., Sing. opus, opem, opē. Full Plural.  
 (prex, pŕecl) (f.), *prayer*. Only Dat., Acc., and Abl. Sing. Full Plural.  
 (victa), *change*. Only Gen., Acc., Abl. Sing. victa, vicem, vicē. Full Plural, except Gen.  
 vīa (f.), *force*. Only Nom., Acc., Abl. Sing. vīa, vim, vī. Full Plural  
 virtus, virtutem, virtutis, virtus, virtus, virtutis.

3. The following Substantives have in the Singular the Ablative only, but a full Plural :—

ambāgē (f.), *a circuit*. | faucē (f.), *the throat*. | verbōrē (n.), *a stripe*.

4. One word has only the Ablative Singular, and no Plural :—spontē (f.), *by inclination*.

§ 53. Some Substantives are *Heteroclita*, that is, have a two-fold Declension.

1. In the Second Declension some Substantives end in *us* and *um* : *as*, *callus* and *callum*, *hardened skin* ; *commentarius* and *commentarium*, *a note-book*.
2. Some Substantives fluctuate between the First and Second Declensions : *as*, *menda* and *mendum*, *a fault*. *Vespēr* (also *vespēra*), *the evening*, has, according to the Second Declension, the Acc. *vespērum*, but the Abl. usually according to the Third Declension, *vespērē*, *vespēri*.
3. Some Substantives fluctuate between the First and Fifth Declensions : *as*, *barbaria* and *barbariēs*, *barbarism* ; *mollitia* and *mollitiēs*, *softness* ; *luxuria* and *luxuriēs*, *luxury* ; *materia* and *materiēs*, *timber*.
4. Some Substantives fluctuate between the Second and Fourth Declensions : *as*, *dōmus*, *a house* (see § 46, Obs. 5) ; *laurus*, *a bay-tree* ; *cūpressus*, *a cypress* ; *ficus*, *a fig-tree* ; *pīnus*, *a pine-tree* ; *ēventus* (4) and *ēventum*, *an occurrence* ; *suggestō* (4) and *suggestum*, *a platform for speakers*.
5. Some Substantives fluctuate between the Third and Fifth Declensions : *as*, *plebs*, *plēbis*, and *plēbēs*, *plēbēi*, *the commonalty* ; *rēquies*, *rēquīetis* and *rēquīet*, *rest*.
6. *Jūgērā*, *an acre*, is of the Second Declension in the Sing., but of the Third in the Plur. : *as*, *jūgērā*, *jūgērū*, *jūgērībūs*. *Vās*, *vāsīs*, *a vessel*, is of the Third Declension in the Sing., but of the Second in the Plural : *as*, *vāē*, *vāōrū*, *vāōis*.

§ 54. Some Substantives are *Heterogēnēā*, that is, have a different gender in the Singular and the Plural.

Sing.		Plur.
jocus (m.),	a joke.	jocī (m.), jocā (n.)
locus (m.),	a place.	locī (m.), locā (n.)
carbāsus (f.),	fine linen.	carbāsā (n.), sails.
coelum (n.),	heaven.	coeli (m.) (rare).

	Sing.		Plur.
frēnum (n.),	<i>a bit.</i>	frēnī (m.), frēnā (n.)	
Tartārus (m.),	<i>the infernal regions.</i>	Tartārā (n.)	
dīēs,*	<i>a day.</i>	dīēs (m.)	
rastrum (n.),	<i>a rake.</i>	rastrī (m.), rastrā (n.)	

*Obs.* Dies is feminine in the singular when a set day or period of time is indicated.

\* See § 47, note.

## CHAPTER XII.—DECLENSION OF ADJECTIVES.

§ 55. Adjectives are either of *Three Terminations* (one for each gender); of *Two Terminations* (one for the Masculine and Feminine, and the other for the Neuter); or of *One Termination* (for all genders).

§ 56. I. ADJECTIVES OF THREE TERMINATIONS ARE DIVIDED INTO TWO CLASSES.

Adjectives of the first class end in ūs, ā, um, or ěr, ā, um, and are declined in the Masculine and Neuter like Substantives of the Second Declension, and in the Feminine like Substantives of the First Declension: as, bōnūs, bōnā, bōnum, *good*; nīgĕr, nigrā, nigrum, *black*; tĕnĕr, tĕnĕrā, tĕnĕrum, *tender*.

	Sing.			1.	Plur.		
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.	
Nom.	Bōn-ūs	bōn-ā	bōn-um	Bōn-ī	bōn-ae	bōn-ā	
Gen.	Bōn-ī	bōn-ae	bōn-ī	Bōn-ōrum	bōn-ārum	bōn-ōrum	
Dat.	Bōn-ō	bōn-ae	bōn-ō	Bōn-īs	bōn-īs	bōn-īs	
Acc.	Bōn-um	bōn-am	bōn-um	Bōn-ōs	bōn-ās	bōn-ā	
Voc.	Bōn-ĕ	bōn-ā	bōn-um	Bōn-ī	bōn-ae	bōn-ā	
Abl.	Bōn-ō	bōn-ā	bōn-ō	Bōn-īs	bōn-īs	bōn-īs	

	Sing.			2.	Plur.		
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.	
Nom.	Nīgĕr	nigr-ā	nigr-um	Nigr-ī	nigr-ae	nigr-ā	
Gen.	Nigr-ī	nigr-ae	nigr-ī	Nigr-ōrum	nigr-ārum	nigr-ōrum	
Dat.	Nigr-ō	nigr-ae	nigr-ō	Nigr-īs	nigr-īs	nigr-īs	
Acc.	Nigr-um	nigr-am	nigr-um	Nigr-ōs	nigr-ās	nigr-ā	
Voc.	Nigr-ĕr	nigr-ā	nigr-um	Nigr-ī	nigr-ae	nigr-ā	
Abl.	Nigr-ō	nigr-ā	nigr-ō	Nigr-īs	nigr-īs	nigr-īs	



	Sing.			3.	Plur.		
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.	
<i>Nom.</i>	Těněr	těněr-ă	těněr-um	Těněr-i	těněr-ae	těněr-ă	
<i>Gen.</i>	Těněr-i	těněr-ae	těněr-i	Těněr-orum	těněr-ărum	těněr-orum	
<i>Dat.</i>	Těněr-ō	těněr-ae	těněr-ō	Těněr-is	těněr-is	těněr-is	
<i>Acc.</i>	Těněr-um	těněr-am	těněr-um	Těněr-ōs	těněr-ās	těněr-ă	
<i>Voc.</i>	Těněr	těněr-ă	těněr-um	Těněr-i	těněr-ae	těněr-ă	
<i>Abl.</i>	Těněr-ō	těněr-ă	těněr-ō	Těněr-is	těněr-is	těněr-is	

## Examples for Declension.

mălus,	a,	um,	bad.	sűperbus,	a,	um,	proud.
cărus,	a,	um,	dear.	săcer,	cra,	rum,	sacred.
clărus,	a,	um,	bright.	aeger,	gra,	rum,	sick.
plěous,	a,	um,	full.	măcer,	cra,	rum,	lean.
albus,	a,	um,	white.	pulcher,	chra,	rum,	beautiful.
magnus,	a,	um,	great.	rűber,	bra,	rum,	red.
parvus,	a,	um,	little.	sűnister,	tra,	rum,	left.

*Obs. 1.* The only Adjectives declined like *těněr* are the following:—

asper, ăra, ărum,	rough.	liber, ăra, ărum,	free.
lăcer, ăra, ărum,	torn.	mlser, ăra, ărum,	wretched.
prosper, ăra, ărum,	prosperous.		

With all Adjectives in *fer* and *ger*: as,

lănġer, ăra, ărum,	wool-bearing.	ŏpġfer, ăra, ărum,	help-bringing.
--------------------	---------------	--------------------	----------------

All other Adjectives in *ěr* drop the *ě*, and are declined like *nġer*.

*Dextěr* is declined in both ways, *dextěră* and *dextră*, *dextěrurum* and *dextrum*.

*Obs. 2.* There is one Adjective in *űr*, *sătűr*, *sătűră*, *sătűrum*, *full of food*, *sated*.

§ 57. Irregular Declension in *us*, *a*, *um*, and *er*, *a*, *um*.

The following Adjectives and Pronouns,

űnűs, sűlűs, tűtűs, űllűs,  
űtěr, neutěr, altěr, nullűs,  
and ălűűs,

have in the Genitive Sing. *űus* and in the Dative *ű*. For example—

	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
<i>Nom.</i>	Ull-űs	ull-ă	ull-um	űt-ěr	utr-ă	utr-um
<i>Gen.</i>	Ull-űűs			Utr-űűs		
<i>Dat.</i>	Ull-ű			Utr-ű		
<i>Acc.</i>	Ull-um	ull-am	ull-um	Utr-um	utr-am	utr-um
<i>Abl.</i>	Ull-ű	ull-ă	ull-ű	Utr-ű	utr-ă	utr-ű

űnus, one.	űllus, any.	neuter, neither of two.
sűlus, alone.	nullus, none.	alter, one of two.
sűűs, whole.	űtěr, which of two.	ălűűs, one of any number, another.

*Obs. 1.* In prose the *ű* in the Gen. *űus* is always long, except in *altěrűűs*. The Gen. *ălűűs* is a contraction of *ălű-űűs*, and therefore always long. In the other words the *ű* in the Gen. *űus* is short as well as long in poetry.

*Obs. 2.* The compounds of *űtěr* are declined in the same way: as, *űtěrquű*, *űtěrűűs*, *űtěrűűbűt*, *űtěrűűcunquű*: Gen. *utriusque*, *utriusűűs*, etc.

§ 58. Adjectives of Three Terminations of the second class end in *er, ris, re*. and are declined like Substantives of the Third Declension. They have three terminations in the Nominative and Vocative Singular only: in all other cases they have only two terminations: as, *ācēr, ācrīs, ācrē, sharp*.

	Sing.			Plur.	
	M.	F.	N.	M. and F.	N.
Nom.	Ācēr	ācrīs	ācrē	Ācrēs	ācrīā
Gen.	Ācrīs		—	Ācrīum	—
Dat.	Ācrī		—	Ācrībūs	—
Acc.	Ācrem		ācrē	Ācrēs	ācrīā
Voc.	Ācēr	ācrīs	ācrē	Ācrēs	ācrīā
Abl.	Ācrī		—	Ācrībūs	—

Obs. The termination *er* is sometimes, but very rarely, found in the *Nom. Sing. Fem.*

There are only thirteen Adjectives of this kind:

*ācer, ālācer, campester,*  
*cēler, cēlēber, ēquester,*  
*pūter, vōlūcer, terrester,*  
*pāluster, pēdester,*  
*sālūber, silvester.*

<i>ālācer,</i>	<i>lively.</i>	<i>vōlūcer,</i>	<i>winged.</i>
<i>campester,</i>	<i>level.</i>	<i>terrester,</i>	<i>pertaining to the earth.</i>
<i>cēler,</i>	<i>quick.</i>	<i>pāluster,</i>	<i>marshy.</i>
<i>cēlēber,</i>	<i>crowded.</i>	<i>pēdester,</i>	<i>pedestrian.</i>
<i>ēquester,</i>	<i>equestrian.</i>	<i>sālūber,</i>	<i>healthful.</i>
<i>pūter,</i>	<i>rotten.</i>	<i>silvester,</i>	<i>woody.</i>

Obs. 1. *Cēlēr, cēlērīs, cēlērē* is the only Adj. of this class that keeps the *e* before the *r*. *Cēlēr* has *um*, not *ium*, in the Gen. Pl.

Obs. 2. Sometimes these Adjectives have also the termination *ris* in the *Nom. Sing. Masc.* *Terrestris* is the usual form for both genders.

§ 59. II. ADJECTIVES OF TWO TERMINATIONS are declined like Substantives of the Third Declension: as, *tristīs, tristē, sad*; *altior, altius, higher* (§ 63).

	Sing.		Plur.	
	M. and F.	N.	M. and F.	N.
Nom.	Trist-īs	trist-ē	Trist-ēs	trist-iā
Gen.	Trist-īs	—	Trist-ium	—
Dat.	Trist-i	—	Trist-ībūs	—
Acc.	Trist-em	trist-ē	Trist-ēs	trist-iā
Voc.	Trist-īs	trist-ē	Trist-ēs	trist-iā
Abl.	Trist-i	—	Trist-ībūs	—

#### Examples for Declension.

<i>lēvis,</i>	<i>light.</i>	<i>brēvis,</i>	<i>short.</i>	<i>mollis,</i>	<i>soft.</i>
<i>lōvis,</i>	<i>smooth.</i>	<i>fortis,</i>	<i>brave.</i>	<i>fācilis,</i>	<i>easy.</i>
<i>grāvis,</i>	<i>heavy.</i>	<i>turpis,</i>	<i>disgraceful.</i>	<i>vīlis,</i>	<i>cheap.</i>
<i>dulcis.</i>	<i>sweet.</i>	<i>sīmilis,</i>	<i>like.</i>	<i>hūmilis,</i>	<i>low.</i>

§ 60. III. ADJECTIVES OF ONE TERMINATION are declined like Substantives of the Third Declension: as, *fēlix*, *fortunate*; *prūdēns*, *prudent*.

	Sing.	1.	Plur.	
	M. and F.	N.	M. and F.	N.
Nom.	Fēlix	fēlix	Fēlic-ēs	fēlic-iā
Gen.	Fēlic-īs	—	Fēlic-ium	—
Dat.	Fēlic-ī	—	Fēlic-ībūs	—
Acc.	Fēlic-em	fēlix	Fēlic-ēs	fēlic-iā
Voc.	Fēlix	—	Fēlic-ēs	fēlic-iā
Abl.	Fēlic-i or ē	—	Fēlic-ībūs	—

	Sing.	2.	Plur.	
	M. and F.	N.	M. and F.	N.
Nom.	Prūdēns	prūdēns	Prūdēt-ēs	prūdēt-iā
Gen.	Prūdēt-īs	—	Prūdēt-ium	—
Dat.	Prūdēt-ī	—	Prūdēt-ībūs	—
Acc.	Prūdēt-em	prūdēns	Prūdēt-ēs	prūdēt-iā
Voc.	Prūdēns	—	Prūdēt-ēs	prūdēt-iā
Abl.	Prūdēt-ī or ē	—	Prūdēt-ībūs	—

#### Examples for Declension.

andax,	ācis,	bold.	pōtēns,	entis,	powerful.
vērax,	ācis,	truthful.	ingēns,	entis,	huge.
lōquax,	ācis,	talkative.	diligēns,	entis,	diligent.
vēlox,	ōcis,	swift.	sāplēns,	entis,	wise.
fārox,	ōcis,	haughty.	præsens,	entis,	present.

Obs. 1. On the Abl. Sing., see §§ 32, 33. On the Nom. Plur. Neuter in *i-*, see § 34. On the Gen. Plur. in *ium*, see §§ 35, 36.

Obs. 2. *Divēs*, *divītis*, *rich*, has a contracted form: Nom. *dīs*, *dītē*; Gen. *dīt-īs*, &c.; Nom. Plur. Neut. *dītā*.

Obs. 3. Some Adjectives are indeclinable: as, *nēquam*, *worthless*; *frūgī*, *honest* (properly the Dative of a Substantive): as, *frūgī hūmō*, *frūgī cōmīnem*.

## CHAPTER XIII.—COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES.

§ 61. Adjectives have three forms, which are usually called the Positive, Comparative, and Superlative Degrees: as,

Positive.	Comparative.	Superlative.
altūs, <i>high</i> .	altiōr, <i>higher</i> .	altissimūs, <i>highest</i> .

§ 62. The Comparative is formed by adding *iōr*, and the Superlative by adding *issimūs*. to the Stem, any final vowel of which is dropped: as

	<i>Posit.</i>		<i>Comp.</i>	<i>Sup.</i>
	Nom. Stem.			
altūs,	alto,	high,	alt-iōr,	alt-issīmūs.
lēvis,	lēvi,	light,	lēv-iōr,	lēv-issīmūs.
fēlix,	fēlic,	fortunate,	fēlic-iōr,	fēlic-issīmūs.
prūdēns,	prūdēt,	prudent,	prūdēt-iōr,	prūdēt-issīmūs.

§ 63. The Comparative is an Adjective of Two Terminations, having *ior* in the Nom. Sing. of the Masculine and Feminine, and *ius* in that of the Neuter. It is declined as follows :

	Sing.		Plur.	
	M. and F.	N.	M. and F.	N.
<i>Nom.</i>	Altīōr	altiūs	Altīōr-ēs	altiōr-ā
<i>Gen.</i>	Altīōr-īs	—	Altīōr-um	—
<i>Dat.</i>	Altīōr-ī	—	Altīōr-ībūs	—
<i>Acc.</i>	Altīōr-em	altiūs	Altīōr-ēs	altiōr-ā
<i>Voc.</i>	Altīōr	altiūs	Altīōr-ēs	altiōr-ā
<i>Abl.</i>	Altīōr-ē rarely -ī	—	Altīōr-ībūs	—

§ 64. The Superlative is an Adjective of Three Terminations, *us, a, um*: *as, altissimūs, altissimā, altissimum.*

### § 65. EXCEPTIONS.

I. Adjectives ending in *er* form the Superlative in *rīmūs*: *as,*

<i>Posit.</i>		<i>Comp.</i>	<i>Sup.</i>
pulchēr,	beautiful,	pulchr-iōr,	pulchr-rīmūs.
libēr,	free,	libēr-iōr,	liber-rīmūs.
ācēr,	sharp,	ācr-iōr,	ācer-rīmūs.
cēlēr,	swift,	cēlēr-iōr,	cēler-rīmūs.

Also *vētūs* (*Gen. vētēr-is*), *old*, has a Superlative, *vēter-rīmūs*.

II. The following six Adjectives ending in *ilis* form their Superlative in *līmūs*: *as,*

<i>Posit.</i>		<i>Comp.</i>	<i>Sup.</i>
fācīlis,	easy,	fācil-iōr,	fācil-līmūs.
difficīlis,	difficult,	difficīl-iōr,	difficil-līmūs.
sīmilis,	like,	sīmil-iōr,	sīmil-līmūs.
dissīmilis,	unlike,	dissīmil-iōr,	dissīmil-līmūs.
grācilis,	thin,	grācil-iōr,	grācil-līmūs.
hūmilis,	low,	hūmil-iōr,	hūmil-līmūs.

*Obs.* The substitution of *rimus* and *limus* for *simus* in these Superlatives is owing to the assimilation of *s* to the preceding liquids *r* and *l*.

III. Adjectives ending in *-dīcūs, -fīcūs, and -vōlūs* (derived from the verbs *dīco, fācio, and vōlo*) form their Comparatives in *entiōr*, and their Superlatives in *entissimūs* (as if from Positives ending in *ens*): *as,*

<i>Posit.</i>		<i>Comp.</i>	<i>Sup.</i>
mālêdicûs,	slandorous,	mālêdicentiôr,	mālêdicentissimûs.
bênêficûs,	beneficent,	bênêficentiôr,	bênêficentissimûs.
bênêvôlûs,	benevolent,	bênêvôlentiôr,	bênêvôlentissimûs.

*Obs.* These Comparatives and Superlatives are formed as from the Participles, *dicens*, saying; *faciens*, doing; *volens*, wishing.

IV. Adjectives which have a vowel before the termination *us*, usually form the Comparative by prefixing the Adverb *māgīs*, more, and the Superlative by prefixing the Adverb *maximē*, most: as, *noxiûs*, hurtful, *māgīs noxiûs*, more hurtful, *maximē noxiûs*, most hurtful.

*Obs.* Adjectives ending in *quus* form the *Comp.* and *Sup.* regularly, since the *u* in *qu* is not regarded as a vowel: as, *antiquûs*, ancient, *antiquiôr*, more ancient, *antiquissimûs*, most ancient.

## § 66. IRREGULAR COMPARISON.

Some Adjectives are compared irregularly: as,

<i>Posit.</i>		<i>Comp.</i>	<i>Sup.</i>
bônûs,	good,	mêliôr,	optimûs
mālûs,	bad,	pējôr.	pessimûs
magnûs,	great,	mājôr,	maximûs
parvûs,	small,	mînôr,	mînimûs
multûs,	much,	plûs (pl. plures, plura),	plûrimûs
nêquam,	worthless,	nêquiôr,	nêquissimûs
frûgi (indecl.)	frugal,	frûgâlior,	frûgâlissimûs

*Obs. 1.* Sometimes one or more of the Degrees of Comparison are wanting: as,

<i>Posit.</i>	<i>Comp.</i>	<i>Sup.</i>
jûvênûs, young,	jûniôr	(mînimûs natu)
sênex, old,	sêniôr	(maximûs natu)
—	dêtêriôr, worse,	dêtêrimûs
—	ôciôr, swifter,	ôcissimûs
—	priôr, former,	primûs, first
nôvûs, new,	—	nôvissimûs.

*Obs. 2.* Some Comparatives and Superlatives, expressing relations of time and place, either have no Positive (the corresponding Preposition taking its place), or the Positive has a different meaning: as,

<i>Posit.</i>	<i>Comp.</i>	<i>Sup.</i>
(citri, on this side),	citêriôr, more on this side,	citimûs, most on this side.
(ultri, on the farther side),	ultêriôr, farther,	ultimûs, farthest.
(extri, on the outside, without),	extêriôr, outer,	extrêmûs, outermost.

*Note.*—The Adjective *extêri*, ae, *â*, signifies foreign.

(infrâ, below), infêriôr, lower, infimûs (imûs), lowest.

*Note.*—*Infêrus* is used only in *Infêrum Mârê*, the Lower Sea, i. e. the sea south and west of Italy, and in the Plural *Infêri*, ae, *â*, belonging to the lower world.

<i>Posit.</i>	<i>Comp.</i>	<i>Sup.</i>
(intră, <i>within</i> ),	interiör, <i>inner</i> ,	intimūs, or Imūs, <i>innermost</i> .
(pröpe, <i>near</i> ),	pröpiör, <i>nearer</i> ,	proximūs, <i>nearest</i> .

*Note.*—In the Positive *pröpinquus* is used, of which the Comparative *pröpinquiör* is rare.

(pos, <i>after</i> ),	posteriör, <i>later</i> ,	postrēmūs, <i>last</i> .
-----------------------	---------------------------	--------------------------

*Note.*—The Positive *postērūs* signifies *the next* or *following* (in time), and the Substantive *postēri*, *descendants*.

(supră, <i>above</i> ),	süpēriör, <i>upper</i> ,	suprēmūs, or summus, <i>uppermost</i> .
-------------------------	--------------------------	---

*Note.*—*Süpērūs* is used only in *Süpērum Mārē*, *the Upper Sea*, i. e. the Adriatic, and in the Plural *Süpēri*, *ae, ā*, *belonging to the upper world*.

## CHAPTER XIV.—THE NUMERALS.

§ 67. *Cardinal Numerals* denote numbers simply or absolutely : *as, ünūs, one ; duo, two ; trēs, three.*

§ 68. The first three *Cardinal Numerals* are declined as follows :

	Sing.			1.	Plur.		
	M.	F.	N.		M.	F.	N.
<i>Nom.</i>	Ūn-ūs	ān-ā	ān-am		Ūn-I	ān-ae	ān-ā
<i>Gen.</i>	Ūn-Iūs	—	—		Ūn-ōrum	ān-ārum	ān-ōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	Ūn-I	—	—		Ūn-īs	—	—
<i>Acc.</i>	Ūn-am	ān-am	ān-am		Ūn-ōs	ān-ās	ān-ā
<i>Abl.</i>	Ūn-ō	ān-ā	ān-ō		Ūn-īs	—	—

*Obs.* *Unus* is used in the Plural with Plural Substantives which have a singular meaning : *as, ūnā castrā, one camp ; ūnæ aedēs, one house ; ūnæ littērae, one letter.*

	2.			3.	N.
	M.	F.	N.	M. and F.	
<i>Nom.</i>	Du-o	du-ae	duo	Trēs	triā
<i>Gen.</i>	Du-ōrum	du-ārum	du-ōrum	Trium	—
<i>Dat.</i>	Du-ōbūs	du-ābūs	du-ōbūs	Tribūs	—
<i>Acc.</i>	Du-ōs	du-ās	du-o	Trēs or trīs	triā
<i>Abl.</i>	Du-ōbūs	du-ābūs	du-ōbūs	Tribūs	—

*Obs.* *Ambo*, *both*, is declined like *duo*.

§ 69. The *Cardinal Numerals* from *quattuör, four*, to *centum, a hundred*, are indeclinable.

*Dücenti*, *no, ā*, *two hundred*, and the following hundreds, are declined regularly

*Millē*, a thousand, is an indeclinable Adjective; but in the Plural it is a declinable Substantive: as, *Nom.* *milliā*, *Gen.* *millium*, *Dat.* *millibūs*, *Acc.* *milliā*, *Ab.* *millibūs*.

*Obs. 1.* *Millē* is sometimes, but rarely, used as a Substantive in the Singular: as, *millē hōmīnum*, a thousand of men, the common form being *millē hōmīnēs*. In the Plural *milliā* is regularly followed by the Genitive: as, *triā milliā hōmīnum*, three thousand men. But if smaller Numerals follow, the Genitive is not used: as, *triā milliā trēcenti hōmīnēs*, three thousand three hundred men.

*Obs. 2.* The numbers between 20 and 100 are expressed either by the larger numeral first without *et*, or by the smaller numeral first with *et*: as, *vīginti ūnūs*, or *ūnūs et vīginti*, twenty-one. The numbers above 100 always have the larger number first: as, *centum et sexāgintā sex*, or *centum sexāgintā sex*, one hundred and sixty-six.

*Obs. 3.* The numbers 18, 19, 28, 29, 38, 39 have the smaller numeral first with the preposition *dē* to indicate subtraction: as, *duodēvīginti*, undēvīginti, duodētrīgintā, undētrīgintā, &c.

§ 70. *Ordinal Numerals* denote numbers regarded as forming parts of a series; and hence they have a relative signification: as, *prīmūs*, first; *secundūs* or *altēr*, second. They are declined regularly as adjectives; see § 56.

*Obs.* Dates of years are expressed by *annūs* with the ordinal numeral: as, *annūs millesimūs octingentesimūs sexagesimūs primūs*, the year 1861

§ 71. *Distributive Numerals* denote numbers regarded as constituting groups, each group being treated as a unit; and these Latin numerals may be translated in various ways: as, *binī*, two each, two together, two by two.

*Obs. 1.* Distributive Numerals are also used to give a plural signification to those Substantives the plural forms of which have otherwise a singular meaning: as, *binā castrā*, two camps; *binæ aedēs*, two houses; *binæ littoræ*, two letters. Duo castra would be two forts; duæ aedēs, two temples, etc. See § 51.

*Obs. 2.* *Multiplicative Numerals* end in -plex, *Gen.* *plēx* (from the verb *plēco*, to fold), and, as their name implies, denote how many times any number or quantity is to be taken. Only the following are in use:

1. Simplex, onefold	4. Quadruplex, fourfold	10. Dēcomplex, tenfold
2. Duplex, twofold	5. Quincuplex, fivefold	100. Centuplex, a hundredfold.
3. Triplex, threefold	7. Septemplex, sevenfold	

*Obs. 3.* *Proportional Numerals* end in -plūs, plū, plum, and denote the number of times that one number or quantity contains another: as, *tripla pars*, a part three times as great as another. Only the following are in use, corresponding to the multiplicatives in the preceding list:

1. Simplūs	4. Quadruplūs	8. Octuplūs
2. Duplūs	5. Quinquiplūs	10. Dēcuplūs
3. Triplūs	7. Septuplūs	100. Centuplūs.

§ 72. *Nominal Adverbs* denote the number of times that anything happens or is done: as, *sēmēl*, once; *bīs*, twice; *tēr*, three times.

## § 73. NUMERALS.

ARABIC SYMBOLS.	ROMAN SYMBOLS.	CARDINALS.	ORDINALS.	DISTRIBUTIVES.	ADVERBS.
1	I	ūnus	primus	singūli	sēmcl.
2	II	duo	secundus <i>or</i> alter	binī	bis.
3	III	trēs	tertius	ternī <i>or</i> trinī	ter.
4	IV	quattuor, quatuor	quartus	quaternī	quātēr.
5	V	quinquē	quintus	quinī	quinquicēs.
6	VI	sex	sextus	senī	sexies.
7	VII	septem	septimus	septenī	septies.
8	VIII	octo	octāvus	octonī	octies.
9	IX	novem	nonus	novenī	novies.
10	X	dēcem	dēcimus	denī	dēcies.
11	XI	undēcim	undēcimus	undenī	undēcies.
12	XII	duōdēcim	duōdēcimus	duodenī	duōdēcies.
13	XIII	trēdēcim	tertius dēcimus	ternī dēnī	terdēcies <i>or</i> trēdēcies.
14	XIV	quattuordēcim	quartus dēcimus	quāternī dēnī	quattuordēcies.
15	XV	quindēcim	quintus dēcimus	quinī dēnī	quindēcies.
16	XVI	sēdēcim	sextus dēcimus	senī dēnī	sēdēcies.
17	XVII	septēndēcim	septimus dēcimus	septēnī dēnī	septiesdēcies.
18	XVIII	duōdēviginti	duōdēvicesimus	duōdēvicensī	duōdēvicies.
19	XIX	undēviginti	undēvicesimus	undēvicensī	undēvicies.
20	XX	vīginti	vicesimus	vicensī	vicies.
21	XXI	{ūnus et vīginti <i>or</i> vīginti ūnus	{primus et vicesimus, <i>or</i> vicesimus primus	vicensī singulī	sēmcl et vicies.
22	XXII	{duo et vīginti <i>or</i> vīginti duo	{alter et vicesimus, <i>or</i> vicesimus alter	vicensī binī	bis et vicies.



	trēs et vīginti or vīginti trēs	{tertius et vicēsīmus, or vicēsīmus tertius	vicēni terni duōdētrīcēni undētrīcēni trīcēni quadrāgēni quinqūagēni sexāgēni septuāgēni octogēni nōnāgēni centēni ducentēni trīcentēni quadrīngentēni quingēni sexcentēni septingēni octingēni nongēni singulā millia binā millia quinā millia dētā millia quinqūagēnā millia centēnā millia quingēnā millia dēcies centēnā millia	tēr et vicēs. duōdētrīcēs. undētrīcēs. trīcēs. quadrāgēs. quinqūagēs. sexāgēs. septuāgēs. octogēs. nōnāgēs. centēs. ducentēs. trīcentēs. quadrīngentēs. quingentēs. sexcentēs. septingentēs. octingentēs. nongentēs. millēs. bis millēs. quinqūēs millēs. dēcies millēs. quinqūāgēs millēs. centēs millēs. quingentēs millēs. dēcies centēs millēs.
23	XXIII			
28	XXVIII			
29	XXIX			
30	XXX			
40	XL			
50	L			
60	LX			
70	LXX			
80	LXXX			
90	XC			
100	C			
200	CC			
300	CCC			
400	CCCC			
500	D or I <sub>2</sub>			
600	DC			
700	DCC			
800	DCCC			
900	DCCCC			
1000	M or CI <sub>2</sub>			
2000	MM			
5000	I <sub>5</sub>			
10,000	CCI <sub>5</sub>			
50,000	I <sub>55</sub>			
100,000	CCCI <sub>55</sub>			
500,000	I <sub>555</sub>			
1,000,000	CCCCI <sub>5555</sub>			

## CHAPTER XV.—THE PRONOUNS.

§ 74. The *Pronouns* are :

1. Personal Pronouns.
2. Reflective Pronouns.
3. Possessive Pronouns.
4. Demonstrative Pronouns.
5. Determinative Pronouns.
6. Relative Pronouns.
7. Interrogative Pronouns.
8. Indefinite Pronouns.
9. Correlative Pronouns.

The Pronouns belonging to several of these classes are properly Adjectives.

## § 75. I. PERSONAL PRONOUNS.

## 1. Pronoun of the First Person.

	Sing.		Plur.
Nom.	Ēgō, I	Nōs,	we
Gen.	Mēi, of me	Nostrī and nostrum,	of us
Dat.	Mīhi, to or for me	Nōbīs,	to or for us
Acc.	Mē, me	Nōs,	us [from us.
Abl.	Mē, by, with, or from me.	Nōbīs,	by, with, or

## 2. Pronoun of the Second Person.

	Sing.		Plur.
Nom.	Tū, thou	Vōs,	ye
Gen.	Tuī, of thee	Vestri and vestrum,	of you
Dat.	Tibī, to or for thee	Vōbīs,	to or for you
Acc.	Tē, thee	Vōs,	you
Voc.	Tā, O thou	Vōs,	O ye [you.
Abl.	Tē, by, with, or from thee.	Vōbīs,	by, with, or from

Obs. 1. The Pronouns of the First and Second Persons may be strengthened by the addition of the syllables *mēt* or *tē* ; as, *ēgōmēt*, *I myself* ; *tūtē*, *tūtēmēt*, *thou thyself* ; *nośmēt*, *vośmēt*, *we ourselves*, *you yourselves*.

Obs. 2. The *Dat.* *mīhi* is sometimes contracted into *mī*.

## 3. Pronoun of the Third Person.

For the Pronoun of the Third Person, *he*, *she*, *it*, the Determinative Pronoun *is*, *eā*, *Id* is usually employed. See § 79.

## § 76. II. REFLECTIVE PRONOUNS.

The Reflective Pronouns refer to the subject of the sentence, and therefore do not require a Nominative case.

The Reflective Pronouns of the First and Second Persons are the same as the First and Second Personal Pronouns, but the Reflective Pronoun of the Third Person is thus declined :

Sing. and Plur.

Nom. (wanting)

Gen. Suī, of himself, herself, itself, or themselves.

Dat. Sībi, to or for himself, herself, itself, or themselves.

Acc. Sē or sēsē, himself, herself, itself, or themselves.

Abl. Sē or sēsē, by himself, herself, itself, or themselves.

Obs. Sibi and sē are strengthened by the addition of mēl : as, sībimēt, sēmēt.

### § 77. III. POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS.

These are formed from the First and Second Personal and the Third Reflective Pronouns, and are declined regularly :

M.	F.	N.	
Meūs,	meū,	meum,	my or mine.
Tuūs,	tuū,	tuum,	thy or thine.
Nostēr,	nostrā,	nostrum,	our.
Vestēr,	vestrā,	vestrum,	your.
Suūs,	suū,	suum,	his, her, its, their.

Obs. 1. The *Voc. Sing. Masc.* of meūs is mi.

Obs. 2. The *Abl. Sing.* of the Possessive Pronouns is sometimes strengthened by the syllable *ptē* : as, meoptē ingēniō, *by my own ability*. Mēt is added to suūs : as, suāmēt scēlērā, *his own crimes*.

Obs. 3. A Possessive Pronoun is also formed from the Relative : as, cūjūs, cūjā, cūjum, *whose?*

Obs. 4. From nostēr, vestēr, cūjūs (ā, um) are formed Adjectives ending in ās (Gen. ātis), which signify *belonging to a country* : as,

nostrās,	-ātis,	of our country ;
vestrās,	-ātis,	of your country ;
cūjās,	-ātis,	of what country ?

### § 78. IV. DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS.

These are of the *First, Second, and Third Persons* : namely, hic, haec, hoc, *this near me* ; istē, istā, istūd, *that near you* ; illē, illā, illūd, *that near him, or that yonder*.

1. Hic, haec, hoc, *this near me*.

Sing.

M.	F.	N.
Hic	haec	hoc

Plur.

	M.	F.	N.
Nom.	Hī	hae	haec
Gen.	Hōrum	hārum	hōrum
Dat.	Hīs		
Acc.	Hōs	hās	haec
Abl.	Hīs		

2. Istū, istā, istūd, *that near you.*

	Sing.			Plur.		
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
Nom.	Istē	istā	istūd	Istī	istae	istā
Gen.	Istius			Istōrum	istārum	istōrum
Dat.	Istī			Istīs		
Acc.	Istum	istam	istūd	Istōs	istās	istā
Ab.	Istō	istā	istō	Istīs		

3. Illē, illā, illūd, *that near him, that y<sup>d</sup> der.*

	Sing.			Plur.		
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
Nom.	Illē	illā	illūd	Illī	illae	illā
Gen.	Illius			Illōrum	illārum	illōrum
Dat.	Illī			Illīs		
Acc.	Illum	illam	illūd	Illōs	illās	illā
Ab.	Illō	illā	illō	Illīs		

Obs. 1. The cases of these three Pronouns are strengthened by the particle *ē* or *e*. This particle is inseparable from several of the cases of *hic*, but may be added to others also: as, *hūjusē*, *hicē*, &c.

*Istē* with the particle *ē* or *e* is thus declined:

	Sing.			Plur.		
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
Nom.	Isticē	istaec	istuc	Isticē	istaec	istuc
Gen.	Istiuscē			Istōrunc	istārunc	istōrunc
Dat.	Isti			Istiscē		
Acc.	Istunc	istanc	istuc	Istoscē	istascē	istac
Ab.	Istōc	istīc	istōc	Istiscē		

*Illē* with the particle *ē* or *e* is declined in the same way: as, *illīc*, *illaec*, *illuc*, &c.

Obs. 2. *Ecce* or *en*, *behold*, are sometimes prefixed to *ille* and *iste*: as, *ecceillum* or *ecceum*; *ecceistam*; which were of frequent use in ordinary life.

Obs. 3. Virgil often uses *olī* as a *Dat. Sing.* and *Nom. Pl.* instead of *illī*. The stem was originally *ol*, which appears in *olīm*, *yonder*.

## § 79. V. DETERMINATIVE PRONOUNS.

These are: *is*, *cā*, *id*, *this*, and *he*, *she*, *that*, referring to words in the context of a sentence: its compound, *idem*, *eādē*, *idem*, *the same*; and *ipsē*, *ipsā*, *ipsum*, *self*, *same*.

1. *Is*, *cā*, *id*, *this*, and *he*, *she*, *it*.

	Sing.			Plur.		
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
Nom.	Is	cā	Id	Il	eae	cā
Gen.	Ejūs			Eōrum	eārum	eōrum
Dat.	Ei			Ilis or eis		
Acc.	Eum	eam	Id	Eos	eās	cā
Ab.	Eō	cā	eō	Ilis or eis		

2. *Idem*, *eādē*, *idem*, *the same*.

	Sing.			Plur.		
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
Nom.	Idem	eādē	Idem	Idem	eādē	eādē
Gen.	Ejundem			Eōrundem	eārundem	eōrundem
Dat.	Eidem			Idem or eisdem		
Acc.	Eundem	eandem	Idem	Eoedem	eandem	eādē
Ab.	Eōdem	eādē	eōdem	Idem or eisdem		

3. Ipsē, ipsā, ipsum, *self, same*.

Sing.				Plur.		
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
Nom.	Ipsē	ipsā	ipsum	Ipsī	ipsae	ipsā
Gen.	Ipsiūs			Ipsōrum	ipsārum	ipsōrum
Dat.	Ipsī			Ipsīs		
Acc.	Ipsum	ipsam	ipsum	Ipsōs	ipsās	ipsā
Abl.	Ipsō	ipsā	ipsō	Ipsīs		

Obs. 1. Ecce is frequently prefixed to *is*: as, *ecce, ecceum, ecceam, ecceos, eccas*.  
See § 78, Obs. 2.

Obs. 2. Ipse compounded with some cases of *is* sometimes loses the *i*: as, *eumpse, eampse, eopse, eapse*; also *rēapse* = *rē ipsā* or *rē eū ipsā*.

## § 80. VI. RELATIVE PRONOUNS.

Quī, quae, quōd, *who or which*.

Sing.			Plur.			
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
<i>Nom.</i>	Quī	quae	quōd	Quī	quae	quae
<i>Gen.</i>	Cūjūs			Quōrum	quārum	quōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	Cuī or cūi			Quībūs		
<i>Acc.</i>	Quem	quam	quōd	Quōs	quās	quae
<i>Abl.</i>	Quō	quā	quō	Quībūs		

Obs. 1. There is an older form in the *Gen. Sing.* *quōiūs*, in the *Dot. Sing.* *quōi*, in the *Abl. Sing.* *quī* (instead of *quō*), and in the *Dat. and Abl. Pl.*, *quīs* (instead of *quōbūs*). The *Abl. quī* is usually found in combination with the preposition *cum*: as, *quicum* instead of *quōcum*.

Obs. 2. From *quī* are formed the two indefinite relatives *quicunque* and *quisquis*, *whoever, whosoever, whichever, whatever*.

*Quicunque*, *quaecunque*, *quodcunque* is declined like *quī*, *quae*, *quōd*, with the addition of the indeclinable *cunque*: as, *Gen. cūjuscunque*, &c.

Besides *quisquis*, the *Neut. quidquid* (or *quicquid*) and *Abl. quōquō* are the only forms in use.

*Quicunque* is generally an Adjective; *quisquis* always a Substantive.

Obs. 3. The interrogative *utēr, utrā, utrum, which of the two!* is used as a relative with *cunque*; as, *utercunque, utrācunque, utrumcunque, whichever of the two*.

## § 81. VII. INTERROGATIVE PRONOUNS.

Quīs or quī, quae, quīd or quōd, *who, which? what?*

Sing.				Plur.		
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
Nom.	Quis or quī	quae	quīd	Quī	quae	quae
Gen.	Cūjūs		[or quōd]	Quōrum	quārum	quōrum
Dat.	Cuī		[or quōd]	Quībūs		
Acc.	Quem	quam	quīd	Quōs	quās	quae
Abl.	Quō	quā	quō	Quībūs		

Obs. 1. *Quīs* is used both as a Substantive and as an Adjective; *quīd* only as a Substantive; *quī* and *quōd* as Adjectives: as, *quīd commisit, what has he done?* *quōd facinūs commisit, what deed has he done?*

*Obs. 2.* The *Abl. Sing.* *quī* is used only in the signification *how* ? as, *quī fit* ? *how does it happen* ?

*Obs. 3.* *Quis* and *quī* are strengthened by the addition of *nam* in emphatic interrogations : as, *quisnam* or *quīnam*, *quaenam*, *quidnam* or *quodnam*, *who then, what then* ?

*Obs. 4.* When the question refers to one of two, *ūter*, *utrū*, *utrum*, *which of the two*, is used. For the declension of *ūter* and its compounds see § 57, *Obs. 2.*

*Obs. 5.* Some derivatives of *quis* are also capable of being used interrogatively ; as, *quantus*, *how great* ? *quālis*, *of what sort* ? *quōt*, *how many* ? See § 83.

## § 82. VIII. INDEFINITE PRONOUNS.

*Quis* is also used as an Indefinite Pronoun (= *any*), especially after the Conjunctions *si*, *if*, and *nē*, *lest*. Thus, *si quis* is "*if any one*"; *nē quis*, "*lest any one*," "*that no one*."

When *quis* is so used, it changes *quae* to *qua* wherever that form occurs. In other respects it is declined like the Interrogative *quis*.

*Obs. 1.* *Quid* is used as a Substantive, *quōd* as an Adjective : *quīs* both as a Substantive and as an Adjective, *quī* usually as an Adjective.

*Obs. 2.* *Equis* (*ecquī*), *equū* (*ecquae*), *equūd* (*ecquōd*), *any*, and, strengthened with the particle *nam*, *ecquisnam*, is formed from *quis*, and declined in the same manner.

*Obs. 3.* *Alīquis*, *āliquīd*, *any one, some one* (as Substantive), and *āliquī*, *āliquē*, *āliquōd*, *any, some* (as Adjective), are declined like *quīs* (*quī*), except that in the *Nom. Fem. Sing.* and in the *Neutr. Plur.* only the form *āliquā* is used.

*Obs. 4.* *Quisquam*, *quidquam* (*quicquam*), *any one*, has no Feminine and no Plural. *Gen. cūsq(uam)*, &c. It is used as a Substantive in negative sentences. The corresponding Adjective is *ullūs*.

*Obs. 5.* The following Indefinite Pronouns are declined either like the Relative or the Interrogative ; the Neuters in *quid* being used Substantively, and those in *quōd* Adjectively :—

<i>Quīdam</i> ,	<i>quaedam</i> ,	<i>quoddam</i> or <i>quiddam</i> ,	<i>a certain one.</i>
<i>Quīpiam</i> ,	<i>quaequam</i> ,	<i>quodpiam</i> or <i>quidpiam</i> ,	<i>any one.</i>
<i>Quīvis</i> ,	<i>quaevis</i> ,	<i>quodvis</i> or <i>quidvis</i> ,	<i>any one you please.</i>
<i>Quīlibet</i> ,	<i>quaelibet</i> ,	<i>quodlibet</i> or <i>quidlibet</i> ,	<i>any one you please.</i>
<i>Quisquē</i> ,	<i>quaequē</i> ,	<i>quodquē</i> or <i>quidquē</i> ,	<i>every one.</i>
<i>Cūquisquē</i> ,	<i>ānāquaequē</i> ,	<i>ūnumquodquē</i> or <i>ūnumquidquē</i> ,	<i>Gen. ūnuscujusquē</i> , &c., <i>each one.</i>

*Obs. 6.* The following form the *Gen.* in *fūs* and the *Dat.* in *ī* : *ullus*, *any* ; *nullus*, *none* ; *nonnullus* (*usu. in pl.*) *some* ; *ālius*, *one, another* ; *alter*, *the one or other of two* ; *neuter*, (a contraction of *no uter*), *neither of two*. See § 57. In early Latin and sometimes in the best writers the *Gen.* is also found in *i*, *ae*, and the *Dat.* in *o*, *ae* : as *nulli consilii*, *nullo consilio*, &c. The compound *alterūter* is declined either in both words : as, *Gen. alterūtrius utrius* : or only in the latter : as, *Dat. alterutrō*.

## § 83. IX. CORRELATIVE PRONOUNS.

Correlative Pronouns denote relation to one another by corresponding forms.

Demonstrative.	Relative and Interrogative.	Indefinite Relative.	Indefinite.
Tālis, of such a kind.	Quālis, of such a kind as (rel.); of what kind ! (interr.)	Quālescunquē, Quālisquālis, of what kind soever.	Quālislibēt, of any kind you please.
Tantūs, so great.	Quantūs, so great as (rel.); how great ! (interr.)	Quantuscunquē, Quantusquantus, how great soever.	Āliquantūs, of a certain, considerable size. Quantuslibēt, Quantusvis, of any size you please.
Tōt (indecl.), so many.	Quōt (indecl.), so many as (rel.);	Quotcunquē, Quotquōt,	Āliquōt (indecl.), some number.
Tōtīdem (indecl.), just so many.	how many ? (interr.)	how many soever.	Quotlibēt (indecl.) any number you please.

## CHAPTER XVI.—THE VERBS.

§ 84. VERBS are of two kinds :

1. TRANSITIVE VERBS, which govern an Accusative Case, representing the object of the action : as, *āmo puērum*, *I love the boy*.

Obs. Certain Deponent Verbs are regarded as Transitives though they govern an Ablative : as, *utor*, *I use* ; *vescor*, *I eat, feed on*. These occasionally take an Accusative : see § 315.

2. INTRANSITIVE VERBS, which do not govern an Accusative Case : as, *sēdeo*, *I sit* ; *curro*, *I run* ; *plāceo*, *I please*.

Transitive Verbs have Two VOICES :

(i.) The ACTIVE VOICE, before which the Nominative represents the actor (from *āgo*, *actum*, *to do*) : as, *pātēr āmāt*, *the father loves*.

(ii.) The PASSIVE VOICE, (from *pātiōr*, *passūs*, *to suffer*), before which the Nominative represents the object of the action : as, *pātēr āmātur*, *the father is loved*.

Obs. 1. Some Verbs have a *reflective* sense in the Passive Voice : see § 633.

Obs. 2. Intransitive Verbs have no Passive Voice, except in the Third Person Singular Impersonal : see § 234, Obs.

DEPONENT VERBS have a Passive form but an Active meaning, and are hence called Deponent, because they lay aside (*deponunt*) the Passive sense. They are either Transitive, Intransitive, or Reflective: as, *hortor militēs, I exhort the soldiers*; *milēs moritur, the soldier is dying*; *glōrior, I glorify myself* (or, more usually, *I boast*).

§ 85. Verbs have Four Moods (*Mōdī*):

- I. The INDICATIVE MOOD declares a thing positively or unconditionally: as, *āmo, I love*; *scribīt, he writes*.
  - II. The SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD is subjoined to another Verb, and states what is conditional, relative, or contingent: as, *scribo ut lēgāt, I write that he may read*; *lēgāt āliquīs, let some one read*.
- Obs.* The Subjunctive Mood however must frequently be translated as an Indicative; owing to the defectiveness of the English Verb.
- III. The IMPERATIVE MOOD commands or entreats: as, *āmā, love*; *nē occīdito, thou shalt not kill*.
  - IV. The INFINITIVE MOOD expresses the action denoted by the Verb without reference to person: as, *āmārē, to love*.

§ 86. Besides these four Moods three other forms are derived from and partake of the signification of Verbs.

1. The PARTICIPLE, which is a Verbal Adjective. There are four Participles:

	<i>Active.</i>	
<i>Imperfect.</i>	<i>Āmans,</i>	<i>loving.</i>
<i>Future.</i>	<i>Āmātūrus,</i>	<i>about to love.</i>
	<i>Passive.</i>	
<i>Perfect.</i>	<i>Āmātus,</i>	<i>loved.</i>
<i>Gerundive.</i>	<i>Āmandus,</i>	<i>fit to be loved.</i>

2. The SUPINE, which is strictly a Verbal Substantive of the fourth declension, having two cases only, the Accusative and the Ablative: as,

<i>Āmātum,</i>	<i>to love.</i>
<i>Āmātū,</i>	<i>in loving, to be loved.</i>

3. The GERUND, which is also a Verbal Substantive, having four Cases: as,

<i>Gen.</i>	<i>Āmandī,</i>	<i>of loving</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>Āmando,</i>	<i>for loving</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>Āmandum,</i>	<i>a loving</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>Āmando,</i>	<i>by loving.</i>

*Obs.* The want of a Nominative Case to the Gerund is supplied by the Infinitive Mood.



§ 87. Verbs have six TENSES (Tempöră) or times, three expressing *Imperfect* or unfinished action, and three expressing *Perfect* or finished action.

*Imperfect Tenses.*

- |                    |         |                               |
|--------------------|---------|-------------------------------|
| 1. <i>Present.</i> | Ămo,    | <i>I love or I am loving.</i> |
| 2. <i>Past.</i>    | Ămābam, | <i>I was loving.</i>          |
| 3. <i>Future.</i>  | Ămābo,  | <i>I shall love.</i>          |

*Obs.* The *Present* and *Future* Tenses are frequently Indefinite and not Imperfect. In Active Verbs the *Future* Tense is never Imperfect: *ămābo* never signifies *I shall be loving*. Hence it is better to call these two tenses *Present* and *Future* simply.

*Perfect Tenses.*

- |                    |           |                            |
|--------------------|-----------|----------------------------|
| 1. <i>Present.</i> | Ămāvī,    | <i>I have loved.</i>       |
| 2. <i>Past.</i>    | Ămāvēram, | <i>I had loved.</i>        |
| 3. <i>Future.</i>  | Ămāvēro,  | <i>I shall have loved.</i> |

*Obs.* The *Present-Perfect* has also the meaning of an Indefinite-Past: thus, *Ămāvī* signifies *I loved* as well as *I have loved*; and in the former sense it is sometimes called the *Aorist*. As the tense has thus two meanings, it is better to call it *Perfect* simply.

§ 88. Verbs have two NUMBERS, Singular and Plural, and three PERSONS in each Number: as,

	Sing.		Plur.
1. <i>Ămo,</i>	<i>I love</i>		<i>Ămāmūs,</i> <i>We love</i>
2. <i>Ămās,</i>	<i>thou lovest</i>		<i>Ămātīs,</i> <i>ye love</i>
3. <i>Ămāt,</i>	<i>he loves.</i>		<i>Ămant,</i> <i>they love.</i>

§ 89. Latin Verbs are arranged in four classes, called CONJUGATIONS, distinguished by the final vowel of the Stem, which is seen in the Imperfect Infinitive Active. (See further, Chap. XX.)

I. or A	II. or E	III. or Consonant	IV. or I
Conjugation.	Conjugation.	and U Conjugation.	Conjugation.
<i>Stem.</i> āma,	mōne,	rĕg, mīnu,	audi,
<i>Infini-</i> {āmā-re,	mōnē-re,	rĕg-ĕre, mīnū-ĕre,	andi-rē,
<i>tive.</i> {to love.	to advise.	to rule, to lessen.	to hear.

The Present Indicative, the Perfect Indicative, the Imperfect Infinitive, and the Supine, are called the *Principal Parts* of the Verb; because it is necessary to know these in order to conjugate a Verb.

## CHAPTER XVII.—THE VERB SUM AND THE FOUR CONJUGATIONS.

§ 90. The Verb **Sum**, *I am*, is irregular, its inflexions differing in many respects from those of the Verbs belonging to the four Conjugations.

**Sum, fūi, fūtūrūs, essē,—to be. Stem : ēs-, fu-**

### INDICATIVE MOOD.

#### 1. PRESENT TENSE.

<i>Sing. Sum,</i>	<i>I am</i>	<i>Plur. Sūmūs,</i>	<i>We are</i>
<i>Ēs,</i>	<i>thou art</i>	<i>Estīs,</i>	<i>ye are</i>
<i>Est,</i>	<i>he is.</i>	<i>Sunt,</i>	<i>they are.</i>

#### 2. PAST-IMPERFECT TENSE.

<i>Sing. Ēram,</i>	<i>I was</i>	<i>Plur. Ērāmūs,</i>	<i>We were</i>
<i>Ērās,</i>	<i>thou wast</i>	<i>Ērātīs,</i>	<i>ye were</i>
<i>Ērāt,</i>	<i>he was.</i>	<i>Ērant,</i>	<i>they were.</i>

#### 3. FUTURE TENSE.

<i>Sing. Ēro,</i>	<i>I shall be</i>	<i>Plur. Ērimūs,</i>	<i>We shall be</i>
<i>Ēris,</i>	<i>thou wilt be</i>	<i>Ēritīs,</i>	<i>ye will be</i>
<i>Ērit,</i>	<i>he will be.</i>	<i>Ērant,</i>	<i>they will be.</i>

#### 4. PERFECT TENSE.

<i>Sing. Fui,</i>	<i>I have been, or</i>	<i>Plur. Fūimūs,</i>	<i>We have been, or</i>
	<i>I was</i>		<i>we were</i>
<i>Fuisti,</i>	<i>thou hast been, or</i>	<i>Fuistīs,</i>	<i>ye have been, or</i>
	<i>thou wast</i>		<i>ye were</i>
<i>Fuit,</i>	<i>he has been, or</i>	<i>Fuērunt</i>	<i>they have been, or</i>
	<i>he was.</i>	<i>or fuērē</i>	<i>they were.</i>

#### 5. PAST-PERFECT TENSE.

<i>Sing. Fuēram,</i>	<i>I had been</i>	<i>Plur. Fuērāmūs,</i>	<i>We had been</i>
<i>Fuērās,</i>	<i>thou hadst been</i>	<i>Fuērātīs,</i>	<i>ye had been</i>
<i>Fuērāt,</i>	<i>he had been.</i>	<i>Fuērant,</i>	<i>they had been.</i>

#### 6. FUTURE-PERFECT TENSE.

<i>Sing. Fuēro,</i>	<i>I shall have been</i>	<i>Plur. Fuērīmūs,</i>	<i>We shall have been</i>
<i>Fuērīs,</i>	<i>thou wilt have been</i>	<i>Fuērītīs,</i>	<i>ye will have been</i>
<i>Fuērīt,</i>	<i>he will have been.</i>	<i>Fuērint,</i>	<i>they will have been.</i>

### IMPERATIVE MOOD.

#### 1. PRESENT TENSE.

<i>Sing. Ēs,</i>	<i>Be thou.</i>	<i>Plur. Estē,</i>	<i>Be ye.</i>
------------------	-----------------	--------------------	---------------

#### 2. FUTURE TENSE.

<i>Sing. Esto,</i>	<i>Thou shalt be</i>	<i>Plur. Estōtē,</i>	<i>Ye shall be</i>
<i>Esto,</i>	<i>he shall be, or let</i>	<i>Sunto,</i>	<i>they shall be, or let</i>
	<i>him be.</i>		<i>them be.</i>

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

1. PRESENT TENSE.

S. Sim,	<i>I may be</i>	P. Simūs,	<i>We may be</i>
Sis,	<i>thou mayst be</i>	Sītis,	<i>ye may be</i>
Sit,	<i>he may be.</i>	Sint,	<i>they may be.</i>

2. PAST-IMPERFECT TENSE.

S. Essem or fōrem,	<i>I might be</i>	P. Essēmūs or fōrēmūs,	<i>We might be</i>
Essēs or fōrēs,	<i>thou mightst be</i>	Essētis or fōrētis,	<i>ye might be</i>
Essēt or fōrēt,	<i>he might be.</i>	Essent or fōrent,	<i>they might be.</i>

3. PERFECT TENSE.

S. Fuērim,	<i>I may have been</i>	P. Fuērīmūs,	<i>We may have been</i>
Fuēris,	<i>thou mayst have been</i>	Fuērītis,	<i>ye may have been</i>
Fuērīt,	<i>he may have been.</i>	Fuērint,	<i>they may have been.</i>

4. PAST-PERFECT TENSE.

S. Fuissem,	<i>I might</i>	P. Fuissēmūs,	<i>We might</i>
Fuissēs,	<i>thou mightst</i>	Fuissētis,	<i>ye might</i>
Fuissēt,	<i>he might</i>	Fuissent,	<i>they might</i>

INFINITIVE MOOD.

IMPERFECT.	Essē,	<i>to be.</i>
PERFECT.	Fuissē,	<i>to have been.</i>
FUTURE.	Fūtūrum essē, or fōrē,	<i>to be about to be.</i>

PARTICIPLE.

FUTURE.	Fūtūrūs, -a, -um,	<i>about to be.</i>
---------	-------------------	---------------------

Obs. 1. The Supine and Gerund are wanting. The Present Participle is found only in Absens from Absum, and Praesens from Praesum.

Obs. 2. The Verb has two Stems, *es* (whence *esum*, afterwards *'sum*, and all the Imperfect Tenses), and *fu* (whence all the Perfect Tenses).

Obs. 3. Like Sum are conjugated its compounds :

Absum,	<i>I am away.</i>	Obsum,	<i>I am in the way.</i>
Adsum,	<i>I am present.</i>	Praesum,	<i>I am before.</i>
Dēsum,	<i>I am wanting.</i>	Prōsum,	<i>I am serviceable.</i>
Insum,	<i>I am in.</i>	Subsum,	<i>I am under.</i>
Intersum,	<i>I am present at.</i>	Sūpersum,	<i>I am surricing.</i>

Prōsum, however, takes *d* before *e*; as,

Sing. Prōsum,	Plur. Prōsūmūs,	Past-Imp. Prōdēram.
Prōdēs,	Prōdestis,	Future. Prōdēro.
Prōdest,	Prōsunt.	Imp. Inf. Prōdēssē.

Obs. 4. Possum, *I am able*, is a contraction of pōtis (pot)-sum, but is irregular.

## § 91. FIRST OR A CONJUGATION.—ACTIVE VOICE.

Amo, amāvi, amātum, amārē,—to love. Stem : āma-

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

## 1. PRESENT TENSE.

<i>Sing.</i> Am-o,	<i>I love</i>	<i>Plur.</i> Am-amūs,	<i>We love</i>
Am-as,	<i>thou lovest</i>	Am-ātis,	<i>ye love</i>
Am-āt,	<i>he loves.</i>	Am-ant,	<i>they love.</i>

## 2. PAST-IMPERFECT TENSE.

<i>Sing.</i> Am-ābam,	<i>I was loving</i>	<i>Plur.</i> Am-ābāmūs,	<i>We were loving</i>
Am-ābās,	<i>thou wast loving</i>	Am-ābātis,	<i>ye were loving</i>
Am-ābāt,	<i>he was loving.</i>	Am-ābant,	<i>they were loving</i>

## 3. FUTURE TENSE.

<i>Sing.</i> Am-ābo,	<i>I shall love</i>	<i>Plur.</i> Am-ābimūs,	<i>We shall love</i>
Am-ābis,	<i>thou wilt love</i>	Am-ābitis,	<i>ye will love</i>
Am-ābit,	<i>he will love.</i>	Am-ābunt,	<i>they will love.</i>

## 4. PERFECT TENSE.

<i>Sing.</i> Am-āvī,	<i>I have loved, or</i>	<i>Plur.</i> Am-āvīmūs,	<i>We have loved,</i>
	<i>I loved</i>		<i>or we loved</i>
Am-āvisti,	<i>thou hast loved,</i>	Am-āvistis,	<i>ye have loved,</i>
	<i>or thou lovedst</i>		<i>or ye loved</i>
Am-āvīt,	<i>he has loved, or</i>	Am-āvērunt,	<i>they have loved</i>
	<i>he loved.</i>	or am-āvērē,	<i>or they loved</i>

## 5. PAST-PERFECT TENSE.

<i>Sing.</i> Am-āvēram,	<i>I had loved</i>	<i>Plur.</i> Am-āvērāmūs,	<i>We had loved</i>
Am-āvērās,	<i>thou hadst loved</i>	Am-āvērātis,	<i>ye had loved</i>
Am-āvērāt,	<i>he had loved.</i>	Am-āvērant,	<i>they had loved.</i>

## 6. FUTURE-PERFECT TENSE.

<i>Sing.</i> Am-āvēro,	<i>I shall</i>	<i>Plur.</i> Am-āvērimūs,	<i>We shall</i>
Am-āvēris,	<i>thou wilt</i>	Am-āvēritis,	<i>ye will</i>
Am-āvērit,	<i>he will</i>	Am-āvērint,	<i>they will</i>
	<i>have loved.</i>		<i>have loved.</i>

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

## PRESENT TENSE.

<i>Sing.</i> Am-ā,	<i>Love thou.</i>	<i>Plur.</i> Am-ātē,	<i>Love ye.</i>
--------------------	-------------------	----------------------	-----------------

## FUTURE TENSE.

<i>Sing.</i> Am-āto,	<i>Thou shalt love</i>	<i>Plur.</i> Am-ātōtē,	<i>Ye shall love</i>
Am-āto,	<i>he shall love, or</i>	Am-anto,	<i>they shall love, or</i>
	<i>let him love.</i>		<i>let them love.</i>

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

## 1. PRESENT TENSE.

S. <i>Ām-em,</i>	<i>I may love</i>	P. <i>Ām-ēmūs,</i>	<i>We may love</i>
<i>Ām-ēs,</i>	<i>thou mayst love</i>	<i>Ām-ētis,</i>	<i>ye may love</i>
<i>Ām-ēt,</i>	<i>he may love.</i>	<i>Ām-ent,</i>	<i>they may love.</i>

## 2. PAST-IMPERFECT TENSE.

S. <i>Ām-ārem,</i>	<i>I might love</i>	P. <i>Ām-ārēmūs,</i>	<i>We might love</i>
<i>Ām-ārēs,</i>	<i>thou mightst love</i>	<i>Ām-ārētis,</i>	<i>ye might love</i>
<i>Ām-ārēt,</i>	<i>he might love.</i>	<i>Ām-ārent,</i>	<i>they might love</i>

## 3. PERFECT TENSE.

S. <i>Ām-āvērim,</i>	<i>I may</i>	P. <i>Ām-āvērimūs,</i>	<i>We may</i>
<i>Ām-āvēris,</i>	<i>thou mayst</i>	<i>Ām-āvēritis,</i>	<i>ye may</i>
<i>Ām-āvērit,</i>	<i>he may</i>	<i>Ām-āvērint,</i>	<i>they may</i>
	<i>have loved.</i>		<i>have loved.</i>

## 4. PAST-PERFECT TENSE.

S. <i>Ām-āvissem,</i>	<i>I might</i>	P. <i>Ām-āvissēmūs,</i>	<i>We might</i>
<i>Ām-āvissēs,</i>	<i>thou mightst</i>	<i>Ām-āvissētis,</i>	<i>ye might</i>
<i>Ām-āvissēt,</i>	<i>he might</i>	<i>Ām-āvissent,</i>	<i>they might</i>
	<i>have loved.</i>		<i>have loved.</i>

## INFINITIVE MOOD.

IMPERF. <i>Ām-ārē,</i>	<i>to love.</i>
PERFECT. <i>Ām-āvissē,</i>	<i>{ to have loved.</i>
FUTURE. <i>Ām-ātūrum</i>	<i>{ to be about</i>
<i>(am, um) essē,</i>	<i>to love.</i>

## GERUND.

Gen. <i>Ām-andī,</i>	<i>of loving</i>
Dat. <i>Ām-ando,</i>	<i>for loving</i>
Acc. <i>Ām-andum,</i>	<i>the loving</i>
Abl. <i>Ām-ando,</i>	<i>by loving.</i>

## SUPINES.

<i>Ām-ātum,</i>	<i>to love.</i>
<i>Ām-ātū,</i>	<i>to be loved.</i>

## PARTICIPLES.

IMPERF. <i>Ām-ans, antis,</i>	<i>loving.</i>
FUTURE. <i>Ām-ātūrus, a, um,</i>	<i>about to love.</i>

Obs. In all the Perfect Tenses *ti* and *re* may be omitted before *s* and *r* *ss*,

*āmāvistī* becomes *āmasti*  
*āmāvistis* " *āmastis*  
*āmāvērunt* " *āmāvērunt*:  
 (but *āmāvērē* does not become  
*āmārē*, which would be con-  
 founded with the Imperf. Infm.).

*āmāvēram* becomes *āmāram*  
*āmāvēro* " *āmāro*  
*āmāvērim* " *āmārim*  
*āmāvissem* " *āmāassem*  
*āmāvissē* " *āmāssē*.

## § 92. SECOND OR E CONJUGATION.—ACTIVE VOICE.

Mōnēo, mōnūi, mōnītum, mōnērē,—to advise. Stem : mōne-

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

## 1. PRESENT TENSE.

S. Mōn-ēo,	<i>I advise</i>	P. Mōn-ēmūs,	<i>We advise</i>
Mōn-ēs,	<i>thou advisest</i>	Mōn-ētis,	<i>ye advise</i>
Mōn-ēt,	<i>he advises.</i>	Mōn-ent,	<i>they advise.</i>

## 2. PAST-IMPERFECT TENSE.

S. Mōn-ēbam,	<i>I was advising</i>	P. Mōn-ēbāmūs,	<i>We were advising</i>
Mōn-ēbās,	<i>thou wast advising</i>	Mōn-ēbātis,	<i>ye were advising</i>
Mōn-ēbāt,	<i>he was advising.</i>	Mōn-ēbant,	<i>they were advising.</i>

## 3. FUTURE TENSE.

S. Mōn-ēbo,	<i>I shall advise</i>	P. Mōn-ēbimūs,	<i>We shall advise</i>
Mōn-ēbis,	<i>thou wilt advise</i>	Mōn-ēbitis,	<i>ye will advise</i>
Mōn-ēbit,	<i>he will advise.</i>	Mōn-ēbunt,	<i>they will advise.</i>

## 4. PERFECT TENSE.

S. Mōn-uī,	<i>I have advised, or</i> <i>I advised</i>	P. Mōn-uīmūs,	<i>We have advised,</i> <i>or we advised</i>
Mōn-uisti,	<i>thou hast advised, or</i> <i>thou advisedst</i>	Mōn-uistis,	<i>ye have advised,</i> <i>or ye advised</i>
Mōn-uīt,	<i>he has advised, or</i> <i>he advised.</i>	Mōn-uērunt or -uērē,	<i>they have advised,</i> <i>or they advised.</i>

## 5. PAST-PERFECT TENSE.

S. Mōn-uēram,	<i>I had advised</i>	P. Mōn-uērāmūs,	<i>We had advised</i>
Mōn-uērās,	<i>thou hadst advised</i>	Mōn-uērātis,	<i>ye had advised</i>
Mōn-uērāt,	<i>he had advised.</i>	Mōn-uērant,	<i>they had advised.</i>

## 6. FUTURE-PERFECT TENSE.

S. Mōn-uēro,	<i>I shall</i>	} <i>have</i> } <i>advised.</i>	P. Mōn-uērimūs,	<i>We shall</i>	} <i>have</i> } <i>advised.</i>
Mōn-uēris,	<i>thou wilt</i>		Mōn-uēritis,	<i>ye will</i>	
Mōn-uērit,	<i>he will</i>		Mōn-uērint,	<i>they will</i>	

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

## PRESENT TENSE.

S. Mōn-ē,	<i>Advise thou.</i>	P. Mōn-ētē,	<i>Advise ye.</i>
-----------	---------------------	-------------	-------------------

## FUTURE TENSE.

S. Mōn-ēto,	<i>Thou shalt advise</i>	P. Mōn-ētōtē,	<i>Ye shall advise</i>
Mōn-ēto,	<i>he shall advise, or let</i> <i>him advise.</i>	Mōn-ēnto,	<i>they shall advise, or</i> <i>let them advise.</i>

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

1. PRESENT TENSE.

Mön-eam, <i>I may advise</i>	P. Mön-eāmūs, <i>We may advise</i>
Mön-eās, <i>thou mayst advise</i>	Mön-eātīs, <i>ye may advise</i>
Mön-eāt, <i>he may advise.</i>	Mön-eant, <i>they may advise.</i>

2. PAST-IMPERFECT TENSE.

Mön-ērem, <i>I might advise</i>	P. Mön-ērēmūs, <i>We might advise</i>
Mön-ērēs, <i>thou mightst advise</i>	Mön-ērētīs, <i>ye might advise</i>
Mön-ērēt, <i>he might advise.</i>	Mön-ērent, <i>they might advise.</i>

3. PERFECT TENSE.

Mön-uërim, <i>I may</i>	P. Mön-uërimūs, <i>We may</i>
Mön-uëris, <i>thou mayst</i>	Mön-uëritīs, <i>ye may</i>
Mön-uërit, <i>he may</i>	Mön-uërint, <i>they may</i>
	<i>have advised.</i>

4. PAST-PERFECT TENSE.

Mön-uissēm, <i>I might</i>	P. Mön-uissēmūs, <i>We might</i>
Mön-uissēs, <i>thou mightst</i>	Mön-uissētīs, <i>ye might</i>
Mön-uissēt, <i>he might</i>	Mön-uissent, <i>they might</i>
	<i>have advised.</i>

INFINITIVE MOOD.

IMPERF.	Mön-ērē,	<i>to advise.</i>
PERFECT.	Mön-uissē,	{ <i>to have</i>
		<i>advised.</i>
FUTURE.	Mön-ītūrum	{ <i>to be about</i>
	(am, um) essē,	<i>to advise.</i>

GERUND.

Gen. Mön-endī, <i>of advising</i>
Dat. Mön-endo, <i>for advising</i>
Acc. Mön-endum, <i>the advising</i>
Abl. Mön-endo, <i>by advising.</i>

SUPINES.

Mön-ītum, <i>to advise.</i>
Mön-ītū, <i>to be advised.</i>

PARTICIPLES.

IMPERF. Mön-ens, entis, <i>advising.</i>
FUTURE. Mön-ītūrūs, a, um, <i>about</i>
<i>to advise.</i>

## § 93. THIRD OR CONSONANT AND U CONJUGATION.

## ACTIVE VOICE.

Rēgo, rexī, rectum, rēgērē,—to rule. Stem: rēg-

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

## 1. PRESENT TENSE.

S. Rēg-o,	<i>I rule</i>	P. Rēg-īmūs,	<i>We rule</i>
Rēg-is,	<i>thou rulest</i>	Rēg-itīs,	<i>ye rule</i>
Rēg-īt,	<i>he rules</i>	Rēg-unt,	<i>they rule</i>

## 2. PAST-IMPERFECT TENSE.

S. Rēg-ēbam,	<i>I was ruling</i>	P. Rēg-ēbāmūs,	<i>We were ruling</i>
Rēg-ēbās,	<i>thou wast ruling</i>	Rēg-ēbātīs,	<i>ye were ruling</i>
Rēg-ēbāt,	<i>he was ruling.</i>	Rēg-ēbant,	<i>they were ruling.</i>

## 3. FUTURE TENSE.

S. Rēg-am,	<i>I shall rule</i>	P. Rēg-ēmūs,	<i>We shall rule</i>
Rēg-ēs,	<i>thou wilt rule</i>	Rēg-ētīs,	<i>ye will rule</i>
Rēg-ēt,	<i>he will rule.</i>	Rēg-ent,	<i>they will rule</i>

## 4. PERFECT TENSE.

S. Rex-ī,	<i>I have ruled, or</i> <i>I ruled</i>	P. Rex-īmūs,	<i>We have ruled, or</i> <i>we ruled</i>
Rex-istī,	<i>thou hast ruled, or</i> <i>thou ruledst</i>	Rex-istīs,	<i>ye have ruled, or</i> <i>ye ruled</i>
Rex-īt,	<i>he has ruled, or</i> <i>he ruled.</i>	Rex-ērunt or -ērē,	<i>they have ruled, or</i> <i>they ruled.</i>

## 5. PAST-PERFECT TENSE.

S. Rex-eram,	<i>I had ruled</i>	P. Rex-ērāmūs,	<i>We had ruled</i>
Rex-ērās,	<i>thou hadst rul</i>	Rex-ērātīs,	<i>ye had ruled</i>
Rex-ērāt,	<i>he had ruled.</i>	Rex-erant,	<i>they had ruled.</i>

## 6. FUTURE-PERFECT TENSE.

S. Rex-ēro,	<i>I shall have ruled</i>	P. Rex-ērimūs,	<i>We shall have ruled</i>
Rex-ērīs,	<i>thou wilt have ruled</i>	Rex-ēritīs,	<i>ye will have ruled</i>
Rex-ērīt,	<i>he will have ruled.</i>	Rex-erint,	<i>they will have ruled.</i>

## IMPERATIVE MOOD

## PRESENT TENSE.

S. Rēg-ě,	<i>Rule thou.</i>	P. Rēg-Itō,	<i>Rule ye</i>
-----------	-------------------	-------------	----------------

## FUTURE TENSE.

S. Rēg-Itō,	<i>Thou shalt rule</i>	P. Rēg-Itōtē,	<i>Ye shall rule</i>
Rēg-Itō,	<i>he shall rule, or let</i> <i>him rule</i>	Rēg-unto,	<i>they shall rule, or</i> <i>let them rule.</i>



## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

## 1. PRESENT TENSE.

S. Rēg-am,	I may rule	P. Rēg-āmūs,	We may rule.
Rēg-ās,	thou mayst rule	Rēg-ātīs,	ye may rule
Rēg-āt,	he may rule.	Rēg-ant,	they may rule.

## 2. PAST-IMPERFECT TENSE.

S. Rēg-ērem,	I might rule	P. Rēg-ērēmūs,	We might rule
Rēg-ērēs,	thou mightst rule	Rēg-ērētīs,	ye might rule
Rēg-ērēt,	he might rule.	Rēg-ērent,	they might rule.

## 3. PERFECT TENSE.

S. Rex-ērim,	I may	P. Rex-ērimūs,	We may
Rex-ērīs,	thou mayst	Rex-ērītīs,	ye may
Rex-ērīt,	he may	Rex-ērint,	they may
	have		have
	ruled.		ruled.

## 4. PAST-PERFECT TENSE.

S. Rex-issem,	I might	P. Rex-issēmūs,	We might
Rex-issēs,	thou mightst	Rex-issētīs,	ye might
Rex-issēt,	he might	Rex-issent,	they might
	have		have
	ruled.		ruled.

## INFINITIVE MOOD.

IMPERF.	Rēg-ērē,	to rule.
PERFECT.	Rex-issē,	{ to have
		{ ruled.
FUTURE.	Rect-ūrum	{ to be about
	(am, um) essē,	{ to rule.

## GFRUND.

Gen.	Rēg-endī,	of ruling
Dat.	Rēg-endo,	for ruling
Acc.	Rēg-endum,	the ruling
Abbl.	Rēg-endo,	by ruling.

## SUPINES.

Rec-tum,	to rule.
Rec-tū,	to be ruled.

## PARTICIPLES.

IMPERF.	Rēg-ens, entis,	ruling.
FUTURE.	Rec-tūrūs, a, um,	about
		to rule.

## § 94. FOURTH OR I CONJUGATION.—ACTIVE VOICE.

Audīo, audīvī, audītum, audirē,—to hear. Stem: audi-

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

## 1. PRESENT TENSE.

S. Aud-io,	<i>I hear</i>	P. Aud-īmūs,	<i>We hear</i>
Aud-is,	<i>thou hearest</i>	Aud-itīs,	<i>ye hear</i>
Aud-īt,	<i>he hears.</i>	Aud-iunt,	<i>they hear.</i>

## 2. PAST-IMPERFECT TENSE.

S. Aud-iēbam,	<i>I was hearing</i>	P. Aud-iēbāmūs,	<i>We were hearing</i>
Aud-iēbās,	<i>thou wast hearing</i>	Aud-iēbātīs,	<i>ye were hearing</i>
Aud-iēbāt,	<i>he was hearing.</i>	Aud-iēbant,	<i>they were hearing.</i>

## 3. FUTURE TENSE.

S. Aud-iam,	<i>I shall hear</i>	P. Aud-iēmūs,	<i>We shall hear</i>
Aud-iēs,	<i>thou wilt hear</i>	Aud-iētīs,	<i>ye will hear</i>
Aud-iēt,	<i>he will hear.</i>	Aud-ient,	<i>they will hear.</i>

## 4. PERFECT TENSE.

S. Aud-ivī,	<i>I have heard, or</i> <i>I heard</i>	P. Aud-ivīmūs,	<i>We have heard.</i> <i>or we heard</i>
Aud-ivistī,	<i>thou hast heard, or</i> <i>thou heardst</i>	Aud-ivistīs,	<i>ye have heard,</i> <i>or ye heard</i>
Aud-ivīt,	<i>he has heard, or</i> <i>he heard.</i>	Aud-ivērunt or -ivērē,	<i>they have heard,</i> <i>or they heard.</i>

## 5. PAST-PERFECT TENSE.

S. Aud-ivēram,	<i>I had heard</i>	P. Aud-ivērāmūs,	<i>We had heard</i>
Aud-ivērās,	<i>thou hadst heard</i>	Aud-ivērātīs,	<i>ye had heard</i>
Aud-ivērāt,	<i>he had heard.</i>	Aud-ivērant,	<i>they had heard.</i>

## 6. FUTURE-PERFECT TENSE.

S. Aud-ivēro,	<i>I shall</i> { <i>have</i>	P. Aud-ivērimūs,	<i>We shall</i> { <i>have</i>
Aud-ivērīs,	<i>thou wilt</i> { <i>heard.</i>	Aud-ivērītīs,	<i>ye will</i> { <i>heard.</i>
Aud-ivērīt,	<i>he will</i> { <i>heard.</i>	Aud-ivērint,	<i>they will</i> { <i>heard.</i>

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

## PRESENT TENSE.

S. Aud-I,	<i>Hear thou</i>	P. Aud-Itē,	<i>Hear ye.</i>
-----------	------------------	-------------	-----------------

## FUTURE TENSE.

S. Aud-Ito,	<i>Thou shalt hear</i>	P. Aud-Itōtē,	<i>Ye shall hear</i>
Aud-Ito,	<i>thou shalt hear, or</i> <i>let him hear</i>	Aud-iunto,	<i>thou shalt hear, or</i> <i>let them hear</i>

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

## 1. PRESENT TENSE.

S. Aud-iam,	<i>I may hear</i>	P. Aud-iāmūs,	<i>We may hear</i>
Aud-iās,	<i>thou mayst hear</i>	Aud-iātis,	<i>ye may hear</i>
Aud-iāt,	<i>he may hear.</i>	Aud-iant,	<i>they may hear.</i>

## 2. PAST-IMPERFECT TENSE.

S. Aud-irem,	<i>I might hear</i>	P. Aud-irēmūs,	<i>We might hear</i>
Aud-irēs,	<i>thou mightst hear</i>	Aud-irētis,	<i>ye might hear</i>
Aud-irēt,	<i>he might hear.</i>	Aud-irent,	<i>they might hear.</i>

## 3. PERFECT TENSE.

S. Aud-ivērim,	<i>I may</i>	P. Aud-ivērimūs,	<i>We may</i>
Aud-ivērīs,	<i>thou mayst</i>	Aud-ivēritis,	<i>ye may</i>
Aud-ivērīt,	<i>he may</i>	Aud-ivērint,	<i>they may</i>

## 4. PAST-PERFECT TENSE.

S. Aud-ivissem,	<i>I might</i>	P. Aud-ivissēmūs,	<i>We might</i>
Aud-ivissēs,	<i>thou mightst</i>	Aud-ivissētis,	<i>ye might</i>
Aud-ivissēt,	<i>he might</i>	Aud-ivissent,	<i>they might</i>

## INFINITIVE MOOD.

IMPERF. Aud-irē,	<i>to hear.</i>
PERFECT. Aud-ivissē,	<i>{ to have heard.</i>
FUTURE. Aud-itūrum	<i>{ to be about</i>
(am, um) essē,	<i>{ to hear.</i>

## GERUND.

Gen. Aud-iendi,	<i>of hearing</i>
Dat. Aud-iendo,	<i>for hearing</i>
Acc. Aud-iendum,	<i>the hearing</i>
Abl. Aud-iendo,	<i>by hearing.</i>

## SUPINES.

Aud-itum,	<i>to hear.</i>
Aud-itū,	<i>to be heard.</i>

## PARTICIPLES.

IMPERF. Aud-iens, ientis,	<i>hearing.</i>
FUTURE. Aud-itūrus, a, um,	<i>about to hear.</i>

*Obs.* In all the Perfect Tenses *r* is frequently omitted before *c* and *i*. The two *i*'s are often contracted into *i*: as,

audivisti	becomes	audisti	or	audisti
audivistis	"	audistis	or	audistis
audivit	"	audit		
audiverunt	"	audierunt		
audivēram	"	audiēram		
audivēro	"	audiēro		

audiverim	becomes	audierim
audivissem	"	audissem
	"	audissem
audivissē	"	audissē
	"	audissē.

## § 95. FIRST OR A CONJUGATION.—PASSIVE VOICE.

Āmōr, āmātūs sum or fui, āmārī,—to be loved. Stem : āma-

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

## 1. PRESENT TENSE.

S. Am-ōr,	<i>I am loved</i>	P. Am-āmūr,	<i>We are loved</i>
Am-ārīs or	} <i>thou art loved</i>	Am-āmīnī,	<i>ye are loved</i>
ām-ārē,		Am-antūr,	<i>they are loved.</i>
Am-ātūr,	<i>he is loved.</i>		

## 2. PAST-IMPERFECT TENSE.

S. Am-ābār,	{ <i>I was being</i>	P. Am-ābāmūr,	{ <i>We were being</i>
Am-ābārīs or	{ <i>loved</i>		{ <i>loved</i>
ām-ābārē,	{ <i>thou wast being</i>	Am-ābāmīnī,	{ <i>ye were being</i>
	{ <i>loved</i>		{ <i>loved</i>
Am-ābātūr,	{ <i>he was being</i>	Am-ābantūr,	{ <i>they were being</i>
	{ <i>loved.</i>		{ <i>loved.</i>

## 3. FUTURE TENSE.

S. Am-ābōr,	<i>I shall be loved</i>	P. Am-ābīmūr,	<i>We shall be loved</i>
Am-ābērīs or	} <i>thou wilt be loved</i>	Am-ābīmīnī,	<i>ye will be loved</i>
ām-ābērē,		Am-ābantūr,	<i>they will be loved.</i>
Am-ābītūr,	<i>he will be loved.</i>		

## 4. PERFECT TENSE.

S. Am-ātūs sum	} <i>I have been loved,</i>	P. Am-ātī sūmūs	{ <i>We have been</i>
or fui		or fuīmūs,	
			{ <i>loved, or were</i>
			{ <i>loved</i>
Am-ātūs ēs	{ <i>thou hast been</i>	Am-ātī estīs	{ <i>ye have been loved,</i>
or fuistī,		or fuistīs,	
	{ <i>loved, or wast</i>		{ <i>or were loved</i>
	{ <i>loved</i>		
Am-ātūs est	{ <i>he has been loved,</i>	Am-ātī sunt,	{ <i>they have been</i>
or fuit,		fuērunt, or	
	{ <i>or was loved.</i>	fuērē,	{ <i>loved, or were</i>
			{ <i>loved.</i>

## 5. PAST-PERFECT TENSE.

S. Am-ātūs ēram	} <i>I had been loved</i>	P. Am-ātī ērāmūs	{ <i>We had been</i>
or fuēram,		or fuērāmūs,	
			{ <i>loved</i>
Am-ātūs ērās	{ <i>thou hadst been</i>	Am-ātī ērātīs	{ <i>ye had been loved</i>
or fuērās,		or fuērātīs,	
	{ <i>loved</i>		
Am-ātūs ērāt	{ <i>he had been loved.</i>	Am-ātī ērant	{ <i>they had been</i>
or fuērāt,		or fuērant,	
			{ <i>loved.</i>

## 6. FUTURE-IMPERFECT TENSE.

S. Am-ātūs ēro	} <i>I shall have been</i>	P. Am-ātī ērīmūs	{ <i>We shall have</i>
or fuēro,		or fuērīmūs,	
	{ <i>loved</i>		{ <i>been loved</i>
Am-ātūs ērīs	{ <i>thou wilt have</i>	Am-ātī ērītīs	{ <i>ye will have been</i>
or fuērīs,		or fuērītīs,	
	{ <i>been loved</i>		{ <i>loved</i>
Am-ātūs ērīt	{ <i>he will have been</i>	Am-ātī ērunt	{ <i>they will have</i>
or fuērīt,		or fuērunt,	
	{ <i>loved.</i>		{ <i>been loved.</i>

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

## PRESENT TENSE.

Am-äre, *Be thou loved.* | P. Am-äminī, *Be ye loved.*

## FUTURE TENSE.

Am-ätör, *Thou shalt be loved* | P. Am-antor, *They shall be*  
 Am-ätör, *he shall be loved, or* | *loved, or let*  
                   *let him be loved.* | *them be loved.*

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

## 1. PRESENT TENSE.

Am-ër, *I may be loved* | P. Am-ëmür, *We may be loved*  
 Am-ëris or } *thou mayst be* | Am-ëminī, *ye may be loved*  
           äm-ërë, } *loved* | *Am-ëntür, they may be loved.*  
 Am-ëtür, *he may be loved.*

## 2. PAST-IMPERFECT TENSE.

Am-ärër, *I might be loved* | P. Am-ärëmür, *We might be loved*  
 Am-ärëris or } *thou mightst be* | Am-ärëminī, *ye might be loved*  
           äm-ärëre, } *loved* | *Am-ärentür, they might be loved.*  
 Am-ärëtür, *he might be loved.*

## 3. PERFECT TENSE.

Am-ätüs sim } *I may have been* | P. Am-ätī simūs } *We may have*  
           or fuërim, } *loved* |                   or fuërimūs, } *been loved*  
 Am-ätüs sis } *thou mayst have* | Am-ätī sītis } *ye may have been*  
           or fuëris, } *been loved* |                   or fuëritis, } *loved*  
 Am-ätüs sīt } *he may have been* | Am-ätī sint } *they may have*  
           or fuërit, } *loved.* |                   or fuërint, } *been loved.*

## 4. PAST-PERFECT TENSE.

Am-ätüs essem } *I might have been* | P. Am-ätī essëmüs } *We might have*  
           or fuissēm, } *loved* |                   or fuissëmūs, } *been loved*  
 Am-ätüs essēs } *thou mightst have* | Am-ätī essētis, } *ye might have*  
           or fuissēs, } *been loved* |                   or fuissētis, } *been loved*  
 Am-ätüs essēt } *he might have* | Am-ätī essent } *they might have*  
           or fuissēt, } *been loved.* |                   or fuissent, } *been loved.*

## INFINITIVE MOOD.

IMPERFECT. Am-äri, *to be loved.*  
 PERFECT. Am-ätum (am, um) essē or fuissē, *to have been loved.*  
 FUTURE. Am-ätum iri, *to be about to be loved.*

Obs. The form *ämätum* in the Future-Infinitive is the Supine; and consequently the same for all genders.

## PARTICIPLES.

PERFECT. Am-ätüs (a, um), *loved or having been loved.*  
 GERUNDIVE. Am-andüs (a, um), *fit to be loved.*

## § 96. SECOND OR E CONJUGATION.—PASSIVE VOICE.

Mönëör, mönītūs sum or fui, mönëri,—to be advised. Stem: möne-

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

## 1. PRESENT TENSE.

S. Mön-eör,	<i>I am advised</i>	P. Mön-ëmür,	<i>We are advised</i>
Mön-ëris or	<i>} thou art advised</i>	Mön-ëmīnī,	<i>ye are advised</i>
mön-ërë,		Mön-entür,	<i>they are advised.</i>
Mön-ëtür,	<i>he is advised.</i>		

## 2. PAST-IMPERFECT TENSE.

S. Mön-ëbär,	<i>{ I was being ad- vised</i>	P. Mön-ëbämür,	<i>{ We were being advised</i>
Mön-ëbäris or	<i>{ thou wast being advised</i>	Mön-ëbämīnī,	<i>{ ye were being advised</i>
mön-ëbärë,		Mön-ëbantür,	<i>{ they were being advised.</i>
Mön-ëbätür,	<i>{ he was being ad- vised.</i>		

## 3. FUTURE TENSE.

S. Mön-ëbör,	<i>{ I shall be ad- vised</i>	P. Mön-ëbīmür,	<i>{ We shall be ad- vised</i>
Mön-ëbëris or	<i>{ thou wilt be ad- vised</i>	Mön-ëbīmīnī,	<i>{ ye will be ad- vised</i>
Mön-ëbërë,		Mön-ëbuntür,	<i>{ they will be ad- vised.</i>
Mön-ëbītür,	<i>{ he will be ad- vised.</i>		

## 4. PERFECT TENSE.

S. Mön-ītūs sum	<i>{ I have been ad- vised, or was advised</i>	P. Mön-ītī sūmūs	<i>{ We have been ad- vised, or were advised</i>
or fui,		or fuīmūs,	
Mön-ītūs ës	<i>{ thou hast been ad- vised, or wast advised</i>	Mön-ītī estīs	<i>{ ye have been ad- vised, or were advised</i>
or fuistī,		or fuistīs,	
Mön-ītūs est	<i>{ he has been ad- vised, or was advised.</i>	Mön-ītī sunt,	<i>{ they have been ad- vised, or were advised.</i>
or fuīt,		fuērunt, or fuërë,	

## 5. PAST-PERFECT TENSE.

S. Mön-ītūs eram	<i>{ I had been ad- vised</i>	P. Mön-ītī ërāmūs	<i>{ We had been ad- vised</i>
or fuëram,		or fuërāmūs,	
Mön-ītūs ëräs	<i>{ thou hadst been advised</i>	Mön-ītī ërātīs	<i>{ ye had been ad- vised</i>
or fuëräs,		or fuërātīs,	
Mön-ītūs ërät	<i>{ he had been ad- vised.</i>	Mön-ītī ërant	<i>{ they had been ad- vised.</i>
or fuërät,		or fuërant,	

## 6. FUTURE-PERFECT TENSE.

S. Mön-ītūs ëro	<i>{ I shall have been advised</i>	P. Mön-ītī ërimūs	<i>{ We shall have been advised</i>
or fuëro,		or fuërimūs,	
Mön-ītūs ëris	<i>{ thou wilt have been advised</i>	Mön-ītī ëritīs	<i>{ ye will have been advised</i>
or fuërīs,		or fuëritīs,	
Mön-ītūs ërit	<i>{ he will have been advised.</i>	Mön-ītī ërunt	<i>{ they will have been advised.</i>
or fuërīt,		or fuërint,	

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

## PRESENT TENSE.

*S. Mön-êrê, Be thou advised. | P. Mön-ēmīnī, Be ye advised.*

## FUTURE TENSE.

*S. Mön-êtôr, Thou shalt be advised | P. Mön-entôr, They shall be advised, or let them be advised.*  
*Mön-êtôr, he shall be advised, or let him be advised.*

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

## 1. PRESENT TENSE.

*S. Mön-eăr, { I may be advised  
 Mön-eărīs or { thou mayst be advised  
 mön-eărê, { advised  
 Mön-eătūr, { he may be advised.* | *P. Mön-eāmūr, { We may be advised  
 Mön-eāmīnī, { ye may be advised  
 Mön-eantūr, { they may be advised.*

## 2. PAST-IMPERFECT TENSE.

*S. Mön-êrêr, { I might be advised  
 Mön-êrêrīs or { thou mightst be advised  
 mön-êrêrê, { advised  
 Mön-êrêtūr, { he might be advised.* | *P. Mön-êrēmūr, { We might be advised  
 Mön-êrēmīnī, { ye might be advised  
 Mön-êrentūr, { they might be advised.*

## 3. PERFECT TENSE.

*S. Mön-ītūs sim { I may have been advised  
 or fuêrim, { advised  
 Mön-ītūs sīs { thou mayst have been advised  
 or fuêrīs, { been advised  
 Mön-ītūs sīt { he may have been advised.* | *P. Mön-ītī sīmūs { We may have been advised  
 or fuêrimūs, { been advised  
 Mön-ītī sītīs { ye may have been advised  
 or fuêritīs, { advised  
 Mön-ītī sint { they may have been advised.*

## 4. PAST-PERFECT TENSE.

*S. Mön-ītūs essem { I might have been advised  
 or fuissēm, { advised  
 Mön-ītūs essēs { thou mightst have been advised  
 or fuissēs, { been advised  
 Mön-ītūs essēt { he might have been advised.* | *P. Mön-ītī essēmūs { We might have been advised  
 or fuissēmūs, { been advised  
 Mön-ītī essētīs { ye might have been advised  
 or fuissētīs, { been advised  
 Mön-ītī essent { they might have been advised.*

## INFINITIVE MOOD.

*IMPERFECT. Mön-êrī, to be advised.*  
*PERFECT. Mön-ītum (am, um), essê or fuissê, to have been advised.*  
*FUTURE. Mön-ītum irī, to be about to be advised.*

## PARTICIPLES.

*PERFECT. Mön-ītūs (a, um), advised or having been advised.*  
*GERUNDIVE. Mön-enāūs (a, um), fit to be advised.*

## § 97. THIRD OR CONSONANT AND U CONJUGATION.

## PASSIVE VOICE.

Rēgōr, rectūs sum or fui, rēgī,—to be ruled. Stem: rēg-

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

## 1. PRESENT TENSE.

S. Rēg-ōr,	I am ruled	P. Rēg-īmūr,	We are ruled
Rēg-ēris	or { thou art ruled	Rēg-īmīnī,	ye are ruled
rēg-ērē,		Rēg-untūr,	they are ruled.
Rēg-itūr,	he is ruled.		

## 2. PAST-IMPERFECT TENSE.

S. Rēg-ēbār,	{ I was being ruled	P. Rēg-ēbāmūr,	{ We were being ruled
Rēg-ēbāris or	{ thou wast being ruled	Rēg-ēbāmīnī,	{ ye were being ruled
rēg-ēbārē,		Rēg-ēbantūr,	
Rēg-ēbātūr,	{ he was being ruled.		{ they were being ruled

## 3. FUTURE TENSE.

S. Rēg-ār,	I shall be ruled	P. Rēg-ēmūr,	We shall be ruled
Rēg-ēris or	{ thou wilt be ruled	Rēg-ēmīnī,	ye will be ruled
rēg-ērē,		Rēg-entūr,	they will be ruled.
Rēg-ētūr,	he will be ruled.		

## 4. PERFECT TENSE.

S. Rec-tūs sum	{ I have been ruled, or was ruled	P. Rec-tī sūmūs	{ We have been ruled, or were ruled
or fui,		or fuimūs,	
Rec-tūs ēs or	{ thou hast been ruled, or wast ruled	Rec-tī estīs	{ ye have been ruled, or were ruled
fuistī,		or fuistīs,	
Rectūs est or	{ he has been ruled, or was ruled.	Rec-tī sunt,	{ they have been ruled, or were ruled.
fuit,		fuērunt, or fuērē,	

## 5. PAST-PERFECT TENSE.

S. Rec-tūs ēram	{ I had been ruled	Rec-tī ērāmūs	{ We had been ruled
or fuēram,		or fuērāmūs,	
Rec-tūs ērās	{ thou hadst been ruled	Rec-tī ērātīs	{ ye had been ruled
or fuērās,		or fuērātīs,	
Rec-tūs ērāt	{ he had been ruled.	Rec-tī ērant	{ they had been ruled.
or fuērāt,		or fuērant,	

## 6. FUTURE-PERFECT TENSE.

S. Rec-tūs ēro	{ I shall have been ruled	P. Rec-tī ērimūs	{ We shall have been ruled
or fuēro,		or fuērimūs,	
Rec-tūs ēris	{ thou wilt have been ruled	Rec-tī ēritīs	{ ye will have been ruled
or fuēris,		or fuēritīs,	
Rec-tūs ērit	{ he will have been ruled.	Rec-tī ērint	{ they will have been ruled.
or fuērit,		or fuērint,	



## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

## PRESENT TENSE.

S. Rēg-ērē, *Be thou ruled.* | P. Rēg-īmīnī, *Be ye ruled.*

## FUTURE TENSE.

S. Rēg-ītōr, *Thou shalt be ruled* | P. Rēg-untōr, *They shall be*  
 Rēg-ītōr, *he shall be ruled, or* | *ruled, or let*  
                   *let him be ruled.* | *them be ruled.*

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

## 1. PRESENT TENSE.

S. Rēg-ār, *I may be ruled* | P. Rēg-āmūr, *We may be ruled*  
 Rēg-ārīs or } *thou mayst be* | Rēg-āmīnī, *ye may be ruled*  
           rēg-ārē, } *ruled* |  
 Rēg-ātūr, *he may be ruled.* | Rēg-antūr, *they may be ruled.*

## 2. PAST-IMPERFECT TENSE.

S. Rēg-ērēr, *I might be ruled* | P. Rēg-ērēmūr, *We might be ruled*  
 Rēg-ērērīs or } *thou mightst be* | Rēg-ērēmīnī, *ye might be ruled*  
           rēg-ērērē, } *ruled* |  
 Rēg-ērētūr, *he might be ruled.* | Rēg-ērentūr, *they might be ruled.*

## 3. PERFECT TENSE.

S. Rec-tūs sim } *I may have been* | P. Rec-tī simūs } *We may have*  
           or fuērīm, } *ruled* |           or fuērīmūs, } *been ruled*  
 Rec-tūs sis } *thou mayst have* | Rec-tī sitīs or } *ye may have been*  
           or fuērīs, } *been ruled* |           fuērītīs, } *ruled*  
 Rec-tūs sīt or } *he may have been* | Rec-tī sint or } *they may have*  
           fuērīt, } *ruled.* |           fuērīnt, } *been ruled.*

## 4. PAST-PERFECT TENSE.

S. Rec-tūs essem } *I might have* | P. Rec-tī essēmūs } *We might have*  
           or fuīssēm, } *been ruled* |           or fuīssēmūs, } *been ruled*  
 Rec-tūs essēs } *thou mightst have* | Rec-tī essētīs } *ye might have*  
           or fuīssēs, } *been ruled* |           or fuīssētīs, } *been ruled*  
 Rec-tūs essēt } *he might have* | Rec-tī essent } *they might have*  
           or fuīssēt, } *been ruled.* |           or fuīssent, } *been ruled.*

## INFINITIVE MOOD.

IMPERFECT. Rēg-ī, *to be ruled.*  
 PERFECT. Rec-tum (am, um) essē or fuīssē, *to have been ruled.*  
 FUTURE. Rec-tum irī, *to be about to be ruled.*

## PARTICIPLES.

PERFECT. Rec-tūs (a, um), *ruled or having been ruled.*  
 GERUNDIVE. Rēg-endūs (a, um), *fit to be ruled.*

## § 38. FOURTH OR I CONJUGATION.—PASSIVE VOICE.

Audīr, audītus sum or fui, audiri,—to be heard. Stem: audī-

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

## 1. PRESENT TENSE.

S. Aud-iōr,	I am heard	P. Aud-imūr,	We are heard
Aud-iris or	} thou art heard	Aud-imīnī,	ye are heard
aud-irē,		Aud-iantūr,	they are heard.
Aud-itūr,	he is heard.		

## 2. PAST-IMPERFECT TENSE.

S. Aud-iēbār,	{ I was being heard	P. Aud-iēbāmūr,	{ We were being heard
Aud-iēbāris or	{ thou wast being heard	Aud-iēbāmīnī,	{ ye were being heard
aud-iēbārē,		Aud-iēbantūr,	
Aud-iēbātūr,	{ he was being heard.		

## 3. FUTURE TENSE.

S. Aud-iār,	I shall be heard	P. Aud-iēmūr,	We shall be heard
Aud-iēris or	{ thou wilt be heard	Aud-iēmīnī,	ye will be heard
aud-iērē,		Aud-ientūr,	they will be heard.
Aud-iētūr	he will be heard.		

## 4. PERFECT TENSE.

S. Aud-itūs sum	{ I have been heard, or was heard	P. Aud-itū sūmūs	{ We have been heard, or were heard
or fui,		or fuimūs,	
Aud-itūs es	{ thou hast been heard, or wast heard	Aud-itī estīs	{ ye have been heard, or were heard
or fuisti,		or fuistīs,	
Aud-itūs est	{ he has been heard, or was heard.	Aud-itī sunt,	{ they have been heard, or were heard.
or fuit,		fuērunt, or fuērē,	

## 5. PAST-PERFECT TENSE.

S. Aud-itūs ēram	{ I had been heard	P. Aud-itī ērāmūs	{ We had been heard
or fuēram,		or fuērāmūs,	
Aud-itūs ērās	{ thou hadst been heard	Aud-itī ērātīs	{ ye had been heard
or fuērās,		or fuērātīs,	
Aud-itūs ērāt	{ he had been heard.	Aud-itī ērant	{ they had been heard.
or fuērāt,		or fuērant,	

## 6. FUTURE-PERFECT TENSE.

S. Aud-itūs ēro	{ I shall have been heard	P. Aud-itī ērimūs	{ We shall have been heard
or fuēro,		or fuērimūs,	
Aud-itūs ēris	{ thou wilt have been heard	Aud-itī ēritīs	{ ye will have been heard
or fuērīs,		or fuērītīs,	
Aud-itūs ērit	{ he will have been heard.	Aud-itī ērunt	{ they will have been heard.
or fuērīt,		or fuērint,	

## PERATIVE MOOD.

## PRESENT TENSE.

S. Aud-irē, *Be thou heard.* | P. Aud-iminī, *Be ye heard.*

## FUTURE TENSE.

S. Aud-itōr, *Thou shalt be heard* | P. Aud-iuntōr, *They shall be heard,*  
 Aud-itōr, *he shall be heard, or* | *or let them be*  
                   *let him be heard.* | *heard.*

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD

## 1. PRESENT TENSE.

S. Aud-iār, *I may be heard* | P. Aud-iāmūr, *We may be heard*  
 Aud-iārīs or } *thou mayst be* | Aud-iāmīnī, *ye may be heard*  
 aud-iārē, } *heard* | Aud-iantūr, *they may be heard.*  
 Aud-iātūr, *he may be heard.*

## 2. PAST-IMPERFECT TENSE.

S. Aud-irēr, *I might be heard* | P. Aud-irēmūr, *We might be heard*  
 Aud-irērīs or } *thou mightst be* | Aud-irēmīnī, *ye might be heard*  
 aud-irērē, } *heard* | Aud-irētūr, *they might be heard.*  
 Aud-irētūr, *he might be heard.*

## 3. PERFECT TENSE.

S. Aud-itūs sim } *I may have been* | P. Aud-itī simūs } *We may have*  
 or fuērīm, } *heard* | or fuērīmūs, } *been heard*  
 Aud-itūs sis } *thou mayst have* | Aud-itī sitīs } *ye may have been*  
 or fuērīs, } *been heard* | or fuērītīs, } *heard*  
 Aud-itūs sīt } *he may have been* | Aud-itī sint } *they may have*  
 or fuērīt, } *heard.* | or fuērīnt, } *been heard.*

## 4. PAST-PERFECT TENSE.

S. Aud-itūs essem } *I might have been* | P. Aud-itī essēmūs } *We might have*  
 or fuissēm, } *heard* | or fuissēmūs, } *been heard*  
 Aud-itūs essēs } *thou mightst have* | Aud-itī essētīs } *ye might have*  
 or fuissēs, } *been heard* | or fuissētīs, } *been heard*  
 Aud-itūs essēt } *he might have* | Aud-itī essent } *they might have*  
 or fuissēt, } *been heard.* | or fuissent, } *been heard.*

## INFINITIVE MOOD.

IMPERFECT. Aud-irī, *to be heard.*  
 PERFECT. Aud-itum (am, um) essē or fuissē, *to have been heard.*  
 FUTURE. Aud-itum irī, *to be about to be heard.*

## PARTICIPLES.

PERFECT. Aud-itūs (a, um), *heard or having been heard.*  
 GERUNDIVE. Aud-iendūs (a, um) *fit to be heard.*

## § 99. EXAMPLES FOR CONJUGATION.

Examples for Conjugation like *amo*. (See also § 149.)

accūso, <i>I accuse.</i>	hōnōro, <i>I honour.</i>	opto, <i>I wish.</i>
āro, <i>I plough.</i>	laudo, <i>I praise.</i>	orno, <i>I adorn.</i>
elāmo, <i>I cry out.</i>	libēro, <i>I set free.</i>	parō, <i>I prepare.</i>
hābito, <i>I dwell.</i>	nōmīno, <i>I name.</i>	rōgo, <i>I ask.</i>

Examples for Conjugation like *moneo*. (See also § 150.)

adhībeo, <i>I apply.</i>	hābeo, <i>I have.</i>	plāceo, <i>I please.</i>
cōhībeo, <i>I restrain.</i>	mēreo, <i>I deserve.</i>	praebeo, <i>I present.</i>
dēbeo, <i>I owe.</i>	nōceo, <i>I injure.</i>	prōhibeo, <i>I prevent.</i>
exerceo, <i>I exercise.</i>	pāreo, <i>I obey.</i>	terreo, <i>I frighten.</i>

Examples for Conjugation like *rēgo*. (See also §§ 157, sqq.)

cingo, <i>I gird.</i>	dūco, <i>I lead.</i>	plango, <i>I beat.</i>	tēgo, <i>I cover.</i>
dīco, <i>I say.</i>	jungo, <i>I join.</i>	sūgo, <i>I suck.</i>	tingo, <i>I dye.</i>

*Obs.* Dico, *speak*, dūco, *lead*, have etc, dūc, in the Singular Imperative Present Active. See § 106, *Obs.* (p. 69).

Examples for Conjugation like *audio*. (See also § 163.)

custōdio, <i>I guard.</i>	finio, <i>I end.</i>	mūnio, <i>I fortify.</i>
dormio, <i>I sleep.</i>	impēdio, <i>I hinder.</i>	nūtrio, <i>I nourish.</i>
ēūdio, <i>I train.</i>	mollio, <i>I soften.</i>	pūnio, <i>I punish.</i>

## § 100. THIRD CONJUGATION WITH I (in the Imperfect Tenses).

Cāpio, cēpī, captum, cāpērē,—to take. Stem: cāpi-, cāp-

## I. ACTIVE VOICE.

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

<i>Present.</i>	Cāp-io, <i>I take</i>	Cāp-īmūs, <i>We take</i>
	Cāp-īs, <i>thou takest</i>	Cāp-ītīs, <i>ye take</i>
	Cāp-īt, <i>he takes.</i>	Cāp-iunt, <i>they take.</i>
<i>Past-Imperf.</i>	Cāp-iēbam, <i>I was taking.</i>	liko aud-iēbam.
<i>Future.</i>	Cāp-iam, <i>I shall take,</i>	„ aud-iam.

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

<i>Present.</i>	Cāp-iam, <i>I may take,</i>	like aud-iam.
<i>Past-Imperf.</i>	Cāp-ērem, <i>I might take,</i>	„ rēg-ērem.

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

<i>Present.</i>	Cāp-ē, <i>take thou,</i>	liko rēg-ē.
<i>Future.</i>	Cāp-īto, <i>thou shalt take,</i>	„ rēg-īto.
	Cāp-iunto, <i>they shall take,</i>	„ aud-iunto.

## INFINITIVE MOOD.

*Imperfect.* Căp-ěřě, to take, like rěg-ěřě.

## PARTICIPLE.

*Imperfect.* Căp-iens, taking, like aud-iens.

## GERUND.

Căp-iendi, of taking, like aud-iendi.

## II. PASSIVE VOICE.

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

<i>Present.</i>	Căp-īōr,	<i>I am taken</i>	Căp-īmūr,	<i>We are taken</i>
	Căp-ěris	<i>thou art</i>	Căp-īmīnī,	<i>ye are taken</i>
	or -ěřě,	<i>taken</i>		
	Căp-ītūr,	<i>he is taken.</i>	Căp-iuntār,	<i>they are taken.</i>

*Past-Imperf.* Căp-iěbār, *I was being taken,* like aud-iěbār.

*Future.* Căp-iār, *I shall be taken,* „ aud-iār.

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

*Present.* Căp-iār, *I may be taken,* like aud-iār.  
*Past-Imperf.* Căp-ěřēr, *I might be taken,* „ rěg-ěřēr.

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

*Present.* Căp-ěřě, *be thou taken* like rěg-ěřě.  
*Future.* Căp-ītōr, *thou shalt be taken,* „ rěg-ītōr.  
Căp-iuntor, *they shall be taken,* „ aud-iuntōr

## INFINITIVE MOOD.

*Imperfect.* Căp-ī, to be taken, „ rěg-ī.

*Obs. 1.* The Tenses derived from the Perfect and Supine are not given, as their conjugation is quite regular: cēp-ī, cēp-ěram, cēp-ěro, &c.; capturus sim, captus sum, &c.

*Obs. 2.* The *i* in the Imperf. Tenses is dropped before *i* and *er*. In the Imperative the final *i* is changed into *e*.

*Obs. 3.* The Verbs conjugated like cāpio are:

fācio,	fēcī,	factum,	fācērě,	<i>make.</i>
jācio,	jēcī,	jactum,	jācērě,	<i>throw.</i>
fūgio,	fūgī,	fūgitum,	fūgērě,	<i>flee.</i>
fōdio,	fōdī,	fossum,	fōdērě,	<i>dig.</i>
rāpio,	rāpūī,	raptum,	rāpērě,	<i>seize.</i>
pārio,	pēpērī,	partum,	pārērě,	<i>bring forth.</i>
quātio,	(no perfect),	quassum,	quātērě,	<i>shake.</i>
cūpio,	cūpīvī,	cūpītum,	cūpērě,	<i>desire.</i>
sāpio,	sāpīvī,		sāpērě,	<i>taste.</i>
lācio,			lācērě,	<i>draw</i>
spēcio,			spēcērě,	<i>look.</i>

Also the Deponent Verbs:

grādīōr,	gressūs sum,	grādī,	<i>walk.</i>
mōriōr,	mortūūs sum,	mōrī,	<i>die.</i>
pātīōr,	passūs sum,	pātī,	<i>suffer.</i>

*Obs. 4.* Ōrior, ortus sum, ōrīrī, to rise, follows the Fourth Conjugation in the Infinitive Mood, ōrīrī, Imperf. Subj. ōrīter, less frequently ōrērer, Future Part. ōrītūrus. So also, mōrītūrus, from mōrior.



III. Lōquōr, lōcūtūs sum, lōquī, *to speak*, like rēgōr.

IV. Partiōr, partitūs sum, partīrī, *to divide*, „ audiōr.

III.			IV.			INDICATIVE MOOD.
Present.	Lōquōr, Loqu-ērīs, (ērē), &c.	<i>I speak.</i> } <i>thou speakest,</i> <i>&amp;c.</i>	Partiōr, Part-iris (irē), &c.	<i>I divide.</i> } <i>thou dividest,</i> <i>&amp;c.</i>		
1st-Imp.	Lōqu-ēbār,	<i>I was speaking.</i>	Part-iēbār,	<i>I was dividing.</i>		
Future.	Lōqu-ār,	<i>I shall speak.</i>	Part-iār,	<i>I shall divide.</i>		
Perfect.	Lōcū-tūs sum,	} <i>I have spoken,</i> <i>or I spoke.</i>	Part-itūs sum,	} <i>I have divided,</i> <i>or I divided.</i>		}
1st-Perf.	Lōcū-tūs ēram,	} <i>I had spoken.</i>	Part-itūs ēram,	} <i>I had divided.</i>		
2nd-Perf.	Lōcū-tūs ēro,	} <i>I shall have</i> <i>spoken.</i>	Part-itūs ēro,	} <i>I shall have di-</i> <i>vided.</i>		
Present.	Lōqu-ār,	<i>I may speak.</i>	Part-iār,	<i>I may divide.</i>		}
1st-Imp.	Lōqu-ērēr,	<i>I might speak.</i>	Part-irēr,	<i>I might divide.</i>		
Perfect.	Lōcū-tūs sim,	} <i>I may have</i> <i>spoken.</i>	Part-itūs sim,	} <i>I may have di-</i> <i>vided.</i>		
1st-Perf.	Lōcū-tūs essem,	} <i>I might have</i> <i>spoken.</i>	Part-itūs essem,	} <i>I might have</i> <i>divided.</i>		
Present.	Lōqu-ērē,	<i>Speak thou.</i> } <i>thou shalt</i> <i>speak.</i>	Part-irē,	<i>Divide thou.</i> } <i>thou shalt di-</i> <i>vide.</i>		}
Future.	Lōqu-itōr,		Part-itōr,			
1st-perf.	Lōqu-ī,	<i>to speak.</i>	Part-irī,	<i>to divide.</i>		
Perfect.	Lōcū-tum essē,	} <i>to have spoken.</i>	Part-itum essē,	} <i>to have divided.</i>		
Future.	Lōcū-tūrum essē,	} <i>to be about to</i> <i>speak.</i>	Part-itūrum essē,	} <i>to be about to</i> <i>divide.</i>		}
1st-perf.	Lōqu-ens,	<i>speaking.</i>	Part-iens,	<i>dividing.</i>		
Future.	Lōcū-tūrus	<i>about to speak.</i>	Part-itūrus,	<i>about to divide.</i>		
Perfect.	Lōcū-tūs,	<i>having spoken.</i>	Part-itūs,	<i>having divided.</i>		
Gerundive.	Lōqu-endūs,	<i>fit to be spoken.</i>	Part-iendūs,	<i>fit to be divided.</i>		}
SUPINES.	Lōcū-tum,	<i>to speak.</i>	Part-itum,	<i>to divide.</i>		
	Lōcū-tū,	<i>to be spoken.</i>	Part-itū,	<i>to be divided.</i>		
GERUND.	Lōqu-endi,	<i>of speaking.</i>	Part-iendi,	<i>of dividing.</i>		

Examples for Conjugation.

III. Fruōr, fruītūs sum,	<i>I enjoy.</i>	IV. Blandiōr,	<i>I flatter.</i>
Fungōr, functūs sum,	<i>I perform.</i>	Largiōr,	<i>I give money.</i>
Lābōr, lapsūs sum,	<i>I stip.</i>	Mentiōr,	<i>I lie.</i>

§ 523 for a list of the Principal Perfect Participles of Dependent Verbs used in a Passive sense. (See §§ 169-172.)

Obs. 2. Intransitive Deponents have no Supine in *u* and no Gerundive.

Obs. 3. A few Verbs have a Passive form with an Active meaning in the Perfect Tenses only, and are therefore called *Semi-Deponents* or *Neuter-Passives*: see § 521.

## CHAPTER XIX.—PERIPHRASTIC CONJUGATION.

§ 102. I. THE ACTIVE PERIPHRASTIC CONJUGATION consists of the Future Participle in *urus* with the Verb *sum*, and expresses intention or futurity.

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

<i>Present.</i>	<i>Amātūrus sum,</i>	<i>I am about to love.</i>
<i>Past-Imperf.</i>	<i>Amātūrus eram,</i>	<i>I was about to love.</i>
<i>Future.</i>	<i>Amātūrus ero,</i>	<i>I shall be about to love.</i>
<i>Perfect.</i>	<i>Amātūrus fui,</i>	<i>I have been or was about to love.</i>
<i>Past-Perfect.</i>	<i>Amātūrus fueram,</i>	<i>I had been about to love.</i>

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

<i>Present.</i>	<i>Amātūrus sim,</i>	<i>I may be about to love.</i>
<i>Past-Imperf.</i>	<i>Amātūrus essem,</i>	<i>I might be about to love.</i>
<i>Perfect.</i>	<i>Amātūrus fuërim,</i>	<i>I may have been about to love.</i>
<i>Past-Perfect.</i>	<i>Amātūrus fuisset,</i>	<i>I might have been about to love.</i>

## INFINITIVE MOOD.

<i>Imperfect.</i>	<i>Amātūrum essë,</i>	<i>to be about to love.</i>
<i>Perfect.</i>	<i>Amātūrum fuissë,</i>	<i>to have been about to love.</i>

II. THE PASSIVE PERIPHRASTIC CONJUGATION consists of the Gerundive with the Verb *sum*, and expresses that which is to be, should be, or ought to be done.

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

<i>Present.</i>	<i>Amandus sum,</i>	<i>I am to be loved.</i>
<i>Past-Imperf.</i>	<i>Amandus eram,</i>	<i>I was to be loved.</i>
<i>Future.</i>	<i>Amandus ero,</i>	<i>I shall be to be loved.</i>
<i>Perfect.</i>	<i>Amandus fui,</i>	<i>I have been or was to be loved.</i>
<i>Past-Perfect.</i>	<i>Amandus fueram,</i>	<i>I had been to be loved.</i>

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

<i>Present.</i>	<i>Amandus sim,</i>	<i>I may be to be loved.</i>
<i>Past-Imperf.</i>	<i>Amandus essem,</i>	<i>I might be to be loved.</i>
<i>Perfect.</i>	<i>Amandus fuërim,</i>	<i>I may have been to be loved.</i>
<i>Past-Perfect.</i>	<i>Amandus fuisset,</i>	<i>I might have been to be loved.</i>

## INFINITIVE MOOD.

<i>Imperfect.</i>	<i>Amandum essë,</i>	<i>to be fit to be loved.</i>
<i>Perfect.</i>	<i>Amandum fuissë,</i>	<i>to have been fit to be loved.</i>

Obs. 1. This passive conjugation occurs only in transitive verbs. — In other verbs the impersonal form is used, and the agent is represented by the Dative: *as, mihi eundum est, I must go; oblitiscendum tibi injuriarum essë censeo, I am of opinion that you ought to forget your wrongs.*

Obs. 2. The translations above given are intended rather to represent the meaning of the separate words than the ordinary signification of the combinations, which will be fully explained in the Syntax.



# CHAPTER XX.—STEMS OF VERBS, FORMATION OF TENSES, AND PECULIAR FORMS.

§ 103. **STEMS.**—The *Stems* of Verbs of the First Conjugation end in *a*: as, *āma*, *love*.

The *Stems* of Verbs of the Second Conjugation end in *e*: as, *mōne*, *advise*.

The *Stems* of Verbs of the Third Conjugation end in a *consonant* or *u*: as, *rēg*, *rule*; *mīnu*, *lessen*.

The *Stems* of Verbs of the Fourth Conjugation end in *i*: as, *audi*, *hear*.

§ 104. **UNCONTRACTED AND CONTRACTED VERBS.**—In the Third Conjugation the Terminations of the Persons and of the Tenses are affixed without any change in the Stem; but in the First, Second, and Fourth Conjugations the Vowel of the Stem is frequently contracted with the Vowels of the Terminations. Hence the Third Conjugation is *Uncontracted*, the First, Second, and Fourth Conjugations are *Contracted*. This will be seen from the Present Indicative Active.

## III CONJUGATION.

<i>Sing.</i>	1. rēg-o	mīnu-o
	2. rēg-īs	mīnu-īs
	3. rēg-īt	mīnu-īt
<i>Plur.</i>	1. rēg-īmūs	mīnu-īmūs
	2. rēg-ītīs	mīnu-ītīs
	3. rēg-unt	mīnu-unt

## I CONJUGATION.

## II CONJUGATION.

## IV CONJUGATION.

<i>Sing.</i>	1. āma-o = āmo	mōne-o	audi-o
	2. āma-is = āmās	mōne-is = mōnēs	audi-īs = audīs
	3. āma-īt = āmāt	mōne-īt = mōnēt	audi-īt = audīt
<i>Plur.</i>	1. āma-īmūs = āmāmūs	mōne-īmūs = mōnēmūs	audi-īmūs = audīmūs
	2. āma-ītīs = āmātīs	mōne-ītīs = mōnētīs	audi-ītīs = auditīs
	3. āma-unt = āmant	mōne-unt = mōnent	audi-unt

§ 105. **PERSONAL TERMINATIONS.**—The Personal Terminations are the personal pronouns more or less corrupted. The regular terminations in the Active Voice are in their simplest form:

	<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>		<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>
1.	-m	-mus	as in	rēgēba-m	rēgēbā-mūs
2.	-s	-tis	„	rēgēba-s	rēgēbā-tīs
3.	-t	-nt	„	rēgēbā-t	rēgēbā-nt.

Or with a vowel prefixed :

	<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>	<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>
1.	o-(m)	ī-mūs as in	rēg-o	rēg-ī-mūs
2.	ī-s	ī-tīs „	rēg-i-s	rēg-ī-tīs
3.	ī-t	u-nt „	rēg-ī-t	rēg-u-nt.

*Obs.* I. *Active Voice*.—1. The -m is the 1st personal pronoun, which appears in *meī*, *mīhi*, *mē*. It disappears in the 1st person singular of the present indicative of all verbs except *sum*, *I am*, *inquam*, *I say*. In the plural -mus the letter s is the sign of plurality.

2. The -s is the 2nd personal pronoun, and represents the *t* in *tu*, *tui*, *tibi*, *te* (Gr. *σύ*). In the 2nd person of the perfect indicative (*rexistis*) the *t* appears. Also in the plural -tis the *t* represents the 2nd person, the s being the sign of plurality, as in the 1st person.

3. The -t is the 3rd personal pronoun, and is the same root as appears in the Greek article, and in the English pronouns *this* and *that*. In the plural -nt the letter *n* is the sign of plurality. The letter *n*, as well as *s*, is a sign of plurality in other languages akin to the Latin. Thus in English we have *ox-en* as well as *dog-s*.

II. *Passive Voice*. 1. The 1st personal termination singular always disappears before -r, the sign of the passive: as, *rēgēbā-r* from *rēgēba-m*; *rēgū-r* from *rēga-m*; *rēgērē-r* from *rēgēre-m*, &c. In the plural in like manner *s*, the sign of plurality, disappears before the *r*: as, *rēgēbāmu-r* from *rēgēbāmus*; *rēgāmu-r* from *rēgāmus*; *rēgērēmū-r* from *rēgērēmūs*.

2. The 2nd personal termination singular is -ris (more rarely -re), in which *r* represents the *s* of the Active, and *is* is the sign of the Passive: as, *āmā-r-is* from *āma-s*, *āmābū-r-is* from *āmāba-s*.

*NOTE*.—On the interchange of *s* and *r* we have examples in *crūs*, *crūr-is*, instead of *crus-is*, and similar words. (See § 28, *Obs.* 1, p. 15.)

The 2nd personal termination plural is -imīni or -mīni (as *rēg-imīni*, *āmū-mīni*), and has no connexion with the singular termination. It is, perhaps, a participial termination (Gr. *μενοι*).

3. The 3rd personal termination, singular and plural, is formed from the Active Voice by adding -ur, the sign of the Passive: as, *rēgīt-ur*, *rēgunt-ur*, from *rēgīt*, *rēgunt*; *rēgēbāt-ur*, *rēgēbant-ur*, from *rēgēbāt*, *rēgēbant*.

§ 106. FORMATION OF THE IMPERFECT TENSES.—1. *Present Tenses*.—The *Indicative* and *Imperative* are formed by adding the personal terminations to the stem without any tense suffix. In the *Imperative* the *s*, the termination of the 2nd person, is dropped, and *e* alone remains: as, *rēg-ē*, *rēg-ītē*: in the contracted conjugations, *āmā* = *āmā-ē*; *mōnē* = *mōnē-ē*; *audi* = *audi-ē*.

The *Subjunctive* has the tense suffix -a: as, *rēg-a-m*, *mōnē-a-m*, *audi-a-m*. In the 1st conjugation the *a* of the stem is contracted with the *a* of the tense suffix into *e*: as, *āmā-a-m* = *āme-m*. The *Infinitive* has the tense suffix *ērē*: as, *rēg-ērē* in the contracted conjugations, *āmā-rē* = *āmā-ērē*; *mōnē-re* = *mōnē-ērē*; *audi-rē* = *audi-ērē*. The *Participle* has the suffix -ens (stem -ent): as, *rēg-ens*, *audi-*

ens: in the 1st and 2nd conjugations, āma-ns - āma-ens; mōne-ns - mōne-ens.

Oss. The *e* of the Imperative is dropped in *dīe*, *scīe*, from *dīco*; *dūe*, *lead*, from *duc*; *fer*, *make*, from *fēro*; *fer*, *bring*, from *fēro*.

2. *Past-Imperfect Tense*.—The *Indicative* has the tense suffix ēba: as, rēg-ēba-m, audi-ēba-m; in the 1st and 2nd conjugations, āma-ba-m = āma-ēba-m; mōne-ba-m = mōne-ēba-m. The Subjunctive has the tense suffix ēre: as, rēg-ēre-m; in the contracted conjugations āma-re-m = āma-ēre-m; mōne-re-m = mōne-ēre-m; audi-re-m = audi-ēre-m.

Oss. The suffix ēba, originally ba, is the same as *er*, the root of *feri*.

3. *Future Tenses*.—The *Indicative* has the tense suffix b in the 1st and 2nd conjugations: as, āmā-b-o; mōnē-b-o; and the tense suffix a or e in the 3rd and 4th conjugations, a being used in the first person, and e in all the other persons: as, rēg-a-m, rēg-ē-s, rēg-ēt, &c.; audi-a-m, audi-ē-s, audi-ēt, &c.

Oss. The suffix b is also the same as *er*, which has a future meaning in *fore*. The futures in the 3rd and 4th conjugations are allied to the Subjunctive; but these conjugations, in all probability, originally formed their futures in b: the forms *ībo* and *scībo*, from *eo* and *scio*, were in common use.

The annexed Table exhibits the above Tense Terminations with the Contractions:

ACTIVE VOICE.		III.	I.	II.	IV.
	INDICATIVE.				
	<i>Present.</i>	rēg-o	āma-o = āmo	mōne-o	audi-o
	<i>Past-Imperf.</i>	rēg-ēbam	āma-ē-m = āmābam	mōne-ēbam = mōnēbam	audi-ēbam
	<i>Future.</i>	rēg-am	āmā-lo	mōnē-bo	audi-am
	SUBJUNCTIVE.				
	<i>Present.</i>	rēg-am	āma-am = āmēm	mōne-am	audi-am
	<i>Past-Imperf.</i>	rēg-ērem	āma-ērem = āmārem	mōne-ērem = mōnērem	audi-ērem = audīrem
	IMPERATIVE.				
	<i>Present.</i>	rēg-ē	āma-ē = āmā	mōne-ē = mōnē	audi-ē = audī
	<i>Future.</i>	rēg-ito	āma-ito = āmāto	mōne-ito = mōnēto	audi-ito = audīto
	INFINITIVE.	rēg-ērē	āma-ērē = āmārē	mōne-ērē = mōnērē	audi-ērē = audīrē
	PARTICIPLE.	rēg-ens	āma-ens = āmēns	mōne-ens = mōtēns	audi-ens

PASSIVE VOICE.	INDICATIVE.	III.	I.	II.	IV.
		<i>Present.</i> rēg-ūr	āma-ūr = āmūr	mōne-ūr	audi-ūr
		<i>Past-Imperf.</i> rēg-ēbār	āma-ēbār = āmābār	mōne-ēbār = mōnēbar	andi-ēbār
		<i>Future.</i> rēg-ār	āmā-bor	mōnē-bōr	audi-ār
	SUBJUNCTIVE.	rēg-ār	āma-ār = āmēr	mōne-ār	audi-ār
	<i>Past-Imperf.</i>	rēg-ērēr	āma-ērēr = āmārēr	mōne-ērēr = mōnērēr	andi-ērēr = audirēr
	IMPERATIVE.	rēg-ērō'	āma-ērō = āmārō	mōne-ērō = mōnērō	andi-ērō = audirō
	<i>Future.</i>	rēg-itōr	āma-itōr = āmātōr	mōne-itōr = mōnētōr	audi-itōr = auditōr
	INFINITIVE.	rēg-l	āma-ēri = āmāri	mōne-ēri = mōnēri	audi-ēri = audiri
	GERUNDIVE.	rēg-endūs	āma-endūs = āmandūs	mōne-endūs = mōnendūs	audi-endūs

*Obs.* The Stems of some Verbs are strengthened in the Imperfect Tenses in the following ways:—

1. By the insertion of *n* or *m* before the final consonant: as,

Stem.	Imperfect Tenses.	Perfect Tense.
scld	scindo scindēbam scindam	sclt <sup>t</sup> tear
tīg	tāngo tāngēbam tāngam	tē-tigt touch.
rōp	rumpo rumpēbam rumpam	rūpt burst.

*n* is inserted before the dental and guttural letters: as, scindo, frango;  
*m* before the labial letters: as, cumbo.

2. By the insertion of *n* after the final consonant: as,

Stem.	Imperfect Tenses.	Perfect Tense.
spēr	spērno spērnbam spērnām	spēr-vt despise
cēr	cērno cērnbam cērnām	cerē-vt distinguish.
pōs	pōno pōnbam pōnām	pōs-vt place.

*Pōno* is instead of *pōs-no*, the *s* being dropped before *n*.

3. By adding *i* or doubling the final consonant : as,

Stem.	Imperfect Tenses.	Perfect Tense.	
fleā	fleeto fleetebam fleetam	flexi	bend.
pēl	pello pellēbam pellam	pē-pūll	drive.

4. By reduplication, that is, by prefixing the initial consonant with the connecting vowel *i*. as,

Stem.	Imperfect Tenses.	Perfect Tense.	
gēn	gi-gno gi-gnebam gi-gnam	gēn-ūi	produce.
sta	si-sto si-stebam si-stam	stī-tī	cause to stand.

*Obs.* Gigno is a contraction for gi-gno.

5. By adding *se*, which is the termination of the Inceptive verbs. See § 164.

## § 107. FORMATION OF THE PERFECT TENSES. The Perfect Tenses are formed :

1. By adding *v* to the Stem ; as, āma (āmo), āmā-v-ī ; audi (audio), audi-v-ī. This is the regular way of forming the Perfects of the First and Fourth Conjugations.

2. By adding *u* to the Stem : as, mŭnĕ (mŭneo), mŭn-u-ī. The final vowel of the Stem is dropped. This is the regular way of forming the Perfects of the Second Conjugation.

*Obs.* 1. The terminations *v* and *u* are the same, and are derived from fu-i, the Perfect of the verb *to be*.

2. Some verbs drop the sign of the Perfect ; this is especially the case with Stems ending in *u* or *v* : as, mīnu-o, mīnu-ī, *lessen* ; volv-o, volv-ī, *roll* ; vert-o, vert-ī, *turn*.

3. By adding *s* to the Stem : as, rĕg (rĕgŏ), rĕxi = reg-s-ī.

*Obs.* The Euphonic changes of letters must be noted.

- (i) *cs, gs, qs, hs* are contracted into *x* : as, dūco, duxi, *lead* ; cōquo, coxi, *cook* ; trāho, traxi, *drag*.
- (ii) *b* is changed into *p* before *s* : as, scribo, scripsi, *write* ; nūbo, nupsi, *marry* (of women).
- (iii) *t* and *d* are dropped before *s* : as, mitto, mīsi, *send* ; laedo, laesi, *injure*.

4. By reduplication : as,

tend	(tendo),	tĕ-tendī,	stretch.
cād	(cādo),	cĕ-cīdī,	fall.
mordo	(mordeo),	mŏ-mordī,	bite.

5. By lengthening the vowel of the Stem : as,

jāc	or jāci	(jācio),	jēcī,	throw.
vĕni		(vĕnio),	vĕnī,	come.
mŏvo		(mŏveo),	mŏvī,	move.

*Obs.* In compound Verbs the Reduplication is usually omitted : as, tundo, tūtūdī, *beat*, but contundo, contūdī, *beat small, bruise* ; pello, pĕpūllī, *drive*, but compello, compūllī, *drive together*.

1. *Present-Perfect or Aorist Tenses*.—The *Indicative* has the tense suffix *is*; 2nd pers. *āmāv-is-tī*, *āmāv-is-tis*; 3rd pers. *āmāv-ēr-unt*; the *s* disappears in the other persons. The *Subjunctive* has the tense suffix *eri*: as, *āmāv-ēri-m*. The *Infinitive* has the tense suffix *issē*: as, *āmāv-issē*.

*Obs. 1.* In the *Indicative is* is probably the same as *es*, the stem of 's-um. The change of *is* into *er* in the 3rd person plural (*āmāv-ēr-unt*) is also found in *pulvis*, *pulver-is*, *dust*.

*Obs. 2.* In the *Subjunctive eri-m* is the same as *esi-m* or 'si-m, the present subjunctive of *sum*.

*Obs. 3.* In the *Infinitive issē* is the same as *essē*, the present Infinitive of *sum*.

2. *Past-Perfect Tenses*.—The *Indicative* has the tense suffix *ēra*: as, *āmāv-ēra-m*. The *Subjunctive* has the tense suffix *isse*: as, *āmāv-isse-m*.

*Obs.* The suffixes *era-m* and *isse-m* are the same as *crā-m* and *esse-m*, the past Indicative and Subjunctive of *sum*.

The *Future-Perfect Tense* has the suffix *ēr*: as, *āmāv-ēr-o*.

*Obs.* The suffix *er-o* is the future of *sum*.

§ 108. The *Stem* is formed by adding *tum* and *tu* to the Stem: as,

I. <i>Āmā-tum</i> , <i>āmā-tu</i> .	III. <i>Rec-tum</i> , <i>rec-tū</i> .
II. <i>Mōnī-tum</i> , <i>mōnī-tu</i> .	IV. <i>Audi-tum</i> , <i>audi-tu</i> .

*Obs. 1.* In the Second Conjugation the *e* of the Stem is changed into *i*.

*Obs. 2.* The Euphonic changes of letters must be noted:

(i) *g*, *qu*, *h* become *r* before *t* as, *rēgo*, *rectum*; *cōquo*, *coctum*; *tracto*, *tractum*.

(ii) *b* becomes *p* before *t* as, *scribo*, *scriptum*; *nūbo*, *nuptum*.

(iii) *d* and *t* are dropped before the *t* of the Supine, which in these cases becomes *s* as, *laedo*, *laetum*, *ignoro*; *claudio*, *clausum*, *sistō*. In some cases, but rarely, the *d* or *t* of the Stem also becomes *s* as, *cedo*, *cessum*, *quidō*, *missum*, *sumō*.

§ 109. The *Future Participle* is formed by adding *tūrus* to the Stem: as,

*āmā-tūrus*, *mōnī-tūrus*; *rec-tūrus*, *audi-tūrus*.

*Obs. 1.* The euphonic changes of letters occur in the Future Participle as in the Supine.

*tūm-tūrus*, *quid-tūrus*, *miss-tūrus*.

*Obs. 2.* In a few Verbs the *Supine* of which vary from the regular formation, the Future Participle also has these variations: as,

	Stem.	Supine.	Future Part.	Adp.
<i>creo</i>	( <i>cre-</i> )	<i>creta</i>	<i>cre-tūrus</i>	<i>cre-</i>
<i>fero</i>	( <i>fer-</i> )	<i>facta</i>	<i>fer-tūrus</i>	<i>fact-</i>
<i>gero</i>	( <i>ger-</i> )	<i>gessum</i>	<i>ger-tūrus</i>	<i>gess-</i>
<i>pono</i>	( <i>pon-</i> )	<i>positum</i>	<i>pon-tūrus</i>	<i>posit-</i>

## § 110. REMARKS UPON CERTAIN FORMS.

1. *Perfect Active*.—(i). On the omission of *r*, *ri*, and *re*, in the First and Fourth Conjugations see § 91 Obs., § 94 Obs.

Obs. Sometimes the *iit* in the Third Person Singular is contracted into *it* : as *pētīt* in Virg. *Aen.* ix. 9 = *pētivit* : *ūbīt* = *ūbiit*, *ōbīt* = *ōbiit*, *perīt* = *pēriit* (Juv. vi. 128, 559, 295). Even *ii* in the First Person is sometimes contracted into *i* : as, *sepēli* = *sepēlii* (Pers. iii. 97).

(ii). In poetry *is* and *iss* are often omitted after *s* or *x* in the Perfect and Past Perfect of the Third Conjugation : as, *ēvasti* = *ēvasisti* ; *dixi* = *dixisti* ; *divisse* = *dīvisisse* : *surrexe* = *surrexisse* ; *consumpse* = *consumpsisse* ; *abscessem* = *abscessisse*.

(iii). The suffix *ērunt* in the Perfect Indicative Active is frequently shortened by the poets : as, *dedērunt*, *they gave*. The suffix *ere* instead of *ērunt* is rarely used by Cicero, frequently by Sallust and later writers.

2. The form of the Second Person Singular Passive in *rē* rarely occurs in the Present Indicative, because it might be confounded with the Imperfect Infinitive Active.

3. The Gerund and Gerundive in the Third and Fourth Conjugations sometimes end in *undum* and *undus* instead of *endum* and *endus* : as, *fāciundum* from *fācio*, *make or do* ; *pōtiundum* from *pōtiōr*, *obtain possession of*.

4. From some Verbs is derived a Participle, or Participial Adjective, in *bundus*, with an intensive signification : as, *laetābundus*, *rejoicing greatly, full of joy* ; *lacrimābundus*, *weeping profusely* ; *fūribundus*, *full of rage* ; *mōribundus*, *in the very article of death*.

Obs. 1. Words in *bundus* come chiefly from verbs of the First Conjugation. *Pōdibundus*, *full of modesty*, is the only one from a verb of the Second Conjugation ; and *lascivibundus*, *full of wantonness*, the only one from a verb of the Fourth Conjugation.

Obs. 2. These words generally govern no case : but we find in Livy *vītābundus castra*, *avoiding the camp* (25, 13), and similar expressions.

## § 111. ANCIENT FORMS.

1. The ancient termination of the *Imperfect Infinitive Passive* was *ier* : as, *āmāriēr* instead of *āmārī* ; *rēgiēr*, instead of *rēgi*.

2. In the *Present Subjunctive Active* the old terminations were *im*, *is*, *it* : as, *sim*, *sīs*, *sīt* from *sum* ; *vēlim* from *vōlo*, *be willing* ; *nōlim* from *nōlo*, *be unwilling* ; *mālim* from *mālo*, *be more willing*. Also *ēdim* instead of *ēdam* from *ēdo*, *eat* ; and *duim* from *do*, *give*, and its compounds, particularly in prayers and execrations : as, *dī duint*, *may the gods grant* ; *dī tē perduint*, *may the gods destroy thee*.

3. The *Future-Perfect Indicative* and the *Perfect Subjunctive* had ancient terminations in *so* and *sim*, the terminations being originally *eso* and *esim*, instead of *ero* and *erim* : hence the forms *levasso*, *faxo*, *faxim*, *are* contractions of *lēvāvēso*, *fācēsso*, *fācēsso*. In like manner *ausim* is formed from the old Perfect *ausi* (from *audeo*), which has become obsolete.

## CHAPTER XXI.—IRREGULAR VERBS.

§ 112. IRREGULAR VERBS are such as are not conjugated according to the common Rules. The Conjugation of one Irregular Verb, *sum*, has been already given (§ 90). The rest are here given :

I. *Possūm, pōtūi, possē,—to be able.*

INDICATIVE.		SUBJUNCTIVE.		INDICATIVE.		SUBJUNCTIVE.	
1. <i>Present.</i>				4. <i>Perfect.</i>			
S.	Pos-sum		Pos-sim	S.	Pōt-ūi		Pōt-uērim
	Pōt-ēs		Pos-sis		Pōt-uistī		Pōt-uēris
	Pōt-est		Pos-sit		Pōt-uīt		Pōt-uērit
P.	Pos-sūmūs		Pos-simūs	P.	Pōt-uimūs		Pōt-uērimūs
	Pōt-estis		Pos-sitis		Pōt-uistis		Pōt-uēritis
	Pos-sunt		Pos-sint		Pōt-uērunt (ērē)		Pōt-uērint
2. <i>Past-Imperfect.</i>				5. <i>Past-Perfect.</i>			
S.	Pōt-eram		Pos-sem	S.	Pōt-uēram		Pōt-uissem
	Pōt-erās		Pos-sēs		Pōt-uērās		Pōt-uissēs
	Pōt-erāt		Pos-sēt		Pōt-uērāt		Pōt-uissēt
P.	Pōt-erāmūs		Pos-sēmūs	P.	Pōt-uērāmūs		Pōt-uissēmūs
	Pōt-erātis		Pos-sētis		Pōt-uērātis		Pōt-uissētis
	Pōt-erant		Pos-sent		Pōt-uērant		Pōt-uissent
3. <i>Future.</i>				6. <i>Future-Perfect.</i>			
S.	Pōt-ēro			S.	Pōt-uēro		
	Pōt-eris				Pōt-uēris		
	Pōt-erit				Pōt-uērit		
P.	Pōt-erimūs			P.	Pōt-uērimūs		
	Pōt-eritis				Pōt-uēritis		
	Pōt-erunt				Pōt-uērint		

## INFINITIVE.

*Imperfect—Possē. Perfect—Pōtnissē. Future—wanting.*

The *Imperative*, *Gerund*, and *Supine* are wanting.

The *Imperfect Participle* *pōtens* is used only as an *Adjective*, *powerful*.

(Obs. *Possūm* is compounded of 'pot' (*pōtis*, *able*) and *sum*; hence *pos-sum* is a contraction of *pot-sum*; *pos-sum* of *pōt-sum*; *pos-sem* of *pot-esse*, *pot-ul* of *pot-ful*, and *pos-ae* of *pot-esse*.



- § 113. II. Völo, völuī, vellē, — *to be willing.*  
 III. Nölo, nöluī, nollē, — *to be unwilling.*  
 IV. Mälo, mäluī, mallē, — *to be more willing.*

## INDICATIVE.

## 1. Present.

S.	Völo	Nölo	Mälo
	Vīs	Non vīs	Māvis
	Vult	Non vult	Māvult
P.	Völümūs	Nölümūs	Mälümūs
	Vultīs	Non vultīs	Māvultīs
	Völunt	Nölunt	Mälunt

## 2. Past-Imperfect.

S.	Völ-ēbam	Nöl-ēbam	Mäl-ēbam
	Völ-ēbās	Nöl-ēbās	Mäl-ēbās
	Völ-ēbāt	Nöl-ēbāt	Mäl-ēbāt
P.	Völ-ēbāmūs	Nöl-ēbāmūs	Mäl-ēbāmūs
	Völ-ēbātīs	Nöl-ēbātīs	Mäl-ēbātīs
	Völ-ēbant	Nöl-ēbant	Mäl-ēbant

## 3. Future.

S.	Völ-am	Nöl-am	Mäl-am
	Völ-ēs	Nöl-ēs	Mäl-ēs
	Völ-ēt	Nöl-ēt	Mäl-ēt
P.	Völ-ēmūs	Nöl-ēmūs	Mäl-ēmūs
	Völ-ētīs	Nöl-ētīs	Mäl-ētīs
	Völ-ent	Nöl-ent	Mäl-ent

## 4. Perfect.

S.	Völ-uī	Nöl-uī	Mäl-uī
	Völ-uistī	Nöl-uistī	Mäl-uistī
	Völ-uīt	Nöl-uīt	Mäl-uīt
P.	Völ-uīmūs	Nöl-uīmūs	Mäl-uīmūs
	Völ-uistīs	Nöl-uistīs	Mäl-uistīs
	Völ-uērunt or -uērē	Nöl-uērunt or -uērē	Mäl-uērunt or -uērē

## 5. Past-Perfect.

S.	Völ-uēram	Nöl-uēram	Mäl-uēram
	Völ-uērās	Nöl-uērās	Mäl-uērās
	Völ-uērāt	Nöl-uērāt	Mäl-uērāt
P.	Völ-uērāmūs	Nöl-uērāmūs	Mäl-uērāmūs
	Völ-uērātīs	Nöl-uērātīs	Mäl-uērātīs
	Völ-uērant	Nöl-uērant	Mäl-uērant

## 6. Future-Perfect.

S.	Völ-uēro	Nöl-uēro	Mäl-uēro
	Völ-uērīs	Nöl-uērīs	Mäl-uērīs
	Völ-uērīt	Nöl-uērīt	Mäl-uērīt
P.	Völ-uērimūs	Nöl-uērimūs	Mäl-uērimūs
	Völ-uēritīs	Nöl-uēritīs	Mäl-uēritīs
	Völ-uērint	Nöl-uērint	Mäl-uērint

## SUBJUNCTIVE.

## 1. Present.

	Vël-im	Nël-im	Mâl-im
	Vël-is	Nël-is	Mâl-is
	Vël-it	Nël-it	Mâl-it
I'	Vël-îmûs	Nël-îmûs	Mâl-îmûs
	Vël-îtis	Nël-îtis	Mâl-îtis
	Vël-int	Nël-int	Mâl-int

## 2. Past-Imperfect.

	Vël-lem	Nël-lem	Mâl-lem
	Vël-lës	Nël-lës	Mâl-lës
	Vël-lët	Nël-lët	Mâl-lët
I'	Vël-lêmûs	Nël-lêmûs	Mâl-lêmûs
	Vël-lêtis	Nël-lêtis	Mâl-lêtis
	Vël-lent	Nël-lent	Mâl-lent

## 3. Perfect.

	Vël-uërim	Nël-uërim	Mâl-uërim
	Vël-uëris	Nël-uëris	Mâl-uëris
	Vël-uërit	Nël-uërit	Mâl-uërit
I'	Vël-uërimûs	Nël-uërimûs	Mâl-uërimûs
	Vël-uëritis	Nël-uëritis	Mâl-uëritis
	Vël-uërint	Nël-uërint	Mâl-uërint

## 4. Past-Perfect.

	Vël-uissom	Nël-uissom	Mâl-uissom
	Vël-uissës	Nël-uissës	Mâl-uissës
	Vël-uissët	Nël-uissët	Mâl-uissët
I'	Vël-uissômûs	Nël-uissômûs	Mâl-uissômûs
	Vël-uissëtis	Nël-uissëtis	Mâl-uissëtis
	Vël-uissent	Nël-uissent	Mâl-uissent

## IMPERATIVE.

## Present.

(vesting.)	Nël i	(wedding.)
	Nël itë	

## Future.

Nël ito  
Nël ito  
Nël itetë  
Nël uito

## Imperative.

## Imperfect.

Vël lë	Nël lë	Mâl lë
--------	--------	--------

## Perfect.

Vël uissë	Nël uissë	Mâl uissë
-----------	-----------	-----------

## IMPERFECT PARTICIPLE.

Volo

Nolo

(wanting.)

Obs. 1. Nolo is a contraction of ne, *not*, and volo, *will* of mag (magis), more, and volo.

Obs. 2. In consequence of the tendency of liquids to assimilate, the r of the terminations is changed into l; thus, vel-am, nol-lem, mal-lem, are contractions of vel-erem, nol-erem, mal-erem, and vel-lē, nol-lē, mal-lē, of vel-erē, nol-erē, mal-erē.

Obs. 3. Si vis, *if you will*, *if you please*, is sometimes contracted into sis.

§ 114. V. Fēro, tāli, ferrē, lātum,—*to bear*.

## 1. ACTIVE VOICE.

INDICATIVE.		SUBJUNCTIVE.	
1. <i>Present.</i>		4. <i>Perfect.</i>	
S. Fēr-o	Fēr-am	S. Tāl-i	Tāl-ērim
Fēr-s	Fēr-ās	Tāl-istī	Tāl-ēris
Fēr-t	Fēr-āt	Tāl-it	Tāl-ērit
P. Fēr-īmūs	Fēr-āmūs	P. Tāl-īmūs	Tāl-ērimūs
Fēr-tis	Fēr-ātis	Tāl-istīs	Tāl-ēritis
Fēr-unt	Fēr-ant	Tāl-ērunt or ērō	Tāl-ērint
2. <i>Past-Imperfect.</i>		5. <i>Past-Perfect.</i>	
S. Fēr-ēbam	Fēr-rem	S. Tāl-ēram	Tāl-issēm
Fēr-ēbās	Fēr-rēs	Tāl-ērās	Tāl-issēs
Fēr-ēbāt	Fēr-rēt	Tāl-ērāt	Tāl-issēt
P. Fēr-ēbāmūs	Fēr-rēmūs	P. Tāl-ērāmūs	Tāl-issēmūs
Fēr-ēbātis	Fēr-rētis	Tāl-ērātis	Tāl-issētis
Fēr-ēbant	Fēr-rent	Tāl-ērant	Tāl-issent
3. <i>Future.</i>		6. <i>Future-Perfect.</i>	
S. Fēr-am		S. Tāl-ēro	
Fēr-ēs		Tāl-ēris	
Fēr-ēt		Tāl-ērit	
P. Fēr-ēmūs		P. Tāl-ērimūs	
Fēr-ētis		Tāl-ēritis	
Fēr-ent		Tāl-ērint	

## IMPERATIVE.

<i>Present.</i>	Fēr
	Fēr-tē
<i>Future.</i>	Fēr-to
	Fēr-to
	Fēr-tōtē
	Fēr-unto

## INFINITIVE.

<i>Imperfect.</i>	Fēr-rē
<i>Perfect.</i>	Tāl-issē
<i>Future.</i>	Lātūrum ēsē

## PARTICIPLES.

<i>Imperfect.</i>	Fērens
<i>Future.</i>	Lātūrus (ā, um)

## SUPINE.

Lātum  
Lātū

## GERUND.

<i>Gen.</i>	Fēr-endū &c.
-------------	-----------------

## II. PASSIVE VOICE.

INDICATIVE.		SUBJUNCTIVE.		INDICATIVE.		SUBJUNCTIVE.	
1. <i>Present.</i>				4. <i>Perfect.</i>			
S.	Fēr-ōr Fer-ris Fer-tūr	Fēr-ār Fēr-ārīs Fēr-ātūr		S.	Lātūs sum Lātūs ēs Lātūs est	Lātūs sim Lātūs sis Lātūs sit	
P.	Fēr-īmūr Fēr-īmīnī Fēr-untūr	Fēr-āmūr Fēr-āmīnī Fēr-antūr		P.	Lātī sūmūs Lātī estīs Lātī sunt	Lātī simūs Lātī sitīs Lātī sint	
2. <i>Past-Imperfect.</i>				5. <i>Past-Perfect.</i>			
S.	Fēr-ēbār Fēr-ēbārīs Fēr-ēbātūr	Fer-rer Fer-rērīs Fer-rētūr		S.	Lātūs ēram Lātūs ēras Lātūs ērāt	Lātūs essem Lātūs essēs Lātūs essēt	
P.	Fēr-ēbāmūr Fēr-ēbāmīnī Fēr-ēbantūr	Fer-rēmūr Fer-rēmīnī Fer-rentūr		P.	Lātī ērāmūs Lātī ērātīs Lātī ērant	Lātī essēmūs Lātī essētīs Lātī essent	
3. <i>Future.</i>				6. <i>Future-Perfect.</i>			
S.	Fēr-ār Fēr-ērīs Fēr-ētūr			S.	Lātūs ēro Lātūs ēris Lātūs ērit		
P.	Fēr-ēmūr Fēr-ēmīnī Fēr-entūr			P.	Lātī ērīmūs Lātī ēritīs Lātī ērunt		

IMPERATIVE.		INFINITIVE.	
<i>Present.</i>	Fer-rē	<i>Imperfect.</i>	Fer-rī
	Fēr-īmīnī	<i>Perfect.</i>	Lātum (am, um) esse
<i>Future.</i>	Fer-tōr	<i>Future.</i>	Lātum iri
	Fer-tōr	PARTICIPLES.	
	Fēr-untōr	<i>Perfect.</i>	Lātūs (ā, um)
		<i>Gerundive.</i>	Fēr-endūs (ā, um)

*Obs. 1.* In the Imperfect Tenses of *fēro* the only irregularity is the omission of *ē* and *i* in some of the terminations: thus, *fer-s* = *fer-īs*; *fer-t* = *fer-it*; *fer-rem* = *fēr-ērem*; *fer-rē* = *fēr-ērē*, &c.

*Obs. 2.* The compounds of *fēro* are conjugated in the same way:

Affēro (ad, fero),	attūll.	afferrē,	allātum,	bring to.
Aufēro (ab, fero),	abstūll.	auferrē,	ablātum,	carry away.
Effēro (ex, fero),	extūll.	efferrē,	elātum,	carry out.
Infēro (in, fero),	intūll.	inferrē,	illātum,	carry into.
Offēro (ob, fero),	obtūll.	offerrē,	oblātum,	present.
Prōfēro (prō, fero),	prōtūll.	prōferrē,	prōlātum,	carry forward.
Rēfēro (re, fero),	{ rētūllī rettūllī }	rēferrē,	rēlātum,	bring back.

## § 115. VI. Ēdo, ēdī, ēdērē or essē, ēsum,—to eat.

INDICATIVE.	SUBJUNCTIVE.	INDICATIVE.	SUBJUNCTIVE.
1. Present.		4. Perfect.	
Ēd-o	Ēd-am or ēd-im	S. Ēd-i	Ēd-ērim
Ēd-īs or ēs	Ēd-ās or ēd-īs	Ēd-istī	Ēd-ērīs
Ēd-it or est	Ēd-āt or ēd-it	Ēd-it	Ēd-ērīt
Ēd-īmūs	Ēd-āmūs or ēd-īmūs	P. Ēd-īmūs	Ēd-ērimūs
Ēd-itīs or estīs	Ēd-ātīs or ēd-itīs	Ēd-istīs	Ēd-ērītīs
Ēd-unt	Ēd-ant or ēd-int	Ēd-erunt or -ērē	Ēd-ērint
2. Past-Imperfect.		5. Past-Perfect.	
Ēd-ēbam	Ēd-ērem or essem	S. Ēd-eram	Ēd-issem
Ēd-ebās	Ēd-ērēs or essēs	Ēd-ērās	Ēd-issēs
Ēd-ebāt	Ēd-ērēt or essēt	Ēd-ērāt	Ēd-issēt
Ēd-ebāmūs	Ēd-ērēmūs or essēmūs	P. Ēd-ērāmūs	Ēd-issēmūs
Ēd-ebātīs	Ēd-ērētīs or essētīs	Ēd-ērātīs	Ēd-issētīs
Ēd-ebant	Ēd-ērent or essent	Ēd-erant	Ēd-issent
3. Future.		6. Future-Perfect.	
Ēd-am		S. Ēd-ēro	
Ēd-ēs		Ēd-ērīs	
Ēd-ēt		Ēd-ērīt	
Ēd-ēmūs		P. Ēd-ērimūs	
Ēd-ētīs		Ēd-ērītīs	
Ēd-ent		Ēd-erint	

	IMPERATIVE.	PARTICIPLES.
Present.	Ēd-ē or es	Imperfect. Ēd-ens
	Ēd-itē or estē	Future. Ēsūrūs (ā um)
Future.	Ēd-ito or esto	
	Ēd-ito or esto	SUPINES.
	Ēd-itōtē or estōtē	Ēsum
	Ēd-unto	Ēsū
	INFINITIVE.	
Imperfect.	Ēd-ērē or essē	GERUND.
Perfect.	Ēd-issē	
Future.	Ēsūrum (am, um) esse	Gen. Ēd-endī, &c.

Obs. 1. The Passive Voice is regular : only *estūr* is used instead of *ēditūr*, and *essētūr* instead of *ēderētūr*. The Perfect Participle is *ēsus*.

Obs. 2. The compound *cōmēdo*, "eat up," is conjugated in the same way : as, *cōmēdis* or *cōmēs* ; *cōmēdit* or *cōmest*, &c.

## § 116. VII. Ēo, ivī, irē, itum,—to go.

INDICATIVE.		SUBJUNCTIVE.		INDICATIVE.		SUBJUNCTIVE.	
1. <i>Present.</i>				4. <i>Perfect.</i>			
S.	Ē-o	E-am		S.	Ī-vī or I-i	Ī-vērim or I-ērim	
	Ī-s	E-ās			Ī-vistī &c.	Ī-vērīs &c.	
	Ī-t	E-āt			Ī-vīt &c.	Ī-vērīt &c.	
P.	Ī-mūs	E-āmūs		P.	Ī-vīmūs &c.	Ī-vērimūs &c.	
	Ī-tis	E-ātīs			Ī-vistīs &c.	Ī-vērītīs &c.	
	E-unt	E-ant			Ī-vērunt &c.	Ī-vērint &c.	
				or Ī-vērē			
2. <i>Past-Imperfect.</i>				5. <i>Past-Perfect.</i>			
S.	Ī-bam	Ī-rem		S.	Ī-vēram or I-ēram	Ī-vissem, I-issem or I-ssem	
	Ī-bās	Ī-rēs			Ī-vērās &c.	Ī-vissēs &c.	
	Ī-bāt	Ī-rēt			Ī-vērāt &c.	Ī-vissēt &c.	
P.	Ī-bāmūs	Ī-rēmūs		P.	Ī-vērāmūs &c.	Ī-vissēmūs &c.	
	Ī-bātīs	Ī-rētīs			Ī-vērātīs &c.	Ī-vissētīs &c.	
	Ī-bant	Ī-rent			Ī-vērant &c.	Ī-vissent &c.	
3. <i>Future.</i>				6. <i>Future-Perfect.</i>			
S.	Ī-bo			S.	Ī-vēro or I-ēro		
	Ī-bis				Ī-vērīs &c.		
	Ī-bīt				Ī-vērīt &c.		
P.	Ī-bīmūs			P.	Ī-vērimūs &c.		
	Ī-bitīs				Ī-vērītīs &c.		
	Ī-bunt				Ī-vērint &c.		

IMPERATIVE.		PARTICIPLES.	
Present.	Ī	Imperfect	I-ens (Gen. e untis)
	Ī-tē	Future.	Ī-tūrūs (ā, um)
Future.	Ī-to		
	Ī-to		
	Ī-tōtē		
	Ē-unto		
INFINITIVE.		GERUND.	
Imperfect.	Ī-rē	Gen.	E-undi, &c.
Perfect.	Ī-vissē, iissē or issē		
Future.	Ī-tūrum (am, um) essē		

Obs. 1. The Stem of this Verb is *i*, which is changed into *e* before *a*, *o*, and *u* : as, eo, eunt, eam, &c.

Obs. 2. The Passive is used impersonally. Indic. : itur, ibitur, itur, itum est, &c. Subj. : eatur, iretur, itum sit, &c.

Obs. 3. The compounds of eo usually take *u*, rarely *i*, in the Perfect Tenses. as, adeo, I approach, makes *ivi*, *adivram*, *adivissem*, &c.

Obs. 4. The compounds of eo, which have a transitive meaning, are conjugated throughout in the Passive : as, adeo, I approach ; Pass. : adēor, adītris, adītūr, adīmūr, adīmīnt, adēuntūr, &c.

Obs. 5. Ambio, I go about, retains the *i* throughout and is conjugated regularly like a verb of the Fourth Conjugation. Hence we find *ambio*, but occasionally *ambibam* (Ov. Met. v. 361), the Gerund *ambiendi*, &c. The Perf. Participle is *ambitus* (Ov. Met. i. 37), though the Verbal Substantive is *ambitus*.

§ 117. VIII. *Queo*, *quīvī*, *quīrē*, *quītum*,—*to be able*.

§ 118. IX. *Nēqueo*, *nēquīvī*, *nēquīrē*, *nēquītum*,—*to be unable*.

These Verbs are conjugated exactly like *ēo*, but are defective in some forms. In the Present Indicative *non quīs*, *non quīt* are used instead of *nēquīs*, *nēquīt*.

### § 119. X.—*Neuter Passives*.

A. Three Neuter Verbs—*Fio*, *to become*, or *be made*, *vāpulo*, *to be beaten*, *vēneo*, *to be sold*, are Passive in their signification and construction, and are hence called *Neuter-Passives*.

#### 1. *Fio*, *factūs sum*, *fiērī*,—*to become or be made*.

INDICATIVE.		SUBJUNCTIVE.		INDICATIVE.		SUBJUNCTIVE.	
1. Present.				4. Perfect.			
S.	<i>Fi-o</i>	<i>Fi-am</i>		S.	<i>Factūs sum</i>	<i>Factūs sim</i>	
	<i>Fi-s</i>	<i>Fi-ās</i>			<i>Factūs es</i>	<i>Factūs sis</i>	
	<i>Fi-t</i> or <i>fi-t</i>	<i>Fi-āt</i>			<i>Factūs est</i>	<i>Factūs sit</i>	
P.	<i>[Fi-mūs]</i>	<i>Fi-amūs</i>		P.	<i>Factī sūmūs</i>	<i>Factī simūs</i>	
	<i>[Fi-tīs]</i>	<i>Fi-ātīs</i>			<i>Factī estīs</i>	<i>Factī sitīs</i>	
	<i>Fi-unt</i>	<i>Fi-ant</i>			<i>Factī sunt</i>	<i>Factī sint</i>	
2. Past-Imperfect.				5. Past-Perfect.			
S.	<i>Fi-ēbam</i>	<i>Fi-ērem</i>		S.	<i>Factūs ēram</i>	<i>Factūs essem</i>	
	<i>Fi-ēbās</i>	<i>Fi-ērēs</i>			<i>Factūs erās</i>	<i>Factūs essēs</i>	
	<i>Fi-ēbāt</i>	<i>Fi-ērēt</i>			<i>Factūs erāt</i>	<i>Factūs essēt</i>	
P.	<i>Fi-ēbāmūs</i>	<i>Fi-ērēmūs</i>		P.	<i>Factī ērāmūs</i>	<i>Factī essēmūs</i>	
	<i>Fi-ēbātīs</i>	<i>Fi-ērētīs</i>			<i>Factī erātīs</i>	<i>Factī essētīs</i>	
	<i>Fi-ēbant</i>	<i>Fi-ērent</i>			<i>Factī erant</i>	<i>Factī essent</i>	
3. Future.				6. Future-Perfect.			
S.	<i>Fi-am</i>			S.	<i>Factūs ēro</i>		
	<i>Fi-ēs</i>				<i>Factūs erīs</i>		
	<i>Fi-ēt</i>				<i>Factūs erīt</i>		
P.	<i>Fi-ēmūs</i>			P.	<i>Factī ērimūs</i>		
	<i>Fi-ētīs</i>				<i>Factī erītīs</i>		
	<i>Fi-ent</i>				<i>Factī erunt</i>		

IMPERATIVE.		PARTICIPLES.	
Present.	<i>Fi</i> , <i>fi-tē</i>	Perfect.	<i>Factūs</i> (ā, um)
INFINITIVE.		Gerundive.	<i>Fāciendūs</i> (ā, um)
Imperfect.	<i>Fi-ērī</i>		
Perfect.	<i>Factum</i> (em, um) <i>essē</i>		
Future.	<i>Factum</i> <i>irī</i>		

Obs. 1. *Fio* is used as the Passive of *facio*.

Obs. 2. The *i* in *fiōis* is always long, except in *fi-t* and when not followed by *r*.

Obs. 3. The forms *finūs* and *fitīs* are doubtful.

2. *Vāpūlo, vāpūlāvi, to be beaten*, is conjugated regularly, and is used as the Passive of *Verbēro*. Hence *vāpūlo* can be used in the Passive only as an impersonal: *vāpūlandum (erit mihi)*, *I shall have to undergo a beating.* (Ter.)

3. *Vēneo, venīvi, vēnitum (or vēnum)*, *to be sold*, is a compound of the supine *vēnum* and the verb *eo*, and is used as the passive of *Vendo*.

B. Four other Verbs are also called *Neuter-Passives*, because their Perfect Tenses are Passive in form. They are likewise called *Semi-deponents*, because their Perfect Tenses are Deponents.

<i>Audeo, ausus sum, audēre,</i>	<i>to dare, venture.</i>
<i>Fido, fisis sum, fidēre,</i>	<i>to trust.</i>
<i>Gaudeo, gāvisus sum, gaudēre,</i>	<i>to rejoice.</i>
<i>Sōleo, sōlītus sum, sōlēre,</i>	<i>to be accustomed.</i>

*Obs.* A few other verbs also use the Perfect Participle Passive in an active sense: see § 524.

## CHAPTER XXII.—DEFECTIVE VERBS.

§ 120. Defective Verbs are such as want many Tenses and Persons.

I. <i>Coepī,</i>	<i>I began.</i>
II. <i>Mēmīnī,</i>	<i>I remember.</i>
III. <i>Odī,</i>	<i>I hate.</i>
IV. <i>Nōvī,</i>	<i>I know.</i>

These three Verbs are used only in the Perfect Tenses; but the three latter have a present signification.

### INDICATIVE.

<i>Perfect.</i>	<i>Coepī</i>	<i>Mēmīnī</i>	<i>Odī</i>	<i>Nōvī</i>
<i>Past Perfect.</i>	<i>Coepēram</i>	<i>Mēmīnēram</i>	<i>Odēram</i>	<i>Nōveram</i>
<i>Future-Perfect.</i>	<i>Coepēro</i>	<i>Mēmīnēro</i>	<i>Odēro</i>	<i>Nōvēro</i>

### SUBJUNCTIVE.

<i>Perfect.</i>	<i>Coepērim</i>	<i>Mēmīnērim</i>	<i>Odērim</i>	<i>Nōvērim</i>
<i>Past-Perfect.</i>	<i>Coepissem</i>	<i>Mēmīnissem</i>	<i>Odissem</i>	<i>Nōvissem</i>

### IMPERATIVE.

<i>Future.</i>	(wanting.)	<i>Memento</i> <i>Mementōtē</i>	(wanting.)
----------------	------------	------------------------------------	------------

### INFINITIVE.

<i>Perfect.</i>	<i>Coepissō</i>	<i>Mēmīnissō</i>	<i>Odissō</i>	<i>Nōvisse</i>
-----------------	-----------------	------------------	---------------	----------------

### PARTICIPLE.

<i>Future.</i>	<i>Coeptūrūs</i>	(wanting.)	<i>Ōsūrūs</i>
----------------	------------------	------------	---------------

*Obs.* 1. Instead of *coepī* and its Tenses, the Passive *coeptus sum*, &c., is used before an Infinitive Passive: as, *urbs aedificārī coepta est*, *the city began to be built.*

*Obs.* 2. *Novī* is properly the perfect of *Nosco*, *to learn to know*





§ 124. VIII. *Salvē, hail!* is found in the *Imperat. salvē, salvetē, salvēto*; in the *Infin. salvērē*; and in the *Future salvēbis*.

IX. *Āvē (hāvē), hail!* is found in the *Imperat. āvē, āvētē, āvēto*; and in the *Infin. āvērē*.

X. *Āpāgē, begone!* (the only form).

XI. *Cēdo, pl. (cēdītē) cettē, give me, tell me*, are Imperatives of an obsolete Verb.

XII. *Quaeso, I entreat, quaesūmūs, we entreat*, are the only forms used in this sense.

## CHAPTER XXIII.—IMPERSONAL VERBS.

§ 125. Impersonal Verbs are such as cannot have a Personal subject (I, thou, he), and are used only in the Third Person Singular.

§ 126. The following are the principal Impersonal Verbs:—

### I. VERBS WHICH DENOTE MENTAL STATES, ETC.

Dēcēt, dēcūt, dēcērē,	<i>it is seemly.</i>
Dēdēcēt, dēdēcūt, dēdēcērē,	<i>it is unseemly.</i>
Lībēt, lībūt & lībītum est, lībērē,	<i>it pleases.</i>
Līcēt, līcūt & līcītum est, līcērē,	<i>it is lawful.</i>
Līquēt, līquērē,	<i>it is clear.</i>
Mīsērēt or mīsērētūr, mīsērītum est, mīsērērē,	<i>it excites pity.</i>
Oportēt, oportuīt, oportērē,	<i>it behoves.</i>
Pīgēt, pīgūt & pīgītum est, pīgērē,	<i>it vexes.</i>
Plācēt, plācūt or plācītum est, plācērē,	<i>it pleases.</i>
Poenītēt, poenītūt, poenītērē,	<i>it causes sorrow</i>
Pūdēt, pūdūt or pūdītum est, pūdērē,	<i>it shames.</i>
Taedēt, (pertaesum est,) taedērē,	<i>it disgusts.</i>

*Obs.* All these Verbs belong to the Second Conjugation.

### II. VERBS WHICH DENOTE ATMOSPHERICAL PHENOMENA.

Grandīnāt, grandīnāre,	<i>it hails.</i>
Ningīt, ningūt, ningērē,	<i>it snows.</i>
Plūīt, plūīt or plūvīt, pluērē,	<i>it rains.</i>

<b>Tōnāt, tōnult, tōnārō,</b>	<i>it thunders.</i>
<b>Lūcēscīt, illuxīt,) lūcēscēre,</b>	<i>it becomes light.</i>
<b>Vespērascīt, vespērāvīt, vespērascērō,</b>	<i>evening approaches</i>

122. Many verbs which are conjugated regularly with their proper significations are in certain senses used impersonally: as, accidit, *it happens*, expedit, *it is advantageous*, &c.

§ 127. Most Impersonal Verbs have no Imperatives, Participles, Supines, or Gerunds. Consequently pūdet, for example, has only the following forms:

	INDICATIVE.	SUBJUNCTIVE.	INFINITIVE
<i>Present.</i>	Pūdēt	Pūdoāt	} Pūdōrō
<i>Past-Imperfect.</i>	Pūdēbāt	Pūdōrēt	
<i>Future.</i>	Pūdēbīt	—	—
<i>Perfect.</i>	Pūduīt	Pūduērīt	} Pūduissō
<i>Past-Perfect.</i>	Pūduōrāt	Pūduissēt	
<i>Future-Perfect.</i>	Pūduērīt	—	—

The Persons are expressed in the following way in the Present Indicative, and similarly in the other Tenses:

Pūdēt mō,	<i>it shames me, or I am ashamed.</i>
Pūdēt tō,	<i>it shames thee, or thou art ashamed.</i>
Pūdēt eum,	<i>it shames him, or he is ashamed.</i>
Pūdēt nōs,	<i>it shames us, or we are ashamed.</i>
Pūdēt vōs,	<i>it shames you, or you are ashamed.</i>
Pūdēt eōs,	<i>it shames them, or they are ashamed.</i>

§ 128. Intransitive Verbs are used in the Passive Voice impersonally: as,

Curritūr, Itūr, ventum est &c. (*They*, run, (*they*) go, (*they*) came, &c.

## CHAPTER XXIV.—ADVERBS.

§ 129. Adverbs derived from Adjectives, Participles, and Substantives, end in ē, ō, tēr, itūs, tim. Their formation is explained in § 196, sqq.

Adverbs in ē, ō, tēr, have Comparatives and Superlatives.

The *Comparative* of the Adverb is the same as the Neuter Nominative Singular of the Comparative Adjective, and consequently ends in ius.

The *Superlative* of the Adverb is formed from the Super-

lative of the Adjective by changing the final syllable of the latter into ē.

## ADJECTIVES.

		<i>Positive.</i>	<i>Comparative.</i>	<i>Superlative.</i>
doctus,	<i>learned,</i>	doctē	doctius	doctissimē
aeger,	<i>sick,</i>	aegrē <i>with difficulty</i>	aegrus	aegerrimē
fortis,	<i>brave,</i>	fortiter	fortius	fortissimē
similis,	<i>like,</i>	similiter	similius	simillimē
acer,	<i>keen,</i>	acriter	acrius	acerrimē
felix,	<i>lucky,</i>	felicitē	felicius	felicitissimē
prudens,	<i>prudent,</i>	prudenter	prudētius	prudētissimē

§ 130. If the Adjectives are irregular in their Comparison, the Adverbs also are irregular.

## ADJECTIVES.

		<i>Positive.</i>	<i>Comparative.</i>	
bonus,	<i>good,</i>	benē	melius	optimē
malus,	<i>bad,</i>	malē	pejus	pessimē
multus,	<i>much,</i>	multum	plus	plurimum
magnus,	<i>great,</i>	—	magis	maximē
propinquus,	<i>near,</i>	propē	propius	proximē
(prō) prior,	<i>before,</i>	—	prius	primum & primō

§ 131. Only the following Adverbs, not derived from Adjectives, are compared —

<i>Positive.</i>		<i>Comparative.</i>	<i>Superlative.</i>
diū,	<i>for a long time,</i>	diūtius	diūtissimē
nūper,	<i>lately,</i>	—	nūperrimē
saepē,	<i>often,</i>	saepius	saepissimē
sēcus,	<i>otherwise,</i>	sēcius	—
tempērī (tempōrī),	<i>timely,</i>	tempērius	—

§ 132. Many Adverbs were originally particular Cases of Substantives, Adjectives, or Pronouns : as,

tempōrī, tempēri,	from tempus,	seasonably (see § 131 .
grātis (grātiis),	grātia,	for thanks, i. e. for nothing.
ingrātiis ingrātis),	ingrātia,	without thanks, against any
fōrās, fōris,	fōra (ol s.) = fōris,	abroad. [one's will.
noctū,	noctus (ol s.) = nox,	by night.
dīū,	old abl. of dīēs,	by day.*
perpēram, acc. sing. f. of perpērus,		wrongly.

\* In this sense only in the phrase noctu diuque (rare).

Somo are compounded of two or more words: as of an Adjective and Substantive; or a Preposition and a Substantive; or two Verbs: as,

hōdīē,	from	hōc dĩē,	<i>on this day.</i>
quōtīdīē,	„	quōt dĩēs,	<i>every day.</i>
magnōpěřē,	„	magnō ōpěřē,	<i>greatly.</i>
tantōpěřē,	„	tantō ōpěřē,	<i>greatly.</i>
obvīam,	„	ōb vīam,	<i>in the way of.</i>
quamobrem,	„	quam ob rem,	<i>wherefore.</i>
invīcem,	„	īa vīcem,	<i>in turn.</i>
scīlicēt,	„	scīre līcēt,	<i>doubtless, of course.</i>
vīdēlicēt,	„	vīdēřē līcēt,	<i>manifestly, to wit.</i>
quamvīs	„	quam vīs (vōlo),	<i>however much.</i>

With many others.

§ 133. Adverbs may be divided, according to their signification, into the following classes:—

# I. ADVERBS OF INTERROGATION, AFFIRMATION, AND NEGATION.

## (a) Of Interrogation.

-ně,	<i>is it so?</i>		utrum . . . ne, an,	<i>is this the case,</i>
num,	<i>it is not so, is it?</i>		quārē, cur,	<i>why? [or that?</i>
nonně,	<i>is it not so?</i>		quōtīēs,	<i>how often?</i>

NOTE. Concerning the use of these Particles, see Syntax.

## (b) Of Affirmation.

sānē, vērō, ūtīquē,	<i>indeed.</i>		ēcastor,	<i>by Castor.</i>
ēděpōl, pol,	<i>by Pollux, truly.</i>		mēdīusfīdīus	<i>by the god of faith</i>
mēhercle,	<i>by Hercules, in truth.</i>		(me dius fidius),	<i>in very truth.</i>

Obs. There is no word in Latin precisely equivalent to the English *yes*. Instead of it some part of the question is generally repeated. Tu ita dicis? Ego vero dico. *Do you say so? Yes, I do.*

## (c) Of Negation.

nōn, haud,	<i>not.</i>		mīnīmē,	<i>by no means.</i>
------------	-------------	--	---------	---------------------

Obs. Immo (īmo) is equivalent to *nay, nay rather*: and may sometimes be rendered by *yes* or *no*: as,

Fātētur? Immo pernūgat. *Does he confess? No, he denies outright.* Plaut.  
Causa igitur non bōna est?, Immo optima. *Is our cause then not good? Yes, exceedingly good.* Cic.

## II. ADVERBS OF PLACE.

## 1. Derived from Pronouns, with one or two exceptions.

(1.) <i>Rest in a Place.</i>	(2.) <i>Motion from a Place.</i>	(3.) <i>Motion by a Way.</i>	(5.) <i>Motion to reach a Place.</i>
hīc, here, near me	hinc, { from the place near me.	hāo, by this road, near me.	horsum, { towards where I am, hither- wards.
istīc, there, near you.	istinc, { from the place near you.	istā, istāc, { by that road, near you.	istorsum, { towards where you are.
illīc, near him, yonder.	illinc, { from the place near him, from yonder place.	illā, illāc, { near him, by yonder road.	illorsum, { towards where he is, to yonder place.
ībī, there.	indē, thence.	cā, by this way.	eō, thither.
ībidem, in the same place.	indēm, { from the same place.	eādem, by the same way.	eōdem, to the same place.
ūbī, where.	undē, whence.	quā, by which way.	quorsum (-us), { towards, whither.
ūbiquē, everywhere.	undīque, from every side.	quēcunquē, by which way	quōcunquē, { whithersoever.
ūbiūbi, { wherever.	undeunquē, { from what- ever side.	quāquā, { sooner.	quōquō, { direction.
ālbī, elsewhere.	āliundē, from elsewhere.	āliā, by another way.	āliorsum, { towards another place.
ālicūdē, somewhere.	ālicūdē, { from some place or another	āliquā, by some way.	āliquorsum, { towards some place.
usquam, { anywhere.	usquam, { anywhere.	quāvis, { by which way	quōvis, { whitheryou will.
nūquam, { nowhere.	nūquam, { nowhere.	quālibēt, { you will.	quōlibēt, { whitheryou will.
ūbivīs, { in any place you	ūbivīs, { from which side	utracunquē, { by which of	utrōvīs, { to which of two
ūbiquē, { well, everywhere.	ūbiquē, { from which side	utraqūē, { the two ways	utrōquē, { towards both
utrobiquē, in both places.	utrobiquē, { from both sides.	utraqūē, { you will.	utrōquēver, { towards both
utrimquē, on both sides.	utrimquē, { on both sides.		utrimquēver, { places.

2. *Adverbs of Rest*, derived from Prepositions and other Words.

intūs,	} <i>within.</i>	fēris,	<i>out of doors, abroad.</i>
intrinsecūs,		pēregre,	<i>abroad.</i>
extrinsecūs,	<i>without.</i>	subtūs,	<i>beneath.</i>
prōpē,	<i>near.</i>	sūpernē,	<i>above.</i>
prōcūl,	<i>at a distance.</i>	infernē,	<i>below.</i>
passim,	<i>here and there, every-where.</i>	praesto,	<i>at hand.</i>

3. *Motion from a Place*, derived from other Words.

coelītūs,	<i>from heaven.</i>	rādīcītūs,	} <i>from the roots.</i>
divīnītūs,	<i>from the gods.</i>	stīrpītūs,	
fundītūs,	<i>from the ground,</i>	ēmīnūs (ex mănūs),	<i>from a distance</i>
	<i>utterly.</i>		<i>(of skirmishing with missiles).</i>

*Obs.* With ēmīnūs, compare cōmīnūs, *hand to hand, at close quarters.*

4. *Motion towards a Place*, derived from other Words.

(All compounds of the Preposition *versūs* (*versum*), *towards*).

introrsum (-us),	<i>inwards.</i>	adversūs (-um),	<i>towards, against.</i>
dēorsum (-us),	<i>downwards.</i>	sēorsum (-us),	<i>apart.</i>
sursum (-us), i.c.	} <i>upwards.</i>	dextrorsum (-us),	<i>towards the right.</i>
subversum,		sinistrorsum	} <i>towards the left.</i>
retorsum (-us),	<i>backwards.</i>	(-us),	
prorsūs,	<i>straight-forwards,</i>		
	<i>outright.</i>		

## III. ADVERBS OF TIME.

1. *When?*

quandō,	<i>when? at any time.</i>	cīto,	<i>quickly.</i>
nunc,	<i>now.</i>	stātīm,	} <i>immediately, forthwith.</i>
jam,	<i>now, presently.</i>	confestim,	
nōdō,	<i>just now.</i>	prōtīnūs,	
tunc,	} <i>then.</i>	illicēt,	
tum,		illīco,	} <i>afterwards</i>
nūpēr,	<i>lately.</i>	post, postea,	
dūdum,	} <i>some time ago.</i>	pesthāc,	<i>that.</i>
pridem,		intērim, intērēā,	<i>meanwhile.</i>
jamdūdum,		āliās,	<i>at another time.</i>
jampridem,		tandem,	<i>at length.</i>
mox,	<i>soon.</i>	jamdīū,	<i>long since.</i>

interdum,	} sometimes.	semp̄r	always.
nonnunquam,		hōdīē,	to-day.
ālīquando,	} formerly, hereafter.	crās.	to-morrow.
quandoque,		hērī (hērē,	yesterday.
quondam,	} not yet.	prīdīē,	the day before.
olim,		nūdiustertius,	three days since.
nondum,	} hardly yet.	postrīdīē,	the following day.
vixdum,		p̄rendīē,	the next day but one.
nunquam,	never.		

## 2. How long ?

dīū,	long.	tantisp̄r,	so long.
quamdīū.	how long, as long	p̄rump̄r,	} for a little while.
ālīquamdīū.	} for a while. [as.	paulisp̄r,	
ālīquantisp̄r,		adhuc,	hitherto.
tamdīū,	so long.	semp̄r,	always.

## 3. How often ?

sēm̄l,	once.	crēbro,	frequently.
bīs, tēr, &c.	twice, thrice, &c.	rāro,	seldom.
tōtīēs,	so often.	identīdem,	repeatedly
quōtīēs,	how often : as often	rursūs,	} again.
ālīquōtīēs,	several times. [as.	it̄erum,	
p̄l̄rumquē,	usually.	dēnūo,	afresh.
interdum,	} now and then.	quōtīdīē,	every day.
sūbindē,		quōtannīs,	every year.
saepē, saep̄nūm̄ro,	often.		

## IV. ADVERBS OF COMPARISON, OR ORDER, MANNER, DEGREE.

ādēo,	to such a degree.	quīsī,	as if.
admōdum,	exceedingly.	quātēnūs,	how far, as far as.
ālīt̄er,	in another way.	eātēnūs,	in so far
aequē (ac),	equally.	hactēnūs,	this far.
it̄ā,	in that way, so.	ālīquātēnūs,	to a certain point.
it̄em,	likewise.	saltem,	at least.
māgis,	more, rather.	sānē,	truly, very.
mīnūs,	less.	sātīs,	enough.
mōdō,	only.	sēcūs, sēcīus,	otherwise.
omnīno,	altogether.	sīc,	so, in this way.
paenē,	almost.	sīcūtī,	as.
p̄rīt̄er,	equally, side by side.	sōlum,	only.
p̄rīndē (p̄rīndē),	just as.	tanquam,	as, as if.
perquam,	very.	tantōp̄rē,	so greatly
pōtīūs,	rather.	tantum, tant-	} only.
pōtīssīmum,	in preference to all	ummōdō,	
praecipūē,	chiefly. [others.	ūt,	as, how.
p̄rōp̄ē,	nearly.	valdē,	very, greatly.
prorsūs,	altogether	vēlūt, vēlūtī,	just as.
quam,	as, than.	vix,	hardly, with diff-
quantōp̄rē,	how greatly, as		culty.
	greatly as.		



## CHAPTER XXV.—PREPOSITIONS.

§ 134. Of the Prepositions some govern the Accusative Case, some the Ablative, and some either the Accusative or the Ablative. Their construction is explained in the Syntax.

§ 135. I. *With the Accusative alone.*

Ad,	<i>to.</i>	Ob,	<i>on account of.</i>
Adversūs,	} <i>opposite, towards.</i>	Pēnes,	<i>in the power of.</i>
Adversum,		Pēr,	<i>through.</i>
Antē,	<i>before.</i>	Pōnē,	<i>behind.</i>
Apūd,	<i>near.</i>	Post,	<i>after.</i>
Circā, circum,	<i>around.</i>	Praetēr,	<i>beside.</i>
Circītēr,	<i>about.</i>	Prōpē,	<i>near.</i>
Cīs & citrā,	<i>on this side of.</i>	Proptēr,	<i>on account of</i>
Contrā,	<i>against.</i>	Sēcundum,	<i>following, along, in accordance with.</i>
Ergā,	<i>towards (of the</i>	Suprā,	<i>above.</i>
Extrā,	<i>outside of. [mind].</i>	Trans,	<i>across.</i>
Infrā,	<i>below.</i>	Ultrā,	<i>on the farther side of.</i>
Intēr,	<i>between, among.</i>	Versūs,	} <i>towards.</i>
Intrā,	<i>inside of, within.</i>	Versum,	
Juxtā,	<i>hard by, beside.</i>		

*Obs.* Versūs is always placed after the Accusative: as, Rōmam versūs, *towards Rome.*

§ 136. II. *With the Ablative alone.*

A. āb, or abs,	<i>by or from.</i>	Ex or ē,	<i>out of.</i> <sup>1</sup>
Absquē (rare),	<i>without.</i>	Prae,	<i>before.</i>
Cōram,	<i>in the presence of.</i>	Prō,	<i>in front of, before.</i>
Cum	<i>with.</i>	Sinē,	<i>without.</i>
Dē,	<i>down from, from.</i>	Tēnūs,	<i>reaching to, as far as.</i>

*Obs.* 1. *Ab* is used before vowels and *h*; both *ā* and *āb* before consonants, *abs* very seldom except in the phrase *abs te*.

*Obs.* 2. *Ex* is used before vowels and *h*; both *ex* and *ē* before consonants.

*Obs.* 3. *Tēnūs* is always placed after its case: as, pectōrē tēnūs, *as far as the breast.*

§ 137. III. *With the Accusative or Ablative.*

Īn,	<i>in, into.</i>	Sūpēr,	<i>over.</i>
Sūb,	<i>up to, under.</i>	Subtēr,	<i>under.</i>
Clam, <i>without the knowledge of.</i>			

*In* and *Sub* with the *Acc.* answer the question *Whither?* with the *Abl.*, the question *Where?*

§ 138. *Obs.* 1. Some Prepositions are used as Adverbs: as, antē, clam, cōram, contrā, post, praeter, propter.

*Obs. 2.* Prepositions, in composition with other words, frequently undergo euphonic changes. The most common change is the assimilation of the final consonant of the Preposition to the initial consonants of the words with which it is combined: as, allôquor from ad and lôquor.

**Ab, abs.** *Ab* remains unchanged before vowels and most consonants. Before *m* and *v* it becomes *a*: as, â-moveo, â-vêho. *Ab* becomes *au* in au-fêro, au-fúgio. *Abs* stands before *c* and *t* only: as, abs-cêdo, abs-tinco.

**Ad** remains unchanged before *d, j, m, v*: as, ad-do, ad-jâeco, ad-mîror, ad-vêho. The *d* is assimilated before most other consonants: as, ac-cêdo, af-fêro, ag-gêro, ap-pôno, ac-quîro, as-sisto, as-sûmo. The *d* is omitted before *s* followed by a consonant, and *gn*: as, a-spicio, a-gnosco.

**Com** (instead of *cum*) remains unchanged before the labials *p, b, m*: as, com-pôno, com-bîbo, com-mitto. The *m* is assimilated before *l, n, r*: as, col-ligo, con-necto, cor-rîpio. The *m* is changed into *n* before the other consonants: as, con-fêro, con-gêro, con-trâho. The *m* is dropped before vowels and *h*: as, co-âlesco, co-eo, co-hæreo.

**Ex** remains unchanged before vowels and the consonants *c, p, q, s, t*: as, ex-eo, ex-êpio, ex-pôno, ex-quîro, ex-solvo, ex-trâho. The *x* is assimilated before *f*: as, ef-fêro. The *x* is omitted before the remaining consonants: as, ê-ligo, ê-jicio.

**In** becomes *im* before the labials *p, b, m*: as, im-pôno, im-buo, im-mitto. The *n* is assimilated before *l* and *r*: as, il-lûdo, ir-rumpo. Before other consonants and vowels it remains unchanged.

**Inter** undergoes assimilation only in the verb intel-ligo and its derivatives.

**Ob** undergoes assimilation before *c, f, g, p*: as, oc-euro, of-fêro, og-gêro, op-pôno.

**Per** undergoes assimilation only in pel-licio and its derivatives.

**Sub** undergoes assimilation before *c, f, g, m, p*, and often before *r*: as, suc-curro, suf-ficio, sug-gêro, sum-mitto, sup-pôno, sur-rîpio.

**Trans** is frequently shortened into *trâ*: as, trâ-dûco, trâ-jicio.

*Obs. 3. Inseparable Prepositions occur only in composition.\**

**Amb**, around: as, amb-io, to go around; amb-lgo, to wander around. The *b* is dropped before *p*: as, am-pûto, to cut around or away; am-plector, to twine around or embrace. *Amb* becomes *an* before gutturals and *f*: as, an-ceps, two-headed; an-quiro, to seek around; an-fractus, a bending.

**Dis** or *di*, in different directions: as, dis-pôno, to set in different parts; di-rîpio, to tear in pieces. Before *f*, *dis* becomes *dif*: as, dif-fundo, to pour in different directions.

**Rê** or *rêd*, back: as, rê-mitto, to send back; rêd-co, to go back.

**Sê** or *Sêd*, aside: as, sê-dûco, to lead aside; sê-cûrus, free from care; sêdîtio, a going apart; sedition.

## CHAPTER XXVI.—CONJUNCTIONS.

§ 139. Conjunctions may be divided into the following classes :

## I. CONNECTIVE.

Ět,			Něquě, něc,	} neither, nor.
Atquě, āc,	} and.		Něvě, neu,	
Quě,			Sivě, seu,	} or if.
Aut,	} either, or.		Necnōn,	
Věl, vč,			Etiam,	} also.
			Quoque,	

*Obs. 1.* Quě and vč are always added to the end of the second of the two words which they unite, and must be pronounced with it, as if they formed a single word: as, terrū mārīquě, *by land and by sea*; plūs minusvč, *more or less*. Such words are called enclitics.

*Obs. 2.* Ac, vě, něc, neu, seu are contractions respectively of atquě, věl, něquě, něvě, sč.

*Obs. 3.* Ac is never used before vowels or h: atquě occurs most frequently before vowels, but also before consonants.

To these may be added the correlatives non mōdo (solum) . . . . sed (vērū) ětiam, *not only . . . . but also*; quum (tum) . . . . tum, *both . . . . and*.

## II. ADVERSATIVE.

Sčd,	} but.	Tāměn,	yet, nevertheless.
Antem,		Vērū, věro,	but, indeed.
Ast, at,		Ěnimvēro,	but indeed
Atque,		Attāměn,	but yet.

## III. CONDITIONAL.

Sī,	if.	Dum,	} provided that.
Nīsī, nī,	if not.	Mōdō,	
Sin,	if not; but if.	Dummōdo,	

## IV. CONCESSIVE.

Etsi,	} although	Quamvis,	however much, al-
Ětiamsi,		Quum,	though. {though.
Tāmetsi,		Quidem,	indeed.
Licět,		Ůt,	granting that, al-
Quanquam			though.

## V. CAUSAL.

Quum,	whereas, since.	Nam,	} for.
Quīā, quōd,	because.	Ěnim,	
Quōniam,	since.	Ětēnim,	
Quandōquidem,	seeing that.		and in fact.

## VI. CONCLUSIVE.

Ergo, Idcirco, Ideo, Igītūr,	} <i>therefore.</i>	Ităquē, Quocircā, Quārē, Quāproptēr,	} <i>and so, accordingly, wherefore.</i>
---------------------------------------	---------------------	---	--

## VII. FINAL.

Ūt, Quō, Quin, Quōmīnūs,	} <i>that, in order that.</i> } <i>that not.</i>	Nē, Nēvē, neu,	<i>that not, lest. and that . . . not.</i>
-----------------------------------	---	-------------------	--

## VIII. TEMPORAL.

Antēquam, Priusquam, Postquam,	} <i>before that.</i> } <i>after that.</i>	Donec, Quoad, Dum,	} <i>so long as, until.</i>
--------------------------------------	---	--------------------------	-----------------------------

Sīmulatque (ac), *as soon as.*

NOTE.—Concerning the uses of the above Conjunctions, see *Syntar*.

## CHAPTER XXVII.—INTERJECTIONS.

§ 140. Interjections are not so much parts of speech as substitutes for definite sentences. They are mostly sounds or cries expressive of emotion.

They may be divided into the following classes:—

1. Of surprise: ō! en! eccē! pāpae! ātat! etc.
2. Of grief: ah! ēheu (heu)! hei! vae! etc.
3. Of joy: io! ha! ēvoe; eu (eugē)! etc.
4. Of disgust: phuī! āpāgē! etc.
5. Of adjuration: prō (proh)! To this may be added the abbreviated oaths mehercle (mehercūle, hercle, etc.), pol, cēdēpol, mēdiusfidius, and the like.

## APPENDIX A.

## CHAPTER XXVIII.—THE GENDERS OF SUBSTANTIVES.

## GENERAL RULES.

## GENDER ASCERTAINED BY THE MEANING.

§ 141. *Males, Mountains, Months, Winds, and Rivers*  
are *Masculine*.

2. *Females, Countries, Islands, Towns, and Trees*  
are *Feminine*.

*Obs.* In the case of some animals sex is disregarded : thus, *āquila*, *eagle*, and *vulpes*, *fox*, are always *feminine* ; while *lepus*, *hare*, *mus*, *mouse*, and *passer*, *sparrow*, are always *masculine*. Such Substantives are called *Epicene* (ἐπὶ κοινός).

3. *Indeclinable Substantives, as,*  
*Fās, nēfās, nihl, instār,*  
are *Neuter*.

fās,	permitted by heaven.		nīhīl,	nothing.
nēfās,	not permitted by heaven.		instār,	resemblance.

4. *Substantives denoting both the male and the female, as*  
*Civis, conjux, sācerdōs, testis*  
are *Common*.

civis,	a citizen (male or female).		sācerdōs,	a priest or priestess.
conjux,	a husband or wife.		testis,	a witness (male or female).

## SPECIAL RULES.

## GENDER ASCERTAINED BY THE TERMINATIONS.

§ 142. I. FIRST DECLENSION.

*Principal Rule.*

**A** and **ē** are *Feminine*,  
**As** and **ēs** are *Masculine*.

*Exceptions.*

1. Names of Males in a are Masculine : as,

scriba, *a clerk.*

nauta, *a sailor.*

incōla, *an inhabitant.*

2. Most Rivers in a are Masculine (§ 141, 1) : as,

Addua, *the Adda.*

Garūna, *the Garonne.*

Sēquāna, *the Seine.*

Also Hādria, *the Adriatic Sea.*

But the following are Feminine :

Albūla, *ancient name of Tiber.*

Allia, *in Latium.*

Matrōna, *the Marne.*

## § 143. II. SECOND DECLENSION.

*Principal Rule.*

Us and er are Masculine,

Um is Neuter.

*Exceptions.*

1. Trees and Towns in us follow the general rule, and are Feminine (see § 141, 2) : as,

ulmus, *an elm-tree*

Cōrinthus, *Corinth.*

2. The following are also Feminine :

alvus, *the belly.*

cōlus, *a distaff.*

hūmus, *the ground.*

vannus, *a winnowing fan.*

And some Greek words : as,

mēthōdus, *method.*

arctos, *the constellation*

*Bear.*

carbāsus, *fine flax.*

3. The following are Neuter :

virus, *poison.*

pēlāgus, *the sea.*

vulgus, *the common people.*

Obs. *Fulgus* is sometimes Masculine.

## § 144. III. THIRD DECLENSION.

*Preliminary Rules.*

1. The rules for determining the Gender of Substantives from their meaning (given in § 141) are of course applicable in this as in the other Declensions : thus, pāter, *a father* ; Tiberis, *the Tiber* ; Libs, *a S.W. wind*, are Masculine ; while mūlier, *a woman* ; sōror, *a sister* ; Vēnus, *the goddess of beauty and grace*, are Feminine.

2. All Abstract Substantives derived from Adjectives

sometimes also from Substantives), and denoting *qualities*, are Feminine: as,

humilitas,	humilis, humility,	from	humilis.
suavitas,	suavis, sweet,	"	suavis.
altitudo,	altus, high,	"	altus.
fortitudo,	fortis, strong,	"	fortis.
virginitas,	virgo, virgin,	"	vir.

3. Substantives in *io*, *tio*, *sio*, derived from Verbs, and expressing the action abstractly, are Feminine: as

expugnatio,	taking by storm,	from	expugno.
manitio,	the act of fortifying,	"	maneo.
discessio,	departure,	"	discedo.
larcinatio,	bribery,	"	larcino.
opinio,	thinking, opinion,	"	opior.
contagio,	touching, contagion,	"	contango (not TAG).

Obs. 1. In some of the above the active signification is lost, as *regio*, a *district* (from *rego*, I *regio*, a *legion* (from *lego*).

2. To the above may be added those which denote a *permanent action* or condition, in *go* and *do*: as,

prurigo,	itching,	from	prurio.
cupiditas,	a desire, passion,	"	cupio.
vertigo,	giddiness,	"	verto.

With the exception of the above, all Genders of this Declension must be decided by the termination.

### First Principal Rule (Masculine).

O, or (ōris). os, and er,

Es, increasing *short* in Genitive,

are *Masculine*.—EXAMPLES: *Leo*, ōnis, a *lion*; *dolor*, ōris, *pain*; *flor*, flōis, a *flower*; *anser*, ōris, a *goose*; *pēs*, pēdis, a *foot*.

### Exceptions.

1. In o.

Feminine are *do*, *go*, *io*.

To these add *caro*, *echus*.

But Masculine are *harpago*,

*ordo*, *cardo*, *scipio*.

*Stellio*, *septentrio*,

*Margo*, *lago*, *pugio*

*Tatio*, *pupilio*,

*Unio*, *circulio*,

Lastly *respertilio*.

caro,	carnis,	flesh.
echus,	echus,	an echus.
harpago,	ōnis,	a grappling-hook.
ordo,	lōis,	a row.
cardo,	Ine,	a hinge.
scipio,	ōnis,	a staff.
stellio,	ōnis,	a handle.
septentrio,	ōnis,	the north.

margo,	Inis,	a border or dy.
lago,	ōnis,	a pond.
pugio,	ōnis,	a dagger.
tatio,	ōnis,	a father-in-law.
pupilio,	ōnis,	a brother-in-law.
unio,	ōnis,	a pearl.
circulio,	ōnis,	a wheel.
respertilio,	ōnis,	a hat.

## 2. In or.

Neuter Nouns which end in or  
Are only four :

Marmor, aequor, ādor, cōr.  
Fēmīnīni gēnēris  
Is only arbor (arbōris).

marmor, ōris, *marble.*  
aequor, ōris *the level surface of*  
*the sea.*

ādor, ōris, *spelt.*  
cor, cordis, *the heart.*  
arbor, ōris, *a tree.*

## 3. In os.

Feminine are cōs and dōs.

Neuter Nouns are ōs and ōs.

cōs, cōtis, *a whetstone.*  
dōs, dōtis, *a dowry.*

ōs, ossis, *a bone.*  
ōs, ōris, *the mouth.*

## 4. In er.

Many Neuters end in er:  
Vēr, cādāver, iter, tūber,  
Cicer, pīper, sīser, ūber,

Zingīber, pāpāver, sūber.  
Acer, siler, verber, spinther  
Feminine is only linter.

vēr, vēris, *the spring.*  
cādāver, ēris, *a corpse.*  
iter, Itinēris, *a journey.*  
tūber, ēris, *a swelling.*  
cicer, ēris, *the chick-pea.*  
pīper, ēris, *pepper.*  
sīser, ēris, *a plant (skirret).*  
ūber, ēris, *an udder.*

zingīber, ēris, *ginger.*  
pāpāver, ēris, *the poppy.*  
sūber, ēris, *the cork-tree*  
ācer, ēris, *the maple.*  
siler, ēris, *a withy.*  
verber, ēris, *a whip, scourge.*  
spinther, ēris, *a kind of bracelet.*  
linter, tris (f.), *a wherry.*

## 5. In es, increasing in the Genitive.

Feminine are rēquies,

Quiēs, mercēs, mergēs, tēgēs,  
Compes, inquiēs, and sēgēs.

quiēs, ētis, } *rest.*  
rēquies, ētis, }  
inquiēs, ētis, } *restlessness.*  
mercēs, ēlis, } *wages*

mergēs, Itis, *a sheaf of corn.*  
tēgēs, ētis, *a mat.*  
compes, ēdis, *a fetter.*  
sēgēs, ētis, *standing corn.*

## § 145. Second Principal Rule (Feminine).

X, as, aus, and is.

S preceded by a consonant.

Es not increasing in Genitive.

are Feminine.—EXAMPLES: Pax, pācis, *peace*; libertās, ātis, *liberty*; laus, laudis, *praise*; nāvis, is, *a ship*; urbs, urbis, *a city*; nūbēs, is, *a cloud*.



## Exceptions.

1. In *x*.Masculine are words in *ex*:Feminine alone are *lex*,  
*Sūpellex*, *cārex*, *ilex*, *nex*,Masculine are *trādux*, *cālix*,  
*Phoenix* too, as well as *fornix*.

<i>lex</i> ,	<i>lēgis</i> ,	<i>a law.</i>
<i>sūpellex</i> ,	<i>lectilis</i> ,	<i>furniture.</i>
<i>cārex</i> ,	<i>īcis</i> ,	<i>a kind of rush.</i>
<i>ilex</i> ,	<i>īcis</i> ,	<i>the scarlet oak.</i>
<i>nex</i> ,	<i>nēcis</i> ,	<i>violent death.</i>

<i>trādux</i> ,	<i>ūcis</i> ,	<i>a vine-branch.</i>
<i>cālix</i> ,	<i>īcis</i> ,	<i>a cup.</i>
<i>phoenix</i> ,	<i>īcis</i> ,	<i>a fabulous bird.</i>
<i>fornix</i> ,	<i>īcis</i> ,	<i>an arch.</i>

2. In *as*.Six Masculina end in *as*:*As* (*assis*), *mās*, and *ēlēphās*,  
*Vās* (*rādis*), *gīgās*, *ādāmās*.The Neuter Nouns which end  
in *as*Are *Vās* (*rāsīs*), *fās* and *nēfās*.

<i>ās</i> ,	<i>assis</i> ,	<i>a Roman coin.</i>
<i>mās</i> ,	<i>māris</i> ,	<i>a male.</i>
<i>ēlēphās</i> ,	<i>antis</i> ,	<i>an elephant.</i>
<i>vās</i> ,	<i>rādis</i> ,	<i>a surety.</i>
<i>gīgās</i> ,	<i>antis</i> ,	<i>a giant.</i>

<i>ādāmās</i> ,	<i>antis</i> ,	<i>a diamond.</i>
<i>vās</i> ,	<i>vāsīs</i> ,	<i>a vessel.</i>
<i>fās</i>	(indecl.),	<i>permitted by heaven.</i>
<i>nēfās</i>	(indecl.),	<i>not permitted by heaven.</i>

3. In *is*.Many Nouns which end in *is*  
Are Masculini generis:*Pānis*, *piscis*, *crinis*, *finis*,  
*Ignis*, *lāpis*, *pulvis*, *cīnis*,  
*Orbis*, *amnis*, and *cānālis*,  
*Sanguis*, *unguis*, *glis*, *annālis*,*Fascis*, *axis*, *jūnis*, *ensis*,  
*Fustis*, *vectis*, *rōmis*, *mensis*,  
*Vermis*, *torris*, *cūcūmis*,  
*Postis*, *foliis*, *mūgilis*,  
*Cassis*, *caulis*, *callis*, *collis*,  
*Sentis*, *torquis*, *pēnis*, *pollis*.

<i>pānis</i> ,	<i>is</i> ,	<i>bread.</i>
<i>piscis</i> ,	<i>is</i> ,	<i>a fish.</i>
<i>crinis</i> ,	<i>is</i> ,	<i>hair.</i>
<i>finis</i> ,	<i>is</i> ,	<i>an end.</i>
<i>ignis</i> ,	<i>is</i> ,	<i>fire.</i>
<i>lāpis</i> ,	<i>īdis</i> ,	<i>a stone</i>
<i>pulvis</i> ,	<i>ēris</i> ,	<i>dust.</i>
<i>cīnis</i> ,	<i>ēris</i> ,	<i>ashes.</i>
<i>orbis</i> ,	<i>is</i> ,	<i>a circle.</i>
<i>amnis</i> ,	<i>is</i> ,	<i>a river.</i>
<i>cānālis</i> ,	<i>is</i> ,	<i>a conduit.</i>
<i>sanguis</i> ,	<i>īnis</i> ,	<i>blood.</i>
<i>unguis</i> ,	<i>is</i> ,	<i>a finger- or toe-nail.</i>
<i>glis</i> ,	<i>iris</i> ,	<i>a dormouse.</i>
<i>annālis</i>	(usu. plur.),	<i>a year-book.</i>
<i>fascis</i> ,	<i>is</i> ,	<i>a bundle.</i>
<i>axis</i> ,	<i>is</i> ,	<i>an axle.</i>
<i>tūnis</i> ,	<i>is</i> ,	<i>a rope.</i>
<i>ensis</i> ,	<i>is</i> ,	<i>a sword.</i>

<i>fustis</i> ,	<i>is</i> ,	<i>a cudgel.</i>
<i>vectis</i> ,	<i>is</i> ,	<i>a lever.</i>
<i>rōmis</i> ,	(more freq. <i>rōmer</i> ) <i>ris</i> ,	<i>a ploughshare.</i>
<i>mensis</i> ,	<i>is</i> ,	<i>a month.</i>
<i>vermis</i> ,	<i>is</i> ,	<i>a worm.</i>
<i>torris</i> ,	<i>is</i> ,	<i>a firebrand.</i>
<i>cūcūmis</i> ,	<i>is</i> , and <i>ēris</i> ,	<i>a cucumber.</i>
<i>postis</i> ,	<i>is</i> ,	<i>a doorpost.</i>
<i>foliis</i> ,	<i>is</i> ,	<i>a pair of bellows.</i>
<i>mūgilis</i>	(usu. <i>mūgil</i> ),	<i>a mullet.</i>
<i>cassis</i>	(plur. <i>ium</i> ),	<i>a net.</i>
<i>caulis</i> ,	<i>is</i> ,	<i>a stalk.</i>
<i>callis</i> ,	<i>is</i> ,	<i>a path.</i>
<i>collis</i> ,	<i>is</i> ,	<i>a hill.</i>
<i>sentis</i> ,	<i>is</i> ,	<i>a bramble.</i>
<i>torquis</i>	(also <i>es</i> ), <i>is</i> ,	<i>a chain for the</i>
<i>pēnis</i> ,	<i>is</i> ,	<i>a tail. [no h.]</i>
<i>pollis</i> ,	<i>īnis</i> ,	<i>fine flour, meal.</i>

4. In *s* preceded by a consonant :

Masculine are *pons* and *fons*,  
*Hydrops*, *torrens*, *gryps*, & *mons*,

*Adeps*, *rūdens*, *ōriens*,  
*Dens* and *trīdens*, *occīdens*.

*pons*,      *tis*,      *a bridge*.  
*fons*,      *tis*,      *a fountain*.  
*hydrops*,      *ōpis*      *dropsy*.  
*torrens*,      *tis*,      *a torrent*.  
*gryps*,      *grīphis*,      *a griffin*.  
*mons*,      *tis*,      *a mountain*.

*ādeps*,      *Ipis*,      *fat*.  
*rūdens*,      *entis*,      *a cable*.  
*ōriens*,      *tis*,      *the east*.  
*dens*,      *tis*,      *a tooth*.  
*trīdens*,      *tis*,      *a trident*.  
*occīdens*,      *tis*,      *the west*.

5. In *ēs*.

Masculines which end in *ēs*  
 Are *verrēs* and *ācinācēs*.

*verrēs*,      *is*,      *a boar-pig*.  
*ācinācēs*,      *is*,      *a scimitar*.

§ 146. Third Principal Rule (*Neuter*)

*A*, *e*, and *c*,

*L*, *n*, and *t*,

*Ar*, *ur*, and *us*,

are *Neuter*.—EXAMPLES: *Poēmā*, *ātis*, *a poem*; *mārē*, *is*, *the sea*; *lac*, *lactis*, *milk*; *ānīmāl*, *ālis*, *an animal*; *nōmēn*, *īnis*, *a name*; *cāpūt*, *cāpītis*, *a head*; *fulgūr*, *ūris*, *lightning*; *corpūs*, *ōris*, *a body*.

*Exceptions.*1. In *l*.

Masculines in *l* are *mūgil*,  
*Sōl* and *consūl*, *sāl* and *pūgil*.

*mūgil*, *lis*, *a mullet*. | *sāl*, *sālis*, *salt*.  
*sōl*, *sōlis*, *the sun*. | *pūgil*, *lis*, *a*  
*consūl*, *lis*, *a consul*. | *boxer*.

2. In *n*.

Masculines in *n* are *rēn*,  
*splēn*,  
*Pectēn*, *liēn*, *attāgēn*.

*rēn*,      *rēnis* (usu. in pl.), *the kidney*.  
*splēn*,      *ēnis*,      *the spleen*.  
*pectēn*,      *īnis*,      *a comb*.  
*liēn*,      *ēnis*,      *the spleen*.  
*attāgēn*, *ēnis*,      *a heathcock*.

3. In *ur*.

Masculines in *ur* are *furfur*,  
*Astur*, *vultur*, *fūr*, and *turtur*.

*furfur*, *ūris*, *bran*. | *fūr*, *ūris*, *a thief*.  
*astur*, *ūris*, *a hawk*. | *turtur*, *ūris*, *a*  
*vultur*, *ūris*, *a vulture*. | *turtle-dove*.

4. In *us*

The Masculines which end in *us* |  
 Are *lēpus* (*lēpōris*) and *mūs*.

*lēpus*, *ōris*,      *a hare*.  
*mūs*,      *mūris*,      *a mouse*.

5. In *us*.

The Feminines which end in *us* | *Sēnectūs, tellūs, incūs, sālūs,*  
 Are *Jūventūs, virtūs, servītūs,* | Add *pecūs* (*pecūdis*) and *pālūs*.

<i>jūventūs,</i>	<i>ūtis,</i>	<i>youth.</i>	<i>incūs,</i>	<i>ūdis,</i>	<i>an anvil.</i>
<i>virtūs,</i>	<i>ūtis,</i>	<i>virtue.</i>	<i>sālūs,</i>	<i>ūtis,</i>	<i>safety.</i>
<i>servītūs,</i>	<i>ūtis,</i>	<i>slavery.</i>	<i>pecūs,</i>	<i>ūdis,</i>	<i>cattle.</i>
<i>sēnectūs,</i>	<i>ūtis,</i>	<i>old-age.</i>	<i>pālūs,</i>	<i>ūdis,</i>	<i>a marsh.</i>
<i>tellūs,</i>	<i>ūris,</i>	<i>the earth.</i>			

## § 147. IV. FOURTH DECLENSION.

*Principal Rule.*

Us is Masculine

U is Neuter.

*Exceptions.*

Feminines which end in *us*: | *Dōmus, nūrus, socrus, ānus,*  
*Tribus, ācus, porticus,* | *Idūs* (*idūūm*) and *mānus*.

<i>tribus,</i>	<i>a tribe</i> (a division of the Roman people).	<i>socrus,</i>	<i>a mother-in-law.</i>
<i>ācus,</i>	<i>a needle.</i>	<i>ānus,</i>	<i>an old-woman.</i>
<i>porticus</i>	<i>a portico.</i>	<i>idūs</i> ( <i>pl.</i> ),	<i>the Ides</i> (a division of the Roman month).
<i>dōmus,</i>	<i>a house.</i>	<i>mānūs,</i>	<i>a hand.</i>
<i>nūrus,</i>	<i>a daughter-in-law.</i>		

## § 148. V. FIFTH DECLENSION.

*Rule.*

All are Feminine except *dies* (*mēridies*), which in the Plural is always Masculine, and in the Singular either Masculine or Feminine.

## APPENDIX B.

CHAPTER XXIX.—PERFECTS AND SUPINES  
OF VERBS.

## I. THE FIRST CONJUGATION.

§ 149. The Perfects and the Supines of the First Conjugation end regularly in *âvi*, *âtum*: as, *âmo*, *âmâvi*, *âmâtum*, *âmâre*, *to love*. The following are exceptions:—

*Perfect—ui. Supine—tum.*

NOTE. Some of these verbs have likewise Perfects and Supines in *âvi*, *âtum*.

1.	Crêpo,	crêpui,	crêpîtum,	crêpâre,	<i>to creak.</i>
2.	Cûbo,	cûbui,	cûbîtum,	cûbâre,	<i>to lie.</i>
3.	Dômo,	dômui,	dômîtum,	dômâre,	<i>to tame.</i>
4.	Sôno,	sônui,	sônîtum,	sônâre,	<i>to sound.</i>
5.	Vêto,	vêtui,	vêtîtum,	vêtâre,	<i>to forbid.</i>
6.	Tôno,	tônui,	—	tônâre,	<i>to thunder.</i>
7.	Mîco,	mîcâi,	—	mîcâre,	<i>to glitter.</i>
8.	Plico,	{plîcui, plîcâvi,	{plîcîtum, plîcâtum,	plîcâre,	<i>to fold.</i>
9.	Frîco,	frîcui,	{frîcîtum, frîctum,	frîcâre,	<i>to rub.</i>
10.	Sêco,	sêcui,	sectum,	sêcâre,	<i>to cut.</i>
11.	{Nêco regular).				
	Enêco,	{ênêcui, ênêcâvi,	{ênectum, ênecâtum,	ênecâre,	<i>to kill.</i>

## REMARKS AND COMPOUND VERBS.

*Obs.* Only those compound verbs are inserted which differ from the simple verbs.

1.	Diserêpo,	diserêpui,	diserêpîtum,	diserêpâre,	<i>to differ.</i>
		diserêpâvi,	diserêpâtum,		
	Incrêpo,	incrêpui,	incrêpîtum,	incrêpâre,	<i>to chide.</i>
		incrêpâvi,	incrêpâtum,		

But the forms in *âvi* and *âtum* are rare.

2. *Cûbo.* Some of the compounds are of the Third Conjugation :

accumbo, accûbui, accûbîtum, accumbêre, *to recline at table.*

In like manner incumbo, *lie or lean upon* ; prôcumbo, *lie down* ; succumbo, *lie or fall under* ; occumbo (*supply mortem*), *die*, &c.

4. *Sôno.* *Future Part.* sônâtûrus.

7.	emîco,	êmîcui,	êmîcîtum,	êmîcâre,	<i>to spring out.</i>
	dîmîco,	dîmîcâvi,	dîmîcâtum,	dîmîcâre,	<i>to fight.</i>

8. *Plīco* is used only in composition :

explicō,	explicui,	explictum,	explicāre,	<i>to unfold.</i>
	explicāvi,	explicātum,		
implicō,	implicui,	implictum,	implicāre,	<i>to fold in, entangle.</i>
	implicāvi,	implicātum,		

10. *Sēco*. *Future Part.* *sēcātūrus*.

### 2. *Perfect—i (vi)—tum.*

1. Jūvo,	jūvi,	jūtum,	jāvāre,	<i>to assist.</i>
		{ lāvātum,		
2. Lāvo,	lāvi,	{ lautum,	lāvāre,	<i>to wash</i>
		{ lōtum,		

### REMARKS AND COMPOUND VERBS.

1. *Jūco*. *Future Part.* *jāvātūrus*.

2. *Lāco*. There is also an infinitive *lāvēre* of the Third Conjugation. In composition *lōo*, of the Third Conjugation, is used : as,

abluo,	ablui,	ablūtum,	abluere,	<i>to wash away.</i>
--------	--------	----------	----------	----------------------

### 3. *Perfect with Reduplication. Supine—tum.*

1. Do,	dēdi,	dātum,	dāre,	<i>to give.</i>
2. Sto,	stēti,	stātum,	stāre,	<i>to stand.</i>

### COMPOUND VERBS.

1. *Do*. In composition with prepositions of *two* syllables it is the same : as,

circumdo,	circumdēdi,	circumdātum,	circumdāre,	<i>to surround.</i>
-----------	-------------	--------------	-------------	---------------------

But in composition with prepositions of *one* syllable it is of the Third Conjugation : as,

addo,	addīdi,	addītum,	addēre,	<i>to put to, to add.</i>
-------	---------	----------	---------	---------------------------

See § 159, No. 18.

2. *Sto*. In composition with prepositions of *two* syllables it is the same : as,

circumsto,	circumstēti,	circumstāre,	<i>to surround.</i>
------------	--------------	--------------	---------------------

But in composition with prepositions of *one* syllable the perfect is *stīti*.

adsto,	adstīti,	adstāre,	<i>to stand near.</i>
--------	----------	----------	-----------------------

## II. THE SECOND CONJUGATION.

§ 150. The Perfects and the Supines of the Second Conjugation end regularly in *ui* and *itum* : as, *mōneo*, *mōnui*, *mōnītum*, *mōnēre*, *to advise*. The following are exceptions :

### 1. *Perfect—ui. Supine—tum.*

1. Dōceo,	dōcui,	doctum,	dōcēre,	<i>to teach.</i>
2. Tēneo,	tēnui,	tentum,	tēnēre,	<i>to hold.</i>
3. Misceo,	miscui,	{ mixtum,	miscēre,	<i>to mix.</i>
		{ mistum,		

4.	Torreo,	torrui,	tostum,	torrere,	to roast.
5.	Sorbeo,	{ sorbui, sorspsi,	—	sorbere,	to suck up.
6.	Censeo,	censui,	censum,	censere,	to assess, think

## COMPOUND VERBS.

2.	Retineo,	retinui,	retentum,	retinere,	to hold back.
----	----------	----------	-----------	-----------	---------------

So also the other compounds of teneo.

6.	Recenseo,	recensui,	{ recensitum, recensum,	recensere,	to review.
----	-----------	-----------	----------------------------	------------	------------

## § 151.—2. Perfect—ēvi. Supine—ētum.

1.	Deleo.	dēlēvi,	dēlētum,	dēlere,	to blot out, destroy.
2.	Fleo,	flēvi,	flētum,	flere,	to weep.
3.	Neo,	nēvi,	nētum,	nere,	to spin.
4.	{ Pleo only in composition. Compleo, complēvi, complētum, complere, to fill up. Oleo only in composition. Aboleo, abōlēvi, abōlītum, abolere, to abolish. Adoleo, adōlēvi, adultum, — to grow up. (Adolesco.) Exoleo, exōlēvi, exōlētum, — to grow old. (Exolesco.) Obsoleo, obsolēvi, obsolētum, — to grow out of use. (Obsolesco.)				

To this class may be added :

6.	Cico,	cīvi,	cītum,	ciere,	to stir.
----	-------	-------	--------	--------	----------

c. Cico in composition is either the same, or a verb of the Fourth Conjugation :

concico,	conciui,	conciitum,	conciere,	{ to rouse thoroughly.
conco,	conciui,	conciitum,	conciere,	

But accio, acciui, acciitum, acciere, to summon, is of the Fourth Conjugation only. Exco has both excitus and excitus.

## § 152.—3. Perfect—i (di). Supine—sum.

1.	Prandeo,	prandi,	pransum,	prandere,	to breakfast.
2.	Sedeo,	sedi,	sessum,	sedere,	to sit.
3.	Video,	vidi,	visum,	videre,	to see.
4.	Strideo,	stridi,	—	stridere,	to creak.

## With Reduplication in the Perfect Tenses.

5.	Mordeo,	mōmordi,	morsum,	mordere,	to bite.
6.	Pendeo,	pēpendi,	pensum,	pendere,	to hang.
7.	Spondeo,	spēpondi,	sponsum,	spondere,	to promise.
8.	Tondeo,	totondi,	tongum,	tondere,	to shear.

## REMARKS AND COMPOUND VERBS.

1. Prandeo. The Participle pransus has an active meaning : one who has breakfasted. § 119, Obs.

2. Sileo in composition with prepositions of two syllables is the same.

circumseleo, circumsecli, circumsesum, circumseclere, to sit around

But with prepositions of one syllable the first *e* of the stem becomes *i* in the imperfect tenses: as,

assideo, assēdī, assessum, assēdēre, to sit by.

5, 6, 7, 8. In composition the reduplication is dropped: as,

admordeo,	admordī,	admorsum,	admordēre,	to bite at.
propendo,	prōpendī,	(prōpensum),	prōpendēre,	to hang down.
respondeo,	respondī,	responsum,	respondēre,	to answer.
attendo,	attendī,	attensum,	attendēre,	to shear closely.

#### § 153.—4. Perfect—i (vi). Supine—tum.

1. Cæveo,	cāvi,	cautum,	cāvēre,	to guard one's self.
2. Faveo,	fāvi,	fautum,	fāvēre,	to favour.
3. Foveo,	fovi,	fortum,	fovēre,	to cherish.
4. Moveo,	movi,	motum,	mōvēre,	to move.
5. Voveo,	vōvi,	vōtum,	vōvēre,	to vow.

#### Without Supine.

6. Paveo,	pāvi,	—	pāvēre,	to fear.
7. Ferveo,	{ fervi,	—	fervēre,	to boil.
	{ ferbui,			
8. Conniveo,	{ connivi,	—	connivēre,	to wink.
	{ conuixi,			

Of all verbs ending in -reo the Perfects are formed by lengthening vowels of the stems.

#### § 154.—5. Perfect—si. Supino—tum and sum.

1. Augeo,	auxi,	auctum,	augēre,	to increase.
2. Indulgeo,	indulsi,	indultum,	indulgēre,	to indulge.
3. Torqueo,	torsi,	tortum,	torquēre,	to twist.
4. Ardeo,	arsi,	arsum,	ardēre,	to blaze.
5. Haereo,	haesi,	haesum,	hacrēre,	to stick.
6. Jubeo,	jussi,	jussum,	jābēre,	to order.
7. Maneo,	mansi,	mansum,	mānēre,	to remain.
8. Muleo,	mulsi,	mulsum,	muleēre,	to stroke.
9. Mulgeo,	mulsi,	multum,	mulgēre,	to milk.
10. Rideo,	risi,	rīsum,	ridēre,	to laugh.
11. Suadeo,	suāsi,	suāsum,	suādēre,	to advise.
12. Tergeo,	tersi,	tersum,	tergēre,	to wipe.
13. Algeo,	alsi,	—	algēre,	} to be cold.
14. Frigeo,	frixi,	—	frigēre,	
15. Fulgeo,	fulsi,	—	fulgēre,	to shine.
16. Luceo,	luxi,	—	lucēre,	to be light.
17. Lugeo,	luxi,	—	lūgēre,	to grieve.
18. Turgeo,	tursi,	—	turgēre,	to swell.
19. Urgeo,	ursi,	—	urgēre,	to press.

#### § 155. Semi-Deponents or Neuter-Passives.

1. Audeo,	ausus sum,	—	audēre,	to dare.
2. Gaudeo,	gāvisus sum,	—	gaudēre,	to rejoice.
3. Sōleo,	sōlitus sum,	—	sōlēre,	to be accustomed.

§ 156. Obs. 1. Many Verbs, chiefly Intransitive, have regular Perfect Tenses, but no Supines:

1. Arceo,	arcui,	arcēre,	<i>to keep off.</i>
2. Calleo,	callui,	callēre,	<i>to be skilful.</i>
3. Ēgeo,	ēgui,	ēgēre,	<i>to want.</i>
4. Flōreo,	flōrui,	flōrēre,	<i>to flourish.</i>
5. Horreo,	horrui,	horrēre,	<i>to shudder.</i>
6. Lāteo,	lātui,	lātēre,	<i>to lie hid.</i>
7. Nīteo,	nītui,	nītēre,	<i>to shine.</i>
8. Ōleo,	ōlui,	ōlēre,	<i>to smell.</i>
9. Pāteo,	pātui,	pātēre,	<i>to lie open.</i>
10. Rīgeo,	rīgui,	rīgēre,	<i>to be stiff.</i>
11. Sīleo,	sīlui,	sīlēre,	<i>to be silent.</i>
12. Stūdeo,	stūdui,	stūdēre,	<i>to pay attention to.</i>
13. Tīteo,	tīmui,	tīmēre,	<i>to fear.</i>
14. Vīgeo,	vīgui,	vīgēre,	<i>to thrive.</i>
15. Vīreo,	vīroi,	vīrēre,	<i>to be green.</i>

*Arceo* has the compounds *coerceo*, *to restrain*, and *exerceo*, *to exercise*, with Supines *coercitum* and *exercitum*.

*Obs. 2.* Many Verbs, chiefly Intransitive, have neither Perfect Tenses nor Supines :

1. Āveo,	āvēre,	<i>to desire.</i>
2. Calveo,	calvēre,	<i>to be bald.</i>
3. Cāneo,	cānēre,	<i>to be grey.</i>
4. Flāveo,	flāvēre,	<i>to be yellow.</i>
5. Foeteo,	foetēre,	<i>to stink.</i>
6. Hēbeo,	hēbēre,	<i>to be blunt.</i>
7. Hūmeo,	hūmēre,	<i>to be damp.</i>
8. Liveo,	livēre,	<i>to be livid.</i>
9. Maereo,	maerēre,	<i>to mourn.</i>
10. Polleo,	pollēre,	<i>to be powerful.</i>
11. Rēnīdeo,	rēnīdēre,	<i>to shine.</i>
12. Scāteo,	scātēre,	<i>to gush forth.</i>
13. Squāleo,	squālēre,	<i>to be dirty.</i>

### III. THE THIRD CONJUGATION.

§ 157. Verbs of the Third Conjugation are best classified according to the final consonants of the Stems.

#### 1. Verbs the Stems of which end in the Labials B, P.

(a.) Perfect—si. Supine—tum.

NOTE.—*B* becomes *p* before *s* and *t*.

1. Carpo,	carpsi,	carptum,	carpēre,	<i>to pluck.</i>
2. Glūbo,	glupsi,	gluptum,	glūbēre,	<i>to peel.</i>
3. Nubo,	nupsi,	nuptum,	nūbēre,	<i>to marry.</i>
4. Repo,	repsi,	reptum,	rēpēre,	<i>to creep.</i>
5. Scalpo,	scalpsi,	scalptum,	scalpēre,	<i>to scratch.</i>
6. Scribo,	scripsi,	scriptum,	scribēre,	<i>to write.</i>
7. Serpo,	serpsi,	serptum,	serpēre,	<i>to crawl.</i>



(b.) *Perfect—ul. Supine—tum or Itum.*

8.	Rap-io,	rāpui,	raptum,	rāpère,	<i>to seize</i>
9.	{Cunabo,				
	{Incumbo,	incubui,	incubitum,	incumbère,	<i>to lie upon.</i>
10.	Strēpo,	strepuī,	strēptum,	strēpère,	<i>to make a noise</i>

(c.) *Perfect—i. Supine—tum, or wanting*

11.	Cap-io,	cēpi,	captum,	cāpère,	<i>to take.</i>
12.	Rumpo,	rupi,	ruptum,	rumpère,	<i>to burst.</i>
13.	Bibo,	bibi,	—	bibère,	<i>to drink.</i>
14.	Lambo,	lambi,	—	lambère,	<i>to lick.</i>
15.	Scabo,	scabi,	—	scābère,	<i>to scratch.</i>

(d.) *Perfect—Ivi. Supine—Itum, or wanting.*

16.	Cap-io,	cāpivi,	cāpitum,	cāpère,	<i>to desire.</i>
17.	Sap-io,	{sāpivi, or}	—	sāpère,	<i>to taste.</i>
		{sāpii,			

## REMARKS AND COMPOUND VERES.

1. Dēcerpo, dēcerpsi, dēcerptum, dēcepère, *to pluck off.*
8. Arripio, arripui, arreptum, arripere, *to snatch.*
9. *Cumbo* occurs only in compounds. The simple Verb is *cābo* of the First Conjugation. See § 149.
11. Accipio, rēcipio, etc. (see § 206, 1).
17. Dēspio, — — — dēsipère, *to be foolish.*

§ 158.—2. *Verbs the Stems of which end in the gutturals*  
C, G, H, Q, X.(a.) *Perfect—si. Supine—tum.*

NOTE.—Cs, hs, and gs become x. G becomes c before t.

1.	Dico,	dixi,	dictum,	dicère,	<i>to say.</i>
2.	Dūco,	duxi,	ductum,	ducère,	<i>to lead.</i>
3.	Cōquo,	coxi,	coetum,	cōquère,	<i>to cook.</i>
4.	Cingo,	einxī,	cinctum,	cingère,	<i>to surround.</i>
5.	{Fligo, not used.)	—	—	—	<i>to strike.</i>
	{Affligo,	afflixi,	afflictum,	affligère	<i>to strike to the ground.</i>
6.	Frigo,	frixī,	frixtum, } frixum, }	frigère,	<i>to parch, to fry.</i>
7.	Jungo,	junxi,	junctum,	jungère,	<i>to join.</i>
8.	Lingo,	linxi,	linctum,	lingère,	<i>to lick.</i>
9.	{(Muugo, not used.)				
	{ēmungo,	ēmunxi,	ēmunctum,	ēmungère,	<i>to blow the nose</i>
10.	Plango,	planxi,	planetum,	plangère,	<i>to beat.</i>
11.	Rēgo,	rexi,	rectum,	rēgère,	<i>to direct, rule.</i>
12.	{(Spēcio, very seldom used.)				
	{Aspie-io,	aspexi,	aspectum,	aspicère,	<i>to behold.</i>
13.	Sūgo,	suxī,	suctum,	sugère,	<i>to suck.</i>
14.	Tēgo,	texi,	tectum,	tēgère,	<i>to cover.</i>
15.	{Tingo,	tinxi,	tinctum,	{tingère,	<i>to dip.</i>
	{Tinguo,			{tinguère,	

16.	{ Ungo, Unguo,	unxi,	unctum,	{ ungĕre, unguĕre,	to anoint.
17.	{ Stinguo, not used, Exstinguo, exstinxi,		extinctum,	extinguĕre,	to extinguish.
18.	Trāho,	traxi,	tractum,	trāhĕre,	to drag.
19.	Vĕho,	vexi,	vectum,	vĕhĕre,	to carry.
20.	{ (Iāc-io, very seldom used.) Allĭc-io,	allexi,	allectum,	allĭcĕre,	to entice.
21.	Ango,	anxi,	—	angĕre,	to vex.
22.	Ningit,	ninxit,	—	ningĕre,	to snow.
23.	Fingo,	finxi,	fictum,	figĕre,	to form, to invent.
24.	Mingo,	minxi,	minctum,	mingĕre,	to make water.
25.	Pingo,	pinxi,	pictum,	pingĕre,	to paint.
26.	Striugo,	strinxī	strictum,	stringĕre,	to grasp.

(b.) *Perfect—si. Supine—sum and xum.*

27.	Mergo,	mersi,	mersum,	mergĕre,	to sink.
28.	Spargo,	sparsi,	sparsum,	spargĕre,	to scatter.
29.	Tergo,	tersi,	tersum,	tergĕre,	to wipe.
30.	Figo,	fixi,	fixum,	figĕre,	to fix.
31.	Flecto,	flexi,	flexum,	flectĕre,	to bend.
32.	Necto,	nexi (and-ui),	nexum,	nectĕre,	to bind.
33.	Pecto,	pexi,	pexum,	pectĕre,	to comb.
34.	Plecto,	plexi (and-ui),	plexum,	plectĕre,	to plait.

(c.) *Perfect—i (with Reduplication) Supine—sum and tum.*

35.	Pango,	pĕpĭgi,	pactum,	pangĕre,	to fix.
36.	Parco,	{ pĕpĕrci, { parsi,	{ parcitum, { parsum,	parcĕre,	to spare.
37.	Pungo,	pŭpŭgi,	punctum,	pungĕre,	to prick.
38.	Tango,	tĕtĭgi,	tactum,	tangĕre,	to touch.
39.	Disco,	dĭdĭci,	—	discĕre,	to learn.
40.	Posco,	pŏpŏsci,	—	poscĕre,	to demand.

(d.) *Perfect—i (with vowel of Stem lengthened).*

41.	Ago,	ĕgi,	actum,	āgĕre,	to do.
42.	Fāc-io,	fĕci,	factum,	fācĕre,	to make, to do.
43.	Frangĕ,	frĕgi,	fractum,	frangĕre,	to break.
44.	Fŭg-io,	fŭgi,	fugitum,	fŭgĕre,	to flee, to fly.
45.	Īco,	īci,	ictum,	īcĕre,	to strike (a treaty).
46.	Jāc-io,	jĕci,	jaetum,	jācĕre,	to throw.
47.	Lĕgo,	lĕgi,	lectum,	lĕgĕre,	to read.
48.	Linqo,	lĭqui,	(lictum,)	linquĕre,	to leave.
49.	Vinco,	vici,	victum,	vincĕre,	to conquer.

(e.) *Perfect—ui. Supine—tum.*

50.	Texo,	texui,	textum,	texĕre,	to weave.
-----	-------	--------	---------	---------	-----------

(f.) *Guttural Stem disguised.*

51.	Fluo,	fluxi,	fluctum,	fluĕre,	to flow.
52.	Struo,	struxi,	structum,	struĕre,	to pile up.
53.	Vivo,	vixi,	victum,	vivĕre,	to live.

## REMARKS AND COMPOUND VERBS.

11. *Obs.* *Ērgo* in composition becomes *rigo*, as,  
 Arrigo, arrexī, arrectum, arrigēre, *to raise*.  
 So also corrigo, ērigo, &c. *Pergo* (a contraction of *per* and *rego*) and *surgo* (a contraction of *sub* and *rego*) make  
 Pergo, perrexī, perrectum, perzēre, *to go straight on*.  
 Surgo, surrexī, surrectum, surgere, *to rise up*.
12. The other compounds of *specio*, as *conspicio*, *despicio*, etc., are conjugated like *aspicio*.
- 23—26. In *āngo*, *pingo*, *stringo* the *n* is a strengthening letter, and the Stem appears in the Supine.
23. *Conspargo*, *conspersi*, *conspersum*, *conspargere*, *to sprinkle*.
- 31—34. In *flecto*, *necto*, *pecto*, *plecto*, the *t* is a strengthening letter and not a part of the Stem.
35. *Compingo*, *compēgi*, *compactum*, *compingere*, *to fix together*.
36. { *Comparco*, *comparsi*, *comparsum*, *comparcere*, *to save*.  
 (Comperco,)
37. *Compungo*, *compunxi*, *compunctum*, *compungere*, *to prick*.
38. *Attingo*, *attēgi*, *attactum*, *attingere*, *to touch*,  
 and the like.
41. *Ago* in composition changes the *a* into *i* in *ābigo*, *ādigo*, *exigo*, *subigo*, *transigo*:  
 Ābigo, ābēgi, ābactum, ābīgere, *to drive away*.  
 It preserves the *a* in *perāgo*, *circumāgo*. In *cōgo* (a contraction of *con* and *ago*) we have—  
 Cōgo, cōēgi, cōactum, cōgēre, *to drive together, to force*.
42. *Facio* in compos. with other verbs and with adverbs remains unaltered:  
 Cālēfacio, cālēfeci, cālēfactum, cālēfacere, *to make warm*.  
 Sātisfacio, sātisfeci, sātisfactum, sātisfacere, *to give satisfaction*.  
 But in compos. with prepositions we have—  
 Perficio, perfeci, perfectum, perficere, *to complete*,  
 and the like: v. § 206, 1.  
 Also, mellifacio, *I make honey*; and nidifacio, *I build a nest*, are of the First Conjugation (v. § 205, *Obs.*).
43. *Perfringo*, *perfrēgi*, *perfractum*, *perfringere*, *to break through*.
46. *Abjicio*, *conjicio*, *dējicio*, etc.: v. § 206, 1.
47. *Lēgo* preserves the *e* in *allēgo*, *perlēgo*, *praelēgo*, *rēlego*: as,  
 Allēgo, allēgi, allectum, allēgere, *to choose in addition*.  
 It changes the *e* into *i* in *colligo*, *dēligo*, *ēligo*, *sēligo*: as,  
 Colligo, collēgi, collectum, colligere, *to collect*.
- The Present-Perfect is different in  
 Dūlgo, dūlexi, dilectum, dūlgere, *to love*.  
 Intelligo, intellexi, intellectum, intelligere, *to understand*.  
 Negūgo, neglexi, neglectum, neglgere, *to neglect*.
- 51—53. In *fluo* and *struo* the root is *fluc* and *struc*, the *e* being dropped in the Imperfect Tenses. In *curo* the second *c* represents a guttural.

§ 159.—3. *Verbs the Stems of which end in the Dentals D, T.*(a.) *Perfect—si Supine—tum*

NOTE—D and t are generally dropped before s, but are sometimes changed into s.

1.	Clando,	clausi,	clausum,	claudere,	to shut.
2.	Divido,	divisi,	divisum,	dividere,	to divide.
3.	Laedo,	laesi,	laesum,	laedere,	to strike, to injure.
4.	Ludo,	lusi,	lusum,	ludere,	to play.
5.	Planto,	plausi,	plausum,	plaudere,	to clap the hands.
6.	Rado,	rasi,	rasum,	radere,	to scrape.
7.	Rodo,	rosi,	rosum,	rodere,	to gnaw.
8.	Trudo,	trusi,	trusum,	trudere,	to thrust.
9.	Vado,	—	—	vadere,	to go.
	Invado,	invāsi,	invāsum,	invādere,	to go against.
10.	Cedo,	cessi,	cessum,	cedere,	to yield.
11.	Mitto,	misi,	missum,	mittere,	to send.
12.	Quatio,	—	quassum,	quātere,	to shake.

(b.) *Perfect with the Reduplication.*

13.	Cado,	cēctidi,	cāsum,	cādere,	to fall.
14.	Caedo,	cēctidi,	caesum,	caedere,	to strike.
15.	Pendo,	pēpendi,	pēsum,	pendere,	to hang, to weigh.
16.	Tendo,	tetendi,	tēsum,	tendere,	to stretch.
17.	Tundo,	tetendi,	tūsum,	tundere,	to beat.
18.	Do in composition,				to put.
	Abdo,	abdidī,	abditum,	abdere,	to put away, to hide.
	Addo,	addidī,	adlitum,	addere,	to put to, to add.
	Condo,	condidī,	conditum,	condere,	to put together, to build, to store.
	Dedo,	dedidī,	delitum,	dedere,	to put down, to surrender.
	Edo,	edidī,	elitum,	edere,	to put forth, to publish.
	Indo,	indidī,	inlitum,	indere,	to put in.
	Paro,	paridī,	parlitum,	parere,	to raise, to rear.
	Prodo,	prodidī,	prolitum,	prodere,	to bring up.
	Reddo,	redidī,	redlitum,	redere,	to put back, to restore.
	Subdo,	subdidī,	sublitum,	subdere,	to put under, to substitute.
	Trudo,	trudidī,	truditum,	trudere,	to put down, to depress.
	Creto,	cretidī,	cretitum,	credere,	to believe, to credit.
	Vendo,	vididī,	venditum,	vedere,	to sell.
19.	Sedo,	sedidī,	seditum,	sedere,	to cause to stand.

(c.) *Perfect—si Supine—sum*

20.	{ Credo,				
	{ Acredo,	accredī,	accreditum,	accredere,	to get up, to rise.
21.	Cedo,	cedidī,	cessum,	cedere,	to leave.
22.	Sedo,	sedidī,	sedum,	sedere,	to sit.

23.	(Fendo not used, Dēfendo, dēfendi, dēfensum, dēfendēre, <i>to strike.</i> ) <i>to ward off, to de-</i> <i>fend.</i>			
	Offendo, offendi, offensum, offendēre, <i>to strike against, to</i> <i>assault.</i>			
24.	Fōdio, fōdi, fossum, fōdēre, <i>to dig.</i>			
25.	Fundo, fudi, fūsum, fundēre, <i>to pour.</i>			
26.	Mando, mandi, mansum, mandēre, <i>to cheer.</i>			
	(rare.)			
27.	Pando, pandi, { pansum, passum, pandēre, <i>to spread.</i>			
28.	Prēhendo, prēhendi, prēhensum, prēhendēre, <i>to grasp.</i>			
29.	Scando, scandi, scansum, scandēre, <i>to climb.</i>			
30.	{ Strīdo, strīdi, —, stridēre, <i>to creak.</i>			
	{ Strīdeo,			
31.	Verto, verti, versum, vertēre, <i>to turn.</i>			
32.	Findo, fīdi, fissum, findēre, <i>to cleave.</i>			
33.	Seīdo, scīdi, scissum, seindēre, <i>to tear.</i>			
34.	{ Frendo, —, { fressum, frendēre, <i>to gnash the teeth.</i>			
	{ Frendeo, —, { frēsum, —			

## (d.) Other Forms.

35.	Mēto, messui, messum, mētēre, <i>to move.</i>			
36.	Pēto, pētīvi or pētīi, pētītum, pētēre, <i>to seek.</i>			
37.	Sīdo, sēdi rarely sīdi, —, sīdēre, <i>to settle down.</i>			
38.	Serto, stertui, —, stertēre, <i>to snore.</i>			
39.	Fīdo, fīsus sum, —, fidēre, <i>to trust.</i>			

## REMARKS AND COMPOUND VERBS.

- The compounds of claudio change *au* into *ū*; as *conclūdo*, *occlūdo*, etc.
- The compounds of laedo change *ae* into *ī*; as, *allīdo*, *collīdo*, etc.: v. § 206, 3.
- Plaudo* in compos. *Applaudo* is the same, but the others are like *Explūdo*, *explōsi*, *explōsum*, *explōdēre*, *to hiss off.*
- The compounds of quātio change *quā* into *cū*; as, *Concūtio*, *concussi*, *concussum*, *concūtēre*, *to shake together.*
- Occīdo*, *occīdi*, *occīsum*, *occīdēre*, *to fall down, to set,* and the like.
- The compounds of caedo change *ae* into *I*, and drop the reduplication: as *Occīdo*, *occīdi*, *occīsum*, *occīdēre*, *to slay.*
- No reduplication in the compounds.
- Tēdo* in compos. generally has only *tentum*; but a few Compounds have both *tensum* and *tentum*: as,  
*Extendo*, *extendi*, { *extensum*,  
                          *extentum*, *extendēre*, *to stretch out.*
- No reduplication in the compounds.
- The compounds take *stītum* for *stātum*; as,  
*Subsisto*, *substīti*, *substītum*, *subsistēre*, *to halt.*
- Ascendo*, *ascendi*, *ascensum*, *ascendēre*, *to climb up.*

§ 160.—*Verbs the Stems of which end in L, M, N.*(a.) *Perfect—ui. Supine—ĭtum or tum.*

	alui,	alĭtum or altum,	alĕre,	to nourish.	
2.	Cōlo,	cōlui,	cōlĕre,	to till.	
3.	Consūlo,	consālui,	consālĕre,	to consult.	
4.	Mōlo,	mōlui,	mōlĕre,	to grind.	
5.	Occālo,	occālui,	occālĕre,	to conceal.	
6.	Vōlo,	vōlui,	—	to wish.	
7.	Frēmo,	frēmui,	frēmĭtum,	frēmĕre,	to roar.
8.	Gēmo,	gēmui,	gēmĭtum,	gēmĕre,	to groan.
9.	Trēmo,	trēmui,	—	trēmĕre,	to tremble.
10.	Vōmo,	vōmui,	vōmĭtum,	vōmĕre,	to vomit.
11.	Gigno,	gēnui,	gignĕre,	gēnitum,	to produce.

(b.) *Perfect with Reduplication.*

12.	Fallo,	fĕfelli,	falsum,	fallĕre,	to deceive.
13.	Pello,	pĕpuli,	pulsum,	pellĕre,	to drive.
14.	Cāno,	cēcini,	cantum,	cānĕre,	to sing.

(c.) *Perfect—si. Supine—tum.*

15.	Cōmo,	compsi,	comptum,	cōmĕre,	to adorn.
16.	Dēmo,	dempsi,	demptum,	demĕre,	to take away.
17.	Prōmo,	prompsi,	promptum,	prōmĕre,	to take out.
18.	Sūmo,	sumpsi,	sumptum,	sūmĕre,	to take up.
19.	Temno,	tempsi,	temptum,	temĕre,	to despise.

(d.) *Other forms.*

20.	Percello,	percūli,	perculsum,	percellĕre,	to strike down.
21.	Psallo,	psalli,	—	psallĕre,	to play on a stringed instrument.
22.	Vello,	velli,	vulsum,	vellĕre,	to pluck.
23.	Tollo,	sustāli,	sublatum,	tollĕre,	to raise up.
24.	Ēmo,	ēmī,	emptum,	ēmĕre,	to buy or take
25.	Prēmo,	pressi,	pressum,	prēmĕre,	to press.
26.	Lino,	lēvi,	litum,	linĕre,	to smear.
27.	Sino,	sivi,	situm,	sinĕre,	to permit.

## COMPOUND VERBS.

12.	Rĕfello,	rĕfelli,	—	rĕfellĕre,	to refute.
13.	Expello,	expūli,	expulsum,	expellĕre,	to drive out.
14.	Oecino,	oecinui,	oecentum,	oecinĕre,	to sing against.
15—19. Cōmo, dēmo, prōmo, sūmo are compounds of con, dē, prō, sūb, and ēmo.					

§ 161.—*Verbs the Stems of which end in R.*

1.	Cerno,	crēvi,	crētum,	cernĕre,	to sift, to divide.
2.	Sperno,	sprēvi,	spretum,	spernĕre,	to despise.
3.	Struo,	stravi,	stratum,	sternĕre,	to streue.

4.	Gěro,	gessi,	gestum,	gěrěre,	to carry.
5.	Ūro,	ussi,	ustum,	ūrěre,	to burn.
6.	Curro,	cūcurri,	cursum,	currěre,	to run.
7.	Fěro,	tūli,	lātum,	ferre,	to bear, carry.
8.	Pār-io,	pēpēri,	partum,	pārěre,	to produce.
9.	Quaero,	quaesīvi,	quaesītum,	quaerěre,	to seek.
10.	Sěro,	sērii,	sertum,	sērěre,	to put in rows, to plait.
11.	Sěro,	sēvi,	sātum,	sērěre,	to sow.
12.	Těro,	trivi,	trītum,	tērěre,	to rub.
13.	Verro,	verri,	versum,	verrěre,	to sweep.

## REMARKS AND COMPOUND VERBS

1—3. In *cerno*, *sperno*, *sterno*, the Stems are *cer*, *spēr*, *ster*, the *n* being the strengthening letter of the Imperfect Tenses. See § 106, Obs. 2.

6. *Curro* in compos. sometimes retains but generally drops the reduplication: as, *accurro*, *accurri*, rarely *accūcurri*.

8. *Pārio*. Fut. Part. *pārītūrus*.

9. *Quaero* has the Stem ending in *s* as well as *r*. Hence we find not only *quaesīvi*, *quaesītum*, but also *quaeso*, *quaesumus*, *I pray*, *we pray*. See § 124. *Quaero* in compos. becomes *quiro*: as,

*Conquiro*, *conquisīvi*, *conquisītum*, *conquērěre*, to collect.

## 162.—Verbs the Stems of which end in S, X.

1.	Depso,	depsui,	depstum,	depsěre,	to knead.
2.	Pinso,	{ pinsui,	{ pinsītum,	pinsěre,	to pound.
		{ pinsi,	{ pinsum,		
3.	Piso,	—	pistum,	pīsěre,	to pound.
4.	Viso,	vīsi,	—	vīsěre,	to visit.
5.	Pōno,	pōsui,	pōsītum,	pōněre,	to place.
6.	Arcesso,	arcessīvi,	arcessītum,	arcessěre,	to send for.
7.	Cāpresso,	cāpressīvi,	cāpressītum,	cāpressěre,	to take in hand.
8.	Fācesso,	fācessi,	fācessītum,	fācessěre,	to make, to cause.
9.	Lācesso,	lācessīvi,	lācessītum,	lācessěre,	to provoke.

## REMARKS AND COMPOUND VERBS.

5. In *pōno* the root is *pōs*, the *n* being the strengthening letter of the Imperfect Tenses. See § 106, Obs. 2.

6—9. *Arcesso*, *cāpresso*, *fācesso*, *lācesso* are formed respectively from *arcio* (an old verb, the root of which is seen in *cico*), *cāpio*, *fācio*, *lūcio*. There was also an old verb *pōtesso*, to seek, from *pēto*.

*Arcesso* sometimes has an Infin. Pass. *arcessiri*.

## § 163.—Verbs the Stems of which end in U, V.

## Perfect—i Supine—tum

1.	Acuo,	ācui,	ācūtum,	ācuěre,	to sharpen.
2.	Arguo,	argui,	argūtum,	arguěre,	to prove.
3.	Imbuo,	imbui,	imbūtum,	imbuěre,	to soak.
4.	Induo,	indui,	indūtum,	induěre,	to put on.
5.	Exuo,	exui,	exūtum,	exuěre,	to put off.

6.	Mīnuo,	minui,	mīnūtum,	mīnuēre,	to lessen.
7.	Rāo,	ruī,	rūtum,	ruēre,	to rush.
8.	Spuo,	spui,	spūtum,	spuēre,	to spit.
9.	Stātuo,	stātui,	stātūtum,	stātuēre,	to set up.
10.	Suo,	sui,	sūtum,	suēre,	to sew.
11.	Tribuo,	tribui,	tribūtum,	tribuēre,	to distribute.
12.	Lāvo,	lāvi,	{ lautum, lōtum,	lāvēre,	to wash.
13.	Solvo,	solvi,	sōlūtum,	solvēre,	to loosen.
14.	Volvo,	volvi,	vōlūtum,	volvēre,	to roll.
15.	Congruo,	congrui,	—	congruēre,	to agree.
16.	Luo,	lui,	—	luēre,	to atone. (to nod.)
17.	{ Nuo, Abnuo,	abnuī,	—	abnuēre,	to refuse.
	{ Anno,	annui,	—	annuēre,	to assent.
18.	Métuo,	mētui,	—	mētuēre,	to fear.
19.	Pluit,	pluit or plūvit,	—	pluēre,	to rain.
20.	Sternuo,	sternui,	—	sternuēre,	to sneeze.

*Obs.* In *fluo, struo, ricio*, the Stem ends in *c* or *g*. See § 158.

#### REMARKS.

7. *Ruo.* Fut. Part. *ruitūrus*.  
 12. *Lavo* is also of the First Conjugation. See § 149, 2.  
 16. *Luo.* Fut. Part. *luitūrus*.

#### § 164.—Verbs the Present Tense of which ends in *sco*.

Verbs ending in *sco* are *Inceptive*, that is, denote the beginning of an action. They are formed from Verbs, Substantives, and Adjectives. See § 194, 2.

§ 165. Inceptives formed from Verbs have the Perfects of the Verbs from which they are derived, but usually no Supines: as, *incālesco, incālui, incālescēre, to grow warm*, from *cāleo, cālui, cālēre, to be warm*. The following Inceptives are exceptions and have Supines:—

- |    |              |             |              |                |                             |
|----|--------------|-------------|--------------|----------------|-----------------------------|
| 1. | Abūlesco,    | abūlēvi,    | abūlitum,    | abūlescēre,    | to grow out of use.         |
| 2. | Adūlesco,    | adūlēvi,    | adūlitum,    | adūlescēre,    | to grow up.                 |
| 3. | Exūlesco,    | exūlēvi,    | exūlitum,    | exūlescēre,    | to grow old.                |
| 4. | Cōālesco,    | cōālui,     | cōālitum,    | cōālescēre,    | to grow together.           |
| 5. | Concūpisco,  | concūpīvi,  | concūpītum,  | concūpiscēre,  | to desire.<br>(cūpio)       |
| 6. | Convālesco,  | convālui,   | convālitum,  | convālescēre,  | to grow strong.<br>(vāleo)  |
| 7. | Exardesco,   | exarsi,     | exarsum,     | exardescēre,   | to take fire.<br>(ardeo)    |
| 8. | Invētērasco, | invētērāvi, | invētērātum, | invētērascēre, | to grow old.<br>(invētēro)  |
| 9. | Obdormisco,  | obdormīvi,  | obdormītum,  | obdormiscēre,  | to fall asleep.<br>(dormio) |



- |                |         |           |              |                            |
|----------------|---------|-----------|--------------|----------------------------|
| 10. Rēvīvisco, | rēvixi, | rēvictum, | rēvīviscēre, | to come to life again.     |
| (vivo)         |         |           |              |                            |
| 11. Scīso,     | scīvi,  | scītum,   | sciscēre,    | to seek to know, to enact. |
| (scio)         |         |           |              |                            |

*Obs.* Ābōlesco, ādōlesco, exōlesco are formed from an obsolete verb ōleo, to grow.

§ 166. Inceptives formed from Substantives and Adjectives have either Perfects in *ui* and no Supines, or they want both Perfects and Supines: as,

- |                |           |   |               |                |
|----------------|-----------|---|---------------|----------------|
| 1. Consēnesco, | consēnui, | — | consēnescēre, | to grow old.   |
| (sēnex)        |           |   |               |                |
| 2. Ingrāvesco, | —         | — | ingrāvescēre, | to grow heavy. |
| (grāvis)       |           |   |               |                |
| 3. Jūvenesco,  | —         | — | jūvenscēre,   | to grow young. |
| (jūvēnis)      |           |   |               |                |
| 4. Mātūresco,  | mātūrui,  | — | mātūrescēre,  | to grow ripe.  |
| (mātūrus)      |           |   |               |                |
| 5. Obmūtesco,  | obmūtui,  | — | obmūtescēre,  | to grow dumb.  |
| (mūtus)        |           |   |               |                |

§ 167. The following Verbs in *sco* are derived from forms no longer in use, and are therefore treated as unde-rived Verbs:

- |                  |         |          |            |                      |
|------------------|---------|----------|------------|----------------------|
| 1. Cresco,       | crēvi,  | crētum,  | crescēre,  | to grow.             |
| 2. Glisco,       | —       | —        | gliscēre,  | to swell.            |
| 3. Hisco, (hio), | —       | —        | hiscēre,   | to gape.             |
| 4. Nosco,        | nōvi,   | nōtum,   | noscēre,   | to learn, to know.   |
| 5. Pasco,        | pāvi,   | pastum,  | pascēre,   | to feed.             |
| 6. Quiesco,      | quiēvi, | quiētum, | quiescēre, | to become quiet.     |
| 7. Suesco,       | suēvi,  | suētum,  | suescēre,  | to grow accus-tomed. |

#### REMARKS.

4. *Nosco*. The Perfect signifies *I know*; the Past-Perfect, *I knew*. The Stem is *gno*: in compos. we have

Agnosco,	agnōvi,	agnitum,	agnoscēre,	to recognise.
Cognosco,	cognōvi,	cognitum,	cognoscēre,	to learn, to know.

#### IV. THE FOURTH CONJUGATION.

§ 168. In the Fourth Conjugation the Perfect ends regularly in *ivi*, the Supine in *itum*: as, audio, audīvi, audī-tum, audīre, to hear. The following are exceptions:

- |            |        |              |          |          |
|------------|--------|--------------|----------|----------|
| 1. Farcio, | farsi, | { fartum,    | farcīre, | to cram. |
|            |        | { (faretum,) |          |          |
| 2. Fulcio, | fulsi, | ŭltum,       | fulcīre, | to prop. |

3.	Haurio,	hausi,	haustum,	haurire,	to draw water.
4.	Sancio,	sanxi,	{ sancitum, sanctum,	sancire,	to ratify.
5.	Sarcio,	sarsi,	sartum,	sarcire,	to patch.
6.	Sentio,	sensi,	sensum,	sentire,	to feel, to think.
7.	Saepio,	saepsi,	saepitum,	saepire,	to fence in.
8.	Vincio,	vinxi,	vinctum,	vincire,	to bind.
9.	Eo,	ivi,	itum,	ire,	to go.
10.	Salio,	salui or salii,	salto	sal	to leap.
11.	Sépelio,	sépélivi,	sépultum,	sépélire,	to bury.
12.	Vénio,	vēni,	ventum,	vénire,	to come.
13.	Amíceo,	ámícei. amixi,	amictum,	amícire,	to clothe.
14.	Apérío,	ápérui,	ápertum,	ápérire,	to open.
15.	Opérío,	óperui,	ópertum,	óperire,	to cover.

## COMPOUND VERBS.

1. Farcio takes *e* in the compounds: as, confarcio, réfarcio, etc.: v. § 106, 1.  
10. Désilio, désilui, désultum, désúire, to leap down.

## V. DEPONENTS.

## § 109. First Conjugation (all regular).

NOTE.—The words to which an asterisk is prefixed occur also in the active form.

*Admíscuor, to adm.	Auxílior, to aid.
Abómíno, to express abhorrence.	Áversor, to dislike, or avoid with horror.
Advérsor, to oppose myself.	Bacchor, to reel as a Bacchanal.
*Adúlcor, to flatter.	Calumníor, to calil.
Aemúlcor, to rival.	Cavíllor, to baater.
*Alterécór, to quarrel.	Caupíno, to deal in retail.
Álúcinor, also alluc. and halluc., to dote, talk idly.	Causor, to allege.
Amplexor, to embrace.	Circúcor, to form a circle around one.
Ancíllor, to be a hand-maid.	Comíssor, to reel.
Aprícor, to sin oneself.	*Comítur, to accompany active only in the poets.
Aquor, to fetch water.	Comémor, to reflect upon, dispute.
Arbitror, to think.	Contínúor, to harangue.
Archítecór, to be architectus.	*Contlicítor, to contend.
Arguméntor, to argue.	Cólor, to amuse.
Argutór, to chatter to be argutus.	Consíder, to advise.
Aspérno, to despise.	Consplór, to get sight of.
Assécor, to agree, flatter.	Contémplor, to contemplate.
Astípulor, to agree.	Cívíciór, to revile.
Auctíonór, to sell at auction.	Convívor, to feast (conviva).
Audácor, to catch birds to be auceps.	Cruiciór, to chatter as a crow.
Augúror, augur,	Cústodíor, to detain.
*Auspícor, auspex,	Cupetor, to delay.
Harústícor, harústis,	
Vaticínícor, vates,	

- Dēpēcūlor, *to plunder.*  
 Despīcor, *to despise; but despī-*  
*catus is passive, despised.*  
 Dēversor, *to lodge.*  
 Diglādior, *to fight.*  
 Dignor, *to think worthy* (Cicero  
 sometimes uses it as a passive,  
*to be thought worthy*).  
 Dēdignor, *to disdain.*  
 Dōminor, *to rule* (dominus).  
 \*Elūcubrōr, *to produce by dint of*  
*labour.*  
 Ėpūlor, *to feast.*  
 Exsecrōr, *to execrate.*  
 \*Fabricor, *to fashion.*  
 Fābūlor, confābūlor, *to talk*  
 Fāmūlor, *to serve* (famulus).  
 \*Fēnērōr, *to lend at interest*, (the  
 active, "*to restore with interest*,"  
 occurs in Terence; in later  
 writers the active has the same  
 sense as the deponent).  
 Fērior, *to keep holiday.*  
 Frūmentor, *to collect corn.*  
 Frustror, *to disappoint.*  
 Fūrōr, suffūrōr, *to steal.*  
 Glōrior, *to boast.*  
 Graecor, *to live in the Greek style,*  
*i.e., luxuriously.*  
 Grassor, *to advance, attack.*  
 Grātificor, *to comply with.*  
 Grātor and grātūlor, *to give thanks,*  
*to present gratulations.*  
 Grāvōr, *to think burdensome; to*  
*grudge.*  
 Helluor, *to gluttonise.*  
 Hortor, *to exhort; adhortor, ex-*  
*hortor, dēhortor (to dissuade).*  
 Hospītor, *to be a guest; lodge.*  
 Īmāginor, *to imagine.*  
 Īmītor, *to imitate.*  
 Indignor, *to be indignant, spurn.*  
 Infītor, *to deny.*  
 Insīdior, *to plot.*  
 Interprētor, *to explain* (to be an  
 interpretes).  
 Jācūlor, *to throw, dart.*  
 Jōcor, *to jest.*  
 Laetor, *to rejoice.*  
 Lāmentor, *to lament.*  
 Latrōcīnor, *to rob.*  
 Lēnōcīnor alicuī, *to flatter.*  
 Libidīnor, *to be voluptuous.*  
 Licītor, *to bid at an auction.*  
 Līgnor, *to collect wood.*  
 Lucror, *to gain.*  
 Luctor, *to strive, wrestle* (obluctor  
 and reductor, *to resist*).  
 \*Lūdificor, *to ridicule.*  
 Māchīnor, *to devise.*  
 Mātērior, *to fell timber.*  
 \*Mēdicor, *to heal.*  
 Mēdītor, *to meditate.*  
 Mercor, *to buy.*  
 \*Mēridior, *to repose at noon.*  
 Mētor, *to measure out.*  
 Mīnor and mīuītor, *to threaten.*  
 Mīror, *to wonder* (dēmīror, ad-  
 mīror).  
 Mīsērōr, commīsērōr, *to pity.*  
 Mōdērōr, *to restrain, temper.*  
 Mōdūlor, *to modulate.*  
 Mōrigērōr, *to comply.*  
 Mōrōr, *to delay; trans. and in-*  
*trans. (commōrōr).*  
 Mūnērōr, rēmūnērōr (aliquem ali-  
 quā re), *to reward.*  
 Mutuor, *to borrow.*  
 Nēgōtiōr, *to carry on business.*  
 Nīdūlor, *to build a nest.*  
 Nūgor, *to trifle.*  
 Nundīnor, *to deal in buying and*  
*selling.*  
 Ōdōrōr, *to smell out.*  
 Ōmīnor, *to prophesy* (ābōmīnor,  
*to abominate*).  
 Ōpērōr, *to bestow labour on.*  
 Ōpīnor, *to think.*  
 Ōpītūlor, *to lend help.*  
 \*Oscītor, *to yawn.*  
 Oscūlor, *to kiss.*  
 Ōtiōr, *to have leisure.*  
 Pābūlor, *to forage.*  
 Pālōr, *to wander.*  
 \*Palpor, *to stroke, flatter.*  
 Pārāsītōr, *to act the parasite* (para-  
 situs).  
 Patrōcīnor, *to patronize.*  
 Percontor, *to inquire.*  
 Pēgrīnor, *to dicell as a stranger.*  
 Pēriclītōr, *to try, to be in danger.*  
 Philōsōphōr, *to philosophize.*  
 \*Pignērōr, *to take a pledge, to bind*  
*by a pledge.*  
 Pigror, *to be idle* (piger).  
 Piscor, *to fish.*  
 \*Pōpūlor, *to lay waste.*  
 Praedor, *to plunder.*  
 Praestolor, *to wait for* (with the  
 dat. or accus.).

Praevāricor, *walk with crooked legs, act dishonestly, as a praevaricator, that is, as a false accuser.*

Prēcor, *to pray*; comprēcor, *in-voke*; dēprēcor, *deprecate*, im-prēcor, *imprecate.*

Proelior, *to fight a battle.*

Rātiocīnor, *to reason.*

Rēcōrdor, *to call to mind.*

Refrāgor, *to oppose.*

Rīmōr, *to examine minutely.*

Rīxor, *to wrangle.*

Rustīcor, *to live in the country.*

Scītor and scīseītor, *to inquire.*

Scortor, *to live unchastely.*

Scurror, *to play the buffoon.*

Sēctor, *to follow* (the frequentative of sēquor); assector, con-sector, insector.

Sermōcīnor, *to hold discourse.*

Sōlor, consōlor, *to comfort.*

Spātiōr, exspātiōr, *to walk.*

Spēcūlor, *to keep a look out.*

Stīpūlor, *to make a bargain*; ad-stīpūlor, *to agree.*

Stōmāchor, *to be indignant.*

Suāviōr, *to kiss.*

Suffrāgor, *assent to.*

Suspīcor, *to suspect.*

Tergīversor, *to shuffle.*

Testor and testīficor, *to bear witness.*

Trīcor, *to make unreasonable difficulties* (trīcac).

Trīstor, *to be sad.*

Trūtīnor, *to weigh.*

Tāmūltuor, *to make uproar.*

Tūtōr, *to defend.*

Ūrīnor, *to dip under water* (to void urine is ūrīnam faciēre or red-dere).

Vādōr, *to let go on bail.*

Vāgor, *to wander.*

\*Vēlīficor, *to steer towards* (fig. to gain a purpose; with dat.).

Vēlītōr, *to skirmish with light troops.*

Vēnērōr, *to venerate.*

Vēnōr, *to hunt.*

Vērēcundōr, *to feel shame at doing.*

Versor (properly passive of verso, to dwell, be occupied in; āversor, conversor, obversor).

Vocīfērōr, *to vociferate.*

### § 170. Second Conjugation.

1. Fāteor,	fassus sum,	fātēri,	to confess.
2. Līceor,	licītus sum,	licēri,	to bid (at a sale).
3. Mēdeor,	—	mēdēri,	to heal.
4. *Mērcor,	mērītus sum,	mērēri,	to earn, to deserve.
5. Mīseor,	mīsērītus sum or mīsertus sum,	mīsērēri,	to take pity on.
6. Pollīceor,	pollicītus sum,	pollicēri,	to promise.
7. Reor,	rātus sum,	rēri,	to think.
8. Tueor,	tuītus sum,	tuēri,	to look upon, pro-
9. Vēreor,	vērītus sum,	vērēri,	to fear. [tect.

### COMPOUND VERES.

1. Confīteor, confessus sum, confītēri, to confess.  
Prōfīteor, prōfessus sum, prōfītēri, to avow.  
Diffīteor, —, diffītēri, to deny.
2. Pollīceor is a compound of pro and liceor.
4. Commēreor, Dēmēreor, Prōmēreor, to deserve.
8. Contueor, Intueor, Obtueor, to look upon, to look at.
9. Rēvēreor, to reverence; Subvēreor, to fear slightly.

§ 171. *Third Conjugation.*

1. Fruor,	{ fructus sum, fruitus sum,	frui,	to enjoy. ✕
2. Fungor,	functus sum,	fungi,	to perform.
3. Grādior,	gressus sum,	grādi,	to step.
4. Lābor,	lapsus sum,	lābi,	to slip.
5. Līquor,	(līquefactus sum,)	līqui,	to melt.
6. Lōquor,	lōcūtus sum,	lōqui,	to speak.
7. Mōrior,	mortuus sum,	mōri,	to die.
8. Nitor,	{ nixus sum, nīsus,	nīti,	to strain.
9. Pātor,	passus sum,	pāti,	to suffer.
10. Quēror,	questus sum,	quēri,	to complain.
11. Ringor,	—	ringi,	to show the teeth, to snarl.
12. Sēquor,	sēcūtus sum,	sēqui,	to follow.
13. Utor,	ūsus sum,	ūtī,	to use.
14. { (Verto) Rēvertor,	(rēversus sum),	rēverti,	to return.
15. { (Plecto) Amplector,	amplexus sum,	amplecti,	} to embrace
Complector,	complexus sum,	complecti,	
16. { Apiscor,	aptus sum,	āpisci,	to obtain.
Adīpiscor,	ādēptus sum,	ādīpisci,	to obtain.
17. Commīniscor,	commentus sum,	commīnisci,	to devise.
18. Rēmīniscor,	—	rēmīnisci,	to remember.
19. Dēfētiscor,	dēfessus sum,	dēfētisci,	to grow weary.
20. Expergiscor,	experrectus sum,	expergisci,	to wake up.
21. Irascor,	—	īrasci,	to be angry.
22. Nanciscor	nactus sum,	nancisci,	to obtain by chance.
23. Nascor,	nātus sum,	nasci,	to be born.
24. Obliviscor,	oblītus sum,	oblīvisci,	to forget.
25. Pāciscor,	pactus sum,	pācisci,	to make an agree- ment.
26. Prōficiscor,	prōfectus sum,	prōficisci,	to set out.
27. Ulciscor,	ultus sum,	ulcisci,	to avenge.
28. Vescor,	—	vesci,	to eat.

## COMPOUND VERBS.

1. Fruor. Fut. Part. fruitūrus.  
Perfruo, — perfructus sum, perfrui, to enjoy completely.
3. Aggrēdiōr, aggressus sum, aggrēdi, to attack.
7. Morior. Fut. Part. mōrītūrus.
9. Perpētior, perpessus sum, perpēti, to endure.
19. Dēfētiscor, from fātisco, to crack, to grow weary.
20. Expergiscor, from ex and pergo.
21. Iraseor has no Perf. In Irātus sum, I am angry, iratus is an Adjective.
26. Prōficiscor, from pro and facio.

§ 172. *Fourth Conjugation.*

1. *Assentior	assensus sum,	assentīri,	to agree to.
2. Blandior,	blandītus sum,	blandīri	to flatter
3. Expērior,	expertus sum,	expērīri,	to try.
4. Oppērior,	{ oppertus sum, oppērītus,	oppērīri,	to wait for.
5. Largior,	largītus sum,	largīri,	to give bountifully.
6. Mēnior,	mentītus sum,	mentīri,	to lie.
7. Mētior,	mensus sum,	mētīri,	to measure.
8. Mōlior,	mōlītus sum,	mōlīri,	to labour.
9. Ordior,	orsus sum,	ordīri,	to begin.
10. Orior,	ortus sum,	ōrīri,	to rise.
11. *Partior,	partītus sum,	partīri,	to divide.
12. *Pōtior,	pōtītus sum,	pōtīri,	to obtain possession of.
13. *Pūnior,	pūnītus sum,	pūnīri,	to punish.
14. *Sortior,	sortītus sum,	sortīri,	to take by lot

## REMARKS AND COMPOUND VERBS.

4. Compērior, *to find out*, is used only as a Deponent in the Present. The usual form is compērio, compēri, compertum, compertire.
10. Orior. The *Fut. Pass.* is ōritūrus. The *Pres. Ind.* follows the 3rd Conjugation: ōrēris, ōritur, ōrīmur. In the *Imperf. Subj.* both ōrērer and ōrīrer are found. The compounds cōōrior and exōrior, *to arise*, are conjugated like ōrior: but adōrior, *to attack*, has adōrīris, adōrītur.
11. Partior.  
 \*Dispertior, dispertītus sum, dispertīri, to distribute.  
 Impertior, impertītus sum, impertīri, to communicate.
13. The active form *punio* is the usual one.

## FORMATION OF WORDS.

## CHAPTER XXX.—FORMATION OF WORDS.

## DERIVATION OF SUBSTANTIVES.

§ 173. Words are either Simple or Compound.

§ 174. *A Simple Word* may be either,

(1.) *A Pure Root*, without any addition whatever: as  
 ād, āb sūb: nē or nōn; with some other indeclinable words.

*Obs.* Some words have become identical with pure roots by the loss of a Suffix properly belonging to them: as, fēr, *bear thou*; dīc, *say thou*; fūr, *a thief*; and the like.

Or (2.) *A word derived from a Single Root* by the addition of a *Suffix*: as, dīc-o, dic-tio, dīc-ax, from dic.

§ 175. *A Compound Word* is formed from two or more roots: as, hōmīcīda, *a manslayer*, from hōm-o, *a man*, and caed-o, *to kill*.

§ 176. *A Root* is always a monosyllable, and expresses an elementary notion.

§ 177. *A Suffix* is a termination added to a root to modify its meaning, but not intelligible by itself: as, the s of the Nominative Case Singular, in all Declensions except the First; the Adjectival terminations -ōsus, -īnus, -īlis, etc.

*Obs.* For the sake of convenience the term *Suffix* will hereafter be applied to the terminations used in the *derivation* of words, without regard to their inflexion.

§ 178. *A Prefix* is a syllable placed before the root to modify its meaning: as, amb-io, *to go around*. In inflexion a prefix is found only in certain Tenses of Verbs: as, te-tīg-i (Root, -tag), mo-mord-i (Root, mord), etc.

§ 179. The *Stem* of a word is that part which remains after taking away the inflexions: as, āgīlis (Stem, āgīli) *active*; vōlens (Stem, vōlent), *willing*; from the Roots ag (*act*), vol (*will*).

§ 180. Some words are formed at once from the Root simply by adding the inflexional terminations. These are called *Primary Words*; and in them the Root and the Stem are the same: as,

	Stem and Root	AG,	<i>set in motion, act.</i>
āg-o,		AG,	
duc-o, dux (duc-s),	„	DUC,	<i>lead.</i>
reg-o, rex (reg-s),	„	REG,	<i>rule.</i>
leg-o, lex (leg-s),	„	LEG,	<i>read.</i>
pēs, pēd-is,	„	PED,	<i>the foot.</i>
sōl, sōlis,	„	SOL,	<i>the sun.</i>
sāl, sālis,	„	SAL,	<i>salt.</i>

## § 181. I. SUBSTANTIVES DERIVED FROM VERBS.

Substantives are derived from Verbs by the addition of the following Suffixes :-

1. *or* (*m.*) expresses the action or condition of the verb as an abstract substantive : as,

ām-or,	love,	from āmo
clām-or,	a shout,	„ clāmo
cāl-or,	warmth,	„ cāleo
tīm-or,	fear,	„ timeo
fāv-or,	favour,	„ fāvco
fūr-or,	madness,	„ fūro.

*Obs.* When the Stem of the Verb ends in a vowel, the vowel is dropped before the Suffix *or*.

2. *tor* (*m.*) denotes the doer : as,

āmā-tor,	a lover,	from āmo
audī-tor,	a hearer,	„ audio
mōnī-tor,	an adviser,	„ mōneo
vic-tor,	a conqueror	„ vinco (root vic)
vēnā-tor,	a hunter,	„ vēnor
lec-tor,	a reader,	„ lego.

Most Substantives in *tor* have a corresponding Feminine Substantive in *trix* : as,

victor,	victrix,	conqueress.
vēnātor,	vēnātrix,	huntress.

*Obs.* The Suffix *tor* is subject to the same changes that occur in the Supine : as, cursor, a runner, from curro (cursum).

3. *io* and *tio* (*Gen. ōnis, f.*) denote the action : as,

obsid- <i>io</i> ,	a siege,	from obsideo
obliv- <i>io</i> ,	forgetfulness,	„ obliviscor
contag- <i>io</i> ,	a touching, contagion,	„ contingo, root (con)TAG
ac- <i>tio</i> ,	doing,	„ āgo
lec- <i>tio</i> ,	reading,	„ lēgo
scrip- <i>tio</i> ,	writing,	„ scribo.

4. *tus* (*Gen. tus, m.*) also denotes the action : as,

ac- <i>tus</i> ,	doing,	from āgo
audi- <i>tus</i> ,	hearing,	„ audio
aug- <i>tus</i> ,	an increase,	„ augeo
cant- <i>tus</i> ,	singing,	„ cāno.

*Obs.* The Suffixes *tio* and *tus* undergo the same euphonic changes as occur in the Supine : as, versio and versus from verito ; visio and visus from video.

5. *tura* also usually denotes the action : as,

merces- <i>tura</i> ,	trading,	from mercor
aper- <i>tura</i> ,	an opening,	„ apērio
cinct- <i>tura</i> ,	a girding,	„ cingo
junct- <i>tura</i> ,	a joining,	„ jungo.



6. **ium** (*n.*) denotes an act or state : as,

gaud-ium,	joy,	from gau-leo
od-ium,	hatred,	„ odi
incend-ium,	a conflagration,	„ incendo
aedific-ium,	a building,	„ aedifico.

7. **mēn** (*Ger. minis. n.*) usually denotes an instrument : as,

flu-men,	a river,	from fluo
la-men,	a light,	„ luceo
sola-men,	a consolation,	„ solor
teg-men,	a covering,	„ tēgo.

*Obs.* The Suffix *men* has sometimes a Passive force : as, *agmen, that which is led, an army marching* : *gestāmen, that which is carried, etc.*

8. **mentum** (*n.*) frequently denotes an instrument : as,

dēu-mentum,	a proof,	from dōceo
impēdi-mentum,	a hindrance,	„ impēdio
mō-mentum,	a moving force,	„ mōveo
ornā-montum,	an ornament,	„ oruo.

9. **būlum, cūlum, and trum** (*n.*) (*brum and crum after l*), also denote an instrument : as,

vēnā-bulum,	a hunting-spear,	from vēnor
pā-bulum,	fodder,	„ pascor
gubernā-culum,	a ruler	„ gubernā
fer-culum,	a tray,	„ fero
lavācerum,	a bath,	„ lāvo
fulerum,	a prop,	„ fulcio
ventilabrum,	a winnowing-fork,	„ ventilo
ārātrum,	a plough,	„ āro.

*Obs.* 1. If the verb ends in *c* or *g* the termination is **ūlum** only : as,

jāc-ūlum,	a dart,	from jācio
cing-ūlum,	a girdle,	„ cingo.

*Obs.* 2. Sometimes the Suffix **būlum** signifies a place : as, *stā-būlum, a standing-place or stall*, from *sto* (*sta-re*).

10. **ies** (*f.*) denotes that which is made, or which is the result of an action ; as,

fāciēs,	figure,	from fācio
effigies,	image	„ effingo (root <i>ex-FIG.</i> )
congēries,	a heap,	„ congēro

11. **mnus** (*m.*), passive or middle participial form (*Gr. -όμενος*) : as,

ālumnus,	nurseling, foster-son,	from ālo
Vertumnus,	god of the seasons [he that turns himself],	„ verito.

## § 182. II. SUBSTANTIVES DERIVED FROM SUBSTANTIVES.

Substantives are derived from Substantives by the addition of the following Suffixes :

1. **ārius** (*m.*) denotes a person engaged in some trade or occupation ; as,

argent-ārius,	a silversmith,	from argentum
stātā-ārius,	a statuary,	„ stātua
aer-ār.us,	a coppersmith,	„ aes
sic-ārius,	an assassin,	„ sica.

## § 181. I. SUBSTANTIVES DERIVED FROM VERBS.

Substantives are derived from Verbs by the addition of the following Suffixes :-

1. *or* (*m.*) expresses the action or condition of the verb as an abstract substantive : as,

ām-or,	lore,	from āmo
clām-or,	a shout,	„ clāmo
cāl-or,	warmth,	„ cāleo
tīm-or,	fear,	„ timeo
fāv-or,	jealousy,	„ fāveo
fūr-or,	madness,	„ fūro.

*Obs.* When the Stem of the Verb ends in a vowel, the vowel is dropped before the Suffix *or*.

2. *tor* (*m.*) denotes the doer : as,

āmā-tor,	a lover,	from āmo
audī-tor,	a hearer,	„ audio
mōnī-tor,	an adviser,	„ mōneō
vic-tor,	a conqueror	„ vinco (root VIC)
vēnā-tor,	a hunter,	„ vēnor
lec-tor,	a reader,	„ lego.

Most Substantives in *tor* have a corresponding Feminine Substantive in *trix* : as,

victor,	victrix,	conquereess.
vēnātor,	vēnātrix,	huntress.

*Obs.* The Suffix *tor* is subject to the same changes that occur in the Supine : as, *cursor*, a runner, from *curro* (*cursum*).

3. *io* and *tio* (*Gen. ōnis, f.*) denote the action : as,

obsīd-io,	a siege,	from obsīdeo
oblīv-io,	forgetfulness,	„ obliviscor
contūg-io,	a touching, contagion,	„ contingo, root (CON)TAG
ac-tio,	doing,	„ āgo
lec-tio,	reading,	„ lēgo
scrip-tio,	writing,	„ scribo.

4. *tus* (*Gen. tūs, m.*) also denotes the action : as,

ac-tus,	doing,	from āgo
audī-tus,	hearing,	„ audio
auc-tus,	an increase,	„ augeo
can-tus,	singing,	„ cāno.

*Obs.* The Suffixes *tio* and *tus* undergo the same euphonic changes as occur in the Supine : as, *versio* and *versus* from *verto* ; *visio* and *visus* from *video*.

5. *tūra* also usually denotes the action : as,

mercā-tura,	trading,	from mercoor
āper-tura,	an opening,	„ āperio
cinc-tura,	a girding,	„ cingo
junc-tūra,	a joining,	„ jungo.

6. **ium** (*n.*) denotes an act or state : as,

gaud-ium,	joy,	from gaudéo
ôd-ium,	hatred,	„ ôdi
incend-ium,	a conflagration,	„ incendo
aedific-ium,	a building,	„ aedifico.

7. **mên** (*Gen. mênis. n.*) usually denotes an instrument : as,

flû-men,	a river,	from fluo
lû-men,	a light,	„ lûceo
sôlâ-men,	a consolation,	„ sôlor
teg-men,	a covering,	„ tégô.

*Obs.* The Suffix *men* has sometimes a Passive force : as, *agmen, that which is led, an army marching* ; *gestâmen, that which is carried, etc.*

8. **mentum** (*n.*) frequently denotes an instrument : as,

dôcû-mentum,	a proof,	from dôceo
impêdî-mentum,	a hindrance,	„ impédio
mô-mentum,	a moving force,	„ môveo
ornâ-mentum,	an ornament,	„ orno.

9. **bûlum, cûlum, and trum** (*n.*) (*brum and crum after l*), also denote an instrument : as,

vênâ-bûlum,	a hunting-spear,	from vênor
pâ-bûlum,	fodder,	„ pascor
gubernâ-cûlum,	a rudder	„ gâberna
fer-cûlum,	a tray,	„ fêro
lâvâcrum,	a bath,	„ lâvo
fulcrum,	a prop,	„ fulcio
ventilâbrum,	a winnowing-fork,	„ ventilô
ârâtrum,	a plough,	„ âro.

*Obs.* 1. If the verb ends in *c* or *g* the termination is *ûlum* only : as,

jâc-ûlum,	a dart,	from jâcio
cing-ûlum,	a girdle,	„ cingo.

*Obs.* 2. Sometimes the Suffix *bûlum* signifies a place : as, *stâ-bûlum, a standing-place or stall, from sto (sta-re).*

10. **ies** (*f.*) denotes that which is made, or which is the result of an action ; as,

fâcies,	figure,	from fâcio
effigies,	image	„ effûngo (root <i>ex-FIG.</i> )
congêries,	a heap,	„ congêro

11. **mnus** (*m.*), passive or middle participial form (*Gr. -όμενος*) : as,

âlumnus,	nurseling, foster-son,	from âlo
Vertumnus,	god of the seasons [he that turns himself],	„ verito.

## § 182. II. SUBSTANTIVES DERIVED FROM SUBSTANTIVES.

Substantives are derived from Substantives by the addition of the following Suffixes :

1. **ârius** (*m.*) denotes a person engaged in some trade or occupation ; as,

argent-ârius,	a silversmith,	from argentum
stâtû-ârius,	a statuary,	„ stâtua
acr-ârius,	a coppersmith,	„ aes
sic-ârius,	an assassin,	„ sica.

## § 184. PATRONYMICS.

Patronymics are Greek words, used by the Latin poets, which designate a person by a name derived from that of his father or ancestor.

Masculine Patronymics end in :

1. *ides*: as, Priām-ides, a son of Priamus.
2. *ides*: as, Atr-ides, a son of Atreus.
3. *ādes* and *iādes*: as, Aene-ādes, a son of Aeneas; Atlant-iades, a son of Atlas.

*Obs.* Patronymics in *ides* (ἰδης) are only formed from Proper Names in *eus* (εις).

Feminine Patronymics end in :

1. *is*, Gen. *īdis*: as, Tantal-is, a daughter of Tantalus.
2. *ēis*, Gen. *ēdis*: as, Nel-ēis, a daughter of Neleus.
3. *ias*, Gen. *iādis*: as, Laert-ias, a daughter of Laertes.
4. *īne*: as, Neptūn-īne, a daughter of Neptuneus.
5. *ōne*: as, Acrīsi-ōne, a daughter of Acrisius.

## § 185. III. SUBSTANTIVES DERIVED FROM ADJECTIVES.

Substantives derived from Adjectives denote a quality or state, and have the following Suffixes:—

1. *ia* *f.*: as,

grāt-ia,	favour,	from grātus
insān-ia,	madness,	.. insānus
miser-ia,	wretchedness,	.. miser
prudent-ia,	prudence,	.. prūdens.

2. *tia* *f.*: as,

laeti-tia,	joy,	from laetus
justi-tia,	justice,	.. justus
melli-tia,	softness,	.. mellis
pigrī-tia,	sloth,	.. piger.

3. *tās* Gen. *tatis*, *f.*: as,

bōnī-tas,	goodness,	from bōnus
vērī-tas,	truth,	.. vērus
crudelī-tas,	cruelty,	.. crudelīis
atrocī-tas,	fierce-ness,	.. utrox.

4. *tudo* Gen. *tolinis*, *f.*: as,

alti-tudo,	height,	from altus
aeri-tudo,	agelessness,	.. aeger
forti-tudo,	bravery,	.. fortis
simili-tudo,	likeness,	.. similis.

5. *mōnia* *f.*: as,

sancti-timonia,	sanctity,	from sanctus
casti-timonia,	piety,	.. castus
acri-timonia	sharpness,	.. acer.

## CHAPTER XXXI.—DERIVATION OF ADJECTIVES.

## § 186. I. ADJECTIVES DERIVED FROM VERBS.

Adjectives are derived from Verbs by the addition of the following Suffixes :

1. *bundus*, intensifying the meaning of the imperfect participle.

See § 110, 3.

2. *idus* denotes the quality expressed by a verb : as, *also unus: vacuus.*

<i>frig-idus</i> ,	<i>cold</i> ,	from <i>frigeo</i>
<i>mād-idus</i> ,	<i>wet</i> ,	„ <i>mādeo</i>
<i>tīm-idus</i> ,	<i>fearful</i> ,	„ <i>timeo</i>
<i>vāl-idus</i> ,	<i>strong</i> ,	„ <i>vāleo</i> .

3. *ilis* and *bilis* denote the possibility of a thing in a passive sense : as, *generally in pass. agilis.*

<i>dōc-ilis</i> ,	<i>teachable</i> ,	from <i>dūceo</i>
<i>fāc-ilis</i> ,	<i>doable (easy)</i> ,	„ <i>fācio</i>
<i>āmā-bilis</i> ,	<i>loveable</i> ,	„ <i>āmo</i>
<i>mō-bilis</i> ,	<i>moveable</i> ,	„ <i>mōveo</i> .
( <i>= mōvī-bilis</i> )		

4. *ax* denotes a propensity, and generally a faulty one : as, *also Ullus. Credulus.*

<i>aud-ax</i> ,	<i>daring</i> ,	from <i>audco</i>
<i>ēd-ax</i> ,	<i>gluttonous</i> ,	„ <i>ēdo</i>
<i>lōqu-ax</i> ,	<i>talkative</i> ,	„ <i>lōquor</i>
<i>vōr-ax</i> ,	<i>voracious</i> ,	„ <i>vōro</i> .

*Obs.* The following Suffixes are less common :

1. *cundus* : as, *Irā-cundus*, *angry*, from *Ira-scor*  
*fū-cundus*, *eloquent*, „ *fūri*

2. *ūlus* : as, *quēr-ūlus*, *querulous*, „ *quēror*.

*Tilius, Tivus in sense of perf. part. pass.*

## § 187. II. ADJECTIVES DERIVED FROM SUBSTANTIVES.

Adjectives are derived from Substantives by the addition of the following Suffixes :—

1. *eus* denotes the material, and sometimes, but rarely, resemblance : as,

<i>aur-eus</i> ,	<i>golden</i> ,	from <i>aurum</i>
<i>virgin-eus</i> ,	<i>maidenlike</i> ,	„ <i>virgo</i> , <i>-inis</i> .

*Also -nus, made of*; appended to stems of nouns denoting trees; as *ācer-nus, made of maple*, from *ācer, a maple tree*; *quer-nus [quero-nus], oaken*; from *quercus*.

2. *icius* or *itius* denotes the material, or relation to something : as,

<i>lāter-icius</i> ,	<i>made of bricks</i> ,	from <i>lāter</i>
<i>tribūn-icius</i> ,	<i>relating to a tribune</i> ,	„ <i>tribūnus</i>
<i>aedil-icius</i> ,	<i>relating to an aedile</i> ,	„ <i>aedilis</i> .

*Obs.* 1. *āceus* has the same meaning, but is rare : as, *argill-āceus, made of clay*, from *argilla*.

*Obs.* 2. Adjectives in *icius* derived from the Perfect Part. or Supine have the *i* long, and denote the way in which a thing originates, and hence its kind : as, *commenticius, feigned*.

3. **Icus** denotes belonging or relating to a thing : as,

bell- <b>icus</b> ,	<i>relating to war,</i>	from bellum
civ- <b>icus</b> ,	<i>relating to a citizen,</i>	.. civis
class- <b>icus</b> ,	<i>relating to a fleet,</i>	.. classis.

Obs. The following Adjectives in **icus** have I :

am- <b>icus</b> ,	<i>friendly,</i>	from	āmo, amor
ant- <b>icus</b> ,	<i>front,</i>	..	antē
post- <b>icus</b> ,	<i>hinder,</i>	..	post.
ap- <b>icus</b> ,	<i>sunny,</i>	..	āperio')

4. **ilis** has the same meaning : as,

host- <b>ilis</b> ,	<i>hostile,</i>	from hostis
serv- <b>ilis</b> ,	<i>slavish,</i>	.. servus
puer- <b>ilis</b> ,	<i>childish,</i>	.. puer.

5. **alis** has the same meaning : as,

fat- <b>alis</b> ,	<i>fatal,</i>	from fatum
reg- <b>alis</b> ,	<i>kingly,</i>	.. rex
vit- <b>alis</b> ,	<i>vital,</i>	.. vita.

Obs. If the last syllable of the substantive is preceded by *l*, the Suffix of the Adjective is **āris** (comp. § 141, 9) as,

pōp- <b>ūlis</b> ,	<i>pertaining to the people,</i>	from pōpulus
sālūt- <b>āris</b> ,	<i>salutary,</i>	.. sālūta, sālūtus.

6. **ius** has the same meaning, and is usually formed from personal names : as,

patr- <b>ius</b> ,	<i>pertaining to a father,</i>	from pater
seror- <b>ius</b> ,	<i>pertaining to a sister,</i>	.. seror
orator- <b>ius</b> ,	<i>pertaining to an orator,</i>	.. orator

7. **ivus** has the same meaning, and is found especially in derivations from the names of animals : as,

cān- <b>ivus</b> ,	<i>pertaining to a dog,</i>	from cānis
equ- <b>ivus</b> ,	<i>pertaining to a horse,</i>	.. equus
div- <b>ivus</b> ,	<i>pertaining to the gods,</i>	.. divus

8. **ivus** has the same meaning : as,

urb- <b>ivus</b> ,	<i>pertaining to a city,</i>	from urbs
font- <b>ivus</b> ,	<i>pertaining to a fountain,</i>	.. fons, fontis
mont- <b>ivus</b> ,	<i>pertaining to a mountain,</i>	.. mons, montis

9. **ivus** has the same meaning : as,

agr- <b>ivus</b> ,	<i>pertaining to land,</i>	from ager
grex- <b>ivus</b> ,	<i>pertaining to a flock,</i>	.. grex, gregis
leg- <b>ivus</b> ,	<i>pertaining to a legion,</i>	.. legio

The **ivus** and **ivus** are often used as the Suffixes of substantives, see § 137

10. **ivus** denotes a falling : as,

lapid- <b>ivus</b> ,	<i>fall of stones,</i>	from lapis
pericul- <b>ivus</b> ,	<i>fall of dangers,</i>	.. periculum
audac- <b>ivus</b> ,	<i>fall of courage,</i>	.. audacia

11. *lentus*, usually preceded by the vowel *ū* or *ō*, also denotes fullness: as,

fraud- <i>ā</i> lentus,	<i>full of deceit,</i>	from <i>fraus</i> (fraud-s)
vi- <i>ō</i> lentus,	<i>full of violence,</i>	„ <i>vis</i>

12. *ātus*, sometimes *ītus* and *ūtus*, denote having something or provided with something as,

<i>ālā</i> -tus,	<i>furnished with wings, winged,</i>	from <i>āla</i>
tōg- <i>ā</i> tus,	„ <i>a toga,</i>	„ <i>tōga</i>
aur- <i>ī</i> tus,	„ <i>ears,</i>	„ <i>auris</i>
corn- <i>ū</i> tus,	„ <i>horns, horned,</i>	„ <i>cornu.</i>

### § 188. III. ADJECTIVES DERIVED FROM PROPER NAMES.

Adjectives are derived from Roman names of men by the Suffix *ānus* or *iānus*: as,

Māri- <i>ā</i> nus,	from Mārius
Sull- <i>ā</i> nus,	„ Sulla
Gracch- <i>ā</i> nus,	„ Gracchus
Cicērōn-iānus,	„ Cicerō.

The Suffix *īnus* is rare: as,

Verr-*ī*nus (punningly), from Verres (or verres, a hog).

Obs. From Greek names of men we have the Suffixes *ēus* or *īus* and *īcus*: as,

Epīcūr- <i>ē</i> us,	from Epīcūrus
Aristōtēl- <i>ī</i> us	„ Aristōtēles
Plātōn- <i>ī</i> cus,	„ Plāto.

The poets form Adjectives in *ēus* from Roman names: as,

Rōmūl- <i>e</i> us,	from Rōmūlus.
---------------------	---------------

§ 189. Adjectives are formed from the names of towns by the addition of the following Suffixes:

1. *ensis*: as,

Cann- <i>e</i> nsis,	from Cannae
Cōm- <i>e</i> nsis,	„ Cōmum
Sulmōn- <i>e</i> nsis	„ Sulmo (Sulmōn-is).

2. *īnus*, from names of towns in *ia* and *ium*: as,

Amēr- <i>ī</i> nus,	from Amēria
Caud- <i>ī</i> nus,	„ Caudium.

3. *ānus*, from names of towns in *a* and *ae*, and from some in *um* and *i* as,

Rōm- <i>ā</i> nus,	from Rōma
Thēb- <i>ā</i> nus,	„ Thēbae
Tuscūl- <i>ā</i> nus,	„ Tuscūlum
Fund- <i>ā</i> nus,	„ Fundi.

4. *ās*, *Gen. ātis*, chiefly from names of towns in *num*, but sometimes from those in *ni* and *næ*: *as*,

Arpi <del>as</del> , Cāpē <del>as</del> , Fidē <del>as</del> ,	from Arpinum .. Cāpēna .. Fidēnae.
--	--

*Obs.* 1. These Adjectives are also used as Substantives to denote the inhabitants.

*Obs.* 2. In Adjectives derived from names of Greek towns the Greek suffixes are retained. The most frequent suffix is *ius as*,

Cōrinth- <i>ius</i> ,	from Cōrīnthus.
-----------------------	-----------------

§ 190. Sometimes Adjectives in *icus* are formed from the names of people, especially when the latter are used only as Substantives: *as*,

Gall- <i>icus</i> , <i>Gallie</i> ,	from Gallus, a Gaul.
Arab- <i>icus</i> , <i>Arabic</i> ,	.. Arabs, an Arab.

*Obs.* The names of countries are usually derived from those of the people *as*, *Hispania*, *Spain*, from *Hispanus*. Adjectives in *ensis* derived from such names denote some relation to the country, not to the people: *as*, *exercitus Hispanicus*, *an army stationed in Spain*, not an army consisting of Spaniards, but, on the other hand, *spertium Hispanicum* is a plant growing in Spain, similarly *Gallicanus* from *Gallicus*.

## CHAPTER XXXII.—DERIVATION OF VERBS.

### § 191. I. VERBS DERIVED FROM SUBSTANTIVES AND ADJECTIVES.

Derivative Transitive Verbs are usually of the First Conjugation, and are formed from Substantives and Adjectives by the addition of the suffixes of the First Conjugation. They signify *to make* what the Substantive or Adjective denotes: *as*,

māto, <i>I make ripe</i> ,	from mārus
libero, <i>I make free</i> ,	.. liber
robō, <i>I make strong, I strengthen</i> ,	.. robur / robur-is

*Obs.* A few Verbs of the Fourth Conjugation are similarly formed: *as*,

flō, <i>I flush</i> ,	from flūs
noō, <i>I refresh</i> ,	.. nox

§ 192. Many Deponents of the First Conjugation are formed in the same way, and signify *to be* or *to pass oneself with* what the Substantive or Adjective denotes: *as*,

amollor, <i>I am a soft-servant</i> ,	from amollis
aquor, <i>I catch water</i> ,	.. aqua
lūtor, <i>I am joyful</i> ,	.. lūta
philosophor, <i>I am a philosopher</i> ,	.. philosophia



§ 193. Derivative Intransitive Verbs are usually of the Second Conjugation, and are formed in a similar manner from Substantives and Adjectives: as,

calveo,	<i>I am bald,</i>	from calvus
albeo,	<i>I am white,</i>	„ albus.

Obs. Many Verbs of this kind are only found as inceptives (see § 194, 2): as, *dūresco dūreo*, *I grow hard*, from *dūrus*.

## § 194. II. VERBS DERIVED FROM VERBS.

1. *Frequentative Verbs* express the repetition of an action, and are formed by adding *ito* to the Stem of the First Conjugation, and to the Supine of the other Conjugations: as,

clām-ito,	<i>I cry out often,</i>	from clāmo
rōg-ito,	<i>I ask often,</i>	„ rōgo
min-itor,	<i>I threaten often,</i>	„ minor
lect-ito,	<i>I read often,</i>	„ lēgo, lectum
script-ito,	<i>I write often,</i>	„ scribo, scriptum
ven-ito,	<i>I come often,</i>	„ vēnio, ventum.

Obs. Many frequentatives, especially of the Third Conjugation, are formed at once from the Supines by simply adding the terminations of the Verb: as,

curso,	<i>I run hither and thither,</i>	from curro, cursum
salto,	<i>I dance,</i>	„ salio, saltum.

2. *Inceptive Verbs* express the beginning of an action, and are formed by adding *sco asco, esco, isco*, 3, to the Stems of Substantives and Adjectives as well as of Verbs: as,

lāb-asco,	<i>I begin to totter,</i>	from lābo
cāl-esco,	<i>I grow warm,</i>	„ cāleo
trēm-isco,	<i>I begin to tremble,</i>	„ trēmo
obdormi-sco,	<i>I fall asleep,</i>	„ dormio
sēn-esco,	<i>I grow old,</i>	„ sēnex.

3. *Desiderative Verbs* express a desire after a thing, and are formed from the Supine by adding *ūrio*, and dropping the *um* of the termination: as,

ēs-ūrio,	<i>I long to eat,</i>	from ēdo, ēsum
script-ūrio,	<i>I long to write,</i>	„ scribo, scriptum.

Obs. By analogy is formed *Sullatūrio*, *I long to play the part of Sulla*.

4. *Diminutive Verbs* express a diminution of the action and end in *illo illāre*, 1): as,

cant-illo,	<i>I warble,</i>	from canto
sorb-illo,	<i>I sip,</i>	„ sorbeo
conscrib-illo,	<i>I scribble,</i>	„ conscribo.

§ 195. Intransitive Verbs of the Second Conjugation are sometimes derived from Transitive Verbs of the Third Conjugation, the latter signifying a momentary act and the former a state : as,

jācio,	jācēre,	to throw,	jāceo, jācēre,	to lie.
pendo,	pendēre,	to hang, to weigh,	pendeo, pendēre,	to be hanging.
pārio,	pārēre,	to bring forth,	pāreo, pārēre,	to be visible.
cando,	candēre,	} to set on fire,	candeo, candēre,	to be burning.
incendo,	incendēre,			

## CHAPTER XXXIII.—DERIVATION OF ADVERBS.

§ 196. Adverbs in ē are derived from Adjectives of the First and Second Declensions, or from Perfect Participles Passive : as,

mōdestē,	modestly,	from mōdestus
pulchrē,	beautifully,	„ pulcher
doctē,	learnedly,	„ doctus.

Obs. 1. From bōnus comes bēnē, from mālus comes mālē, both with the final *e* short. From vālidus, *strong*, comes vāidē.

Obs. 2. Some Adjectives of the First and Second Declensions have Adverbs in tēr as well as in ē : as,

dūrē,	dūrtēr,	severely,	from dūrus
firmē,	fīrtēr,	firmly,	„ firmus
gnāvē,	gnāvtēr,	actively,	„ gnāvus
hūmānē,	hūmāntēr,	courteously,	„ hūmānus
largē,	largtēr,	bounteously,	„ largus
lūcūlentē,	lūcūlentēr,	splendidly,	„ lūcūlentus.

From viōlentus, *vehement*, there is only viōlentēr ; the form viōlens is never used in prose.

§ 197. Adverbs in ō are derived from Adjectives of the First and Second Declensions, and from Perfect Participles Passive, and are properly Ablatives Singular : as,

falsō,	falsely,	from falsus
tutō,	safely,	„ tutus
crēbrō,	frequently,	„ crēber.

Obs. The form in ō is rare. From some Adjectives come Adverbs both in ē and ō, but with a difference of meaning : as, certō, *certainly*, and certē, *at any rate* ; vērō, *in truth, indeed*, and vērē, *truly*.

§ 198. Adverbs in tēr are formed from Adjectives of the Third Declension : as,

grāvi-tēr,	heavily,	from grāvis
fēlici-tēr,	fortunately,	„ fēlix.

*Obs.* If the Stem of an Adjective or Participle ends in *t*, one *t* is omitted: as,

sāpienter, *wisely*, from sapiens (sāpient-s).

§ 199. The Neuters Singular of many Adjectives are used as Adverbs: as,

facile, *easily*; recens, *lutely*; multum, *much*.

§ 200. Adverbs in *itūs* are derived from Substantives and Adjectives, and denote *proceeding from something*: as,

coel-itūs, *from heaven*, from coelum  
rādīc-itūs, *from the roots*, „ rādix (rādīc-s).

§ 201. Adverbs in *tim* are formed from Substantives, Adjectives, and Verbs, and denote the way or manner: as,

cātervā-tim, *in troops*, from cāterva  
privā-tim, *as a private person*, „ privātus  
stā-tim, *immediately*, „ sto (stare)  
punc-tim, *with the point*, „ pingo.

§ 202. Adverbs derived from Numerals are given in §§ 72, 73

§ 203. Adverbs derived from Pronouns are given in § 133.

## CHAPTER XXXIV.—COMPOSITION OF WORDS.

§ 204. A Compound Word is formed of two or more roots.

*Obs.* Sometimes a Substantive and Adjective, both of which are declined, or a Genitive and the Substantive on which it depends, are written together, but these are not genuine compounds: as,

respublica, *Gen. rēipublicae*, *the commonwealth*.  
jusjūrandum, *Gen. jūrisjūrandi*, *an oath*.  
senātus-consultum, *a resolution of the senate*.  
āquae-ductus, *water-channel*.

§ 205. The first part of a compound word may consist of any part of speech; but a verb is only found in the first part, when *fācio* is in the second: as,

ārēfācio, *to make dry*.  
cālēfācio, *to make warm*.  
liquēfācio, *to cause to melt*.  
mādēfācio, *to make wet*.  
pātēfācio, *to throw open*.

*Obs.* Such apparent compounds as nidifīco, *I build a nest*, are rather to be referred to an intermediate Adjective: as, nidifīcus, *nest-building*.

§ 206. A compound verb, as a general rule, consists only of a preposition and a verb; but the vowel of the verb usually undergoes the following changes:—

1. Short *a* is usually changed into short *i* before one consonant, but sometimes into short *e*: as,

cāpio,	to take,	accīpio
rāpio,	to seize,	arrīpio
pātiōr,	to suffer	perpētior
grādior,	to walk,	congrēdior.

*Obs.* Pērāgo, to complete, perplāceo, to please greatly, and faciō compounded with adverbs, as sātisfaciō, to satisfy, are exceptions.

2. *A* before two consonants is usually changed into *e*: as,

carpo,	to pluck,	concerpo
damno,	to condemn,	condemno
scando,	to climb,	conscendo
spargo,	to scatter	conspargo.

3. *A* is sometimes changed into *u*: as,

salto,	to dance,	insulto
calco,	to tread,	conculco
quātio,	to shake,	concutio.

4. Short *e* is changed into short *i* before one consonant: as,

ēgēo,	to want,	indigeo
sēdeo,	to sit,	insideo
tēneo,	to hold,	abstineo.

*Obs.* Perlēgo, to read through, praelēgo, to read to others, rēlego, to read again, are exceptions.

5. The diphthong *ae* becomes long *i*: as,

caedo,	to cut,	occido
quaero,	to seek,	inquīro
laedo,	to strike,	collido.

6. The diphthong *au* becomes either *ō* or *u*, but in one instance *ē*: as,

plaudo,	to clap the hands,	explōdo
claudo,	to shut,	conclūdo
audio,	to hear,	ōbēdio.

*Obs.* The changes which the prepositions undergo in composition are mentioned in § 133

§ 207. Substantives and Adjectives in composition are usually connected by the vowel *i*, or the last syllable of the first word is changed into *i*: as,

pēdisēquus,	a follower on foot,	from pes (pēd) and sēquor
munificus,	bountiful,	„ mūnus and faciō
causidicus,	an advocate,	„ causa and dico
agricōla,	a husbandman,	„ gāēr and cōlo
āquillifer,	a standard-bearer,	„ q uilla and fēro.

§ 208. The quantity of Verbs in composition is the same as that of the simple verbs: as, fēro, affēro; hūbeo, prōhibeo, etc. The only apparent exceptions are mentioned in the Prosody.

## PART II.—SYNTAX.

## BOOK I.

§ 209. Syntax treats of the relations of words and sentences or parts of sentences to each other.

## CHAPTER XXXV.—OF SENTENCES.

§ 210. The elementary parts of a sentence are two: SUBJECT and PREDICATE.

The Subject is that whereof something is affirmed or predicated (*praedicāre, to affirm*); the Predicate is that which is affirmed of the Subject.

*Obs.* 1. In Grammar, the terms Subject and Predicate are applied to single words; the remaining words of the sentence being regarded as *enlargements* of the Subject or Predicate. Thus in the sentence, *Alexander Magnus rex Mācēdōnum erat, Alexander the Great was king of the Macedonians, Alexander* is the Subject, and *rex* the Predicate; *Magnus* being an enlargement of the Subject (*Alexander*), and *Macedonus* an enlargement of the Predicate (*rex*). Transitive verbs require an object as the complement of the Predicate: thus in the sentence, *Caesar vicit Gallos, Caesar conquered the Gauls*, the object *Gallos* is a complement of the predicate *vicit*.

*Obs.* 2. The term Predicate is by an extension of its original meaning applied to sentences which contain a question or a command instead of an affirmation: as,

*Quis crēdat? who would believe? Tu ne quāsiēris, inquire not thou: where the Predicates are credat and quāsiēris.*

§ 211 THE SUBJECT.—The Subject of a sentence must be either a Substantive or some word (or words) equivalent to a Substantive: as,

*India mittit ēbur, India sends ivory.—Virg.*

*Hos ēgo versiculōs fēci, I made these little verses.*

*Obs.* The Subject is often only indicated by the termination of a Verb, so that a sentence may consist of a single word; as, *vīcimus, we have conquered; fuerunt, they have been, have ceased to exist.*

§ 212. Hence the Infinitive Mood, being a verbal Substantive, is often the Subject of a sentence: as,

*Pulchrum est dīgito monstrāri, It is a fine thing to be pointed out (for admiration) with the finger.—Pers.* (Subject, *dīgito monstrāri*.)

*Obs.* Any word, or even letter, when spoken of *as a word*, may become the Subject of a sentence: as,

*Atque particūla conjunctio esse dicitur connexīva, The particle atque is said to be a connective conjunction.—Gell.*

§ 213. THE PREDICATE.—The Predicate of a sentence may be a Verb, an Adjective, or another Substantive: as,

*Omnia jam fient, All the things will now come to pass*—Ov.

*Socrâtes Græcôrum sâpientissimus (erat), Socrates was the wisest of the Greeks*.—Cic.

*Hannibal Hamilcâris filius (fuit), Hannibal was the son of Hamilcar*.—Nep.

(N.B. For the Syntax of the Predicate, see §§ 219-227.)

Obs. 1. When the Verb "to be" is employed to connect Subject and Predicate as in two of the above examples, it is called the Copula *côpula, tie or band*.

Obs. 2. Occasionally an Adverb forms the Predicate after the Verb *esse*: as, *bene, recte est, it is well*.

§ 214. APPPOSITION.—Sometimes a Substantive is defined by the addition of another Substantive descriptive of it. The latter Substantive is said to be in *Apposition* with the former, and is put in the same Case, generally in the same number, and, if possible, in the same Gender.

*Themistocles, impêrator Persæ bellicæ, Græcæ in servitutē liberavit, Themistocles, commander in the Persian war, delivered Greece from bondage*.—Cic.

*Sûlcrum inventor Ælysses, Ulysses, contriver of wicked deeds*.—Virg.

*Oliva Minerva inventrix, Minerva, inventor of the olive*.—Virg.

*Ut ômittam illas omnium doctrinarum inventrices Athenas, To say nothing of the famous Athens, inventresses of every branch of learning*.—Cic.

Obs. 1. In the case of Substantives possessing a two-fold form, as *magister, magistra, minister, ministra, inventor, inventrix*, and the like, the Masculine form is used in apposition with Masculine Substantives, and the Feminine with Feminines, as in the preceding examples.

Obs. 2. Two Substantives often come together in the same case by Apposition, when a person or place is indicated at once by its name—as, *Tullius, urbs Roma*. (Never *urbs Romæ*.)

§ 215. When the Substantive in Apposition is not of the same Gender or Number as that to which it refers, the Predicate usually follows the Gender and number of the original subject, as,

*Tullia, delictis nostræ, manuscriptum tuum fregit, Tullia, my little darling, clung to your present*.—Cic.

Obs. Not always, however. Comp. Cic. Man. l. 11, *Corinthus feni* (Græciæ lumen et notum esse viderunt, They would have Corinth, the light of Greece, put out).

But when the Substantive in apposition is *verbo, apparet, debet* or a similar word, the Predicate is regularly made to agree therewith—as,

*Corinthi capti sunt, The town of Corinth was taken*.—Liv.

§ 216. Adjectives and Participles can also be used in Apposition; when of course (§ 223), they agree with the Substantives to which they refer in Gender, Number, and Case: as,

*Catīlīna, nōbīli gēnēre nātus, fuit magnā vī et ānīmī et corpōris, Catiline, born of a distinguished family, was possessed of great strength of mind and body.*—Sall.

*Artes sunt innūmērābīles, ad victum nēcessāriæ, There are innumerable arts necessary for living.*—Cic.

§ 217. Sometimes simple Apposition takes place where in English we should use the words “as” or “when:” as,

*Dēfendi rempublicam jūvēnis, I defended the commonwealth as (or when) a young man.*—Cic.

*Nēmo fēre saltat sōbrius, nīsi forte insānit, Hardly any one dances when sober, unless, perchance, he is out of his mind.*—Cic.

Obs. But when *as* denotes something supposed or presumed (e.g. he was taken up as a thief), it must be expressed by *tamquam, quāsi* or *ūt*; and when *as* denotes a comparison, it must be expressed by *ūt, sic—ūt, tamquam*: as,

*Cicēro ea, quæ nunc ūsū vēniunt, cēcīnit ūt vātes, Cicero predicted, like a prophet, those things which are now happening.*—Nep.

## CHAPTER XXXVI.—CONCORD AND GOVERNMENT.

§ 218. Syntax is sometimes divided into two parts  
SYNTAX OF CONCORD and SYNTAX OF GOVERNMENT.

The Syntax of Concord treats of such agreement or correspondence as exists between words related to each other; Syntax of Government of the modifying influence exerted upon one word by another on which it depends. Thus in the sentence,

*Alexander vicit Dariūm, Alexander conquered Darius,*

the Verb *vicit* corresponds (“agrees”) with the subject *Alexander* in Number and Person [Syntax of Concord]; while the Substantive *Dariūm* is put in the Accusative Case, on account of its dependence upon the Transitive Verb *vicit*, by which it is said to be “governed.” [Syntax of Government.]

### First Concord.

§ 219. *The Nominative Case and Verb.*—A Verb agrees with its Subject or Nominative Case in Number and Person: as,

*Cōnon magnas res gessit, Conon achieved great exploits.*—Nep.

*Magnus hoc beilo Thēmistocles fuit, Themistocles was great in this war.*—Nep.

*Athēnienses omnium civium suōrum pōtentiam extīnescēbant, The Athenians stood in great dread of the predominance of any of their fellow-citizens.*—Nep.

§ 220. When two or more Substantives form the joint Subject, the Verb is put in the Plural Number: as,

*Castor et Pollux ex ēquis pugnāre visi sunt, Castor and Pollux were seen to fight on horseback.*—Cic.

*Syphax regnumque ējus in pōtestātē Rōmānōrum ērant, Syphax and his kingdom were in the hands of the Romans.*—Liv.

*Vita, mors, divitiæ, paupertas, omnes hōmīnes vēhementissimē permōvent, Life, death, riches, poverty, have very great influence upon all people.*—Cic.

*Obs. 1.* When the Subject consists of two Singular Substantives which together form but one idea, the Verb is in the Singular: as,

*Sēnātus pōpulusque Rōmānus intelligit, The senate and people of Rome are (lit. is) aware.*—Cic.

*Tempus nēcēssitasque postulat, Time and necessity demand.*—Cic.

*Obs. 2.* Sometimes, when there are two or more subjects, the Verb agrees with the nearest and is understood with the rest: as,

*Orgetōrigis filia et ūnus e filiis captus est, The daughter of Orgetorix and one of his sons was taken prisoner.*—Caes.

*Obs. 3.* Occasionally a Plural Verb is used when an Ablative is connected by the Preposition *cum* with a Nominative Case in the Singular: as,

*Bocchus cum peditibus . . . postrēmam aciem Rōmānōrum incedunt, Bocchus along with the infantry, full (s) upon the rear of the Romans.*—Sall.

*Obs. 4.* When the Subject consists of two Substantives connected by *aut*, the Verb may be in the Plural as well as the Singular: as,

*Si Socrātes aut Antisthēnes dicēret or dicērent, If Socrates or Antisthenes were to speak.* (See Zumpt, L. G. § 374.)

§ 221. When Subjects having a common Predicate are of different Persons, the First is preferred to the Second, and the Second to the Third. For in fact a Subject of the First Person and a Subject of the Second or Third Person are together equivalent to a First Person Plural (= *nos*); while a Subject of the Second Person and a Subject of the Third Person are together equivalent to a Second Person Plural



(= vos): thus *ĕgo et tu*, or *ĕgo et frāter meus*, both = *nos*; while *tu et ille*, *tu et frāter*, = *vos*: *as*,

*Si tu et Tullia lux nostra vālētis*, *ego et suāvissīmus Cīcēro vālēmus*, *If you and my darling Tullia (= ye) are well, so am I and my sweetest Cicero (= so are we).*—Cic

*Obs.* In Latin the First Person always takes precedence of the Second: *as*, *ĕgo et rex*, *I and the king*.

§ 222. When the Subject is a Collective Substantive (“Noun of Multitude”), or a word implying plurality, the Verb is sometimes put in the Plural, especially in the poets: *as*,

*Tūra fērant plācentque nōvum pia turba Quīrīnum*, *Let the pious people offer incense and propitiate the new (deity) Quirinus.*—Ov.

*Dēsectam sēgētem magna vis hōmīnum sīmul immissa corbībus fūdēre in Tibērim*, *A large body of men was set to work at once to reap the corn and empty it from baskets into the Tiber.*—Liv.

*Obs.* 1. This construction is far less common in Latin than in English, and is rarely used when the Collective Substantive stands quite by itself. In the following passage the Singular and Plural are combined:—

*Pars stūpet innuptae dōnum exītiāle Mīnervae  
Et mīrantur ĕqui mōlem*,

*Part are awe-struck at unwedded Minerva's fatal offering, and wonder at the massy bulk of the horse.*—Virg.

*Obs.* 2. A Plural Verb is sometimes used after *ūterque*, *quisque* (especially *pro se quisque*), *pars*—*pars* (for *ālii*—*ālii*), *ālius*—*ālium*, and *alter*—*alterum*, since these words contain the idea of plurality: *as*,

*Eōdem die ūterque eōrum ex castris stātīvis exercitum ēdūeunt*, *On the same day both of them lead out the army from the stationary camp.*—Caes.

*Missi (sunt) hōnōrātissīmus quisque ex patrībūs*, *All the most distinguished (lit. every most distinguished man) from the fathers were sent.*—Liv.

## Second Concord.

§ 223. *The Substantive and Adjective.*—An Adjective agrees with its Substantive in Gender, Number, and Case: *as*,

*Jam pauca ārātro jūgēra rēgiae  
Mōles rēlinquent*,

*Ere long the princely piles will leave few acres for the plough.*—Hor.

— *Nec te [sīlēbo] mētūende certā  
Phoebe sāgittā*,

*Nor will I hold my peace of thee, Phoebus; to be dreaded for thine unerring shaft.*—Hor.

*Obs.* The rule is the same whether the Adjective is used as an Attribute or a Predicate: *as*, *vir hōnus*, *a good man*; or *vir est hōnus*, *the man is good*.

§ 224. In like manner, the Perfect Participle used in

forming the Perfect Tenses of the Passive Voice, agrees in Gender and Number with the Subject of the Verb: as,

*Omnium assensu comprobata oratio est*, *The speech was approved by the assent of all.*—Liv.

*Neglectum Anxuri praesidium (est)*, *The garrison at Anxur was not looked after.*—Liv.

§ 225. When an Adjective or Participle is predicated of two or more Subjects at once, it is put in the Plural Number.

(1.) If the Subjects are *persons*, though of different genders, the Adjective is Masculine. as,

*Pater mihi et mater mortui sunt*, *My father and mother are dead.*—Ter.

(2.) If the Subjects are *things* without life, and of different genders, the Adjective is Neuter: as,

*Secundae res, honores, imperia, victoriae fortuita sunt*, *Prosperity, honours, places of command, victories are accidental.*—Cic.

*Labor voluptasque societate quaedam inter se conjuncta sunt*, *Labour and enjoyment are linked together by a kind of partnership.*—Liv.

*Obs.* 1. Even if the things are of the same Gender, the Neuter is often used; as,

*Ira et avaritia imperio potentiora erant*, *Anger and avarice were too strong to be controlled.*—Liv.

*Obs.* 2. When an Adjective is used attributively of more than one Substantive, it usually agrees with the nearest, and is left to be understood with the rest: as, *omnes agri et maria*, *all seas and lands*; or the Adjective is repeated, as, *agri omnes omniaque maria*.

§ 226. Sometimes the Adjective or Participle of the Predicate follows the *sense* instead of the grammatical form of the Subject: as,

*Duo millia Tyriorum crucibus affixi sunt*, *Two thousand Tyrians were crucified.*—Curt.

*Capita conjunctionis virgis caesi ac securi percussi sunt*, *The heads of the conspiracy were scourged and beheaded.*—Liv.

*Obs.* In both the above examples the Masculine of the participle is used because *Persons* are meant, though the words *millia* and *capita* are Neuter.

§ 227. Sometimes a predicative Adjective, instead of agreeing in Gender with the Subject, is put in the Neuter; where in English we should express the word "*thing*:" as,

*Triste lupus stabalis*, *The wolf is a sorry thing in cattle-stalls.*—Virg.

*Turpitudine pejus est quam dolor*, *Disgrace is a worse thing than pain.*—Cic.

## Third Concord.

§ 228. *The Relative and its Antecedent.*—The Relative agrees with its Antecedent in Gender, Number, and Person: as,

*Pater, qui te confirmat, ipso me non possum, I who am encouraging you, cannot encourage myself.*—Cic.

*Nullum animal, quod sanguinem habet, sine corde esse potest, No animal, which has blood, can be destitute of a heart.*—Cic.

Obs. The Case of the Relative is determined by its relation to its own clause, which is thus treated as a separate sentence: as,

*Arbiter adit diligens agricola, quorum adspiciet baccam ipse nunquam, The industrious husbandman will plant trees, the fruit of which he will himself never set eyes on.*—Cic.

NOTE.—Here the Relative *quorum* is governed by the Substantive *baccam* in the Relative sentence. (Genitive of Possessor, § 263.)

§ 229. When the Relative has for its Predicate a Substantive of different gender from the Antecedent, the Relative usually agrees in gender with the Predicate: as,

*Caesar Gomphos pervenit, quod est (not qui sunt) oppidum Boeotiae, Caesar came to Gomphi, which is a town of Boeotia.*—Caes.

*Lævis est Animi, justam gloriâ, qui (not quae) est fructus verâ virtutis honestissimus, repudiare, It is characteristic of a worthless mind to despise just glory, which is the most honourable fruit of true virtue.*—Cic.

Obs. 1. The same construction is used when the Relative is the Subject of a Passive Verb of naming (§ 232), or the object of an Active one (§ 234): as,

*Peroratio, qui Epilogus dicitur, The conclusion of a speech, which is called the epilogue.*—Cic.

*Inimica conjuncta, quas urbes dicimus, Dwelling-houses connected together, which we call cities.*—Cic.

Obs. 2. The same construction is found in the case of the demonstrative and determinative Pronouns: as,

*Idem velle et idem nolle, ea (not id dñm) verâ amicitia est, To have the same wishes and the same fears, that and nothing short of it is true friendship.*—Sall.

§ 230. When the Relative has for its Antecedent a whole proposition, the latter is treated as a Neuter Substantive: as,

*Sapientes soli, quod est proprium divitiarum, contenti sunt rebus suis, Wise men only—that properly belongs to wealth—are content with what is their own.*—Cic.

Obs. Instead of the simple relative, *id quod* (sometimes *quae res*) may be used: as,

*Timoleon, id quod difficilior putatur, multo sapientius tollit secundam, quam adversam fortunam, Timoleon—that is thought the more difficult—bore prosperity much more wisely than adversity.*—Nep.

## CHAPTER XXXVII.—THE NOMINATIVE CASE.

§ 231. The Nominative Case is used to denote the Subject of a Sentence : as,

*Ego rēges ejēcī, vos tȳrannos intrōdūcītis, I expelled kings, ye are bringing in despots.*—Auct. ad Her.

See also § 219.

*Obs.* Only in the case of the Infinitive Mood, as in the *Obliqua oratio*, the Subject is in the Accusative.

§ 232. The Nominative is also used as descriptive of the Subject after the following classes of Verbs :—

(1.) Verbs which signify *to be* or *to become* : as, *sum, existo, fio, evādo (to issue, turn out) nascor (to be born), etc.*

(2.) Verbs which denote a *state* or *mode of existence* ; also, *gesture* : as, *māneo (to remain), dūro (to endure), incēdo (to walk), etc.*

(3.) Passive Verbs of *naming, making, appointing* : as, *nōmīnor, dicor, appellor* [also *audio*, in sense of *to be called*] ; *creor, fio, dēsīgnor, instituor, etc.*

(4.) Verbs signifying *to seem* or *be thought* : as, *videor, hābeor, existimor, dūcor, etc.* : as,

(1.) *Nēmo rēpente fit turpissīmus, No one becomes utterly base all at once.*—Juv.

(2.) *Mūnitiōnes integras mănēbant, The fortifications remained entire.*—Caes.

*Divum incēdo rēgīna, I walk queen of the gods.*—Virg.

(3.) *Nūma Pompilius rex creatus est, Numa Pompilius was made king.*—Eutr.

*Justitia erga deos religio dicītur, Justice towards the gods is called religion.*—Cic.

(4.) *Sātis altitudo mūri exstructa vidēbātur, The height of the wall seemed sufficiently raised.*—Nep.

*In rēbus angustis animāsus et fortis apparē, In trying circumstances, show thyself courageous and manly.*—Hor.

*Obs.* *Videor* is generally used as a personal verb, though more frequently translated in English as an impersonal : as,

*Ne Alpes vīsisse Hannibalem videantur. Lest it should seem that the Alps have conquered Hannibal.*—Liv.

§ 233. The Nominative is used even after the Infinitive of the above-mentioned Verbs, when they follow *possum*,

vōlo, mālo, nōlo, cūpio; incīpio, coepi; dēsīno; vīdeor, existīmor, and the like: as,

*Beātus esso sine virtūte nēmo pōtest, No one can be happy without virtue.*—Cic.

*Cāto bōnus esse quam vīdēri mālēbat, Cato preferred being good to seeming so.*—Sall.

*Miltiades non vīdēbātur posse esse privātus, Miltiades did not seem to be capable of being a mere private citizen.*—Nep.

*Dēsīnant nīmīum esse tīmūdi, Let them cease to be (so excessively fearful.*—Cic.

## CHAPTER XXXVIII.—THE ACCUSATIVE CASE.

### 1. Accusative of the Object.

§ 234. The Accusative denotes the *Direct Object* of an Action.

Transitive Verbs of all kinds, both Active and Deponent, govern the Accusative (see, however, § 84, 1, *Obs.*).

*Deus mundum aedificāvit, God built the world.*—Cic.

*Glōria virtūtem tanquam umbra sēquitur, Glory follows virtue like a shadow.*—Cic.

*Nulla ars imītārī sollertiam nātūrae pōtest, No art can imitate the ingenuity of Nature.*—Cic.

*Obs. 1.* Active Transitive Verbs which govern the Accusative case are capable of becoming Passive, the object of the Active Verb becoming in the Passive the Nominative of the subject, and the subject of the Active Verb becoming in the Passive the Ablative of the Instrument or Agent: if the Agent is a living being, the Preposition *a* or *ab* is prefixed: as, *māgister puerum laudat, The master praises the boy, becomes in the Passive, puer a māgistro laudātur, The boy is praised by the master.*

*Obs. 2.* But the Verbs which govern any other case can be used in the Passive only impersonally: as,

*Invidētur praestanti flōrentique fortūnae, Eminent and flourishing fortune is envied.*—Cic. (Lit., *Envy is felt by men for eminent fortune.*)

*Non parcētur lābōri, Labour shall not be spared.*—Cic. (Lit., *There shall be no sparing for labour.*)

The Dative still indicates the *Object* no less after the Passive than after the Active Verb.

*Obs. 3.* The principal apparent exceptions to the Government of an Accusative by Transitive Verbs will be found at § 291.

§ 235. *Cognate Accusative.*—Intransitive Verbs are sometimes followed by an Accusative of cognate or kindred sense to themselves: as,

*Hae nocte mīrum somniāvi somnium, This night I dreamt a strange dream.*—Plaut.

*Vērissimum jursjūrandum jūrāre, To swear a most true oath.*—Cic.

*Obs.* The Intransitive Verb has in such cases a transitive force: thus, *to dream* a dream = *to have* a dream; *to swear* an oath = *to use* or *utter* an oath. This construction is especially used when an Attributive Adjective is employed, as in examples given.

§ 236. Some other Intransitive Verbs may govern an Accusative by virtue of a transitive sense involved in them. Thus, *sitio, I thirst (for) = I desire eagerly*; *contrēmo, I tremble (at) = I fear*; *horreo, I shudder (at) = I dread*; *fleo, I weep (for) = I lament*; *rideo, I laugh (at) = I ridicule*; *dēpereo, I am dying (for) = I desperately love*: as,

*Sanguinem nostram sitiēbat, He was thirsting for our blood.*—Cic.

*Séquāni Ariovisti crudelitatem horrēbant, The Sequani dreaded the cruelty of Ariovistus.*—Caes.

*Nemo illic vitia ridet, No one there laughs at vice.*—Tac.

*Contrēmēre hastam, To tremble at the lance.*—Virg.

*Obs. 1.* This construction is widely used in the poets and later writers: as, *pallere pontum, to turn pale at (the sight of) the sea* (Hor.); *erubescere jura, to blush at, i.e. to respect rights* (Virg.).

*Obs. 2.* But such Verbs, not being real Transitives, are not often used as Personal Passives (§ 234, *Obs. 1*): thus such forms as *dōleor, horreo*, are never found.

*Rideo, to ridicule, takes a personal passive*: as, *mērito ridēri, to be deservedly laughed at.*—Quint.

§ 237. In like manner Verbs signifying *to taste of* and *to smell of* (to yield a savour, emit an odour) are used as Transitives, and govern an Accusative: as,

*Ōlet unguenta, He smells of perfumes.*—Ter.

*Piscis ipsum mure sāpit, The fish tastes of the very sea.*—Sen.

And in a figurative sense:—

*Ōlet p̄rēgrinum, It has a foreign smell.*—Cic.

*Rēdōlet antiquitatem, It smacks of antiquity.*—Cic.

§ 238. All Intransitive verbs of motion compounded with the Prepositions *circum, per, praeter, trans, super, and subter*, become Transitives, and govern an Accusative: as,

*Tīmōtheus Pēlōponnēsūm circumvēhens Lācōnīam pōpūlātus est, Timotheus sailing round Peloponnesus, laid waste Laconia.*—Nep.

*Hannibal Alpes cum exercitu transiit, Hannibal crossed the Alps with an army.*—Nep.

*Obs.* Such verbs are regarded as real Transitives, and sometimes become Personal Passives, the object of an Active Verb becoming the subject of the Passive (§ 234, *Obs. 1*): as,

*Rhōdānus nonnullis locis vādo transitur, The Rhone is crossed in some places by a ford.*—Caes.

§ 239. *Many* Intransitive verbs of motion compounded with the Prepositions *ad* and *in*, and *some* verbs compounded with *ante*, *con*, *ex*, and *prae*, become Transitives, and govern an Accusative: as,

*Nāves Gēnuam accessērunt*, *The ships reached Genoa.*—Liv.

*Urbem invādunt*, *They fall upon the city.*—Virg.

*Nēmīnem convēni*, *I have met no one.*—Cic.

*Sociētātem coīre*, *To form a partnership.*—Cic.

*Mōdum excēdere*, *To exceed the limit.*—Cic.

*Quantum Galli virtūte cēteros mortāles praestārent*, *How much the Gauls surpassed the rest of mankind in valour.*—Liv.

*Nemo eum in amicitia antecessit*, *no one excelled him in friendship.*—Nep.

Obs. 1. After Verbs compounded with *ex*, the Ablative is more common (see § 306); and after those compounded with *con*, *prae*, *ante*, the Dative (§ 292).

Obs. 2. With many of these verbs the Preposition is very often repeated: as, *accēdo ad*, *invādo in*, *excēdo ex*.

§ 240. Intransitive verbs of rest (as *sēdeo*, *sto*, *sisto*), compounded with *circum*, become Transitives, and govern an Accusative: as,

*Equites Rōmāni sēnātum circumstant*, *Roman knights stand around the senate.*—Cic.

§ 241. These five Impersonal Verbs, *pūdet*, *it shameth*; *taedet*, *it wearieth*; *poenitet*, *it repenteth*; *pīget*, *it grieveth*; and *miseret*, *it pilieth* (*affects with pity*); take an Accusative of the Person *whom the feeling affects*. The object of the feeling is put in the Genitive (see § 282): as

*Mē pīget stultitiae meae*, *I am vexed at my folly.*—Cic.

*Tīmōthei post mortem pōpūlum iūdicii sui poenituit*, *After the death of Timotheus the people repented of their judgment.*

Obs. The Object (or *cause*) of the feeling is sometimes expressed by an Infinitive mood or clause: as,

*Non me vixisse poenitet*, *I repent not having lived.*—Cic.

*Quintus poenitet, quod ānimum tuum offendit*, *Quintus is sorry that he has wounded your feelings.*—Cic.

§ 242. In like manner *dēcet*, *it is becoming*, and *dēdēcet*, *it is unbecoming*, take an Accusative of the Person: but, unlike the above-named Impersonals, they may have an Impersonal Nominative as their subject: as,

*Orātōrem mīnime dēcet irasci*, *It very ill becomes a speaker to lose his temper.*—Cic.

*Trux dēcet ira fēras*, *Savage anger becomes wild-beasts.*—Ov.

*Obs.* In like manner the Impersonals *oportet*, it behoves; *jūvat*, it delights; *lātet*, falls; *fūgit*, praet̄rit, it escapes (notice); take an Accusative of the Person. *Oportet* takes also an Infinitive Mood, but never a Nominative of the subject.

## 2. Double Accusative.

§ 243. Verbs of *teaching* and *concealing* take a double Accusative after them—one of the thing and another of the person: as, *dōceo*. *I teach* (with its compounds); *cēlo*. *I conceal, hide from*: as,

*Quis mūsicam dōcuerit Epāminondam, Who taught Epaminondas music.—Nep.*

*Non cēlavi te sermōnem hōmīnum, I have not kept from you the men's discourse.—Cic.*

*Obs.* 1. The reason of this double Accusative is that we may say, for example, both *dōcui mūsicam, he taught music*; and *dōcui Epāminondam, he taught Epaminondas*; hence blending the two, *musicam docuit Epaminondam*.

*Obs.* 2. *Dōceo, to inform*, takes the Ablative with *de*: as,

*Praemittit ad Boios qui de suo adventu dōceant, He sends forward men to the Boii to inform them of his arrival.—Caes.* (It may also be followed by a relative clause, or by the Accusative and Infinitive.)

*Obs.* 3. *Cēlo, to conceal*, takes the Ablative with *de* in the Passive, and sometimes in the Active: as,

*Est de illo rēnēno cēlata mātēr, The mother was kept in ignorance of that poisoning.—Cic.*

*Obs.* 4. *Accusative after a Passive Verb.* When a Verb of *teaching* is turned into the Passive, the thing taught may still remain in the Accusative: as,

*L. Marcius omnes militiae artes ēdoctus fuērat, Lucius Marcius had been taught all the arts of war.—Liv.*

*Obs.* 5. With verbs of *teaching*, the instrument on which an art is practised is put in the Ablative: as,

*Sōcrātem flidibus dōcuit nōb̄liss̄mus Idicēn, A most distinguished lyrist taught Socrates the lyre (i.e. to play on the lyre).—Cic.*

§ 244. Some verbs of *asking*, *entreating*, and *demanding*, take a double Accusative after them—one of the thing and another of the person: as, *rōgo*, *I ask*; *ōro*, *I entreat*; *posco* (*rēposco*), *I demand*: as,

*Lōgāti Verrem simūlācrum Cērēris rēposcuūt, The envoys demand back from Verres the statue of Ceres.—Cic.*

*Caesar frumentum Aeduos flagitabat, Caesar kept demanding corn of the Aedui.—Caes.*

*Obs.* 1. *Pōto, postūlo*, and *quero* are not used with a double Accusative. *Postūlo* takes the Ablative of the person with *ab* or *de*; *quero* and *pōto* the Ablative of the person with *ex*, *ab*, or *de*.

*Obs.* 2. Verbs of *inquiring* or *asking* often take the Ablative of the thing with *de* (*interrogō, percontor aliquem de aliqua re*). The double Accusa-



tive is most frequently used when the thing is expressed by the neuter of a pronoun or an adjective (comp. § 253) : as,

*Hoc te ōro, I entreat you this; multa me interrōgāvit, He asked me many questions.*

Obs. 3. When a verb of *asking*, &c., is turned into the Passive, the thing may still remain in the Accusative : as,

*Prīmus rōgātus est sententiam, He was first asked for his opinion.—Sall.*

§ 245. *Factitive Accusative*.—Verbs signifying, *to make or appoint, to name, to reckon or esteem*, and the like, take after them a double Accusative—one of the Object and the other of the Predicate to that object : as,

*Ancum Martium rēgem (Fact. Acc.) pōpulus crēavit, The people made Ancus Martius king.—Liv.*

*Cicērōnem ūniversa civitas consulem (Fact. Acc.) dēclārāvit, The whole state declared Cicero consul.—Cic.*

*Rōmulus urbem ex nōmine suo Rōmam (Fact. Acc.) vōcāvit, Romulus called the city Rome from his own name.—Eutr.*

*Contempsit Sicīlos, non duxit (eos) hōmīnes (Fact. Acc.), He despised the Sicilians; he did not take them for human beings.—Cic.*

Obs. The Factitive Accusative becomes a Predicative Nominative after the Passive of the above verbs : see § 232.

§ 246. Some Transitive Verbs compounded with *trans* and *circum*, as *transjicio, transduco, transporto, to carry across*, and *circumduco, to lead around*, take after them a double Accusative : as,

*Āgēsīlāus Hellespontum cōpias trājēcit, Agesilaus carried his troops across the Hellespont.—Nep.*

*Hannībal nōnāginta mīllia pēditum Ibērum trādūxit, Hannibal led ninety thousand foot-soldiers across the Iberus.—Liv.*

*Pompēius Roscillum omnia sua praesidia circumduxit, Pompeius led Roscillus round all his entrenchments.—Caes.*

Obs. 1. In such cases, one Accusative is governed by the Verb, and the other by the Preposition in composition. Thus the first of the above examples might be read, *Agesilaus trans Hellespontum copias jecit.*

Obs. 2. In the Passive one of the two Accusatives may remain : as,

*Māior multitūdo Germānōrum Rhēnum transducitur, A greater multitude of Germans is carried across the Rhine.—Caes.*

Obs. 3. Transitive Verbs compounded with *circum* take more frequently an Accusative and a Dative (see § 292, obs. 4).

### 3. Accusative of Motion towards.

§ 247. Names of Towns and small Islands are used in the Accusative without a Preposition after Verbs signifying *Motion towards*. For examples, see § 259 in the Appendix on the Construction of names of Towns.

§ 248. Similarly the Accusative is used after many Prepositions signifying *motion towards, proximity, or relation to*: as, *ad, in* for *into, inter, prōpē, &c.* See the Chapter on Prepositions.

#### 4. Accusative of Time or Space.

§ 249. Duration of Time and Extent of Space are put in the Accusative, answering to the questions—*How long? How far? How high? How deep? How broad? How thick?* as,

*Quaedam bestiŭlae unum diem vivunt, Some insects live but one day.*—Cic.

*Pēricles quadrāginta annos praefuit Āthēnis, Pericles governed Athens for forty years.*—Cic.

*Pēdem e villā adhuc ēgressi non sūmus, As yet we have not stirred one foot from the country house.*—Cic.

*Campus Mārathon ab Athēnis circiter millia passuum dēcem ābest, The plain (of) Marathon is distant from Athens about ten thousand paces.*—Nep.

*Milites aggērem lātum pēdes trēcentos triginta, altum pēdes octōginta extruxērunt, The soldiers constructed a mound 330 feet broad and 80 feet high.*—Caes.

(Without the Adj. *latus, altus*, the Genitive would have been used: see § 274.)

Obs. 1. Duration of Time is also expressed emphatically by *per*: as,

*Lūdi dēcem per dies facti sunt, The games were celebrated through ten entire days.*—Cic.

Obs. 2. Duration of time is sometimes, but rarely, expressed by the Ablative in the best writers: as,

*Pugnātum est continenter hōris quinque, They fought for five hours incessantly.*—Caes.

Obs. 3. In the same manner in answer to the question, *how old?* the Accusative is used with *nātus, born, so many years*: as,

*Alcibiādes annos circiter quadrāginta nātus diem obiit suprēmum, Alcibiades died when about forty years old.*—Nep.

#### 5. Accusative in Exclamations.

§ 250. The Accusative is used in exclamations, either with or without an Interjection (cf. § 516): as,

*Me caecum, qui haec ante non viderim, My blindness not to have seen this before!*—Cic.

*O vim maximam erroris, O the enormous power of error!*—Cic.

*Eheu mi miserum, O hapless me!*

*Pro deōrum atque hōminum fidem! In the name of gods and men!*—Cic.

*En quattuor aras, Lo, four altars.*—Virg.

Obs. 1. But *en* and *ecce* are quite as frequently found with the Nominative : as,

*Ecce tuæ literæ (sc. sunt) de Varrōne, There is your letter about Varro !*—Cic.

Obs. 2. *Hei* and *vae* are construed with the Dative (*Dativus incommodi*) : as,  
*Vae victis, Woe to the conquered.*—Liv.

*Hei misero mihi, Woe to wretched me.*—Ter.

## 6. Accusative of Closer Definition.

§ 251. The Accusative is used, especially by the Poets, after Verbs, Participles, and Adjectives, to indicate the part of the Subject specially referred to : as,

*Hannibal, adversum fémur graviter ictus, cecidit, Hannibal fell severely wounded in the fore part of the thigh.*—Liv.

*Equus tremat artus, The horse trembles in its limbs.*—Virg.

*Feminae nudaë brachia et lacertos, Women with both the lower and upper part of the arm bare.*—Tac.

*Trajectus pedes, With the feet pierced.*—Virg.

Obs. In prose, the Ablative is more generally used : as,

*Pedibus aeger, Diseased in the feet.*—Cic.

*Capti oculis talpae, Moles maimed in the eyes (i.e. blind).*—Virg.

## 7. Greek Accusative.

§ 252. Sometimes, by a Greek idiom, a Passive Verb is used in a middle sense, and made to govern an Accusative : as, *induor, amictior, I clothe, put on myself ; exuor, I strip off (from myself) ; cingor, accingor, I gird on myself ;* and the like : as,

*Inutile ferrum cingitur, He girds on the bootless steel.*—Virg.

*Androgei galeam induitur, He puts on the helmet of Androgeus.*—Virg.

Obs. On this principle must be explained Horace's,

*Suspensi loculos tabulamque lacerto, With their satchels and tablet swinging at their elbow.* (Suspensi, having fastened to themselves : ἀπρηστημένοι.) But the construction is confined to the poets.

## 8. Other Uses of the Accusative.

§ 253. The Neuters of some Pronouns (*quid, quod, id, hoc, illud, idem, &c.*), and of Adjectives implying number (*unum, multa, pauca, &c.*), are frequently used with verbs which require a different construction in the case of other words : as,

*Idem gloriari, To make the same boast.*—Cic.

*Omnes mulieres eadem student, All women have the same inclinations.*—Ter.

*Id operam do, I strive after this.*—Ter.

*Utrumque laetor, I rejoice at both things.*—Cic.

*Quid ōpus facto sit, What it may be necessary to do.*—Ter. Phor. 5, 1, 35.)

*Discipūlos id ūnum mōneo, I remind pupils of this one thing.*—Cic.

*Saepe non audimus ea, quae ab naturā mōnemur, We often do not listen to those admonitions which we receive from nature.*—Cic.

*Obs. 1.* This Accusative may also be used with the Passive, as in the last example.

*Obs. 2.* The same construction is used even without verbs: as,  
*Id temporis, At that time.*—Cic.

*Hōmo id aetātis, A man of that age.*—Cic.

§ 254. The Accusative is used adverbially in the expressions, *magnam (maximam) partem, for the most part; vicem, on account of, in the manner of; sēcus, sex; cētera, in other respects; nihil, not at all*: as,

*Suēvi maximam partem lacte atque pecōre vivunt, The Suevi for the most part live on milk and cattle.*—Cic.

*Tuam rēem saepe dōleo, I often grieve on your account.*—Cic.

*Humānam vicem, After the manner of men.*—Hor.

*Liberōrum captum virile sēcus ad decem millia capta, Ten thousand free persons of the male sex were taken.*—Liv.

*Vir cētera egregius, A man admirable in other respects.*—Liv.

*Sēnātus nihil sanē intentus, The senate (was) not at all on the alert.*—Sall.

§ 255. On the construction of the Accusative Case and Infinitive Mood, see the Syntax of Verbs (§ 507).

#### APPENDIX ON THE CONSTRUCTION OF THE NAMES OF TOWNS.

§ 256. It has been thought advisable to place together all the rules for the construction of the names of towns and small islands, in answer to the questions *Where? Whither? Whence?*

#### 1. Answer to the Question Where?

§ 257. In answer to the question *Where?* names of towns and small islands are put in the Genitive, if the Substantive be of the First or Second Declension and Singular; in all other cases in the Ablative without a preposition: as,

*Rōmae Cives, Athenis Archontes, Carthagine Suffetes, sive iudices, quidam creantur, At Rome Cives, at Athens Archons, at Carthage Suffetes, or judges, were elected annually.*—Nep.

*Tibi Rōmae bene. When at Rome I am well with Rome.*—Hor.

*Thēba, Argos, Thēbes, At Thebes, Argos, Thēbes.*—Hor.

*Dionysius Corinthi pueros edocuit, Dionysius taught boys at Corinth.*—Liv.

*Obs. 1.* There can be no doubt that these cases were originally *Indefinites*, a case which exists in Sanscrit, with the termination *i* in the singular. The termination *i* for the first *a* in the 1st declension, which was originally as in the town *i* in the 2nd declension, and for such forms as Carthagin*i*,

Lacedaemōni, in the 3rd Declension, which frequently occur in MSS., instead of the Ablative, in answer to the question *Where?* Hence *ruri* rather than *rūre*, in the country. See § 258.

Obs. 2. When the name of a town is qualified by an Adjective, the Ablative is used either with or without the preposition *in*: as,

*In ipsā Alexandria, At Alexandria itself.*—Cic.

Obs. 3. If the Substantive *urbs*, *oppidum* or *civitas*, be added in apposition, it is put in the Ablative usually with *in*: as, *Milites Albae constitērunt, in urbe opportūnā, The soldiers halted at Alba, (in) a suitable city.*—Cic.

§ 258. After the same manner are used the following Substantives. *dōmi*, at home; *hūmi*, on the ground; *rūri*, less frequently *rūre*, in the country; *militiae*, *belli*, in the field: as,

*Vir dōmi non solum sed etiam Rōmae clārus, A man famous not only at home (in his own country) but also at Rome.*—Liv.

*Non eādē dōmi quae militiae fortūna erat plēbi Rōmānae, The Roman commons had not the same good fortune at home as in the field.*—Liv.

*Vir dōmi bellicque fortissimus, A man most valiant at home and in the field.*—Vell.

*Forte evēnit ut rūri (or rūre) essēmus, It so happened that we were in the country.*—Cic.

Obs. *Dōmi* is also used with *meae*, *tuae*, *suae*, *nostrae*, *restrae*, and *alienae*; but if any other Adjective or a Possessive Substantive is used with it, the preposition *in* is more common, as in *illā dōmo*; in *dōmo publicā*; in *dōmo Caesāris*.

## 2. Answer to the Question Whither?

§ 259. In answer to the question *Whither?* names of towns and small islands are put in the Accusative without a preposition: as,

*Cūrius primus ēlēphantos quattuor Rōmam duxit, Curius first brought four elephants to Rome.*—Eutr.

*Pausaniam cum classe commūni Cyprum atque Hellespontum misērunt, They sent Pausanias with the combined fleet to Cyprus and the Hellespont.*—Nep.

Obs. 1. If *urbs* or *oppidum* be added in Apposition, the Preposition *in* must be used: as,

*Consul pervēnit in oppidum Cirtam, The consul arrived in the town of Cirta.*—Sall.

Obs. 2. The poets use the same construction with the names of countries, and Substantives generally: as,

*Itāliam vēnit, To Italy he came.*—Virg.

*Verba rēfers aures non pervēnientia nostras, Words thou repeatest which reach not to our ears.*—Ov.

Obs. 3. Even in prose writers the preposition is frequently omitted with *Aegyptus*, *Chersōnēsus*, and *Hellespontus*. (See the second example.)

§ 260. The Accusatives *dōmum*, *home*; and *rus*, *to the country*, have the same construction as Names of Towns: as,

*Sēmel ēgressi, nunquam dōmum rēvertēre*, Having once gone abroad, they never returned home.—Cic.

*Ego rus ibo, atque ibi manēbo*, I will go into the country and remain there.—Ter.

### 3. Answer to the Question Whence.

§ 261. In answer to the question *Whence?* names of Towns and small Islands are put in the Ablative without a Preposition: as,

*Dionysius Platōnem Athēnis arcessivit*, Dionysius sent for Plato from Athens.—Nep.

*Dēmāritus, Tarquīnii rēgis pāter, Tarquīnics Cōrintho fugit*, Demaratus the father of King Tarquinius fled from Corinth to Tarquini.—Cic.

Similarly *dōmo*, *from home*; *rūre*, *from the country*; are used in the Ablative without a Preposition.

*Obs.* When *urbs* or *oppidum* are used in Apposition or before the name of towns, they follow their ordinary construction and take a Preposition (comp. § 259, *Obs.* 1): as,

*Expulser ex oppīdo Gergoviā*, He is driven out of the town of Gergovia.—Cæsar.

## CHAPTER XXXIX.—THE GENITIVE.

§ 262. The Genitive Case denotes the dependence of a Substantive (or Pronoun) upon another word, which is generally a Substantive or Adjective, but sometimes a Verb.

*Obs.* 1. The Genitive appears originally to have denoted origin, in English *from* or *of*: it can, however, very seldom be translated by *from*, a meaning which is expressed by the Ablative.

*Obs.* 2. The Genitive is also found after the Preposition *cum*: see the Chapter on Prepositions, § 357, 10.

### A. GENITIVE AFTER SUBSTANTIVES.

§ 263. *General Rule*:—The Genitive is used to denote the dependence of any one Substantive upon another: as,

*Bellum Pyrrhi*, The war of or with Pyrrhus.

*Simulatio Amicitiae*, The pretence of friendship.

*Navis auri*, A ship of, i. e. laden with gold.

§ 264. Hence the Genitive depends upon *causā*, *gratiā*, *ergā*, *for the sake of* (&c.), which are Ablatives. The Genitive usually stands before these words: as,

*Völuptātes ōmittuntur mājōrum vōluptātum ādīpiscendārum causā, Pleasures are neglected for the sake of obtaining greater pleasures.—Cic.*

*Dōlōres suscipiuntur mājōrum dōlōrum effūgiendōrum grātiā, Sufferings are submitted to for the sake of avoiding greater sufferings.—Cic.*

*Sī quīd contrā ālias lēges hūjus lēgis ergō factum est, If anything has been done contrary to other laws for the sake of this law.—Cic.*

*Obs. 1. Causā is commonly used, grātiā less frequently, and ergō (Gr. ἐργῶ) rarely, chiefly in law phrases.*

*Obs. 2. Instead of the Genitive of the Personal Pronoun, the Possessive Pronoun is used with causā and grātiā: as, meā causā, for my sake; tuā causā, for thy sake.*

*Obs. 3. In the same way the Genitive depends upon the indeclinable substantive instār, (in) the likeness (of); on the scale of: as,*

*Instār montis ēquus, A horse like a mountain.—Virg.*

*Plātō mīhi ūnus instār est omnium, Plato alone is, in my opinion, worth them all put together.—Cic.*

## 1. Possessive Genitive, or Genitive of the Possessor.

§ 265. The Genitive denotes the *Possessor*, or the person or thing, whereto anything belongs:—

*Grāves Cyclōpum offīcīnæ, The heavy forges of the Cyclops.—Hor.*

*In umbrōsis Hēlicōnis ōris, In the shady regions of Helicon.—Hor.*

§ 266. The Possessive Genitive is frequently used after the verb *sum*, when in English the word *property* (*belonging to*), *duty*, *mark*, *characteristic*, or the like, is expressed:—

*Omnia sunt victōris, All things are the (property of the) conqueror (i. e. belong to the conqueror).—Liv.*

*Mīlitum est dūci pārēre, It is (the duty) of soldiers to obey the general.*

*Nīhīl est tam angustī ānīmī quam āmare divītiās, Nothing is (the characteristic) of so petty a mind as the love of riches.—Cic.*

*Cūjusvis hōmīnis est errāre, It is (the part) of any man to err.—Cic.*

*Obs. 1. The Substantive or Adjective (as officium, munus, proprium) is sometimes expressed: as,*

*Sēnātūs offīcium est cīviltatem consilio iuvāre, It is the business of the senate to aid the state with counsel.—Cic.*

*Obs. 2. This construction is not admissible in the case of the Personal Pronouns: thus we must say, meum est, it is mine or my duty; tuum est, it is thine or thy duty; not mei, tui est.*

*Obs. 3. The words "wife," "son," or "daughter," are sometimes omitted before the Possessive Genitive: as,*

*Verānia Pisōnis, Piso's Verania, that is, Verania the wife of Piso.—Plin.*

*Hasdrūbal Gīsgōnis, Gisco's Hasdrubal, that is, Hasdrubal the son of Gisco.—Liv.*

*Obs. 4. The word "temple" (aedes or templum) is frequently omitted after the preposition ad, and before the Genitive of the name of the deity: as, Ventum erat ad Vestæ, We had come to (the temple) of Vesta.—Hor.*

## 2. Subjective Genitive.

§ 267. The Subjective Genitive denotes the *Subject* of the action expressed in the word on which it depends, and takes the place of the subject of a verb: thus *amor Dei*, the love of God (= *Deus amat nos*): as,

*Catōnis nōbile lētum*, Cato's noble death.—Hor.

*Cura patrum*, Care on the part of senators.—Hor.

*Flūminum lapsūs*, The gliding courses of rivers.—Hor.

Obs. 1. The possessive pronouns are used instead of the Subjective Genitive of the personal pronouns: as, *consulātus meus*, my consulate; *mors tua*, thy death.

Obs. 2. Hence a Genitive may stand in apposition to a possessive pronoun: as,  
*Mē ūnūs pērā respublica salva est*, The republic was saved by my exertions alone.—Cic.

*Hi ad vestram omnium caedem Rōmæ restiterunt*, These remained at Rome with a view to the slaughter of you all [of all of you].—Cic.

The Genitives *unius, ipsius ipsorum* are often so used.

Similarly where the Genitive is that of the Possessor: as,

*Tuum, hōmīnis simplex, pectus vīdīmus*, We have seen your breast (i. e. heart, an artless man as you are).—Cic.

Obs. 3. So the Relative may agree with a Genitive implied in a Possessive Pronoun: as,

*Nestrā caede qui remansissimūs*, With the massacre of such of us as remained.—Cic.

## 3. Objective Genitive.

§ 268. The Objective Genitive denotes the *Object* of the notion expressed in the word on which it depends, and takes the place of the object of a verb: thus *amor Dei*, love towards God (= *nos amamus Deum*). as,

*Fortitudo est dūctrix utriusque contemptio*, Fortitude is the driving force of uirility and heroism.—Cic.

*Ex itinere Siliacensi ad Rēma bellum ortum est*, From the wrong done to the Sabine women war arose.—Liv.

Obs. 1. The Objective Genitive is more frequently used in Latin than the Subjective, and the latter does not occur unless where the context prevents ambiguity: thus *Curio* (Cicero's *Hor.* *Ad.* i. 12. 30) is "care for for Caesar" (objective), while *cū* (*Hor.* *Ep.* i. 14. 1) in the *Examen* given in § 267, it is typically given, must mean "care on the part of the Senators." In case of any real ambiguity a preposition is used instead of the Objective Genitive, especially in denoting a feeling towards any thing: as,

*Odium hōmīnum universum genus*, Hatred against the whole race of men.

Obs. 2. Both the Objective and Subjective Genitive when dependent upon a substantive may be referred to the best Possessive Genitive: and may often be translated by the English Possessive Case. Thus Objective Genitive, however, usually requires some Preposition.



Obs. 3. An Objective and Subjective Genitive are sometimes dependent upon the same substantive: as,

*Pro veteribus Helveticorum injuriis Populi Romani, For old wrongs done by the Helvetii to the Roman people.*—Caes.

Here *Helveticorum* denotes the Subject and *Populi Romani* the Object; and the sentence is equivalent to, *The Helvetii did wrongs to the Roman people.*

Obs. 4. With the Objective Genitive, the Genitive of the personal pronoun, (*mei, tui, sui, nostri, vestri*), and not the possessive pronoun, is used: as,

*Misi filium non solum deprecatorem sui, sed etiam accusatorem mei, He sent his son not only to intercede for himself, but also to accuse me.*—Cic.

*Memoriam nostri quam maxime longam efficere debemus, We ought to make the remembrance of ourselves as lasting as possible.*—Sall.

Obs. 5. The Objective Genitive is also found after *Adjectives* derived from Verbs: see § 276, Obs. 1.

#### 4. Partitive Genitive.

§ 269. The Genitive is used after substantives and words used substantively to denote the whole of which a part is taken: as,

*Modius tritici, A peck of wheat.*—Cic.

*Mille hominum valentium, A thousand of able-bodied men.*—Cic. (Mil. 20.)

§ 270. The Partitive Genitive is most frequently found after the Neuter of Adjectives and Adjective Pronouns denoting *quantity*. These Neuters are then virtually Substantives.

The principal Adjectives and Pronouns so used are these:—*multum. much* (with plus and plurimum); *paulum* or *paullum. a little* (with minus and minimum): *tantum. so much*; *quantum. how much*; *aliquantum. a good deal* (with their diminutives, *tantulum, quantulum, aliquantulum*); also, *hoc. this (amount)*; *id, illud, that (amount)*, *aliquid, some (amount)*; *quicquam, any (amount) soever*: as,

*Multum temporis, Much of time.*—Cic.

*Aliquantum equorum et armorum, A considerable quantity of horses and arms.*—Sall.

*Tantum morae, So little delay.*—Cic.

*Hoc copiarum in Hispanias portatum est, This amount of troops was conveyed into the Spains.*—Liv. 42, 18, extr.

*Num quidnam novi, Is there any news?*—Cic.

*Id temporis. At that time.*—Cic.

To the above add the indeclinable Substantive *nihil* (nil), *nothing, none of*. as, *nihil mali, no kind of evil.*—Cic.

Obs. 1. The Genitive used with these Neuters is not unfrequently an adjective of the Second Declension, used Substantively. See above.

- *Obs. 2.* But Adjectives of the Third Declension cannot be used as Substantives in the Genitive : hence we have *aliquid difficile*, *something difficult* ; *aliquid difficilius*, *something more difficult*.

- *Obs. 3.* Poets and prose-writers, after Cicero, use the Neuters of any Adjectives as Substantives, with a Partitive Genitive dependent on them : as,

*Cuncta terrarum*, *All (of) the world*.—Hor.

*Ardua terrarum*, *The lofty (parts or regions) of the earth*.—Virg.

*Exiguum campi ante castra erat*, *There was a small portion of the plain before the camp*.—Liv.

*Reliquum noctis acq̄ievit*, *He slept the remainder of the night*.—Curt.

Tacitus is fond of this construction.

§ 271. The Partitive Genitive is also found after Adverbs of *Quantity*,\* *Place*, or *Time*, used Substantively : as,

*Satis eloquentiae, sapientiae parum*, *Plenty of eloquence, little enough of wisdom*.—Sall.

*Ubinam gentium* } *Where in the world?*—Cic.  
*Ubi terrarum* }

*Eo miseriarum*, *To such a pitch of wretchedness*.—Sall.

*Postea loci*, *Afterwards*.—Liv.

*Inde loci*, *Thereupon*.—Lucr.

\* These Adverbs are :

<i>satis</i> , enough.		<i>abunde</i> , } abundantly.
<i>parum</i> , too little.		<i>affatim</i> , }

§ 272. The Partitive Genitive is also found after Comparatives and Superlatives : as,

*Māior iuvenum*, *(Thou) elder of the youths*.—Hor.

*Maxime principum*, *Greatest of princes*.—Hor.

*Graecorum oratorum praestantissimi*, *The most eminent of Greek orators*.—Cic.

- Obs.* Instead of the Genitive, the Prepositions *ex*, *de*, and in certain cases *in*, *inter*, are used : as,

*Acerrimus ex omnibus nostris sensibus est sensus videndi*, *The keenest of all our senses is the sense of sight*.—Cic.

*Croesus inter reges opulentissimus*, *Croesus, wealthiest among kings*.—Sen.

§ 273. The Partitive Genitive is also found after some Numerals, and after Pronouns or Adjectives implying a number : as,

*Primi iuvenum*, *First of the youths*.—Virg.

*Consulium alter*, *one of the two consuls*.—Liv.

*Trium minimus*, *The youngest of the three*.—Ov.

- Obs. 1.* The Genitive is often used in English with numerals and adjectives when there is no Partitive meaning, but only an enumeration of the whole. In such cases the Genitive is very seldom used in Latin : thus we say in English, "The veterans, of whom few are surviving," but in Latin "qui pauci supersunt," because these few are all. So also "all of us" is in Latin "nos omnes."

Obs. 2. The use of prepositions *ex*, *inter*, *de* is more frequent after nouns than after adjectives.

*Unus ex his dēcemviris*, One of those *Dēcemvirs*.—Cic.

*De tribus et dēcem fundis tres nobilissimos possidet*, Out of thirteen estates, he holds the three finest.—Cic.

Obs. 3. *Nostrum* and *vestrum* are used as Partitive Genitives, but not *nostra* and *vestra*. see § 359.

## 5. Genitive of Quality.

§ 274. When a Substantive of quality, quantity, or description, has an Adjective joined with it, it may be put in the Genitive or Ablative (see § 318): as,

*Vir priscae ac nimis durae sēvēritātis*, A man of antique and excessively rigorous severity.—Liv.

*Ager quattuor jugerum*, A farm of four acres.—Liv.

*Vir maximi corporis*, A man of very great stature.—Nep.

Obs. 1. The Genitive of Quality denotes a more inherent and abiding quality than the Ablative.

Obs. 2. The Genitive and Ablative can never be used without an Adjective: thus, a man of talent, is *homo ingeniūs* not *homo ingenii*; but a man of great talent, is *homo magni ingenii*.

Obs. 3. It must be particularly noticed that this Genitive of Quality is limited to the connexion of two Substantives: thus we say, *fossa quindēcim pedum*, a ditch of fifteen feet: but when *longus* or *lātus* is added, we must say *fossa quindēcim pedes lāta*: in like manner, *puer dēcem annorum*, a boy of ten years, but *puer decem annos nātus*. See § 249.

## 6. Genitive of Definition.

§ 275. Sometimes a Substantive is used in the Genitive by way of Definition, where we should rather have expected a Substantive in Apposition: as,

*Haec vox cōluptātis*, This word pleasure.—Cic. (Fin. 2, 2, extr.)

## B. GENITIVE AFTER ADJECTIVES.

§ 276. Adjectives signifying capacity; also of desiring, experiencing, remembering, participating, fullness, and their opposites, govern a Genitive of the Object: as,

*Thēmistocles pēritissimos belli nāvālis Athēnienses fecit*, Themistocles made the Athenians the most skilful in naval war.—Nep.

*Omnes immensam bēnēficii odērunt*, All hate the man who is unmindful of kindness.—Cic.

*Ira impotens sui est*, Anger is incapable of governing itself.—Sen.

*Homo particeps est ratiōis et cōgitiōis*, Man is partaker of reason and thought.—Cic.

*Bestiae ratiōis et oratiōis expertes sunt*, Beasts are destitute of reason and speech.—Cic.

*Plenum Bacchi pectus, A bosom (soul) full of Bacchus.*—Hor.  
*Virtutis compos, Possessed of virtue.*—Cic.

The following Adjectives follow the above rule and govern the Genitive:—

1. <i>āvarus,</i>	<i>covetous.</i>	<i>imprudens,</i>	<i>not foreseeing.</i>
<i>aemulus,</i>	<i>jealous.</i>	<i>rudis,</i>	<i>unskilled.</i>
<i>avidus,</i>	<i>greedy.</i>	<i>insolens,</i>	} <i>unaccustomed.</i>
<i>cupidus,</i>	<i>eager.</i>	<i>insolitus,</i>	
<i>studiosus,</i>	<i>fond.</i>	<i>insuetus,</i>	
<i>fastidiosus,</i>	<i>disdainful.</i>	<i>compos,</i>	<i>master of.</i>
<i>invidus,</i>	<i>jealous.</i>	<i>impos,</i>	<i>not master.</i>
<i>timidus,</i>	} <i>fearful.</i>	<i>potens,</i>	<i>powerful.</i>
<i>pavidus,</i>		<i>impotens,</i>	<i>not powerful.</i>
<i>liberalis,</i>	<i>liberal.</i>		
<i>profusus,</i>	<i>lavish.</i>	3. <i>memor,</i>	<i>mindful.</i>
<i>parcus,</i>	<i>stingy.</i>	<i>immemor,</i>	<i>unmindful.</i>
2. <i>peritus,</i>	<i>skilled.</i>	<i>curius,</i>	<i>careful.</i>
<i>imperitus,</i>	<i>unskilled.</i>	<i>incurius,</i>	<i>careless.</i>
<i>consciens,</i>	<i>conscious.</i>	4. <i>particeps,</i>	<i>participating.</i>
<i>insciens,</i>	} <i>ignorant.</i>	<i>consors,</i>	<i>sharing.</i>
<i>nesciens,</i>		<i>exsors,</i>	} <i>not sharing.</i>
<i>praesciens,</i>	<i>foreknowing.</i>	<i>expers,</i>	
<i>gnarus,</i>	<i>knowing.</i>	<i>inops,</i>	<i>weak.</i>
<i>ignarus,</i>	<i>not knowing.</i>	5. <i>plenus,</i>	<i>full.</i>
<i>prudens,</i>	<i>foreseeing.</i>	<i>inanis,</i>	<i>empty.</i>

Verbal Adjectives in *ax* follow the above rule: as, *edax, devouring*; *capax, holding*.

Obs. 1. The Genitive after Adjectives enumerated in 1, 2, 3, and those in *ax*, *ans*, and *ens* (see § 277), is an Objective Genitive: thus, *cupidus sum pecuniae* = *cōpio pecuniam*: comp. § 268. The Genitive after Adjectives enumerated in 4, 5, is a Partitive Genitive. Comp. § 269.

Obs. 2. Those signifying *plenty* or *want* are also used with the Ablative: see § 317, Obs.

Obs. 3. The Genitive is also sometimes found after *Verbs* of plenty or want: see § 317.

Obs. 4. *Rudis* and *prudens* are also used with *in* and the Ablative: as, *prudens in jure civili, skilful in civil law.*—Cic.

Obs. 5. Such Adjectives as *amicus, friendly*; *inimicus, unfriendly*; *fidelis, fidus, faithful*, &c., do not fall under the above rule, but govern the Dative according to § 295.

§ 277. Many Imperfect Participles become Adjectives, and, according to the above rule, govern the Genitive, though as Participles they govern the Case of their Verbs: thus *pātiens (ad) laborum* signifies *capable of enduring hardships*; *pātiens (part.) labores*, (*actually*) *enduring them*: as,

*Epaminondas adeo fuit veritatis diligens, ut ne joco quidem mentiretur. Epaminondas was so careful of truth that he would not tell a lie even in sport.*—Nep.

*Alieni appetens, sui profusus, Covetous of what belonged to others, lavish of his own.*—Sall.

## C. GENITIVE AFTER VERBS.

## 1. Genitive after to Remember or to Forget.

§ 278. Verbs signifying *to remember* or *to forget* usually govern the Genitive (of the Object). as,

Animus mēluit *præteritōrum*, *The mind remembers the past.*—Cic.

Nec unquam obliviscar *illius noctis*, *Nor shall I ever forget that (memorable) night.*—Cic.

Obs. 1. But they govern the Accusative :—

(a) When the *entire object* is represented as retained in the mind or dismissed from it : as,

Rēminisci *pristini temporis æcerbitātem*, *To remember the bitterness of the past.*—Nep.

Tu, C. Caesar, oblivisci nōllis *sc̄les*, nisi *injūrias*, *Thou, Caius Caesar, art wont to forget nothing save injuries.*—Cic.

Hence *memini* invariably governs an Accusative to indicate a contemporary : as,

Cinnam mēmini, vidi Sullam, *I remember Cinna, I saw Sulla.*—Cic.

(b) When the object is a Neuter Pronoun or Adjective : thus, *id*, *ea*, *omnia*, *multa recordāri*, *rēminisci*, &c. ; not *ejus*, *eorum* [but *earum rerum*], &c. (see § 253.)

Obs. 2. Verbs of *reminding* (*moneo*, *admoneo*, *commoneo*, &c.) govern the Accusative of a person and the Genitive of a thing : as,

Catōlina admōnēbat *aliū egestātis*, *aliū cupiditātis suae*, *Catiline reminded one of his destitute circumstances, another of his ruling passion.*—Sali.

But if the thing is a Neuter Pronoun, it likewise is put in the Accusative, so that a verb of *reminding* is thus joined with two Accusatives : as, *illud me admōnes*, *you remind me of that.*

Obs. 3. Verbs of *reminding* are frequently constructed with *de* and the Ablative : as,

De aede Tellūris me admōnes, *You remind me of the temple of Tellus.*—Cic.

Obs. 4. *Recordor* generally governs the Accusative, very rarely the Genitive : as,

Communes belli cāsus recordābantur, *They called to mind the common chances of war.*—Caes.

Obs. 5. The impersonal phrase, "*venit mihi in mentem*," *to think of*, *to recollect*, is also used with the Genitive : as,

Siclet mihi in mentem *venire illius temporis*, *I am wont to call to mind that time.*—Cic. (Fam. 7, 3, *init.*)

But the phrase is also used personally : as,

Non *venit in mentem* pugna apud Rēgillum lacum, *Do you not call to mind the battle at lake Regillus ?*—Liv. (8, 5.)

## 2. Genitive after to Accuse, Condemn, and Convict.

§ 279. The Genitive is used after Verbs of *accusing*, *condemning*, and *acquitting*, to denote the Charge : as,

Accūsātus est *prōditiōis*, *He Miltiades was accused of treason.*—Nep.

Caesar *de* *debellā* *reptundarum* postulāvit, *Caesar impeached Dolabella for extortion.*—Cic.



O virgo, mīsrēre mei, O maiden, have pity on me!—Ov.

Me pīget stultitiæ meæ, I am vexed at my folly.—Cic.

Nunquam suscepti nēgōtīi Atticū pertaesum est, Atticus never tired of a business he had taken in hand.—Nep.

Obs. 1. With the Impersonals mentioned above, the Subject of the feeling is put in the Accusative : see § 241.

Obs. 2. The object of the feeling is also sometimes expressed by an Infinitive Mood or a clause, with *quod*. See § 241, Obs.

Obs. 3. Mīsrōr, and commīsrōr to commiserate, follow the regular usage of transitive Verbs and govern an Accusative.

## 5. Genitive with Interest and Rēfert.

§ 283. The Genitive is used with the Impersonal Verbs *intērest* and *rēfert*, it is of advantage, importance [rarely with the latter], to denote the Person to whom a thing is of importance or benefit. as,

Quid Mīlōnis intērerat interfici Clōdium, What advantage was it to Milo that Clodius should be slain?—Cic.

Rēfert compōsitiōnis, It is of importance for the right arrangement of words.—Quint.

Obs. 1. This construction is not admissible in the case of the Personal Pronouns, the Adjective forms *meā*, *tuā*, *suā*, *nostrā*, *vestrā*, being used instead : as,

Quid *tuā* id rēfert, What matters that to you?—Ter.

*Vestrā* intērest commilitōnes, It is your concern, fellow-soldiers.—Tac.

NOTE.—*Rēfert* probably = *rei fert*, it contributes to the interest ; and with *interest*, *rei* may be understood : in that case the forms *meā*, *tuā*, &c. may perhaps be regarded as datives agreeing with *rei*.

Obs. 2. *Rēfert* is generally used absolutely, very rarely with the Genitive, but less rarely with *meā*, *tuā*, &c.

Obs. 3. The subject of *intērest* (and *rēfert*) is never a Substantive, but is expressed,

(a) By the Infinitive : as,

Intērest omnium rectē facēre, It is the interest of all to act rightly.

(b) By the Accusative and Infinitive : as,

Meā intērest, te valēre, It is of importance to me that you should be in good health.—Cic.

(c) By a secondary clause beginning with *ut*, *nē*, or an interrogative : as, Illud meā magni intērest, tē ut videam, It is of great importance to me that I should see you.—Cic.

Vestrā, commilitōnes, intērest, nē impērātōrem pessīmi faciant, It is of importance to you, fellow-soldiers, that the worst men should not have the making of an emperor.—Tac.

Magni rēfert, quid hic vēlit, It is of great importance what this person wishes.—Caes.

(d) By a neuter pronoun, *hoc*, *illud* (so that the Verbs are not quite impersonal) : as,

Hoc vebementer intērest, This is of prodigious importance to the republic.—Cic.

*Obs.* 4. The degree or measure of importance is expressed :

(a) By the Genitives of value, *magni, parvi, pluris, tanti, quanti* : v. § 231.

(b) By the Adverbs *valdē, vĕhēmēter, magnōpĕrē, māgis, maxīme, &c.*

(c) By Neuter Adjectives, *multum, plus, plūrimum, &c.*

#### D. EXCEPTIONAL USES OF THE GENITIVE.

§ 284. The Genitive is occasionally used after Verbs and Adjectives of Separation or Removal ; whether according to the Greek idiom, or by virtue of the original meaning of the Case (see § 262, *Obs.* 1) : as,

*Dēsine mollium tandem quĕrĕlūrū, Cease at length from unmanly repinings.*—Hor. (Comp. the Greek γόων, κλαυθμοῦ παύεσθαι.)

*Scĕlĕris pŭrus, Pure from guilt.*—Hor. (Gr. καθαρὸς ἀδικίας.)

*Solutus ōpĕrum, Released from toil.*—Hor. (Gr. λελυμένος νόνων.)

§ 285. The Genitive is sometimes used (especially by the poets), in the sense of *with regard to, in reference to, for* : as,

*O te, Bolāne, felicem cĕrebri, O my friend Bolanus, lucky for your cholerick vein*—Hor.

*Nŏtus in trātres ānĭmi pāterni, Renounced for right fatherly affection to his brothers.*—Hor.

(Comp. the Greek ὀλβιος, μάκαρ τῶν τέκνων, etc.)

*Obs.* Note especially the use of *animi* in such phrases as *ānĭmi pendĕre, to be in suspense or anxious in mind* ; *crŭcĭare se ānĭmi, to torture oneself in mind, &c.* But we also find *ānĭmo*, which seems to imply that the form is a Locative : see § 237, *Obs.* 1.)

§ 286. The Locatives *dōmi, at home* ; *millĭtiae, in the field* ; *Rōmae, at Rome* ; *Sāgunti, at Saguntum* ; and the like, are commonly regarded as Genitives : but see § 237, *Obs.* 1.

### CHAPTER XL.—THE DATIVE.

§ 287. The Dative may usually be translated by the Prepositions *to* or *for*, in English. It denotes the *Indirect Object*, as distinguished from the *Direct Object* ; the latter being put in the Accusative (see § 234) : as,

*Aescopō quādam lapīdem impjĕrat, A person had cast a stone at Aescop.*—Phaedr.

*Obs.* 1. Here the *direct object* of the action is the *stone (lapīdem)* which is cast, while the Dative *Aescopō* denotes the *indirect object*, or the person to whom the action has reference.

*Obs.* 2. Such a Dative is often used in Latin where in English the preposition *from* is required : as,

*Adimere aīnī libertātem, to take from a man his freedom.*—Cic.



## A. DATIVE AFTER VERBS.

## 1. Dative of Advantage.

(Dativus Commōdi.)

§ 288. The Dative may be used after any kind of Verb soever, to signify *for, for the good of*: as,

*Domus dōminis aedificātur, non mūribus, A house is built for its owners, not for the mice.—Cic.*

*Non vitæ sed scholæ discimus. We learn not for life but for the school.—Sen. (Epist. ad Lucilium, 106, extr.)*

Obs. 1. When *for* signifies *in defence of, in behalf of*, *pro* must be used. see §§ 557, 8.

Obs. 2. The Dativus Commōdi is also used after Adjectives: see § 298.

Obs. 3. The use of the term Dativus Commōdi is often extended so as to include those cases in which a thing is represented as *happening to or with reference to a person*: as,

*In Antiūti mētentibus cruentas in corbem spicas cecidisse, In the territory of Antium, the ears of corn dropped blood-stained into the basket of the reapers Lit. to them reaping.—Liv. (22, 1.)*

*Lanigēris grēgibus sponte suā lānæ cādunt, From (lit. to) the woolly flocks the wool drops off of its own accord.—Ov. Met. 7, 541.)*

§ 289. Hence some Intransitive verbs, which usually do not govern any case, are constructed with a Dative, to express that the action is done with reference to something or somebody. Thus *vāco, to be free*, signifies with the Dative *to have leisure for a thing, to devote oneself to it*: *nūbo, to cover or veil*, signifies with the Dative, in reference to a woman, *to cover herself or put on the veil for a man*, hence *to marry*; *supplicō, to be a suppliant*, signifies with the Dative *to supplicate, to implore a person*; as,

*Philosophiæ semper vāco, I always find leisure to study philosophy.—Cic.*

*Vēnus nupsit Vulcāno, Venus married Vulcan.—Cic.*

*Cæsāri pro te libentissime supplicābo, I will most cheerfully supplicate Caesar for you.—Cic.*

## 2. Dativus Ethicus.

§ 290. Sometimes the Dative (especially in the case of the Personal Pronouns *mihi, tibi, sibi, nobis, vobis*) is used to signify that the matter spoken of is regarded with interest (*ἵθος*) by some person (Dativus Ethicus): as,

*Quid mihi Celsus agit, How does my friend Celsus?—Hor.*

*Hic Mārius veniet tibi origine parvā, Here shall come your Marius, stock obscure.—Sil.*

Obs. The Dativus Ethicus is a more delicate shade of the Dativus Commōdi.

## 3. Dative after various Verbs.

§ 291. The following verbs, some of them apparently transitive, govern a Dative, which in many cases is the *Dativus Commodi* or *Incommodi*:

1. *To assist*: subvĕnio, succurro, auxiliōr.
2. *To resist, oppose*: rĕsisto, adversor, obnītor, rĕnītor. rĕpugno, obsum, &c.
3. *To favour, study (be devoted to)*: fāveo, indulgeo, stūdeo.
4. *To envy, be jealous of*: invideo, aemūlor (see *Obs.* 4).
5. *To please*: plāceo, arrideo.
6. *To serve, obey, benefit*: pāreo, ōbēdio, obtempĕro, servio, prōsum.
7. *To trust or distrust*: crĕdo, fīdo, confīdo, diffīdo.
8. *To spare, refrain from*: parco, tempĕro.
9. *To advise, persuade*: suādeo, persuādeo.
10. *To flatter*: ādūlor, assentor, blandior.
11. *To cure*: mēdeor, mēdicor.
12. *To pardon*: ignosco.
13. *To congratulate*: grātūlor.
14. *To revile*: mālĕdīco, obtrecto, convīcior.
15. *To be angry*: irascor, succenseo.
16. *To protect*: patrōcīnor.
17. *To command*: impĕro. impĕrīto, praecīpio, and sometimes dōmīnor, mōdĕror, tempĕro

With some others.

Hōmīnes hōmīnībus plūrimum et prōsunt et obsunt, *Men very greatly benefit and harm their fellow-men.*—Cic.

Līber is est existimandus, qui nulli turpītādīni servit, *That man should be deemed a freeman who is in bondage to no disgraceful passion.*—Cic.

Non licet sui commōdi causā nōcĕre alteri, *It is wrong to injure another for one's own advantage.*—Cic.

Dēmōsthĕnes ējus ipsīus artis, cui stūdebāt, prīmam lītĕram non pōtĕrat dicĕre, *Demosthenes could not pronounce the first letter of the very art which he was studying.*—Cic.

Antiōchus se nec impensae, nec lābōri, nec pĕricūlo parsūrum pollicēbātur, *Antiochus promised to spare neither expense, labour, nor peril.*—Liv.

Mēdīci tōto corpōre cūrandō, mīnīmae ētiam parti mēdentur, *Physicians, by treating the whole of the body, cure also the smallest part of it.*—Cic.

Prōbus invīdet nēmīni, *The good man envies no one.*—Cic.

*Epicūrus Phaedōni turpissīme mālēdixit, Epicurus maligned Phaedo very grossly.—Cic.*

*Quis Isocrātī est adversātus impensius (quam Aristōtēles), Who opposed Isocrates more strongly than Aristotle?—Cic.*

*Iis aemulāmur qui ea hābeant quae nos hābēre cūpiāmus, We are jealous of those who have what we want.—Cic.*

*Omnībūs gentībūs ac nātiōnībūs impērāre, To rule over all peoples and nations.—Cic.*

*Mōdērārī ānīmō et ōrātiōnī cum sis irātus, To govern temper and tongue when you are angry.—Cic.*

*Obs. 1. The Passives of these verbs can be used only impersonally : as, mīhi invīdētur, I am envied. See § 234, Obs. 2.*

*Obs. 2. Jūvo, adjūvo, I assist ; dēlecto, oblecto, I delight ; cūro, I take care of, or treat medically ; always govern the Accusative.*

*Obs. 3. Mēdeor, mēdicor, I heal ; and ādūlor, I flatter, have sometimes the Accusative, and sometimes the Dative.*

*Obs. 4. Aemūlor, in sense of to rival, emulate, is always followed by an Accusative :*

*Me Agāmemnōnem aemulārī pūtas, You fancy I am emulating Agamemnon.—Nep.*

*Obs. 5. Invīdeo, I envy, begrudge, may take in addition to a Dative of the Person an Accusative (or in later writers an Ablative) of the thing begrudged : as,*

*Invīdent nōbis māgīstram optīmam, They envy us the best of teachers (Nature).—Cic.*

*Nē spectāculo quīdem proelii nōbis invīdērunt, They (the gods) have not even begrudged us the spectacle of a battle.—Tac. (Ger. 33.)*

*Obs. 6. Jūdeo, rēgo, and gūberno are always followed by the Accusative, and dōmīnor, mōdēror, tempēro, as frequently by the Accusative as by the Dative ; especially when they mean to govern : as,*

*O dīva grātum qui rēgis Antium, O goddess who rulest thy favourite Antium !—Hor.*

*Spērāre nos āmīci jūbent, Our friends bid us hope.—Cic.*

*Qui (Jūpīter) res hōmīnum ac deorum, qui mēre ac terras tempērat, Who governs the affairs of men and gods, who governs sea and land.—Hor.*

*Quum sōlus rempublicam gēreret, orbemque terrārum gūbernāret, When he was carrying on the commonwealth alone, and governing the world.—Cic.*

*Obs. 7. Some verbs have different meanings, according as they govern the Accusative or Dative : as,*

*Haec nobis convēniunt, These things agree with us.*

*Convēnīre aliquem, To have an interview with any one.*

*Mētno, tīmeo te, I fear you.*

\_\_\_\_\_ *tibi, I am apprehensive for you.*

*Consūlo te, I consult you.*

\_\_\_\_\_ *tibi, I consult for your interests.*

\_\_\_\_\_ *in te, I take measures against you.*

*Prospicio, and providēo te, I see you at a distance.*

\_\_\_\_\_ *tibi, I consult for your interests.*

*Cāveo te or a te, I am on my guard against you.*

\_\_\_\_\_ *tibi, I am concerned for your safety.*

*Tempēro, mōdēror aliquid, to regulate, arrange.*

\_\_\_\_\_ *mīhi, irae, &c., to set bounds to, to check, restrain.*

## 4. Dative after Verbs compounded with Prepositions.

## § 292. Verbs compounded with the Prepositions

ad, ante, con, in and inter

ob, post, prae, sub and super

govern a Dative, with reference to which the Preposition retains its original force. In the case of transitive Verbs, this Dative is the Dative of the indirect object, the direct object of the verb being denoted by the Accusative: as,

Tu *mhi* (= in me) terram *in-jice*, *Fling thou earth on me (my corpse)*.—Virg.

*In-cubuit tŕo* (= in tŕum), *She leaned upon her couch*.—Virg.

Quum *prŕpēmōdo mŕia* (= ad muros) *ac-cessisset*, *When he had almost got up to the walls*.—Liv.

*Caesāri* (= ob Caesārem) *vēnienti oc-currit*, *He hastens to meet Caesar on his way*.—Caes.

*Prae-ponens ultima primis* (= prae primis), *Putting the last before the first*.—Hor.

Quum *virtute omnibus* (= prae omnibus) *prae-stārent*, *Whereas they (the Helvetii) surpassed all in valour*.—Caes.

Obs. 1. The preposition, however, is frequently repeated with its case instead of the Dative, especially after compounds of *ad*, *con*, *in*. For instance *commūnīco* is always constructed *aliquid cum aliquo*. *inēsse* in the best writers is constructed with *in*. On the contrary *adjūco*, *assīdeo*, *adsto*, mostly take a Dative. When a Preposition is compounded with a Verb signifying *motion to or from a place*, it usually governs the same Case as *out* of composition.

Obs. 2. *Assuŕfīcio*, *assuesco* are usually constructed with the Ablative, rarely with the Dative: as,

Cum *Lūstānis gēnŕe quōdam pugnæ assuŕfacti*, *Accustomed to a certain kind of fighting with the Lusitani*.—Caes.

Obs. 3. Verbs compounded with *ante* and *prae*, as *antesto*, *antēcēdo*, *antēcollō*, *prae-to*, are usually constructed with the Dative, but sometimes with the Accusative: v. § 239.

Obs. 4. Some compound verbs, especially *aspergo*, *inspergo*, *circundo*, have two constructions, namely, either an Accusative of the thing and a Dative of the person, or an Accusative of the person and an Ablative of the thing: as,

*Circundare brāchia collo*, *To put the arms about any one's neck*.—Ov.

*Oppŕum vallo et fossā circum-dare*, *To surround a town with a camp and moat*.—Cic.

Obs. 5. Some compounds of *a* *ab*, *de*, *e* (*ex*), take a Dative of the indirect object, as *vītam dŕi* *us rēpire*, *to take violently from a man his life*; *lŕepere pellem leōni*, *to rob the lion of his skin*.—Ov.

## 5. Dative after Passive Verbs.

§ 293. The Dative is often used with the *Perfect Tense Passive* to denote the Agent, instead of *a* or *ab* and the Ablative: as,

*Mhi consilium captum est*, *My plan has been formed*.—Cic.

*Cui non sunt auditiæ Demosthēnis vigiliæ, Who is there by whom the night studies of Demosthenes have not been heard of?*—Cic.

*Obs.* The Dative is by the Poets used with *all* tenses of the Passive Verb : as,  
Barbārus hic ego sum quia non intelligor ulli, *Here I am a barbarian, inasmuch as I am understood by none.*—Ov.

Nēque cernitur ulli, *Nor is she seen by any (visible to any).*—Virg.

Carmina quæ scribuntur aquæ potōribus, *Poems that are written by water-drinkers.*—Hor. (But here perhaps *potoribus* is the Ablative : v. § 311, *Obs.*)

§ 294. The Dative is regularly used after the Gerundive Participle with the Verb *esse*, to denote the Agent : as,

Quod scirendum est molliter sapienti, *Which the wise man must bear gently.*—Cic.

Semper Ita vivāmus, ut ratiōnem reddendam (esse) nobis arbitremur, *et us always so live as to believe that we must render up an account.*—Cic.

*Obs.* But the Ablative may be used to prevent ambiguity : see § 536, *Obs.* 3

## 6. Dative after Impersonal Verbs.

§ 295. The Impersonal Verbs *licet*, *it is lawful* ; *libet*, *it pleases* ; *expedit*, *it is expedient*, govern the Dative : as,

Licet nēmīni dūcere exercitum contrā patriam, *It is not lawful for any man to lead an army against his country.*—Cic.

Ei libēbit, quod non licet (ei), *It will please him to do that which is unlawful for him.*—Cic.

*Obs.* After *licet*, &c., we often find a second Dative following the Infinitive Mood *esse* ; as,

Licuit esse Themistōcli otīōso, *Themistocles was at liberty to be inactive.*—Cic.

Illis timīdis et ignāvis licet esse, *It is for them to be timid and cowardly.*—Liv.

## 7. Dative with the Verb Sum.

§ 296. The Verb *sum* with the Dative is used as equivalent to *habeo* : as,

Mihi est injusta nōverca, *I have an unjust stepmother.*—Virg.

Trōja huic lōco nōmen est, *This place has the name Troy.*—Liv.

*Obs.* 1. When, as in the last example, a *name* is specified after the verb *esse* or any similar Verb, it is usually attracted into the Dative also : as,

Scipio cui Africāno cognōmen ex virtūte fuit, *Scipio, who had the surname of Africanus on account of his valour.*—Sall.

In campis, quibus nōmen erat Raudiis, decertāvere, *They fought in the plains which have the name (are called) Raudii.*—Vell.

*Obs.* 2. The following use of the Dative is an idiom borrowed from the Greek :

Ut milītibz labor rōlentībz esset, *That the soldiers might be willing to undertake labour.* (Lit., *That the labour might be to the soldiers as willing persons* : τοῖς στρατιώταις Βουλομένοις εἶναι.)—Tac.

## 8. Double Dative.

§ 297. A Dative of the Person (*Dativus Commodi*, § 288) and a Dative of Purpose or Result are used with Verbs signifying *to be or become; to give, send or come; to impute or reckon, &c.* : as,

*Ampla dñmus saepe fit dñmno dēdēcōri*, *A spacious house often turns to the disgrace of its owner.*—Cic.

*Pausānias rex Lacēdaemōniōrum vēnit Atticis auxilio*, *Pausanias, king of the Lacedemonians, came to the help of the Athenians.*—Xen.

*Nec timuit sibi nē vitio quis vertēret*, *Nor was afraid that some one might impute it to him as a fault.*—Hor.

*Cui bōno fuit*, *For whose advantage was it?*—Cic.

*Obs.* The Dative of result is also used without a Dative of the Person : as,

*Nec eam rem habuit religiōni*, *Nor did he deem that circumstance a religious objection.*—Cic.

*Magno odio esse apud aliquem*, *To be an object of intense hatred with anybody.*—Cic.

## B. DATIVE AFTER ADJECTIVES AND ADVERBS.

§ 298. The Dative (in many cases a *Dativus Commodi*, § 288) is used after the following classes of Adjectives :—

1. *Of Utility* : *ūtilis, commōdus, fructuōsus, &c.*
2. *Of Unprofitableness or injury* : *inūtilis, noxius.*
3. *Of Fitness* : *aptus, accommodātus, idōneus, convēniens, proprius, &c.* (Also often following *ad* and *acc.*)
4. *Of Unfitness* : *incommōdus, inconvēniens.*
5. *Of Acceptableness* : *grātus, jūcundus, cārus.*
6. *Of Displeasure* : *ingrātus, injūcundus.*
7. *Of Friendliness* : *bēnignus, amicus, bēnēvōlus, fidēlis, fidus.*
8. *Of Hostility* : *inimicus, perniciōsus, mālēvōlus, mālignus, mōlestus, irātus, infestus, aliēnus.*
9. *Of Similarity and dissimilarity* : *similis, dissimilis.*
10. *Of Equality and inequality* : *aequālis, inaequālis.*
11. *Of Proximity* : *similis, vicinus, propinquus.*

*Rōmulus multitudīni grātor fuit quam Patribus*, *Romulus was more acceptable to the multitude than to the Fathers.*—Liv.

*Deiotārus fidelis erat Pōpulo Rōmano*, *Deiotarus was faithful to the Roman people.*—Cic.

*Patriae solum omnibus carum est, The soil of our country is dear to all.*—Cic.

*Siculi Ferri inimici infestique sunt, The Sicilians are unfriendly to, and exasperated against Verres.*—Cic.

*Ingratam Veneri pone superbiam, Lay aside your arrogance, displeasing to Venus.*—Hor.

*Numquid iratus es mihi propter has res, You are not angry with me for these things, are you?*—Pl.

*Idque eo facilius credébatur quia simile vero vidébatur, And the thing was the more readily believed, because it seemed like truth.*—Cic.

*Paupertatem divitiis etiam inter homines esse aequalem volumus, We would have poverty on a level with riches even among men.*—Cic.

*Obs. 1.* Some of these Adjectives are used as Substantives, *amicus, inimicus, finitimus, vicinus, propinquus*, &c., and are then constructed with the Genitive.

*Obs. 2.* *Similis* and *dissimilis* are quite as often found with the Genitive.

Mutual likeness, &c., is expressed with *inter* : as,

*Dissimillimi inter se, Very unlike each other.*—Cic.

*Obs. 3.* An Adjective denoting *fitness* or *utility* may take, in addition to the Dative as above, an Accusative of the *purpose* with *ad* : as,

*Multas ad res peritiles (nobis) Xenophontis libri sunt, The works of Xenophon are very useful (to us) for many purposes.*—Cic.

*Obs. 4.* The Adjectives which express *friendliness*, as *benevolus, benivolus*, &c., are often constructed with *erga* or *adversus* ; and those which express *hostility*, as *malignus, malivolus*, with *adversus*, or *in*.

*Obs. 5.* *Alienus*, when it means *unfriendly*, takes a Dative ; when it means *foreign to*, *ab* and Ablative ; less frequently a Genitive ; when it means *unsuitable*, a Dative or *ad* and Accusative.

§ 299. AFTER ADVERBS.—Any Adverb may govern a Dative which corresponds in sense to the Adjectives above described : as,

*Congruenter naturae vivere, To live agreeably to nature.*—Cic.

*Propius Tiberi quam Thermopylis, Nearer the Tiber than Thermopylae.*

*Obs.* But *propius* more frequently takes an Accusative or Preposition (*ab*, &c.)

### C. EXCEPTIONAL USES OF THE DATIVE.

§ 300. In the Poets, the Dative is occasionally, by a Greek idiom, used after a Verb of *fighting* (instead of the Ablative with *cum*) : as,

*Luctantem Icaris fluctibus Africum, The south wind wrestling the Icarian billows.*—Hor.

(Compare the Gr. μάχεσθαι τινι.)

§ 301. The Dative is sometimes used by the Poets to express *motion towards* : as,

*It clamor coelo, The shout rises to heaven.*—Virg.

## CHAPTER XLI.—THE ABLATIVE.

§ 302. The Ablative has two leading significations: it denotes,

(A.) Separation from.

(B.) Various Conditions of an action. as, manner, cause, instrument, time, place, attendant circumstances.

It is usually expressed in English by the help of the Prepositions *from, by, with, in*: as,

*Trōjæ vēnit ab ōris, He came from the coasts of Troy.—Virg.*

*Fāto prōfūgus, An exile by destiny.—Virg.*

*Carthāgo, stūdiis asperrīma belli, Carthage, most fierce in the pursuits of war.—Virg.*

## 1. Ablative of Separation.

§ 303. *From* a Place or Person is put in the Ablative both with and without a Preposition.

§ 304. Names of Towns and small Islands are put in the Ablative without a Preposition, to denote *Motion from*. See § 261.

§ 305. All Prepositions denoting *Motion* or *Absence from*, as *a* or *ab, de, ex, sine*, etc., are construed with the Ablative. See Chapter on Prepositions: § 557.

§ 306. The Ablative of Separation is found with Verbs signifying to *separate, remove, deliver from*; but more frequently, especially in Prose writers, with a Preposition: as,

(A.) *Vērecundum Bacchum sanguineis prōhibēte rixis, Save ye honest Bacchus from blood-stained frays!—Hor.*

*Nūdōsā corpus prōhibēte chiragrā, To save the body from the knotty gout.—Hor.*

*Libērāre aliquem culpā, To free a man from blame.—Cic.*

*Vercingētōrix oppugnātiōne destitit, Vercingetorix abandoned the siege.—Caes.*

(B.) *Ab oppūdis vim hostium prohibent, They ward off the violent attacks of the enemy from their walls.—Caes.*

*Viri boni lapidibus a foro pellēbantur, Good citizens were being pelted from the forum with stones.—Cic.*

*Eum ab omni errātiōne libērāvit, He freed it (the world) from all possibility of going astray.—Cic.* (But *libero* is quite as frequent with the abl. alone.)



Tu Jupiter, hunc a tuis aris arcebis, Thou, O Jove, wilt keep this  
[refuge] from these altars!—Cic.

§ 307. The Ablative is used after some Adjectives denoting *freedom* or *exemption from* (see § 317): as,

*Robustus nimis omni est liber curâ,* The strong mind is free from  
all anxiety.—Cic.

*Pueri iniquo fortune expertes,* Destitute of character as well as  
fortune.—Sall.

Obs. 1. The Preposition *ab* is often used along with the Ablative: as,  
*Liber ab omni sumptu,* Free from all expense.—Cic.

Obs. 2. *Expertes, inânis*, more frequently take a Genitive: *liber, vâcuus*, always  
the Ablative alone, or with a Preposition.

Obs. 3. For the construction of *Allênus*, see § 298, Obs. 5.

§ 308. *opus est*, there is need, like verbs of privation, governs the Ablative: as,

*Auctoritate nobis opus est.* We have need of authority.—Cic.

*Opus est mature facto,* There is need of prompt execution.—Sall.

Obs. 1. But *opus* is also used as an Adjective indeclinable, in the Predi-  
cate: as,

*Themistocles edôrîter, quæ opus erant, röpôriêbal,* Themistocles was  
quick at finding out what was wanted.—Nep.

Obs. 2. The Ablative after *opus est* is perhaps strictly an ablative of the  
instrument = *there is work to be done with something*.

## 2. Ablative of Origin.

§ 309. The Ablative of Origin arises out of the Ablative of separation. It denotes that *from which* anything is made or originates.

§ 310. The Ablative of Origin is found especially after the Participles *nâtus*, born from; *ortus, oriundus*, sprung from; *gêntus*, begotten of: also in the poets with *sâtus, êditus, creâtus, crêtus*, sprung from or begotten of: as,

*Jove nâtus et Maïâ,* Born of Jove and Maia.—Cic.

*Orto Saturno,* O thou offspring of Saturn!—Hor.

*Quo sanguine crêtus,* From what blood (family) sprung.—Virg.

*Albâ oriun lum sacerdotium,* A priesthood that had its origin in Alba.  
—Liv.

Obs. But *oriundus* and likewise *ortus* when it refers to more remote origin,  
are more frequently used with a Preposition: as,

*Hippocrates et Epicydes, nâti Carthâgine, sed oriundi ab Syracûsis,*  
*Hippocrates and Epicydes, natives of Carthage, but having their origin*  
*from Syracuse*.—Liv.

*Belgæ orti sunt a Germânis,* The Belgians are descended from the  
Germans.—Caes.



*suū, to boast of his victory; confidēre nātūrā lōci, to trust in the nature of the ground: as,*

*Dolēto dolēre, correctiōne gaudēre, nos oportet, We ought to grieve at a fault, to rejoice at its correction.—Cic.*

*Nōminibus vētērum glōriantur, They glory in the names of the ancients.—Cic.*

*Obs. 1.* With Transitive Verbs an Ablative of the Cause is for the most part used only in the case of such verbal Substantives as *jussu, mandātu, rogātu, permissu, &c.*: as,

*Adversus Jāsōnem Timōtheus pōpūli jussu bellum gessit, Timotheus carried on war against Jason by command of the people.—Nep.*

In other cases the preposition *propter* with the Accusative, or *causā* with the Genitive, is generally used instead of the Ablative of the Cause.

*Obs. 2.* If the Cause is a state of feeling, the Perfect Participle of some verb signifying “to induce” is generally used with the Ablative of the Instrument: as, *eūpīditātē adductus, commōtus, incītātus, impulsus, &c.*

*Obs. 3.* *Fīdo* and *confīdo* are used with the Dative of a person (see § 291); *dōleo*, usually with the Accusative (see § 236); *glōrior* with the prepositions *de* or *in*: as,

*In virtūte rectē glōriāmur, We rightly glory in virtue.—Cic.*

*De tuis divitiis glōriāris, You boast of your wealth.—Cic.*

§ 314. Adjectives which express a state of the feelings are followed by an Ablative of the Cause: as, *contentus, contented, laetus, rejoicing, sūperbus, proud, frētus, relying on, and, less frequently, maestus, sorrowful, anxius, anxious: as,*

*Frētus diligentiā vestrā, dissēro brēvins, Relying on your attention, I treat the matter) more briefly.—Cic.*

*Paucis contentus, Content with little.—Hor.*

*Phoebe sūperbe līrā, Thou Phoebus, proud of thy lyre.—Tib.*

*Obs.* For dignus, indignus, see § 320.

§ 315. The Deponent Verbs *ūtor, fruor, fungor, vescor, nītor, pōtior*, with their compounds, govern an Ablative: as,

*Sāpiens ratiōne optime ūtitur, The wise man uses reason in the best way.—Cic.*

*Plūrimis mārītīmis rēbus fruimur atque ūtimur, We enjoy and make use of very many maritime productions.—Cic.*

*Āgēsilaus magnā est praedā pōtitus, Agesilaus obtained possession of great spoil.—Nep.*

*Obs. 1.* Most of the above are Instrumental Ablatives: the Deponents having been originally Passives or Reflectives. The Ablative with *pōtior* is perhaps governed by the Comparative implied in it (§ 319).

*Obs. 2.* *Pōtior* sometimes takes the Genitive; especially in the phrase *rērum pōtīri*, to obtain the management of affairs.—Cic.

*Obs. 3.* *Fungor* and *vescor* are sometimes found with the Accusative: as,

*Nēque bōni nēque libēralis functus officiū est vīri, He has acted the part of neither an honest man nor a gentleman.—Ter.*

*Coeptit vesci singūlas, He began to eat them up one by one.—Phaedr.*

§ 316. Verbs of *buying, selling, valuing, exchanging*; and the Adjectives *cārus, dear*, and *vīlis, cheap*, are used with the Ablative of Price: as,

*Lycurgus ēmi singula non pērūniā, sed compensātiōne mercium jussit, Lycurgus directed that everything should be bought, not with money, but by an equivalent of goods.*—Justin.

*Viginti talentis unam orātiōnem Isocrātes vendidit, Isocrates sold a single speech for twenty talents.*—Plin.

*Quod non opus est, asse cārum est, What you don't want is dear at any price* (lit., at an as).—Cic.

*Mutat quadrata rōtundis, He changes square for round.*—Hor. (With *muto*, either of the articles of exchange may be put in the Ablative.)

Obs. 1. The Ablative is used because the Price is the *means* by which a thing is obtained.

Obs. 2. The Ablative of Price is only used when a definite sum is expressed by a Substantive; but an Indefinite Price is expressed by the Genitive of an Adjective of quantity: see § 281. The Ablatives *magno, at a high price*; *permagno, plūrimo, at a very high price*; *nīmio, at too high a price*; *parvo, at a low price*; *minimo, for a very low price*; *nīhilo, for nothing*; are also found with words of *buying, selling, and valuing*, without a Substantive: as,

*Permagno decimas vendidisti, You farmed the dues (tenths) out at a very high rate.*—Cic.

*Non potest parvo res magna constāre, A great thing cannot cost little.*—Sen.

Obs. 3. Sometimes the punishment to which a person is condemned is put in the Ablative, but more frequently in the Genitive: see § 280.

§ 317. Verbs and Adjectives signifying *fulness or want* often govern an Ablative of the means or manner: as,

*Germānia rivis flūminibusque abundat, Germany abounds in streams and rivers.*—Sen.

*Neptunus ventis implēvit vēta sēcundis, Neptune filled the sails with favourable winds.*—Virg.

*Vōluptate virtus saepe cāret, nunquam indiget, Virtue is often without pleasure, never needs* (it).—Sen.

*Cera reſerta notis, A wax tablet full of marks.*—Ov.

Obs. 1. Verbs of *filling* less frequently take a Genitive of that *with which*; as, *implere oſum denariorum, to fill a pot with denaries*, Cic. Fam. 9, 18; Adjectives of *filling* usually take a Genitive § 276. Of Verbs of *want*, *cāreo* takes always an Ablative; *indiget*, usually a transitive; *degeo*, either the Genitive or Ablative. For the construction of Adjectives of *want*, see § 276.

Obs. 2. The Verbs *afficere, instruere, ornare*, &c., come under this rule, and govern an Ablative of the thing: as,

*Praedit affecit pōpūlarem suam, He has enriched his countrymen with booty.*—Plaut.

Obs. 3. *Praeditus, endowed with*, also governs the Ablative: as,

*Mens est praedita motu sempiterno, The mind is endowed with perpetual motion.*—Cic.

#### 4. Ablative of Quality.

§ 318. The Ablative of Quality is used in describing a Person or Thing. Like the *Genitive of Quality* (§ 274), it requires an Adjective to be in agreement with it: as,

Caesar fuisse traditur *excelsâ staturâ, cölöre candido, tērētibus membris*, Caesar is said to have been of tall stature, fair complexion, and well-formed limbs.—Suet.

Obs. For the difference between the *Ablative of Quality* and the *Genitive of Quality*, see § 274, Obs. 1. The Ablative is also generally used of external features, as in the above example.

#### 5. Ablative of Comparison.

§ 319. The Ablative is used after Comparatives instead of *quam* with the Nominative, and also instead of *quam* with the Accusative of the subject in the construction of the Accusative with the Infinitive: as,

Nihil est *otiösâ sēnectute* (= *quam otiosa senectus*) *jucundius*, Nothing is more delightful than an old age of retirement.—Cic.

Tullus Hostilius *Römulo* (= *quam Romulus*) *fuit ferocior*, T. Hostilius was more warlike than Romulus.—Liv.

Scimus *sölem multo majörem esse terrâ* (*quam terram*), We know that the sun is much greater than the earth.—Cic.

Obs. 1. The Ablative, instead of *quam*, with the Object-Accusative, is less frequent, but is found in the best authors: as,

Quem auctörem *locuplētiorē Plätöne* laudare possumus, What weightier authority can we quote than Plato?—Cic.

When the Object-Accusative is a Pronoun, the Ablative is more frequently used instead of *quam*; and this is always the case with the Relative in negative clauses: as,

Pūnicum bellum, *quo* nullum *mājus Römāni* gessere, The Punic war, than which the Romans carried on none greater.—Liv.

Obs. 2. The omission of *quam* with the comparative of an adverb is rare in prose: comp. § 548.

Obs. 3. The Ablative is never used when two Predicates are compared: as,

Miltiades *amicior* (fuit) *omnium libertāti quam* (fuit) *suae dömīnātiōni*, Miltiades was more a friend to the freedom of all, than he was to his own sovereign power.—Nep.

Obs. 4. The use of the Ablatives *spe*, *expectātiōne*, *öpiniōne*, *aequo*, *justo*, *sölito*, after the comparative, is idiomatic, and is equivalent to *quam est*, or *erät*, with the Nominative: as,

*Opiniōne* omnium *majörem eēpi dölörem*, I experienced greater grief than all thought I should (lit. greater than the opinion of all men).—Cic.

§ 320. In like manner *dignus*, *worthy*, and *indignus*, *unworthy*, govern the Ablative: as,

*Virtus imitātiōne*, non *invidiâ*, *digna est*, Virtue is deserving of imitation, not of envy.—Cic.

*Quam multi luce indigni sunt*, How many are unworthy of the light of day!—Sen.

## 6. Ablative of Measure.

§ 321. The Ablative of Measure denotes *by how much* one thing is greater or less than another, and occurs in connexion with Comparative words: as,

*Turres dēnis pēdībus quam mūri altiōres sunt, The towers are higher than the walls by ten feet.—Curt.*

*Q. Pompēius, biennio quam nos major, Quintus Pompeius, who was older than I (Cicero) by two years.—Cic.*

*Nātūra id multo artificiōsius efficit, Nature effects that more ingeniously by far.—Cic.*

*Quo quisque est sollertior et ingēniōsior, hoc docet lābōriōsius, The more (by what degree the more) clever and gifted a man is, with the more labour does he give lessons.—Cic.*

## 7. Ablative of Time.

§ 322. The answer to the question *When?* is expressed by the Ablative without a Preposition: as,

*Plāto ūno et octōgēsimo anno scribens est mortuus, Plato died (while) writing in his eighty-first year.—Cic.*

*Extrēmā puēritiā miles fuit summi impērātōris, In the last part of his boyhood he was the soldier of a very great general.—Cic.*

*Sōlis occāsu, At sunset.—Liv.*

*Sātūni stella triginta fere annis cursum suum conficit, The star of Saturn completes its orbit in about 30 years.—Cic.*

§ 323. When the Substantive denoting Time is without an Attributive, the Preposition *in* is generally used: as,

*Aurigandi arte in ādōlescentiā fuit clārus, He (Nero) was distinguished in his youth for his skill in driving.—Suet.*

*Ter in anno, Thrice in the year.—Cic.*

*Obs.* The following Ablatives are exceptions: *die, by day; nocte, by night* (but also *de die, de nocte*); *vespère s. vespēri, in the evening*, *tempōre, in time, in season* which are used without a Preposition.

§ 324. The answer to the question *Within what time?* is expressed by the Ablative alone, or by the Ablative with the Preposition *in* as,

*Agāmēnnon vix dēcem annis ūnum cēpit urbem, Agamemnon with difficulty in ten years took a single city.—Nep.*

*Sēnātus decrevit, ut legati Jugurthae in diēbus proximis dēcem Italiā decēderent, The Senate decreed that the ambassadors of Jugurtha should depart from Italy within the next ten days.—Nep.*

§ 325. The answer to the question *Huc long before?* or *How long after?* is expressed by the Ablative with *ante* or

post after it. But the Accusative may be used with *ante* or *post* preceding it. If the Preposition is placed between the numeral and the substantive, either the Ablative or Accusative may be used. Thus all the following forms may be used with the same meaning :

*Accusative.*

*ante* or *post* tres annos  
 „ *post* tertium annum  
 tres *ante* or *post* annos  
 tertium *ante* or *post* annum

*Ablative.*

tribus annis *ante* or *post*.  
 tertio anno *ante* or *post*.  
 tribus *ante* or *post* annis  
 tertio *ante* or *post* anno.

When *ante* or *post* stands last, it may govern a proposition depending upon it : as,

*Annis quingentis et decem post Rōmam conditam Līvius fabŭlam ũdedit, Līvius brought forward a drama 510 years after the founding of Rome.—Cic.*

*Obs. 1.* When *ante* or *post* is followed by *quam* and a verb, the following constructions may be used :

Tribus annis *post*, *quam* (or *postquam*) *vēnērat*.  
*Post* tres annos *quam vēnērat*.  
 Tertio anno *post*, *quam* (or *postquam*) *vēnērat*.  
*Post* annum tertium *quam vēnērat*

Or *post* may be omitted :

Tertio anno *quam vēnērat*.

All these expressions signify equally, *Three years after he had come*.

*Obs. 2.* *Abhinc, ago*, is used both with the Accusative and Ablative : as,  
*Abhinc annos quattuordēcim, Fourteen years ago.—Cic.*

*Abhinc trīginta diēbus, Thirty days ago.—Cic.*

## 8. Ablative of Place.

§ 326. The answer to the question *Where?* is put in the Ablative both without and with a Preposition.

§ 327. The construction of the names of Towns and small Islands, in answer to the question *Where?* is explained in § 257.

§ 328. The following Ablatives are used without a Preposition, in answer to the question *Where?* *dextrā, on the right hand*; *laevā, sinistrā, on the left hand*; *terrā mārīque, on sea and land*; *bello, in the field* (comp. § 258): as

*Intōnuīt laerā, It thundered on the left hand.—Virg.*

*Terrā mārīque conquīrēre, To make search by sea and land.—Cic.*

§ 329. The following Substantives, *lōcus, terra, rēgio, via, iter*, with similar words, are used in the Ablative without a Preposition, when some Attributive is attached to them : as,



*Atēnienses lōco idōneo castra fēcērunt, The Athenians formed their camp in a suitable spot.—Nep.*

*Aurēliā viā prōfectus est, He set out by the Aurelian way.—Cic.*

§ 330. Any Substantive, with the Adjective *tōtus*, may be put in the Ablative without a Preposition: as,

*Quis tōto mārī lōcus tūtus fuit, What place was safe throughout all the sea?—Cic.*

*Tōtā Asiā, Throughout all Asia.—Cic.*

*Obs.* So Livy has *mēdio monte*, along the middle of the mountain range (38, 26): but in *mēdio colle*, Caes. (B. G. 1, 24.)

§ 331. In all cases besides the above the Preposition *in* is used in prose: as,

*In Itāliā nullus exercitus (erat), There was no army in Italy.—Sall.*

*In hac sōlitūdine cāreo omnium collōquio, In this solitude I am without the society of anybody.—Cic.*

*Obs.* These restrictions are not observed by the Poets, who use the Ablative freely to denote place: as,

*Silvisque agrisque riisque corpōra foeda jacent, O'er forest, field, and highway, the loathsome bodies lie.—Ov.*

*Mēdius Pollūce et Castōre, Betwixt Pollux and Castor.—Ov. (Am. 2, 16, 13.)*

## 9. Ablative Absolute.

§ 332. When a Substantive or Pronoun, together with a Participle or an Adjective, form a clause by themselves, and are not under the government of, or in agreement with any other word, they are put in the *Ablative Absolute*: as,

*His rēbus cognitis, Caesar ad nāves rēvertitur, Having learnt these things (lit., these things having been learnt), Caesar returns to the fleet.—Caes.*

*Pythāgōras Tarquinio Sūperbo regnante in Itāliam vēnit, Pythagoras came into Italy in the reign of Tarquinius Superbus (lit., Tarquinius Superbus reigning).—Cic.*

*Aliquid salvīs lēgibus agēre, To do a thing without breaking the laws (lit., the laws being safe or unbroken).—Cic.*

*Obs.* 1. The Ablative Absolute may often be explained as the Ablative of Time (§ 322, as in the 1st and 2nd of the above examples: sometimes as the Ablative of Manner § 311, as in the 3rd. It always denotes some condition or attendant circumstance of that which is described in the rest of the sentence as taking place.

*Obs.* 2. As there is no Perfect Participle Active in Latin, except in the case of Deponent Verbs, this Participle in English must in Latin usually be changed into the Passive, and put in the Ablative Absolute agreeing with what was before its own object: as,

*Caesar, exposito exercitu, ad hostes contendit, Caesar, having landed his army, hastens against the enemy.—Caes.*

§ 333. Sometimes a perfect participle passive is put in the Ablative Absolute, where the Substantive is represented by an entire clause: as,



*Nondum comperto, in quam rēgionem vēnisset, It not being yet ascertained into what quarter he had come.*—Liv.

*Excepto quod non simul esses, cētera laetus, This fact excepted that you are not with me, (I am) happy in all beside.*—Hor.

*Obs. 1.* This construction occurs most frequently in the case of the Ablatives *andito, cognito, comperto*, and the like.

*Obs. 2.* Tacitus even uses an Adjective in the same way: as,

*Iuxta pēriculōso, ficta sen vērā prōmēret, It being alike hazardous whether he spoke what was false or true.* (Ann. 1, 6.)

§ 334. The Ablative Absolute is frequently used with one Substantive in Apposition to another without any participle, because the verb *sum* has no Present or Perfect Participle: as,

*Nātus est Augustus, M. Tullio Cicerōne et Antōnio consūlibus, Augustus was born when M. Tullius Cicero and Antonius were consuls.*—Suet.

*Si se invito transire cōnārentur, If they should attempt to cross against his will (lit., he being unwilling).*—Caes.

## CHAPTER XLII.—THE VOCATIVE.

§ 335. The Vocative Case indicates the object spoken to: as,

*Recte te, Cŷre, beātum fērun, With reason, Cyrus, do they proclaim thee happy.*—Cic.

*Et tu, Brūte, And thou too, Brutus!*

*Obs.* Hence the Pronouns of the Third Person, as *sui, hic, ille, iste*, &c., with the Relative, can have no Vocative.

§ 336. The Vocative is often introduced by the Interjection *O*, especially in the Poets: as,

*O lux Dardāniae, O thou light of the land of Troy!*—Virg.

*O dēcus impērii, O thou glory of the empire!*—Lucan.

*Obs.* This use of the Interjection *O* must not be confounded with that explained in § 250: the Vocative is used only in *speaking to or invocation*.

§ 337. A Substantive or other word in Apposition with a Vocative sometimes stands in the Nominative: as,

*Audi tu pōpūlus Albānus, Hear, O thou people of Alba!*—Liv.

*Obs.* Perhaps this apparent Nominative is to be regarded as an old form of the Vocative; for it is found even without Apposition: as,

*Agēdum pontifex publicus pōpūli Rōmāni, praei verba, Go to now, thou national pontiff of the people of Rome, repeat before me the form of words!*—Liv.

## CHAPTER XLIII.—ADJECTIVES.

§ 338. The ordinary rules for the construction of Adjectives are given under the Second Concord (§§ 223-227), and the several Cases of Substantives. The following are of a more special nature.

§ 339. A Masculine Adjective is often used without a Substantive to denote *Persons*; and a Neuter Adjective to denote *Things*: as,

Omnes omnia bona dicere, *All (men) say all kinds of good (things)*.  
Ter.

Parvum parva decet, *Small (things) befit a small (man)*.—Hor.

Obs. 1. But when the termination of the Adjective alone would not be a sufficient guide, the Substantive *homo* or *res* must be expressed: thus, *multorum hominum*, of many persons; *multarum rerum*, of many things. [*Multorum* alone might refer to either persons or things.]

Obs. 2. Adjectives are principally used in this way in the Plural: as, *docti*, learned men; *magna*, great things. But in the Singular a Substantive is usually added: as, *homo doctus*, a learned man; *pulchra res*, a beautiful thing.

§ 340. When two Adjectives are attributives to one Substantive they must be connected by a Conjunction. Thus whereas in English we say, "*Many good men*," the Latin idiom requires *multi et boni viri*, etc.

Obs. 1. But if an Adjective and Substantive together form one single notion, an additional Adjective may be used without a Connective: as,

*Navis oneraria maxima*, A transport of the largest size.—Cic  
*Statuae equestres inauratae*, Gilded equestrian-statues.—Cic.

Obs. 2. The above rule does not apply to numerals or to Adjective Pronouns: thus we may say, *decem boni viri*, *illi boni viri*, *omnes boni viri*.

§ 341. *Adjectives equivalent to Substantives*.—Sometimes an Adjective is used in Latin where the English idiom requires a Substantive. This is the case with *summus*, at the top, the top of; *infimus* or *imus*, at the bottom, the bottom of; *medius*, the middle; *extremus*, last, at the end of; *primus*, first, at the beginning of; *reliquus*, remaining, the remainder of; *dimidiatus*, halved, the half of: as,

*Ad imam quercum*, At the foot of an oak.—Phaedr.

*Unus dimidiatusque mensis*, One month and a half.—Cic.

*Extrema hieme*, At the end of winter.—Cic.

*Reliqua vita*, The rest of life.—Cic.

Obs. But *reliquum* is also found as a Neuter Substantive governing the Genitive: as, *reliquum vitae* (= *reliqua vita*), Liv.

§ 342. The Neuter of an Adjective is often equivalent to an abstract Substantive. Thus, *aequum*, *the equitable*, is equivalent to *aequitas*, *equity*; *honestum*, *the honourable*, to *honestas*, *honour*, *virtue*; and the like: as,

*Omnis honesti justique disciplina*, *The entire training which belongs to honour and justice.*—Quint.

*In jure aut in aequo*, *In law or in equity.*—Cic.

Obs. 1. This is especially the case in such adverbial phrases as *ex aequo*, *in accordance with equity*; *ex (de) improviso*, *unexpectedly*; etc.

Obs. 2. Adjectives in *is, e*, are rarely used in this way except in the Nominative and Accusative. Yet Horace has *miscere utile dulci*, *to mingle the useful with the agreeable* (A. P. 343); and Livy, *pōtior utilis quam honesti cūra*, *the care for expediency took precedence of that of honour* (42, 47).

§ 343. *Adjectives equivalent to Adverbs.*—Adjectives are often used along with Verbs where the English idiom requires an Adverb. This occurs when the word may be regarded as describing the condition of the actor, rather than the manner of the action; also in the case of some Adjectives of time, place, or attitude: as,

*Ego eum a me invitissimus dimisi*, *I parted with him very unwillingly.*—Cic.

*Plūs hōdie bōni imprūdēns fēcī, quam sciens ante hunc diē unquam*, *I have to-day done more good unwittingly, than I ever before did wittingly.*—Ter.

The following Adjectives are some of those most frequently used in the above manner: *invitus*, *unwilling*, *unwillingly*; *laetus*, *joyful*, *joyfully*; *libens* = *libenter*, *gladly*, *with pleasure*; *sciens*, *knowing*, *knowingly*; *imprūdēns*, *unwitting*, *unwittingly*; *impēritus*, *unskilled*, *unskilfully*: also, *mātūtīnus*, *in the morning*; *vespertīnus*, *in the evening*; *dōmestīcus*, *at home*; *prōnus*, *on one's face*; *sūpīnus*, *on one's back*; *sublīmīs*, *aloft*; *mēdius*, *in the midst*.

Obs. Of the above *mātūtīnus*, *vespertīnus*, *dōmestīcus* as = *mānē*, *vespērē*, *dōmī* are of rare occurrence.

§ 344. The neuter (accusative) singular is sometimes used adverbially; especially by the poets: as,

*Dulce ridēre, loqui*, *Sweetly to smile, to speak.*—Hor.

*Pectus turbidum laetatur*, (*My*) *bosom feels a tumultuous joy.*—Hor.

Sometimes the neuter plural is used: as,

*Ācerbā tūens*, *looking fiercely.*—Virg.

Obs. 1. This idiom is occasionally found in prose: as,

*Falsum rēndens vultu*, *Wearing a counterfeit smile on his features.*—Tac.

*Obs.* 2. This use of the neuter accusative is to be explained on the principle of the cognate accusative (see § 280). Thus *dulce ridere* (Gr. ἡδὺ γελάειν) is equivalent to *dulcem risum ridere*; *turbidum laetari*, to *turbidam laetationem laetari*, etc.

§ 345. *Prior*, *primus*, *posterior*, *postrēmus*, are used in agreement with a Substantive, where in English a relative clause with the verb *to be* is required: as,

*Hannibal primus cum exercitu Alpes transiit, Hannibal was the first who crossed the Alps with an army.*

*Hispania postrēma omnium provinciarum perdomita est, Spain was the last of all the provinces which was thoroughly subdued.—Liv*

*Obs.* The use of *prior*, *primus*, and *posterior*, *postrēmus*, must be carefully distinguished from that of the corresponding adverbs *prius*, *primum*, etc. The Adjectives serve to compare a person with *some one else* (in point of time); the Adverbs, to denote the order of the Subject's own action: thus *primus dixit* means, *he was the first who spoke*; *primum dixit*, *he first spoke, and then, etc.*

### Comparatives.

§ 346. When two members of a comparison are united by *quam*, the second member is put in the same case as the first, when the verb or governing word belongs to both: as,

*Neque habet [hærus meus] plus sapientiae quam lapis, Nor has he [my master] any more sense than a stone (has).—Pl.*

*Dæet nobis cariorem esse patriam quam nosmetipsos, Our country ought to be dearer to us than ourselves.—Cic.*

§ 347. But if the first member of a comparison is governed by a word which does not belong to the second, the verb *sum* must be used with the latter, though in English the verb *to be* is frequently omitted: as,

*Hæc verba sunt Varronis, hominis doctioris quam fuit Claudius, These are the words of Varro, a more learned man than Claudius.—Gell.*

*Argentum reddidisti L. Cordio, homini non gratiosiori, quam Cn. Calpurnius est, You restored the silver to L. Cordius, a man not more influential than Cn. Calpurnius.—Cic.*

*Obs.* If the first member of the clause is in the Accusative, the second is frequently put in the same case by attraction: as,

*Ego hominem callidorem vidi neminem quam Phormionem (for, quam Phormio est), I have never seen a cleverer fellow than Phormio.—Ter.*

*Patrem iam placidum reddo quam ovem (= quam ovem est), I make (your) father as quiet as a sheep.—Ter.*

§ 348. The Comparative frequently governs the Ablative, with the omission of *quam*. This is explained under § 319.

§ 349. *Plus* and *amplius*, *more*, and *minus*, *less*, are used with numerals and words of quantity, either with or without *quam*, as indeclinable words, and without influence upon the construction: as,

*Non plus quam quattuor millia effugerunt* (not effugit), *Not more than four thousand escaped.*—Liv.

*Pictores antiqui non sunt usi plus* (not pluribus) *quam quattuor coloribus*, *The ancient painters did not use more than four colours.*—Cic.

*Minus duo millia hominum ex tanto exercitu effugerunt*, *Less than two thousand men escaped out of so great an army.*—Liv.

§ 350. When two Adjectives are compared together, *magis* is either used with the first Adjective, or both Adjectives are in the comparative degree: as,

*Corpora magis quam firma*, *Bodily frames rather big than strong.*—Liv.

*Paulli contio fuit verior quam gratior populo*, *The speech of Paullus was more true than popular.*—Liv.

*Obs.* Tacitus departs from this construction, and uses the positive in the second member of the comparison, or even in both: as,

*Claris majoribus quam vetustis*, *Of a family more distinguished than old.*—Tac. (See § 720.)

§ 351. The Comparative also denotes that the quality exists in a considerable or too high a degree: as,

*Senectus est natura loquacior*, *Old age is naturally somewhat talkative.*—Cic.

*Voluptas, quum major est, omne animi lumen exstinguit*, *Pleasure, when it is too great, extinguishes all light of the mind.*—Cic.

*Obs. 1.* *Too great in proportion to something* is translated by the Comparative and *quam pro*: as,

*Proelium atrocius quam pro numero pugnantium*, *A fiercer battle than one might expect from the number of the combatants.*—Liv.

*Obs. 2.* The same notion in connexion with a Verb is expressed by the Comparative and *quam qui* or *quam ut*: as,

*Majior sum quam cui possit fortuna nocere*, *I am too great for fortune to be able to injure.*—Ov.

*Damna majora sunt quam quae aestimari possint*, *The losses are too great to be able to be estimated.*—Liv.

§ 352. *Atque* and *ac* are sometimes used by the poets instead of *quam* after Comparatives: as,

*Artius atque hedera*, *More closely than ivy.*—Hor.

### Superlatives.

§ 353. To express the highest possible degree, the Superlative of Adjectives and Adverbs is used with *quam*, or in

the case of *maximus* with *quantus* also, either with or without *possum* : as,

*Jugurtha quæ maximas potest vias armat, Jugurtha raises the largest force he can.*—Sall.

*Tanta est ratio una, quanta maxima potest esse morum dissimilitudo.* There is the greatest possible difference in character and in pursuits between them.—Cic.

*Dixisse quam brevissimè, I will speak as briefly as possible.*—Cic.

Obs. We can occasionally find us instead of *quam* without any difference of meaning.

§ 354. The Superlative may be strengthened by the addition of :

1. *Unus* or *unus omnium* : as,

*P. Scævola cum unius nostræ civitatis et ingenuæ et justitæ præconibus unum dicit, I venture to call P. Scævola by far the most distinguished man in our most holy and happy land.*—Cic.

*M. Cato et antiquitate gloriæ et gloria præcipuus, quæ præcipue mirari debet, M. Cato was distinguished above all others both by the antiquity of his family and the glory of his services.*—Nap.

2. *By longè* or *multo* : as,

*Al. Cato omnium ætate æque multo formosissimus fuit, Alcibiades was by far the most handsome of all persons of his age.*—Nap.

§ 355. Comparison may also be made with *quævis* and the Superlative : as,

*Tam sum mitis quævis qui lenissimus, (i. e. est), I am as mild as the gentlest man in the world.*—Cic.

*Tam cum amicis reipublicæ quævis qui carissimus, I am as much a friend to the commonwealth as any man in the world.*—Cic.

§ 356. "All the best," "all the worst," and similar phrases are expressed by *quisque* with the Superlative : as,

*Maximissimos præcipue sapientibus aures iungitur, All the wisest of men direct the most reasonable.—Cic.*

*Atroxissimos præcipue fluvios maxime atrox salubritur, All the deepest rivers flow with the least harm.—Cic.*

(Obs. 1. A similar meaning may be expressed with the comparative ; thus the former of the above sentences might be expressed,

*Quævis ut quisque ut sapientibus, the wisest of all men.*

(Obs. 2. A like sense may be expressed by *quævis . . . tam* with the Superlative ; as,

*Quævis ut fluvius letissimus . . .*

*Fluvius maxime ut letissimus fluvius sapientibus.*

(Obs. 3. In prospectus ut you have seen in your text, might you show all others with fairness to entertain fair sentences.—Ter. (Ad. 3, 4, 58).)

## CHAPTER XLIV.—PRONOUNS.

## 1. The Personal Pronouns. (See § 75.)

§ 357. The Personal Pronouns are not usually expressed when they are the Subjects of personal Verbs. But they must be expressed where emphasis is required: as,

*Ego te laudavi, tu me culpasti, I have praised thee thou hast blamed me.*

*Nos, vos consules desumus, It is we, we the consuls, who are wanting in our duty!—Cic.*

§ 358. The speaker often uses the first Person Plural when he does not wish to intrude his own personality: as,

*Sex libros de republica scripsimus, We (I) wrote six books upon the commonwealth.—Cic.*

*Reliquum est ut de felicitate Pompeii pauca dicimus, It remains for us (me) to say a few words respecting the good fortune of Pompey.—Cic.*

*Obs.* *Noster* is used in the same way instead of *meus*.

§ 359. The plural forms *nostrum*, *vestrum*, must be carefully distinguished from *nostri*, *vestri*. The former alone (being true Plurals) are used as Partitive Genitives, or in connexion with *omnium*. Thus *one of us* is *unus nostrum* (not *unus nostri*); *the wish of you all*, *omnium vestrum* (not *vestri*) *voluntas*.—Cic.

*Obs.* 1. *Nostri*, *vestri*, are not true Plurals, but the Genitives Singular *Noster* of *nostrum*, *vester*, used abstractly. Thus, *mémor nostri* = *mindful of our interest* (i. e. of us).

*Obs.* 2. But *nostri* is used as a Partive when a division of human nature is spoken of: as,

*Nostri mélior pars ánimus est, The better part of us is the soul.—Sen.*

## 2. Reflective Pronouns of the Third Person.

(See § 76.)

§ 360. The Reflective Pronoun *sui*, *sibi*, *se*, with the Possessive Pronoun *suus*, refer to the subject or Nominative case of the sentence: as,

*Nicias tuá mi mémoriá dēlectatur, Nicias is delighted with your recollection of him.—Cic.*

*Bestiis hómīnes úti possunt ad suam útilitatem, Men can make use of animals for their own advantage.—Cic.*

*Obs.* These pronouns also refer to a Noun which is not the Nominative case, provided it be the real subject: as,

*Jam inde ab infātio Faustūlo spes fuerat, rēgiám stirpem apud se éducāri, Faustulus had from the very beginning entertained the hope that the children brought up with him were of royal origin.—Liv.*

*A Cæsāre invitōr, sibi ut sūm légātus, I am invited by Cæsar to become his lieutenant.—Cic.*

§ 361. The Possessive Pronoun *suus* in principal sentences sometimes refers to the Object or to another case, when there is a close connexion between the two words: as,

*Hannibālem sui eīves ē civitāte ējecērunt, His own citizens drove Hannibal out of the state.*—Cic.

*Cātilīna admōnēbat ālium ēgestātis, ālium cūpīditātis suae, Catiline reminded one of his poverty, another of his (ruling) passion.*—Sall.

*Sua cūjusque ānimantis nātūra est, Every living creature has its own nature.*—Cic.

§ 362. In subordinate propositions, *sui*, *sibi*, *se*, and *suus* may refer, not only to the subject of that proposition, but also to the subject of the principal proposition, especially when that proposition expresses the thoughts or wishes of the previous subject: as,

*(Prōcūlus) dixisse fertur, a se vīsum esse Rōmūlum, Proculus is reported to have said that Romulus had been seen by him.*—Cic.

*Ariovistus respondet, si quid Caesar a se vēlit, illum ad se vēnire ōportēre, Ariovistus replies that, if Caesar wishes anything of him (Ariovistus), he ought to come to him (Ariovistus).*—Caes.

*Obs. Inter se* is used to denote reciprocity: as,

*Vēri āmīci inter se dīligent, True friends will love one another.*—Cic.

### 3. Possessive Pronouns. (See § 77.)

§ 363. The Possessive Pronouns are frequently omitted in Latin, when they are not emphatic, and can be easily supplied from the context; as,

*Apud mātrem recte est, All is well with (your) mother.*—Cic. ad Att.

*De frātre confido ita esse ut semper vōlui, As for (my) brother, I feel confident that all is as I desired.*—ib.

*Obs. 1.* The Possessive Pronouns often denote something *proper* or *favourable* to: as, *suo loco, suo tempore, at a favourable place or time.*

*Obs. 2.* On the use of the Possessive Pronoun instead of the Genitive of the Personal Pronoun, as, *nulla tua epistola, no letter from you,* see § 267, *Obs. 1.*

### 4. Demonstrative Pronouns. (See § 78.)

§ 364. *Hic* is the Demonstrative Pronoun of the First Person, and denotes *this near me*. Hence it may frequently be translated by *present* or some similar word: as,

*Ōpus vel in hac magnificentiā urbis conspiciendum, A work worthy of being seen even in the present magnificence of the city.*—Liv.

*Qui haec vitāpērāri vōlunt, Those who wish the present state of things to be blamed.*—Cic.

*Sex. Stōla, jūdex hic noster, Sextus Stola, who sits here as our judge.*—Cic.



§ 365. *Ille* is the Demonstrative Pronoun of the Third Person, and denotes *that near him or yonder*. Hence it is used to denote something at a distance, which is well known or celebrated: as,

*Ex suo regno sic Mithridates profugit, ut ex eodem Ponto Mædæa illa quondam profugisse dicitur, Mithridates fled from his kingdom just as the famous Medea fled once upon a time from the same Pontus.*—Cic.

§ 366. When *hic* and *ille* are used together, referring to two persons or things mentioned before, *hic* refers to the nearer, *ille* to the more remote: as,

Caesar beneficiis atque munificentia magnus habebatur, integritate vite Cato. *Ille* mansuetudine et misericordia clarus factus, *huic* severitas dignitatem addiderat, *Caesar* was deemed great for his generosity and munificence, *Cato* for the spotlessness of his life. The former had gained renown by his gentleness and clemency: on the latter, severity had conferred distinction.—Sall.

*Obs.* *Hic* sometimes refers to that which is nearest in the mind of the speaker, though more distant in the order of words: as,

Cave Catoni anteponas ne (Socratem) quidem .... *hujus* enim facta, *illius* dicta laudantur, *Beware of preferring to Cato even Socrates, for while it is the deeds of the former (Cato), it is the words of the latter (Socrates) that receive praise.*—Cic.

Melior tutiorque est certa pax quam sperata victoria, hæc (pax) in tua, illa in deorum potestate est, *Sure peace is better and safer than anticipated victory: the former is in your own control, the latter in the control of the gods.*—Liv.

§ 367. *Hic* and *ille* are both used to denote *the following*, or something to be mentioned; but *hic* refers to something present, *ille* to something new or different from the previous subject: as,

Unum hoc definitio, esse necessitatem virtutis, *This one thing I could lay down, that there exists a necessity for virtue.*—Cic.

Illud in his rebus vereor, ne forte rearis ...., *There is one thing (however) I fear, in connexion with these matters (namely) that you should perchance suppose, &c.*—Lucr.

§ 368. *Iste* is the Demonstrative Pronoun of the Second Person, and denotes *that near you or that of yours*: as,

De istis rebus exspecto tuas litteras, *Concerning those things (where you are) I am expecting your letters.*—Cic.

Ista oratio, *That speech (which you make).*—Cic.

§ 369. *Iste* often has a contemptuous meaning, especially in addressing an opponent: as,

*Iste* vir optimus, *That excellent man of yours (ironically).*—Cic.

*Obs.* The distinction in meaning between *hic*, *ille*, *iste* is found in the adverbs derived from them.

## 5. Determinative Pronouns. (See § 79.)

§ 370. *Is* refers to some person or thing determined by the context: as,

*P. Asinius Asellus mortuus est C. Sacerdote praetore. Is quum haberet unicam filiam, eam bonis suis heredem instituit. P. Asinius Asellus died in the praetorship of C. Sacerdos. Since he had an only daughter, he appointed her heir to his property.—Cic.*

*Obs.* Hence it may sometimes be rendered *the said*, as in the above example.

§ 371. The Accusative and Dative of *is* are frequently omitted, when they would be in the same case and refer to the same object as in the previous clause: as,

*(Multos) illustravit fortuna dum vexat (sc. eos), Many Fortune has made famous while persecuting them.—Sen.*

*N non modo non invidetur illi aetati, vñrum etiam favetur sc. ei, We not only do not envy that time of life, but we even favour it.—Cic.*

*Obs.* Sometimes the pronoun is omitted, even when it would be in a different case: as,

*Huic meae voluntati ut faveas adiutorque (sc. ejus) sis, That you would favour this my intention and be the furtherer (of it.)—Cic. (Fam. 15, 4).*

§ 372. *Is* or its strengthened form *idem* is the regular attendant of the Relative *qui*: as,

*Bestiae in quo loco natae sunt ex eo se non commovent, Beasts do not move from the region in which they were born.—Cic.*

*Eadem utilitatis quae honestatis est regula, The rule of expediency is the same as that of honour.—Cic.*

§ 373. *Is* and *idem* are emphatic, if placed after the relative clause: as,

*Quod virtute effici debet, id tentatur pecuniā, What ought to be done by worth, the same is attempted by means of money.—Cic.*

*Qui multa loquuntur idem multa mentiantur, Those who talk much, (the same,) tell many falsehoods.*

§ 374. *Et is* (isque, atque *is*, et *is* quidem) or *nec is*. make the preceding substantive more emphatic, and define it more particularly: as,

*Habet homo memoriam et eam infinitam rerum innumerablem, The man has a recollection, and that an unbounded one, of innumerable subjects.—Cic.*

*Epicurus unā in domo et eā quidem angustā tenuit amicorum greges, Epicurus in one house, and that a small one, entertained troops of friends.—Cic.*

*Uno atque eo facili proelio caesi hostes, The enemy were cut to pieces in a single engagement, and that a slight one.—Liv.*

§ 375. *Idem* may often be translated by *also* or *on the other hand*, when it denotes similarity or opposition in reference to a person or thing already mentioned: as,

*Thorius utēbātur eo cibo, qui et suāvissimus esset et ūlem facillimus ad concōquendum, Thorius used such food as was at once most palatable and also easiest of digestion.*—Cic.

*Nihil ūtile, quod non ūdem hōnestum, (There is) nothing expedient which is not also honourable.*—Cic.

*Inventi multi sunt, qui vitam prōfundere pro patriā pārāti essent, ūdem glōriæ jaetūrā ne minimam quidem facere vellent, There have been found many who were prepared to pour out life for their country, and at the same time would not make the very least sacrifice of glory (on her behalf).*—Cic.

§ 376. *Ipse* gives emphasis to the word with which it agrees, and may often be translated by *very*, *just*, or *exactly*: as,

*Quaeram ex ipsā, I will enquire of the woman herself.*—Cic.

*Accipio quod dant; mihi enim sātis est, ipsis non sātis, I accept what they give: for it is plenty for me though not for themselves.*—Cic.

*Ibi mihi Tulliola mea fuit praesto, nātāli suo ipso die, There met me my daughter Tullia: just on her very birthday.*—Cic.

*Crassus triennio ipso minor erat quam Antōnius, Crassus was younger than Antony by exactly three years.*—Cic.

§ 377. *Ipse*, when joined to a personal pronoun, agrees with the Subject or the Object, according as either one or the other is more emphatic. Thus “*me ipse laudo*,” *I (but not another person) praise myself*; but “*me ipsum laudo*,” *I praise myself (but not another person)*: as,

*Non ēgeo mēdicinā [i. e. ut alii me consolentur]; me ipse consōlor, I do not require any medicine; I comfort myself.*—Cic.

*Drusus se ipse intērēmit, Drusus slew himself [i. e. others did not slay him].*—Vell.

*Frātre suum dein seipsum interfēcit, He slew his brother and afterwards himself.*—Tac. (See also § 617.)

## 6. Relative and Correlative Pronouns. (See § 80.)

§ 378. The chief rules for the agreement of the Relative and its antecedent are given in §§ 223–230.

§ 379. *Correlation.*—The following is a list of the principal Relative Pronouns, with their respective correlatives or regular antecedents, and their corresponding Adverbs:

RELATIVES.	CORRELATIVES.
qui	is, idem
quālis	tālis
quantus	tantus
quot (indecl.)	tot (indecl.)

## ADVERBS.

ut  
quāliter  
quantōpère  
quōties (-ens)

ita  
tāliter (rare)  
tantōpère  
tōties (-ens)

Quāles . . . princīpes, (tāles) . . . cīves, *Like rulers, like people.*—Cic.

Tantas ōpes quantas nunc hābet, non hābēret, *He would not be in possession of such wealth as he now possesses.*—Cic.

Quōtiescunque dico, tōties mihi vīdeor in iūdicium vēnīre, *As often as I speak, so often do I seem to stand my trial.*—Cic.

Obs. 1. For a complete list of the Relative Adjectives, see § 83, and of the Relative Adverbs, § 133.

Obs. 2. After tālis, tantus, tot, and the corresponding Adverbs, the Relatives quālis, quantus, etc., are often left to be understood: as,

Quaeso tam angustam tālis vir (sc. quālis tu es) pōnis dōmum, *Frythee being such a man (as thou art), buildest thou so small a house?*—Phaedr.

Conservāre urbes tantas atque tāles (sc. quāles eae sunt), *To preserve cities so great and so remarkable (as those).*—Cic.

Similarly the correlative is frequently left to be understood in the relative.

Obs. 3. It must not be supposed that the Relative qui is regularly preceded by is or idem: but these pronouns are used when such a determinative antecedent is necessary, and not hic, ille, or iste. When the last-named Pronouns occur as Antecedents, they retain their proper demonstrative force: as,

Ille fulgor qui dīcitur Jōvis, *Yonder splendour which is called (that of) Jupiter.*—Cic. (Rep. 6, 17.)

§ 380. *Special constructions of the Relative.*—Instead of the full construction is . . . qui, the Relative is often made to agree, as if attributively, with the Substantive to be defined: as,

Quae cūpīditūtes a natūrā prōficiuntur, facīle explentur sine ullā injuriā, *Such (=eae cupiditates quae) passions as proceed from nature, are easily gratified without any wrong-doing.*—Cic.

(So Horace, Sat. I. 1, *init.*)

Obs. Virgil's urbem quam statuo vestra est (Aen. I. 573), for urbs quam, &c., is an irregular extension of this usage.

§ 381. When in English a Relative sentence defines and limits the extent of a Superlative in agreement with the antecedent, the Superlative is in Latin inserted in the Relative clause: as,

Thēmistōcles noctu do servis suis [eum] quem hābuit fidēlissimū, ad Xerxem misit, *Themistocles sent the most faithful slave whom he possessed, by night to Xerxes.*—Nep.

Obs. Horace has a construction the reverse of this: quis non mālārū quas amor cūras habet obliviscitur? = mālārū curarū quas amor habet. (Epid. 2, 37.)

§ 382. The Relative Adjectives quālis, quantus, are capable of being governed (like the simple Relative) by a Verb Substantive or Adjective in their own clause: as,

Quum tālis esset quālem te esse vīdeo, *Since he was such a man as I see you to be.*—Cic.

Nullam unquam vīdi tantam (contionem), quanta nunc vestra est, *I never saw so large a meeting as yours now is.*—Cic.

Obs. Tālis, tantus are often followed by the Subjunctive with *ut*.

## 7. Indefinitive Pronouns. (See § 82.)

§ 383. *Aliquis*, *some one*, is more definite than *quis*. *Āliquis* often stands by itself, while *quis* is an enclitic, used with relative clauses and after the conjunctions *si*, *nisi*, *nē*, and *num* : as,

Grāvis āliquis cūsus, *Some severe calamity.*—Cic.

Non tua ulla culpa est, si te āliqui timuērunt, *It is no fault of yours if some persons have feared you.*—Cic.

Illis prōmissis standum non est, quae coactus quis mētū prōmisērit, *One is not bound by those promises which one has made under compulsion of fear.*—Cic.

Si quis quid reddit, *If one repays anything.*—Ter.

Divitiācus Caesārem obsecrāvit, ne quid grāvius in frātre stātuēret, *Divitiacus besought Caesar, not to resolve on anything too severe against his brother.*—Caes.

§ 384. *Quispiam* is similar to *quis*, but is capable of taking a more independent and emphatic position ; as,

Quid, si hoc vōluit quispiam Deus? *What if some deity hath willed this?*—Ter. (See also Cic. de Sen. 3, 8.)

Obs. Hence it is not always possible to distinguish between the use of *quispiam* and *aliquis*.

§ 385. *Quīdam*, *a certain one*, denotes a person or thing of which no further definition is considered necessary : as,

Quīdam ex advōcātis, *One of the friends called in.*—Cic.

Hābitant hic quaedam mūlīercūlae, *There dwell here certain young women.*—Ter.

Obs. *Quīdam* and *quāsi quīdam* are often used to soften an expression : as,

Ex tuis littēris cognōvi praepostēram quandam festinātiōnem tuam, *I learnt from your letters your ill-timed haste—so to call it.*—Cic.

Non sunt isti audiendi, qui virtūtem dūram et quāsi ferream quandam vōlunt, *Those are not to be heeded who will have a hard and, so to speak, iron virtue.*—Cic.

§ 386. The substantive *quisquam* and the adjective *ullus*, *any one whatever*, are used in negative propositions, in questions with the force of a negation, and with *sine* : as,

Iustitia nunquam nocet cuiquam, qui eam hābet, *Justice never harms any one who possesses it.*—Cic.

Sine sociis nemo quidquam tāle cōnātur, *No one attempts anything of the sort without associates.*—Cic.

Sine virtūte necque amicitiam neque ullam rem expetendam consequi possumus, *Without virtue we cannot attain either to friendship or to any desirable object.*—Cic.

Quid est, quod quisquam dignum Pompēio afferre possit? *What is there that any one can advance worthy of Pompey?*—Cic.

Obs. In Plautus and Terence *omnis* is sometimes used, instead of *ullus*, with *sine* : as,

Sine omni periculo, *Without any danger.*—Ter.

§ 387. *Quisquam* and *ullus* are also used with emphasis after comparatives and conditional and relative propositions. as,

Tetrior hic tyrannus Syracusanus fuit quam *quisquam* superiorum, *This tyrant of Syracuse was more bloodthirsty than any one of his predecessors.*—Cic.

Si tempus est *ullum* jure homines necandi, certē illud est justum, quum vi vis illata defenditur, *If there be any time for justly putting men to death, certainly that is the just time when violence offered is repelled by violence.*—Cic.

Quamdiu *quisquam* erit, qui te defendere audeat, vires, *As long as there shall be a single man who will venture to defend you, you shall live.*—Cic.

Obs. The two rules above mentioned apply also to *unquam* and *usquam* : as,

Bellum maxime memorabile omnium, quae *unquam* gesta sunt, *The most memorable of all wars that have ever been waged.*—Liv.

§ 388. *Quisque* denotes *each one by himself* (distributively), *every single one*. It often appears in the strengthened form *unusquisque* (or as two words) : as,

Ponite ante oculos unumquemque regum, *Set before your eyes each one of the kings.*—Cic.

Obs. 1. When used with *se*, *suus*, *quisque* usually stands immediately after those pronouns : as,

Sibi *quisque* maxime consulit, *Everybody consults chiefly his own interests.*—Cic.

Obs. 2. In relative sentences *quisque* stands immediately after the relative, as an enclitic : as,

Quam *quisque* norit artem, in hac se exerceat, *Let each practise himself in the art which he is acquainted with.*—Cic.

§ 389. *Quisque* is also used with the Comparative and Superlative. See examples under § 356.

§ 390. *Alius*, when repeated signifies *one . . . another* ; alter, when repeated, signifies *the one . . . the other* (being used of only two persons or things) : as,

Proferēbant alii purpuram, tus alii, gemmas alii, *They brought forward some purple, others incense, others precious stones.*—Cic.

Alter exercitum perdidit, alter vendidit, *The one has lost an army, the other sold one.*—Cic.

## CHAPTER XLV.—THE VERB: INDICATIVE MOOD.

§ 391. The Indicative Mood is used,

(A.) To state a proposition; or, Predicatively.

(B.) To ask a question; or Interrogatively.

*Obs.* On the use of the Indicative Mood in Hypothetical sentences, see § 424.

(A.) THE INDICATIVE MOOD USED PREDICATIVELY.

§ 392. *Present Tense*.—(1.) The Present Tense is used both of that which is now taking place, and of that which is generally true: as,

*Dextrā laevāque duo māria claudunt (nos), On the right and on the left two seas shut us in.*—Liv. (Hannibal to his soldiers.)

*Vōluptas sensibus nostris blanditur, Pleasure wins upon our senses.*  
—Cic. (General statement.)

*Obs.* With *jam pridem*, *jam dūdum*, the present tense has the force of a present perfect: as, *jam pridem cūpio, I have long desired* (Cic.): so, *jam dūdum flēbam, I had been for some time weeping* (Ov.) In poetry and in later writers, they are also used with the perfect tenses.

§ 393. The Present Tense is often used (for a past) in narrative for the sake of greater vividness, and is hence called the *Historical Present*: as,

*Dum haec gēruntur, Cassivellaunus nuntios mittit, While these events are going on, Cassivellaunus sends messengers.*—Caes.

*Obs.* 1. This mode of speech, in English, found only in quasi-Dramatic passages, is in Latin very frequent.

*Obs.* 2. The Present is almost always used with *dum*, though the rest of the sentence may be in a *Past* tense: as,

*Dum haec pārantur, Saguntum jam oppugnābātur, While these preparations were (Lit., are) making, Saguntum was already being assaulted.*  
—Liv.

But when *dum* signifies *as long as*, it may take a *Past* or *Future*: as,  
*Hoc feci dum licuit, I did this as long as I was permitted.*—Cic.

§ 394. *Past-Imperfect Tense*.—The *Past-Imperfect Tense* is used of that which was going on at the time spoken of: as,

*Ānus subtēmen nēbat: praeterea ūna ancillūla erat; ea terēbat, An old woman was spinning a woof; there was only a little maid besides: the girl (herself) was weaving.*—Ter.

*Obs.* For the use of this tense with *jam pridem*, etc., see § 392, *Obs.*

§ 395. The *Past-Imperfect* is often used of what *was wont* to be done: as,

*Archytas nullam cāpītālīorem pestem quam vōluptātem corpōris dicēbat hōminibus ā nātūrā dātā, Archytas used to say that no more fatal scourge had been brought upon men by Nature than bodily pleasure.*—Cic.

Ut Rōmæ consules, sic Carthagine quæstannis annui bini reges creabantur. *As at Rome two consuls, so at Carthage two kings were annually appointed*—Nep.

§ 392. The Past Imperfect is also used to signify that something was attempted to be done—as,

Cato pro lege quæ abroganda erat discessit, Cato thus spoke in defence of the law which it was purposed to abrogate.—Liv.

Gladius in pectus intulit, &c., He was just plunging his sword into his breast (and would have done so had he, &c.)—Liv.

Antiochus filiam suam in matrimonium mihi dedit, Antiochus offered to give me his daughter to marriage.—Liv.

§ 397. The Past-Imperfect of the Verb *sum* is sometimes used in the sense of the Past Indefinite or *Aorist*: as,

Crimen nullum erat: res publica. Verres remus exsepérat, There was no crime; the matter was already adjudged: Verres had removed the cash.—Cic.

Homo erat sumus, The man was a Samian.—Cic.

Crimen omnium Græcorum, in quo dardaniæ res Atrocinum, The criminal plot of Greece, in which the ships belonged to the Atrocians.—Nep.

Obs. 1. But the Perfect or Past-Indefinite is preferred when a thing is simply spoken of as an historical fact, not viewed as continuing—as,

Pater tuus Novus generosus fuit, His father Novus was of noble birth.—Nep.

Obs. 2. The same remarks apply to the Past-Imperf. of *parum*.

§ 398. The Past Imperfect is often used in epistolary correspondence, of that which is present to the writer, but will appear as past to the reader, of the letter (compare § 404): as,

Ita post meum prætorium affluenter fuerit, et quod ad te scriberem tibi commendat, Ad the man that is brought from your quarter is so unreluctant, that I cannot tell what to write.—Cic. Ep.

Obs. But the Present is used, as, *fructus*, and *receptus* and other a thing is meant generally and without reference to the precise time of writing—as,

Nos hoc volumus scire, I am enquiring good health have.—Cic. Ep.  
Sed Marci Ciceronis virtus, quoniam illi de patre est, prout, so good—Cic. Ep.

Espero omnino commodum, quoniam ut puerum, qui videtur, I hope you will understand him better, directly if he is very well.—Cic. Ep.

§ 399. Future Tense.—The Future Tense is used of that which is to take place in time to come: as,

Cum incipere studium incipies, Flamminius te abstinere incipiet, When incipere studium incipies, Flamminius will abstain.—Hor.

Obs. The Future is but used with the form of an Imperative, see § 405. Obs. 2.



§ 400. *Perfect Tense*.—This Tense is used both as a Present-Perfect and Past-Indefinite Tense (Aorist). Thus *feci* is either *I have done* or *I did*. The context enables us to tell in which sense it is used: as,

*Nemo parum diu vixit qui virtutis perfunctus est munere*, No one has lived Pres.-Perf., too short a time who has fully discharged the part of virtue.—Cic.

*Appius caecus multos annos fuit* (Past.-Indef.), *Appius was blind for many years*.—Cic.

§ 401. The Perfect Tense is used after *postquam*, *after that*; *ut primum simul atque* (ac), *as soon as*; *ut, ubi*, *when*; where in English we often use the Past-Perfect: as.

*Pelopidas non dubitavit, simul ac conspexit hostem, confligere*, *Pelopidas did not hesitate, as soon as ever he saw (had seen) the enemy, to engage*.—Nep.

*Ubi de Caesaris adventu Helvetii certiōres facti sunt, legatos ad eum mittunt*, *No sooner had the Helvetii got information of Caesar's arrival than they sent ambassadors to him*.—Caes.

*Ut Hostus cecidit, confestim Rōmāna inclinātur acies*, *As soon as Hostus fell (had fallen), the Roman line immediately gave way*.—Liv.

Obs. 1. But *postquam* takes a Past-Perfect when a precise time is specified: as, *Hannibal anno tertio postquam dōmo profugerat, in Africam venit*, *Hannibal came into Africa three years after he had fled from home*.—Nep.

Obs. 2. But *quum*, *when*, usually takes the Subjunctive: v. § 483.

§ 402. *Past-Perfect Tense*.—The Past-Perfect Tense indicates that something *had taken place* at the time spoken of: as,

*Prōgēniem Trōjāno a sanguine dūci audierat*, *She had heard that a race was being derived from Trojan blood*.—Virg.

§ 403. The Past-Perfect Indicative is sometimes used by the Poets for the Past-Perfect Subjunctive, for the sake of greater vividness: as,

*Me truncus illapsus cērebro,  
Sustulērat, nisi Faunus ictum*

*Dextrā lēvasset*, *Me a tree-trunk upon my brains descending had else dispatched, had not Faunus, with his right hand, lightened the blow*.—Hor. (This is probably a Greek idiom: the Past-Perfect being equivalent to a Past Tense Indic. with *ἄν*.)

§ 404. The Past-Perfect is also, like the Past-Imperfect, sometimes used in epistolary correspondence, in order to accommodate the time to the position of the reader rather than of the writer: as,

Nihil habēbam quod scribērem, neque enim quicquam nōvi audieram, *I have nothing to write, for I have heard no news.*—Cic. Ep.

*Obs.* But this is only allowable when the reference is expressly to the time when the letter was being written. See § 393.

§ 405. *Future-Perfect Tense.*—The Future-Perfect Tense indicates that something *will have* taken place by the time spoken of: as,

Rōmam quum vēnēro, quae perspexēro, scribam ad te, *When I (shall) have got to Rome, I will write to you what I (shall) have seen.*—Cic.

Dum tu haec lēges, ego illum fortasse contrēnēro, *While you will be perusing this, I shall perhaps have had an interview with him.*—Cic

§ 406. Sometimes the Future-Perfect is used to indicate that a thing will be finished and gone immediately: as,

Dum loquimur, jūgērit invida aetas, *E'en while we speak, jealous time is fled.* (Lit., *will have fled.*)—Hor.

§ 407. Both the Future-Perfect and the simple Future are sometimes used in compound sentences where in English the sign of future time is not expressed: as,

Hoc, dum ērimus in terris, ērit coelesti vitae simile, *This, while we are on earth, will be like the life of the gods.*—Cic.

Nātūram si sequēmur dūcem, nunquam aberrābimus, *If we follow nature as our guide, we shall never go astray.*—Cic.

De Carthāgine vēreri non ante dēsīnam, quam illam excīsam esse cognōrēro, *I shall not cease to have fears about Carthage, till I learn she has been utterly destroyed.*—Cic.

*Obs.* But the future sense is sure to be expressed in one of the clauses, as in the above examples.

## (B.) THE INDICATIVE MOOD USED INTERROGATIVELY.

### 1. Single Direct Question.

§ 408. The Indicative Mood is used with Interrogative Pronouns and Adverbs in asking *Direct Questions*: as,

Quousque tandem, Cātīlina, abūtēre pātentiā nostrā, *How far, I pray thee, Catiline, wilt thou abuse our forbearance?*—Cic.

Ut vālet? ut incūnit nostri? *How does he? how does he think of me?*—Hor.

Quōta hōra est? *What o'clock is it?*—Hor.

Thrax est Gallīna Sŷro par? *Is the Thracian Gallina a match for Syrus?*—Hor.

§ 409. In addition to the Interrogative Pronouns and Adverbs, the following particles are used to indicate a question:—*nē* (enclitic), *num*; *utrum* and *an*. The latter two are used only in asking *Double questions*; i. e., questions with two (or more) alternatives.

§ 410. *The Interrogative Particle -nē*—The Particle *nē* is an enclitic, being always joined to some other word. It is used in asking a simple, straightforward question as,

*Tarquīnius rex interrogāvit: Estisne vos lēgāti orātōresque missi a pōpulo Collātino? Sāmus—King Tarquinius asked: are ye ambassadors and spokesmen sent from the people of Collatia? We are.—Liv.*

*Dāturne illa hōdie Pamphīlo nuptum, Is she to be given to Pamphilus in marriage to-day?—Ter.*

*Obs.* *Nē* is always joined to the first word in the interrogative sentence, except when united with *non*, as *nonne* (see next sect.).

§ 411. *Nonne*.—In questions put with a negative, such as, *Is it not so? Was it not so?* where the answer *Yes* is evidently expected, the enclitic is always joined with the negative; thus, *nonne*: as,

*Cānis nonne similis lūpo (est, Is not the dog like a wolf?—Cic.*

*Nonne ēmōri per virtūtem præstat, Is it not better with valour to die outright?—Sall.*

§ 412. *The Interrogative Particle num*.—The Particle *num* indicates that the answer *No* is taken for granted. It always begins its sentence: as,

*Num negare audes, Do you dare deny it?—Cic.*

*Num facti Pamphīlum pīget, Pamphilus isn't sorry for what he has done, is he?—Ter.*

*Num Viscellinum amīci regnum appētentem dēbuērunt adjuvāre, Think you the friends of Viscellinus ought to have assisted him in aiming at regal power?—Cic.*

*Obs.* In *Indirect questions num* ceases to have a negative force: v. § 435.

§ 413. *Ecquid* and *Numquid*.—These words are compounded of the interrogative and indefinite pronoun *quid*; but they are frequently used as mere interrogative particles equivalent to *ne* and *num* respectively: as,

*Quid est. Catilīna? Ecquid attendis? Ecquid animadvertis hōrum silentium? What means it, Catiline? Mark you it? Observe you the silence of these men?—Cic.*

*Numquid duas habētis patrias, Have ye forsooth two native countries?—Cic.*

## 2. Double Direct Questions.

§ 414. The Particles used in asking Double direct questions are *utrum*, *an*, *-nē*. *Utrum* is used only in the first alternative, and *an* only in the second, while *-nē* is used in both: as,

*Utrum ea vestra an nostra culpa est, Is that your fault or ours?—Cic.*

*Isne est quem quaero annon, Is that the man I am seeking, or not?—Ter.*

*Sunt haec tua verba nee ne, Are these your words or no?—Cic.*

*Obs. 1. Nee ne and annon, "or no," are written as single words.*

*Obs. 2. Ne is rare in the second alternative; unless that alternative may be stated in the form "or no," nee ne.*

*Obs. 3. The first particle utrum is often omitted, as in the last of the above examples.*

§ 415. *An* is sometimes apparently used in single questions; but when so, it always has reference to an alternative implied though not expressed. as,

*Quid ais? An Pamphilus venit? What say you? Or is Pamphilus really come?—Ter.*

*Quid dicis? An bello fugitivorum Siciliam virtute tua liberatam? What say you? Or is it that Sicily was by your valour delivered from the fugitive-slave war?—Cic.*

*Obs. In the above examples the former alternative is involved in the first question, "Have you anything else to say, or will you say that, &c."*

§ 416. The following table exhibits the sequence of the Interrogative Particles in questions presenting more than one alternative:—

First Alternative

Second, Third, etc.

*utrum,*

*an,*

*an*

*-ne,*

*an,*

*an*

*(omitted)*

*an,*

*an*

*(omitted)*

*-ne*

*Obs. 1. Concerning Indirect Questions, see § 431.*

*Obs. 2. When num numquid is used in the former part of the question it retains its negative force. as,*

*Numquid vos duas habetis patrias, an est una patria communis, Hinc per hanc duo nati—countries? or is the one country common also to you?—Cic.*

## CHAPTER XLVI.—THE IMPERATIVE MOOD.

§ 417. *Present Tense (Imperative).*—The Present Imperative is used in giving orders, directions, or advice, with reference to the immediate Present, or without reference to any definite time, also in salutations: as,

*Discedis frigus, ligna super feno large repandis, Thine away the cold, lay the logs freely upon the fire.—Hor.*

*Procedite vela citius, Cruise with chequers my tired bark.—O.*

*Carp diem, Seize the (present) day.—Hor.*



## CHAPTER XLVII.—THE SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

§ 421 The Subjunctive Mood expresses a thing not as a *fact* like the Indicative, but merely as a *conception* of the mind.

Hence the Subjunctive Mood is used to indicate,

(A). An hypothesis.

(B). Doubt or uncertainty (including *indirect* questions).

(C). A wish.

(D). Purpose or result.

(E). A proposition borrowed from another, and not adopted by the writer (*narratio obliqua*).

(A). *Si ita esset, ignoscērem*, If it were so, I could excuse it.—Cic.

(B). *Cur dubitas quid de republica sentias?* Why do you doubt what opinion to entertain concerning a commonwealth?—Cic.

*Non dubitat quin Troja brevi peritura sit*, He has no doubt that Troy will soon fall.—Cic.

(C). *Valeas et meminēris nostri*, May you be prosperous and think of me!—Cic.

(D). *Lēgibus servimus ut libēri esse possimus*, We submit to the laws that Purpose we may be able to be free.—Cic.

*Accidit ut una nocte omnes Hermæ dēperirentur*, It happened that Result in one night all the Hermæ were demolished.—Sop.

(E). *Dūcent quanto in discrimine sit Nolana res*, They point out in what peril Nola is.—Liv.

§ 422 The Subjunctive Mood is always dependent upon either

(1). Some hypothetical Conjunction (see § 425), or,

(2) Some antecedent sentence or clause to which it is subjoined (*adjectio*) and which deprives it of the character of a positive ('objective') assertion.

*Obs.* The antecedent member of the sentence is very often not expressed, but left to be understood (see § 429).

§ 423. *Sequence of Tense*.—The Tense of a Verb in the Subjunctive Mood must be in concord with the Tense of the antecedent Verb upon which it depends. Thus Present or Future time is followed by Present or Future, and Past time by Past.

*Present and Future Time.*

PRESENT.	Seio quid āgas,	<i>I know what you are doing.</i>
	Seio quid ēgēris,	<i>I know what you have done.</i>
	Seio quid actūrus sis,	<i>I know what you are going to do.</i>
PRESENT PERFECT.	Cognōvi quid āgas,	<i>I have learnt what you are doing.</i>
	Cognōvi quid ēgēris,	<i>I have learnt what you have done.</i>
	Cognōvi quid actūrus sis,	<i>I have learnt what you are going to do.</i>
FUTURE.	Audiam quid āgas,	<i>I shall hear what you are doing.</i>
	Audiam quid ēgēris,	<i>I shall hear what you have done.</i>
	Audiam quid actūrus sis,	<i>I shall hear what you are going to do.</i>

*Past Time.*

PAST IMPERFECT.	Sciēbam quid āgēres,	<i>I knew what you were doing.</i>
	Sciēbam quid ēgēsses,	<i>I knew what you had done.</i>
	Sciēbam quid actūrus esses,	<i>I knew what you were going to do.</i>
PAST INDEFINITE.	Cognōvi quid āgēres,*	<i>I learnt what you were doing.</i>
	Cognōvi quid ēgēsses,	<i>I learnt what you had done.</i>
	Cognōvi quid actūrus esses,	<i>I learnt what you were going to do.</i>
PAST PERFECT.	Cognōvēram quid āgēres,	<i>I had learnt what you were doing.</i>
	Cognōvēram quid ēgēsses,	<i>I had learnt what you had done.</i>
	Cognōvēram quid actūrus esses,	<i>I had learnt what you were going to do.</i>

\* But the Perfect Subjunctive may be used after the Past Indefinite when the subordinate proposition is conceived of as a distinct historical statement : as,

*Aemilius Paullus tantum in aerarium pœcuniæ iniecit, ut unius imperatoris præda finem attulerit tributorum, Aemilius Paullus brought such an immense sum of money into the treasury, that the spoils of a single general put an end to the taxes.*—Cic.

Obs. The Historical Present (§ 393) being in reality a past tense, is often followed by Past Tenses Subjunctive : as,

*Helvētīi lēgātos ad Cæsārem mittunt, qui dicērent, The Helvetii sent ambassadors to Caesar, to say, &c.*—Caec.

**1. Hypothetical Sentences.**

§ 424. An hypothetical sentence consists of two parts, the *Protasis* and the *Apodosis*: the former containing the supposition or ground of argument, the latter the conclusion based upon it.

(N.B. For the sake of convenience the use of the Indicative in Hypothetical sentences is brought to this place.)

(1). *Hypothetical sentences with the Indicative.*—If both members of the sentence deal with *facts*, either actual or assumed for the purpose of argument, both their Verbs are in the Indicative Mood: as,

*Si est boni consulis ferre opem patriae, est etiam bonorum civium, etc., If it is the duty of a good consul to render help to his country, it is also the duty of good citizens, etc.—Cic.*

*Si tonuit, etiam fulsit, If it thundered, it also lightened.*

(2). *Hypothetical sentences with the Subjunctive.*—But if the sentence implies only that something *may* or *might* happen, or might have happened, both its Verbs are put in the Subjunctive: as,

*Si negem, mentiar, If I were to deny it, I should tell an untruth.—Cic.*

*Tu si hic sis, aliter sentias, You, if you were in my place, would think differently.—Ter.*

*Necassem jam te verbèribus, nisi iratus essem, I would have beaten you to death, if I were not angry.—Cic.*

§ 425. The Conjunctions used in formally stating hypothetical propositions are *si, if*; and *nisi (ni), sin, if not*. The last (*sin* shortened from *si ne*) is used only when another hypothesis with *si* (expressed or implied) has preceded.

*Obs.* To these may be added compounds of *si*, as *etsi, etiamsi*; and *dummodo* (see §§ 498, 503).

§ 426. The *Present* and *Perfect* Tenses of the Subjunctive are used with the above Conjunctions when it is indicated that a thing *may possibly happen* or *may have happened*: as,

*Me dies, vox, lãtera, deficiant, si hoc nunc vociferari velim, Time, voice, strength, would fail me if I were to purpose expressing now, etc.—Cic.*

*Si scieris (Perfect) aspidem occulte latere uspiam,..... improbe feceris, nisi monueris alterum ne assideat, If you should have become aware that an asp were lying concealed in some place, you would be acting wrongly if you did not warn your neighbour not to sit there.—Cic.*

*At memoria minuitur:—Crẽdo, nisi eam exerceas, But (you say), memory decays: I believe you, if you do not exercise it.—Cic.*

(Apodosis not expressed, *minuatur, it would fail*.)

*Obs.* In such cases we in English often use a *Past Tense Subjunctive*, and translate the Latin *Present* by *should, would, were, &c.*, as in the above examples.

§ 427. The *Past* Tenses of the Subjunctive are used with the above Conjunctions when a thing is conceived of as *not actually taking place*, whether *now* (*Past-Imperfect*), or in the *Past* (*Past-Perfect*): as,

*Sapientia non expetẽretur si nihil efficeret, Wisdom would not be coveted if it answered no end.—Cic.*

(*Si, ñno praelio victus esset*) *Alexander, bello victus esset, Conquered in one battle, Alexander would have been conquered in the (entire) war.—Liv.*

§ 428. Instead of a *Past Tense Subjunctive* of a thing



regarded as not taking place, a Past Tense of the *Indicative* is sometimes used in the *Apodosis*, for the sake of greater vividness: as,

Pons subleicius iter paeno hostibus dedit, ni unus vir fuisset, *The Subleician bridge well nigh gave a passage to the enemy, had it not been for one man*—Liv.

Compare § 403.)

*Obs.* The Indicative of the verbs *dēbeo*, *dēcet*, *oportet*, *possum*, and *sum* with a gerundivo or neuter adjective, is frequently used in this way in the *Apodosis*: as,

Si victoria, praeda, laus dubia essent, tamen omnes bonos reipublicae subvenire dēcebat, *If victory, plunder, praise, were uncertain, it would still be the duty of all good citizens to come to the aid of the commonwealth*.—Sall.

Si ita Milo putasset, optabilius ei fuit, etc., *If Milo had so thought, it would have been more desirable for him, &c.*—Cic.

429. *Hypothetical sentences without regular Protasis*.—The Subjunctive is sometimes used to signify that something would take place *if only* some condition too obvious to be expressed were fulfilled (*Subjunctivus Potentialis*): as,

Crēdat Jūdacus, non ego, *The Jew may believe it (if it were told him), not I*.—Hor.

Dicas adductum propius frondēro Tarentum, *You would say Tarentum had actually been transported and was blooming nearer home (if you were to see the place)*.—Hor.

Pecūniae an famae minus parceret, haud facile discerneres, *You would not easily tell (if you tried) whether she were more careless of her money or of her reputation*.—Sall.

*Obs.* The Past-Imperfect is generally used where in English we say, *you would have thought*; *you would have said*: as,

Crēderes victos esse, (*Had you seen them*) *you would have thought they had been the vanquished*.—Liv.

§ 430. The Subjunctive is similarly used in expressing a modest wish or affirmation: as,

Velim mihi ignoscas, *I should be glad if you would pardon me*.—Cic.

Hoc vērō sine ullā dubitatione affirmāvērīm, *This I am prepared (if necessary) without any hesitation to assert*.—Cic.

Quaerendum censeam, *I should think we ought to make enquiry*.—Cic.

§ 431. The Subjunctive is sometimes used when a virtual hypothesis is contained in another part of the sentence: as,

An ego in hac urbe esse possim, his pulsus qui me hujus urbis cōpitem fecerunt, *Could I exist in this city with those in banishment (i. e., if they are banished) who enabled me to enjoy it?*—Cic.

Mōri nemo sapiens miserum dixerit, *No wise man (= if he were wise) would think of pronouncing it miserable to die*.—Cic.

§ 432. The Subjunctive is also used with or without a Conjunction, to signify that an hypothesis is assumed or granted for the purpose of argument (*Subjunctivus Concessivus*): as,

*Mānus cīvis Cn. Carbo fuit:—fuerit aliis: tibi quando esse coepit, Cnaeus Carbo was a bad citizen, was he? Granted that) he was so to others, when did he begin to be so to you?—Cic.*

*Verum, ut ita sit, tamen non pōtes hoc praeclīcare, Yet granting) that it is so, yet you cannot affirm this.—Cic.*

## 2. The Subjunctive of Doubt or Uncertainty.

§ 433. The Subjunctive is used in dependence upon clauses or sentences denoting doubt, uncertainty, or conditionality (see following sections).

*Obs.* But the Subjunctive cannot stand by itself with this force.

§ 434. *Indirect Questions.*—An Indirect Question is one which is *quoted* as being asked, or which is dependent upon some word signifying doubt or perplexity in the sentence. Such a question is expressed with the Subjunctive Mood: as,

*Quālis sit ānīmus ipse ānīmus nescit, What is the nature of the mind, the mind itself knows not.—Cic.*

Here the *Direct Question* would be, *Qualis est animus?* § 408.)

*Diogēnes dispūtare solēbat, quanto rēgem Persarum vitā fortunāquo sup̄erāret, Diogenes used to argue how much he had the advantage of the king of Persia in living and fortune.—Cic.*

(*Direct Question: Quanto regem Persarum supero? How much have I the advantage? etc.*)

*Dii utrum sint, uvene sint, quaeritur, The question is raised whether there are gods or no?—Cic.*

(*Direct Question: Utrum dii sunt, necno sunt?*)

*Multae gentes nondum sciunt, cur luna deficiat, Many nations are still in ignorance why the moon is eclipsed.—Cic.*

(*Direct Question: Cur luna deficit?*)

*Obs.* Thus, *quae tu scias scio*, is *I know what it is you know: but quae tu scis, scio*, *What you know, I know also.*

§ 435. In expressing Indirect single Questions, *num* (see § 412) is used without any negative force: as,

*Quaero . . . num, Aliter ac nunc eveniunt, evenirent, I ask whether they would turn out otherwise than they do?—Cic.*

*Exsistit hoc loco quaedam quaestio subtiliellia, num quando amei novi veteribus sint anteponeh, A somewhat difficult question here arises: whether new friends are ever to be preferred to old ones?—Cic.*

§ 436. In Indirect Questions with more than one alternative the following particles are used:—

Quæritur,	utrum . . .	an . . .	an.
	-nē . . .	an . . .	an.
	(omitted) . . .	nē . . .	-nē.
	num . . .	an . . .	an.

§ 437. Sometimes the Indicative is found in what are *apparently* Indirect Questions: in such cases the Verb of question must be treated as entirely independent in Syntax: as,

Quæro: *quid faciūri fuistis?* I put the question to you: What were you meaning to do?

Et vide, *quam conversa res est!* And see! How the case has altered!—Ter.

§ 438. The particle *an* is used after some expressions denoting uncertainty or hesitation; especially after *haud scio*, *nescio*, *dūbīto*, *dūbium est*, *incertum est*: as,

Aristotēlem, excepto Plātōne, *haud scio an recte dixerim principem philosophorum*, With the exception of Plato, I am inclined to think I should be right in calling Aristotle the first of philosophers.—Cic.

*Dūbīto an Vēnūsium tendam*, et ibi *expectem de lēgiōnibus*, I am half-inclined to direct my course to Venusia, and there wait news concerning the legions.—Cic.

*Contigit tibi quod haud scio an nēmīni*, The lot has fallen to you which perhaps has fallen to no one else.—Cic.

Obs. The phrases *haud scio an*, *nescio an*, *dūbīto an*, always imply the probability of the truth of the proposition which they introduce. They have thus the opposite force to the English "I don't know whether."

§ 439. Propositions about which doubt and uncertainty are distinctly *denied* are expressed with *quin* and the Subjunctive; as *non dūbium est quin*, etc. (see § 461).

§ 440. The Subjunctive is sometimes used in questions indicating *perplexity*, where the Verb *dūbīto* may be supplied (*Subjunctivus dubitativus*): as,

*Quid hoc hōmīne faciātis*, What are ye to do with this man?—Cic.

*Quid aliud faceret*, What else was he to do?—Cic.

*Quid enūmērem artium multitudīnem*, Why should I enumerate a multitude of arts?—Cic. (*Quid enumero* would imply that the speaker was actually doing so.)

§ 441. Verbs of *fearing* take the Subjunctive with *ne* or *ut* according as the fear is expressed that a thing *will* (*ne*) or *will not* (*ut*) happen (see § 460).

§ 442. In all cases where the Subjunctive is found in apparently independent propositions, it is in reality dependent upon some *condition*, *doubt*, or *uncertainty*, present to the mind of the speaker or writer ("subjunctive"), though not expressed.

### 3. The Subjunctive expressing a Wish.

§ 443. *Subjunctivus Optātivus*.—The Subjunctive is often used without any preceding Verb, to express a wish.

§ 444. The Present Tense Subjunctive expresses a wish regarded as attainable : as,

*Intēream si vāleo stāre, May I be a dead man, if I can stand bail!*—Hor.

*Vāleant cives mei, sint beāti, May my fellow-citizens prosper, may they be happy!*—Cic.

Especially with *utinam*. *O that!* as,

*Utinam mōdo cōnāta perficere possim, O that I may only accomplish my aims!*—Cic.

§ 445. The First Person Plural of the same Tense is used to express *mutual encouragement* : as,

*Dum vivimus, vivamus, While we live, let us live!*

*Imitemur nostros majōres, Let us imitate our ancestors!*—Cic.

*Obs.* In the same way is used the Pres.-Perf. *mēmnerim* : as,

*Mēmnerimus, Let us remember!*

§ 446. The Past-Imperfect and Past-Perfect Subjunctive are used in expressing a wish for a thing regarded as no longer attainable : as

*Utinam prōmissa liceret non dare, Would it were lawful not to fulfil promises!*—Cic.

*Utinam, Cn. Pompēi, cum Cæsare societatem nunquam coisses aut nunquam discessisses, I could, Cnaeus Pompeius, you either had never entered into league with Cæsar, or else had never broken it off.*—Cic.

*Obs.* *Scilicet vellem, mallem, nollem*, are used of wishes regarded as not attainable; while *velim, mālīm, and nōlīm* are used of those considered to be so. comp. § 426, 427 : as,

*Vellem hūc posset Panaetius, I could fain wish Panaetius were present.*—Cic.

§ 447. Very often a Verb of *wishing* is expressed, and followed by the Subjunctive either with or without *ut* :

(1.) *Opto, I wish*, is generally construed with *ut* and the Subjunctive (less frequently with the Infinitive) : as,

*Optavit ut in currum patris tolleretur, He (Phaethon) desired that he might be taken up into his father's chariot.*—Cic.

(2.) *Volo, Nōlo, and Mālo*, are frequently found with *ut* and the Subjunctive; also very often with *ut* omitted : as,

*Equidem vellem ūti (res tuæ) pēdes hābērent, ut aliquando rēdīres, For my part I should be glad if your business had feet to it, that you might at length return.—Cic.*

*Mūlo te sapiens hostis mētuit, quam stulti cives laudent, I had rather a wise enemy should fear you, than that foolish citizens should praise you.—Cic.*

*Nolo accūsator in iudiciū pōtentiam affērat, I would not have an accuser bring personal influence with him into a court of justice.—Cic.*

*Obs. 1. In the same way sīno, I allow, is sometimes used: as,  
Sine . . . sciam, Let me know.—Liv.*

*Obs. 2. For the construction of rōlo, &c., with Infinitive, see § 512.*

§ 448. To this place must be referred the use of the Present and the Second Person Singular of the Perfect Subjunctive as *Jussives* (see § 420).

#### 4. The Subjunctive of Purpose or Result.

§ 449. The Subjunctive is used with the following Conjunctions, *ūt* (*ūti*), *quō*, *that, in order that*; *nē* (or *ūt nē*), *lest, in order that . . . not*; *quā*, *quōmīnus*, *that not, to denote Purpose and Result.*

§ 450. The Conjunction *ut*, *that, in order that, so that*, is used with the Subjunctive Mood to denote either *Purpose* or *Result*: as,

##### (a.) Purpose.

*Rōmāni ab āratro abduxērunt Cincinnātum, ut dictātor esset, The Romans fetched Cincinnatus from the plough in order to be dictator.—Cic.*

*Pylādes Ōrestem se esse dixit, ut pro eo necārētur, Pylades affirmed himself to be Orestes, in order that he might be put to death in his place.—Cic.*

*Obs. Under this head falls the Subjunctive with ut after Verbs of commanding, persuading, striving, wishing, &c. (see § 451).*

##### (b.) Result.

*Tarquīnius sic Sērvium diligēbat, ut is ejus vulgo hābērētur filius, Tarquinius was so attached to Sērvius, that the latter was currently regarded as his son.—Cic.*

*Tempērantia sēdat appētitiōnes et efficit ut hae rectae rātiōni pāreant, Temperance calms the appetites and causes that they submit to right reason.—Cic.*

*Saepe fit ut, ii qui dēbeant, non respondeant ad tempus, It often occurs that those who owe money, do not meet their liabilities at the time.—Cic.*

*Si haec nuntiatio vēra non est, sēquitur ut falsa sit, If this proposition is not true, it follows that it is false.—Cic.*

*Thrasylbulo contigit ut patriam liberaret, It fell to the lot of Thrasylbulus to deliver his country.*—Nep.

*Obs.* The phrases, *sequitur, it follows*; *restat, it remains*; *necesse est, it is necessary*; *aequum, justum est, it is right or just*; and the like, take for the most part, either *ut* and the Subjunctive, or an Infinitive Mood (see § 509).

§ 451. *Ut* and *ne* are used with the Subjunctive after Verbs signifying to command, advise, request, exhort, endeavour; *ut* in a positive, *ne* in a negative sense: as,

*Civitati persuasit ut de finibus suis exirent, He Orgetorix persuaded the community to leave their own territories.*—Caes.

*Te hortor ut hos libros de philosophia studiose legas, I urge you to read attentively those books of mine on philosophy.*—Cic.

*Precor ne me deseras, I beg you not to forsake me.*—Cic.

*Obs.* 1. This Subjunctive with *ut* is usually translated by the Infinitive in English. The Latin Infinitive never expresses a purpose.

*Obs.* 2. *Jubeo, I order*; *vetō, I forbid*; *cōnor, I attempt*; and, sometimes, *nitōr, I strive*, take the Infinitive: as,

*Jubet nos Pythius Apollo noscere nosmet ipsos, The Pythian Apollo bids us "know ourselves."*—Cic.

*Lex peregrinum cētat in mūrum ascendere, The law forbids a foreigner to go up upon the walls.*—Cic.

*Ter sunt cōnti impōnere Pēlio Ossam, Thrice they essayed to pierce Ossa on Pelion.*—Virg.

*Jugurtha Cirtam irrumpere nīlītur, Jugurtha endeavours to force an entrance into Cirta.*—Sall.

*Obs.* 3. *Impēro* is occasionally found with the Accusative and Infinitive: as,  
*Ipsos abducī impērabat, He ordered the men themselves to be led away.*—Cic.

§ 452. Verbs which signify a resolution or decision are usually followed by *ut* and the Subjunctive: as,

*Decrēvit sēnatus ut consul cūderet, nō quid detrimenti republica caperet, The senate decreed, that the consul should look to it, that the commonwealth suffered no damage.*—Cic.

*Āthenienses stituerunt ut, urbe relicta, libertatem Græcæ classe defenderent, The Athenians came to the resolution to abandon their city and defend the liberty of Greece with their fleet.*—Cic.

*Obs.* When the determination of an individual about himself is signified, the Infinitive is generally used: as,

*Decrēvi cum Hortensio valde familiariter vivere, I had determined to live on very friendly terms with Hortensius.*—Cic.

§ 453. *Quo.*—The Conjunction *quo*, in order that; thereby, is used with the Subjunctive to denote a Purpose: as,

*Corruptus fuit Cluentius jactantem personam, quo proleum innocenti et dīmīderet, Cluentius was bribed to have bribed the court, that thereby it might condemn his innocent though innocent.*—Cic.

Especially when there is a Comparative Adjective in its clause : as,

*Lēgem brevem esse oportet, quo facilius ab impēritis tēneātur, A law ought to be short, in order that it may the more easily be grasped by the unlettered.—Cic.*

(Here quo = ut eo.)

Obs. 1. But quo is not used like ut to denote a result.

Obs. 2. Concerning non quo, not that, see § 457. Obs. 1.

§ 454. *Nē* is used with the Subjunctive to denote a Purpose, *ut* being omitted : it is equivalent to *ut non*, *quo non*, in order that . . . not ; lest : as,

*Nōlo esse laudātor, nē videar adūlātor, I am reluctant to be an applauder, lest I should seem a flatterer.—Auct. ad Her.*

*Gallinae avesque reliquae pennis fovēt pullos, ne frigore laedantur. Hens and other birds cherish their young under their wings, in order that they may not be hurt by the cold.—Cic.*

§ 455. Sometimes *ut* (quo) is expressed with *nē* : as,

*Trebatio mandāvi, ut, si tu eum velles ad me mittere, ne recūsaret. I have charged Trebatius, if you wished to dispatch him to me, not to refuse.—Cic.*

*Pergunt turbare usque ut ne quid possit conquiescere, They proceed to make such a disturbance that nothing can rest.—Plaut.*

Obs. This is especially the case with *ne quis, qua, quid, &c.*

§ 456. Similarly, when a Purpose is signified, we find

<i>nē quis</i>	instead of	<i>ut nēmo,</i>	<i>that no one.</i>
<i>nē ullus</i>	„ „	<i>ut nullus,</i>	<i>that none.</i>
<i>nē unquam</i>	„ „	<i>ut nunquam,</i>	<i>that never.</i>
<i>nē usquam</i>	„ „	<i>ut nusquam,</i>	} <i>that nowhere.</i>
<i>nēcūbi (i. e. ne alicubi)</i>		„	
<i>nēcunde (i. e. ne alicunde),</i>			<i>that from no quarter.</i>
<i>nēquando (i. e. ne aliquando),</i>			<i>that at no time.</i>

*Caesārem complexus obsecrare coepit ne quid grāvius in frātre statuēret, Embracing Caesar, he began to implore him not to come to any too severe decision against his brother.—Caes.*

*Circumspectans nēcunde impētus in frūmentātōres fīret, Looking carefully round to see that no attack was made upon the foragers from any quarter.—Liv.*

§ 457. But if only a Result is signified, the forms *ut non*, *ut nemo*, *ut nullus*, etc., must be used : as,

*Ex hoc efficitur . . . ut voluptas non sit summum bonum, From this it follows that pleasure is not the chief good.—Cic.*

*Dēmōsthēnes perficit mēditando, ut nēmo plānius eo locūtus putāretur, By exercise Demosthenes so succeeded, that no one was considered to have been a plainer speaker than he.—Cic.*

§ 458. *Ut* and *nē* are used in parenthetical sentences, where some such notion as "supposing," "granting that," is implied: as,

*Nam ūt ōmittam Phīlippum...*, *For to say nothing of Philip. . .*—Nep.

*Ah nīmium simplex Hēlēne, ne rustica dicam, Ah, too artless Helen, not to say too rude!*—Ov.

§ 459 Similarly *nēdum*, *not to say, much less*, is followed by the Subjunctive: as,

*Sēcundae res sāpientium ānimos fātīgant; nēdum illi corruptis mōribus victōriae tempērarent, Prosperity overpowers the spirit of the wise: far less could they, with their morality destroyed, use restraint in victory.*—Sall.

*Viri clārissīmi vim tribūnīciam sustinēre non pōtuerunt; nēdum his tempōribus sine sapientiā vestrā salvi esse possimus, The most illustrious men have failed to withstand the tribunicial force: much less can we, in these times, be secure without your wisdom.*—Cic.

§ 460. After words signifying *fear* or *anxiety*, *ne* expresses the apprehension that something *will* occur; *ut*, that it *will not* occur: as,

*Tīmēbam ne evēnīrent ea quae accidērunt, I dreaded that those very things which have happened would come to pass.*—Cic.

*Tīmor Romae grandis fuit, ne Itērum Galli Rōmam rēdīrent, There was great fear at Rome, lest the Gauls should return again to Rome.*—Eutr.

*Pater terruit gentes, grāve ne rēdīret sēcūlum Pyrrhae, The sire put the nations in dread, that the terrible age of Pyrrha might be coming again.*—Hor.

*Omnes labōres te excipere vīdeo; timeo ut sustīneas, I see you undertake all possible labours; I am afraid you will not stand them.*—Cic.

*Obs.* But instead of *ut*, we often find *ne* non; especially in negative sentences: as,

*Timeo ne non impetrem, I fear I shall not prevail.*—Cic.

*Non vēreor ne tua virtus ōptiōnī hōmīnum non respondeat, I have no fear that your worth will fail to answer the expectations of men.*—Cic.

§ 461. *Quān*, *that not, so that not*, is used with the Subjunctive after *negative*, or *virtually negative* sentences only. It is used,

(1.) After negative sentences containing Verbs of *hindering*: as, *Non prōhibeo, I do not prevent*; *Non rētīneo, I do not restrain*; *Non rēpugno, I do not object*; and the like.

(2.) After such negative phrases as *Non est dūbium, There is no doubt*; *Quis dūbitat, Who doubts?* *Fieri non potest, It cannot be*; *Nēgārī non pōtest, It cannot be denied*; and the like.



(1.) After negative sentences generally, to denote that a certain thing never happens without something else happening.

*Obs.* Under negative sentences are included those virtually so; as when *quis* expects the answer *Nō*; also those containing such words as *vix*, *rare*, *paucum*, *co*, *little*, &c.

1. *Nō possumus, quin alii nobis dissentiant, recusare*, We cannot object to it that others should differ from us.—Cic.

*Vix me cohibeo quin in illum irōlem, I can scarcely restrain myself at him.*—Ter.

*Haud multum absuit quin Ismēnius interficeretur*, A little more and Ismēnius would have been killed.—Liv.

*Obs.* The expressions *haud multum absuit*, *minimum absuit*, and the like, are always impersonal.

(2.) *Nō erat dubium quin Helvētīi plurimum possent*, There was no doubt that the Helvētīi had the most influence.—Caes.

*Haud dubia res visa.....quin circumduceret agmen*, There appeared to be no question but he must conduct his army by a circuitous route.—Liv.

*Obs.* In some cases a twofold construction is admissible: thus,

*Quis ignorat quin tria Græcōrum gēnēra sint*, Who knows not (i.e., there is no one who knows not) that there are three classes of Greeks?—Cic.

where we might equally well have had, *Quis ignorat tria . . . esse* (§ 467).

(3.) *Equidem nunquam dōmum nisi ūnam epistōlam, quin esset te altera*, In fact, I have never sent a single letter home without there being a second to you.—Cic.

*Nullus fere dies est quin Satrius meum dōmum ventū sit*, There is hardly a day that Satrius does not keep coming to my house.—Cic.

§ 462. *Quin* is also used with the Indicative in the sense of *Why not?* (*quī ne*): and expresses an animated appeal: as,

*Quin igitur expergiselmui?* Why not then be up and doing?—Sall.

*Quin conscendimus equos?* Why not to horse at once?—Liv.

*Obs.* *Quin* with the Imperative is used in expostulations: as,

*Quin tu hoc audi*, Nay but do you hear me.—Ter.

§ 463. *Quōmīnus*, *that not, so that not*, is similar to *quin*, and is used with the Subjunctive after words and phrases which signify hindrance; as, *impēdio*, I impede; *prōhibeo*, I prevent; *offīcio*, I obstruct, etc.; also after *per me stat*, fit, it is owing to me (that something does not take place): as,

*Nō recūsābo quōmīnus omnes meā scripta legant*, I will not object to all men's reading my writings.—Cic.

*Cæsar cognōvit per Afrānium sūre quōmīnus dimicārētur*, Cæsar ascertained that it was owing to Afranius an engagement was not take place.—Caes.

*Obs.* In the former of the above examples *quin* might have been used instead of *quōmīnus* comp. § 462, but not in the second: also, in the other applications of *quin* (*ib.* 2, 3), *quōmīnus* cannot be used for it.

## 5. Oratio Obliqua.

NOTE.—For the sake of convenience, the Rules for *Ōrātio obliqua* are brought together.

§ 464. When a speech is reported not in the exact form in which it was delivered, but so as to make the speaker the Third Person instead of the First, it is called *oratio obliqua*: as,

—Caesar lēgātis respondit: diem *se* ad dēlibērandum sumptūrum (esse), *Caesar made answer to the ambassadors that he would take time to consider.*—Caes.

(Words of Caesar reported in their original form: *Diem ego ad dēlibērandum sūmam, I will take time to consider.*)

§ 465. When a speech is thus transferred to the *oblique* form, the following changes of Mood take place:—

(A.) The Indicative Mood used in *direct* and *independent* statements is changed into the Infinitive.

*in f. l. de Fin. 1. 2.*  
*rum nihil*  
*porūre exqu*  
*akimib. comp*  
*inari*  
(B.) The Indicative Mood used in *dependent Relative* sentences is changed into the Subjunctive.

(C.) The Indicative Mood used in *Questions* becomes the Subjunctive.

(D.) The Imperative Mood becomes the Subjunctive.

(E.) The Subjunctive Mood used in the *Apodosis* of an hypothetical sentence becomes the Infinitive.

§ 466. (A.) All direct and independent statements, when transferred to the *oratio obliqua*, become dependent upon some such Verb as *dixit, he said*, expressed or implied, and therefore the Accusative Case takes the place of the Nominative, and the Infinitive Mood the place of the Indicative (§ 507): as,

Ariovistus respondit, . . . Aeduis *se* obsides reddītūrum non esse, *Ariovistus answered that he would not restore the hostages to the Aedui.*—Caes.

Ariovistus ad Caesārem legātos mittit, "*velle se de his rebus agere cum eo,*" *Ariovistus sends ambassadors to Caesar (saying) that he wished to speak with him on these points.*—Caes.

Obs. Such an Infinitive is very often introduced quite abruptly, especially to indicate feelings entertained rather than a direct speech: as,

Plēbem ira prōpe armāvit: "*Flāme se jam sicut hostes pōti; cūbo victuque fraudāri,*" *Indignation all but armed the commons: "They were now attacked like open enemies; they were robbed of their bread and living."*—Liv.

§ 467. (B.) The subordinate Verbs in Relative sentences, used by the original speaker in the Indicative Mood, are turned into the Subjunctive in the *oratio obliqua*: as,

Caesar legatos cum his mandatis mittit, .. haec esse quae ab eo postularet, *Caesar sends ambassadors with these instructions, .. that the following were the demands he made of him, &c.*—Caes.

(Direct form: Haec sunt quae a te postulo.)

Apud Hypanim fluvium Aristoteles ait, bestiolas quasdam nasci, quae unum diem vivant, *On the banks of the river Bog, Aristotle tells us there are insects produced which live only one day.*—Cic.

(Direct form: Sunt bestiolae quaedam quae unum diem vivunt.)

Obs. But if a statement of the *writer's* be interwoven with the *oratio obliqua*, it of course stands in the Indicative: as,

Quis potest esse tam aversus a vero, qui neget haec omnia, quae videmus, deorum immortalium potestate administrari, *Who can be such a stranger to truth, as to deny that all these things, which we see, are managed by the power of the immortal Gods?*—Cic.

§ 468. (C.) Questions transferred to the *oratio obliqua* take the Subjunctive Mood: being dependent upon *rogavit*, or some such word, expressed or understood (§ 434): as,

Furere omnes tribuni plebis .. "quidnam id rei esset?" *All the tribunes of the commons were furious: (they asked) "What did that mean?"*—Liv.

(Direct question: Quidnam id rei est?)

Quid de praeda faciendum censerent, *What did they think should be done about the spoil?*—Liv.

(Direct question: Quid de praeda faciendum censetis?)

§ 469. But when the Interrogative form is merely rhetorical, the question containing its own answer, and being therefore equivalent to a direct statement, it is usually expressed with the Accusative and Infinitive; as,

"Si veteris contumeliae oblivisci vellet, num etiam recentium injuriarum memoriam deponere posse?" *"Even if he were willing he said to forget an ancient affront, could he banish the recollection of recent injuries?"*—Caes.

(Here, num deponere posse = non deponere posse.)

Interrogabat .. "quando ausuros exposcere remedia, nisi .. etc." *He asked "When would they venture to demand redress, if not .. etc.?"*—Tac.

(Quando ausuros = nunquam ausuros.)

An quicquam esse superbius? *Could anything be more arrogant?*—Liv.

(An quicquam esse = nihil esse.)

Obs. *Madrig's* rule is, that questions originally asked in the *First* or *Third* Person, are expressed in the *oratio obliqua* with the Subjunctive; and only those in the *Second* Person, by the Subjunctive. But the distinction seems arbitrary, and is not sufficiently supported. No rule, however, can be laid down on the subject without exceptions.



(2.) For the sake of greater vividness, a Past Tense like *dixit, he said*, is often followed by Present Tenses Subjunctive: as,

*Edicunt, ne quis L. Quinctium consulem faceret, They issue a proclamation that no one should endeavour to make L. Quinctius consul.—Liv.*

*Cicero respondit . . "Si ab armis discedere vellent, se adiutore utantur legatosque ad Caesarem mittant," Cicero made answer, "If they wish to lay down their arms, they can use him as their coadjutor, and send ambassadors to Caesar."—Caes.*

## 6. Use of the Subjunctive with the Relative Pronoun and Conjunctions.

§ 474. The Relative and Relative particles take the Subjunctive (according to § 421) when they are used in stating not simply a fact, but a conception of the mind.

§ 475. *Qui hypothetical.*—The Relative *qui, quae, quod*, is followed by the Subjunctive when the clause to which it belongs contains a virtual *hypothesis* (§ 431): as,

*Hac qui videat, nonne cogatur fatēri deos esse, Would not the man, who should see these things, be forced to confess that there are gods?—Cic.*  
(*Qui videat = si quis videat, if any one were to see.*)

*Nec quisquam rex Persarum potest esse, qui non ante Magorum disciplinam percēperit, Nor can any one be king of the Persians who has not first learnt the discipline of the Magi.—Cic.*

(*Qui non perceperit = nisi perceperit, unless he has learned.*)

*Obs. 1.* To this head belongs the phrase *quod sciam, as far as I know, if only I know.*

*Obs. 2.* Sometimes when Relative Pronouns or Adverbs are used with past tenses of the Subjunctive, they suggest the recurrence of a condition: as,

*Semper [ii] fortissimi habiti sunt, qui summam impērii potirentur, Those were always regarded as the most warlike people, who [from time to time] attained to supreme empire.—Nep.*

*Ubi āvaritiam, aut crudelitatem consensu objectāvissent, solvēbātur militiā, In whatever case, they unanimously charged [a centurion] with covetousness or cruelty, he was dismissed the service.—Tac.*

§ 476. Hence the Relative takes the Subjunctive in stating the reason of something: as,

*O fortunāte adolescens, qui tuae virtutis Hōmērum praecōnem invēneris, O fortunate youth, who hast found (i. e. in that thou hast found) a Homer to be the herald of thy prowess.—Cic.*

*Ut cūbitum discessimus, me et de viā et qui ad multam noctem vīgilassem, arctior quam solēbat somnus complexus est, No sooner had we retired to rest, than what with the journey and my having sat up to a late hour of the night, sounder sleep than usual embraced me.—Cic.*

(*Qui vīgilassem = quum vīgilassem, § 483.*)

§ 477. The force of *qui* as introducing a *reason* is augmented by *ut, utpōte, quippe*: as,

*Magna pars Fidēnātium, ut qui cōlōni additi Rōmānis essent, Lātine sciēbant, A great part of the Fidenates (as might well be), from their having being joined as settlers with Romans, knew Latin.—Liv.*

*Multa de meâ sententiâ questus est Caesar, quippe qui ab eo in me esset incensus, Caesar complained much of the opinion expressed by me, having been goaded on against me by him (Crassus).—Cic.*

*Obs.* But *quippe qui* is also found with the Indicative : as,

*Animus fortunâ non eget, quippe quae pröbitatem . . . neque däre neque eripere potest, The soul needs not fortune, since goodness she can neither give nor take away.—Sall.*

§ 478. *Qui* of *Purpose*.—*Qui* takes the Subjunctive when it involves the meaning of *ut*, and denotes a *Purpose* (§ 449) : as,

*Sunt multi qui eripiunt aliis quod aliis largiantur, There are many who take from one to bestow on another.—Cic.*

(*Quod largiantur = ut largiantur.*)

*Clusini legatos Römam qui auxilium a senatu peterent, misere, The people of Clusium sent ambassadors to Rome to beg help from the senate.—Liv.*

(*Qui peterent = ut peterent.*)

§ 479. *Qui* of *Result*.—*Qui* is also followed by the Subjunctive when there is involved in it the force of *ut* as indicating a *Result* (§ 449) : as,

*In enodandis nominibus, quod miserandum sit, laboratis, In explaining names you (Stoics) trouble yourselves to a degree that is pitiable.—Cic.*

(*Quod miserandum sit = ut miserandum sit.*)

*Majus gaudium fuit quam quod universum homines caperent, The joy was too great for men to receive all at once.—Liv.*

(*Major quam quod caperent = major quam ut caperent.*)

§ 480. *Qui* is especially so used after the adjectives *dignus*, *indignus*, *idoneus*, and the like, to denote what a person is *worthy of* or *fit for* : as,

*Liviänae fabulae non satis dignae sunt quae iterum legantur, The plays of Livius are not well worthy of being read a second time.—Cic.*

*Nulla mihi videbatur aptior persona quae de senectute loqueretur, quam Catonis, No character seemed to me fitter to speak concerning old-age than that of Cato.—Cic.*

*Homines scelérati indigni mihi videbantur, quorum causam agerem, The wicked men seemed unworthy that I should plead their cause.—Cic.*

*Obs.* 1. The poets and later writers in general, also construe these Adjectives with the Infinitive : as,

*Pons rivo däre nomen idoneus, A fountain fit to give name to a stream.—Hor.*

*Obs.* 2. Similarly *qui* takes the Subjunctive when it is the correlative of the Pronouns *is*, *talis*, *tantus* : as,

*Ego is sum qui nihil unquam . . . fecerim, I am such an one as have never, &c.—Cic.*

*Affectio talis animi quae noceat nemini, Such a disposition of mind as to harm no one.—Cic.*

§ 481. SUBJUNCTIVE OF REPETITION.—The Imperfect and Pluperfect Subjunctive are often used in narrative, after Relative Pronouns and Particles, to denote the recurrence of an action under a given condition : as,

*Primi quæ modo præirent duces, signa sequēbantur, The foremost, wherever their guides only led the way, kept up with the standards.—Liv.*

*Alii ubi semel præcubuissent, inter jumenta . . . moriētes, Others when once they had fallen to the ground amongst the baggage cattle, dying there.—Liv.*

*Tyrannus ut quisque maxime laboraret locus, aut ipse occurrēbat, aut aliquos mittebat, The tyrant, as each post was most in danger, either hastened thither himself or dispatched some to do so.—Liv.*

*Obs.* But the Indicative may also be used : cf. with the last example, Liv. 22, 6, Consul, quæcunque in parte laborare senserat suos, impigre ferebat opem. See also Liv. 3, 11, Qui obvius fuerat, mulcatus nudatus abitbat, *Whoever encountered (them), went off beaten and stripped.*

§ 482. The Subjunctive is generally used after such expressions as *sunt qui, there are some who* ; *non desunt qui, there are not wanting men who* ; *reperiuntur, there are found some who* : as,

*Sunt qui discessum animi a corpore putent esse mortem, There are some who think death to be the departure of the mind from the body.—Cic.*

*Fuere qui crederent M. Crassum non ignarum ejus consilii fuisse, There were some who believed M. Crassus to be no stranger to this scheme.—Sall.*

*Obs.* 1. But if certain definite persons or things are indicated, such phrases are followed by the Indicative : as

*Fuere tamen extra conjurationem complures qui ad Catilinam profecti sunt, There were however a good many [whose names might be given], not in the plot, who went to join Catiline.—Sall.*

*Obs.* 2. The poets and the later writers often construe *sunt qui* with the Indicative, treating it like a single word (Gk. *ἐνιοι* : cf. Hor. Od. I, 1, *init.*

§ 483. QUUM.—The Conjunction *quum* takes the Subjunctive when it denotes cause (*quum causale*) ; it may then generally be translated by *as, since, or although* : as,

*Quum vita sine amicis insidiarum et metus plena sit, ratio ipsa monet amicitias comparare, Since life without friends is full of treachery and alarm, reason itself bids us form friendships.—Cic.*

*Phocion fuit perpetuo pauper, quum ditissimus esse posset, Phocion was always poor, though he might have been very rich.—Nep.*

*Obs.* *Quum* like *qui* (§ 477) may be strengthened with *quippe* : as,

*Nec reprehendo (te) : quippe quum ipse istam reprehensionem non fugerim, Nor do I blame you ; inasmuch as I myself have not escaped that censure.—Cic.*

§ 484. *Quum* also takes the Subjunctive in describing the sequence of events in proper historical narrative : as,



Socrâtes in pompâ quum magna vis auri argentique ferritur, quam multa non desulbro! inquit, When a great quantity of gold and silver was being carried in procession, and Socrates, "How many things there are I don't want! —Cic.

Quos quum tristioreâ vidisset, triginta minas accepit, nē aspernari Rēgis liberalitatem videretur, When he, Xerxes, saw them rather disappointed, he accepted thirty minae, in order not to seem to slight the king's liberality. —Cic.

Quum tridui viam profectus esset, nuntiatum est ei, Ariovistum cum omnibus suis copis ad occurrendum Vesontionem contendere, When he had advanced three days' journey, news was brought him that Ariovistus was hastening with all his forces to seize Besançon. —Caes.

Obs. The Perfect and Past-Perfect Subjunctive with *quum* supply the lack of a Perfect Participle Active in Latin comp. § 526.

§ 485. But *quum* is used with all Tenses of the Indicative to denote the precise time at which something takes place, as,

Pariles etiam quum ferunt adversarium, inveniunt, Prize-fighters even when they are in the act of striking an antagonist, find a gram. —Cic.

Credo tunc quum Sicilia floruit opibus et copiis, magnam artem fuisse in exstructa, I believe that at the time when Sicily flourished in resources and military strength, the arts were in great perfection in the island. —Cic.

Quum testes dabo ex Sicilia, quum velit ille eligat, When I shall produce my witnesses from Sicily, let him choose which he pleases. —Cic.

Quum autem ver esse coeperat, dabat se liberi utque itinribus, But when it began to be spring-time, he then gave himself to labour and journeying. —Cic.

§ 486. *Quod quo* and *quia*. —The Conjunctions *quod* and *quia*, *because*, both take the Indicative in stating the actual reason of something: as,

Idcirco enim tardior quod non invenio feliam tabellariam, I was the more but slower because I cannot find a ready letter-carrier. —Cic.

Urbs quae quia postrema aedificata est, Neapolis, ita quia nuntiatur, A city which, because it was the last built, is called Neapolis (New-town). —Cic.

Obs. *Quia* states a reason more directly and positively than *quod*.

§ 487. But when it is implied that a supposed reason is not true in point of fact, the Subjunctive with *quod*, *quia*, *quasi*, is used.

The difference between the use of *quia* or *quod* with the Indicative and with the Subjunctive, is clearly seen in the following example. —

Pariles etiam quum ferunt adversarium, inveniunt, and quod dabo testes adversum, and quia postrema aedificata est, nuntiatur, Prize-fighters even when in the act of striking an antagonist,



fetch a groan; not because they are in pain (supposed, but false reason), but because, in discharging the sound, the whole body is put in tension (real reason).—Cic.

Obs. 1. Instead of *non quod*, we find also *non quo* and (rarely) *non quin* (negative).

Obs. 2. Out of this use of *quod* arises such an expression as the following :

*Quod religiōnibus sese dīceret impediri*, *Because, said he, (alleged but false reason) "he was prevented by religious scruples."*—Caes.

(The *diceret* is brought under the government of *quod*, instead of *impēdretur*, by attraction.)

§ 488. In addition to the above cases, *quod* (not *quia*) is used as a causal Conjunction after such Verbs as *grātūlor*, *I congratulate*; *glōrior*, *I boast*; *quēror*, *I complain*; *mīror*, *I wonder*; *laudo*, *I praise*; and the like, when, as before (§ 486), the Indicative denotes that the ground of rejoicing, grief, censure, etc., is an *actual fact*, which the Subjunctive of course cannot do: as,

*Grātūlor tibi, quod e prōvinciā saluum te ad tuos rēcēpisti*, *I congratulate you that you have got back safe from your province to your friends.*—Cic.

*Gaudeo quod te interpellāvi*, *I am glad that I interrupted you.*—Cic.

*Non tibi objicio quod hōmīnem .. qui nunc A. Clōdīus vēcātur, omni argento spōliasti*, *I am not laying it to your charge that you robbed a fellow who now bears the name of Aulus Clodius of all his silver (which you did).*—Cic.

*Sōcrātes accūsātus est quod corrumpēret jūventūtem, et nōvas sūperstitionēs introducēret*, *Socrates was accused of corrupting the youth and bringing in new superstitions.*—Quint.

Obs. In the last of the above examples, as in many similar ones, the Subjunctive may be regarded as belonging to the oratio obliqua (§ 466): so,

*Glōriābātur Hortensius, quod nunquam bello cīvili interfuisset*, *Hortensius used to boast that he had never been engaged in civil war.*—Cic. (The Subj. indicates that the assertion is made by *Hortensius*.)

§ 489. *Quod* is also used with the Indicative after sundry Impersonal expressions corresponding to those referred to in the preceding section: as, *jūvat*, *it delights*; *vītium est*, *it is a fault*; *laudābile est*, *it is praiseworthy*, and the like, with the same distinction as before between the Indicative and Subjunctive: as,

*Jūvat me, quod vīgēt stūdia, prōfērunt se ingēnia hōmīnum*, *It is a pleasure to me that intellectual pursuits flourish, that the abilities of men display themselves.*—Plin. Ep.

*Magnum bēnēficiū nātūrae est, quod nēcesse est mōri*, *It is a great boon of nature that we must die.*—Sen.

§ 490. *Quod* is sometimes thus used of an hypothetical case, and then of course it takes the Subjunctive: as,

*Nemo oratorem admiratus est, quod Latine loqueretur, No one ever admired an orator because he spoke good Latin.—Cic.*

§ 491. *Quod* is originally a Relative Pronoun, and in some of its applications seems to waver between the use of the Relative Pronoun and of a Conjunction: it is on this principle we must explain such sentences as the following:—

*Cujus corpus a me crematum est, quod contra deceit ab illo meum, His body was laid by me on the funeral pile, whereas [which office] mine should rather have undergone that office from him.—Cic.*

*Obs.* The use of *quod si*, *but if*; *quod nisi* (*ni*), *but if not*, &c., at the beginning of sentences, is to be explained by the fondness of the Latin language for connecting the parts of a narration by means of the Relative.

§ 492. *Quippe* (*quia-pe*), *because, as being*, is chiefly used in connexion with the Relative Pronoun (see § 477), as also before Relative or illative particles, as, *quum, quod, quia, quoniam, ubi, enim*, etc. It takes the Indicative or Subjunctive Mood according as fact or hypothesis is indicated: as,

*Ego vero laudo: .. quippe quia magnarum saepe id remedium aegritudinum est, I do praise it, inasmuch as that is often the remedy for serious troubles.—Ter.*

*Quippe ubi nulla forent aeterno corpore, Inasmuch as in that case (i. e. on a certain hypothesis, which is denied) there would be no objects with eternal substance.—Lucr.*

*Leve nomen habet utraque res: quippe leve enim est hoc totum, risum movere, Both things have a trivial name: for in fact this whole matter of provoking laughter is trivial.—Cic.*

§ 493. *Quippe* is also used with the Indicative in giving an ironical reason:—

*Quippe vector fatis! Because forsooth I am forbidden by the fates!—Virg.*

*Movet me quippe lumen curiae! Forsooth that luminary of the senate-house disturbs me!—Cic.*

§ 494. *Quoniam* (*quum jam*), *since*, is used in stating a reason, and generally, but not always, takes the Indicative. as,

*Quam me stultitiam quoniam non est genus unum, insanire putas? What kind of folly (since there is more than one kind) do you think I am mad with?—Hor.*

*Quoniam res in id discrimen adducta est, Seeing matters have been brought to such a crisis.—Cic.*

*De suis privatim rebus ab eo petere coeperunt, quoniam civitati consulere non possent, They began to make petition to him concerning their own private concerns, seeing they could not consult the safety of the state.—Cic.*

(The Subj. appears to be used here to indicate that such was the reason by which they justified *themselves* merely : v. § 487.)

Itaque quoniam ipse pro se dicere non posset, verba fecit frater ejus, Accordingly, seeing he could not speak on his own behalf, his brother acted as spokesman.—Nep.

§ 495. Quando is sometimes used as a causal Conjunction, equivalent to quoniam. It then takes the Indicative. as,

Quando ita tibi lubet, vale, Since such is your humour, Good-bye.—Plaut.

Cur non sit orator, quando, quod difficilius est, oratorem facit? Why should not he be an orator, seeing that—what is harder,—he makes an orator?—Quint.

§ 496. Quoad, as long as, as far as, until, takes the Indicative or the Subjunctive, according as it refers to actual fact or not: as,

Ipse quoad potuit, fortissime restitit, He himself, so long as he was able, resisted most valiantly.—Caes.

Jubeo te salvare voce summā, quoad vires valent, I bid you good day, at the top of my voice; as far as my powers avail.—Plaut.

Ipse interea, quoad legiones collocasset, in Galliā morari constituit, He himself meanwhile resolved to remain in Gaul till he had put the legions into winter quarters.—Caes.

§ 497. Dum, whilst, is construed with the Indicative; dum, until, with the Indicative or the Subjunctive, according as a simple fact or a purpose is indicated: as,

Ea redemptio mansit.....dum iudices rejecti sunt, That bargain remained in force .....until the judges were rejected.—Cic.

Obsidio deinde per paucos dies magis quam oppugnatio fuit dum vulnus ducis curaretur, The siege then took the form of a blockade rather than an assault for a few days, so that meanwhile (dum) the general's wound might be cured.—Liv.

Iratis subtrahendi sunt ii, in quos impetum facere conantur, dum se ipsi colligant, Angry persons must have the objects of their attacks put out of their reach, so that meanwhile they may collect themselves.—Cic.

Mihi usque curae erit quid agas dum, quid egēris, sciro, It will continue to be matter of concern to me what step you take, until I have learned\* what step you have actually taken.—Cic.

\* The writer regards it as certain that he will learn.

§ 498. Dummōdo (also simply dum or modo), provided that (Hypothetical, § 425), is construed with the Subjunctive Mood: as,

Odērint, dum mētuant, Let them hate provided only they fear.—Suet.

Omnia recta et honesta negligunt, dummōdo potentiam consequantur, They disregard all that is right and honourable, if they can only obtain power.—Cic.

*Obs.* We also find *dummōdo nē, dum nē, mōdo nē*. as,

Sit summa in jure dicendo sēvēritas, *dummōdo ea nē cūriētur grātiā,*  
*Let there be the utmost severity in administering justice, so long as it does*  
*not fluctuate through partiality.*—Cic.

§ 499. *Dōnec, whilst, until,* has the same construction as *dum* (§ 497).

*Obs.* 1. *Dōnec* is rare in Cicero, and is not found at all in Caesar or Sallust.  
 But it is frequent in the poets, as well as in Livy and Tacitus.

*Obs.* 2. Livy and Tacitus sometimes use *dōnec* with the Subjunctive, when speaking of simple facts: as,

Elēphantī trēpidatiōnis āllquantum ēdēbant, *dōnec* quīctem ipse tīmor  
*fēcisset, The elephants made some disturbance, until their very fears made*  
*them quiet.*—Liv.

§ 500. The (so-called) Conjunctions, *antēquam, priusquam,* before that, take the Subjunctive when they refer to an hypothetical case: as,

In omnibus nēgōtiis, *priusquam aggrēdiāre, adhibenda est praepā-*  
*ratio diligens, In all undertakings, before you attempt anything, you must*  
*make careful preparation.*—Cic.

§ 501. When *antēquam, prinsquam, and postquam,* are used with reference to actual facts, they usually take the Indicative, but sometimes the Subjunctive: as,

(a.) *With Indicative.*

*Antēquam ad sententiam rēdeo, de me pauca dīcam, Before I return*  
*to the resolution, I will say a few words about myself.*—Cic.

*Non ante finitum est proelium, quam tribūnus militū interfectus*  
*est, The battle was not brought to a close till a tribune of soldiers had been*  
*slain.*—Liv.

*Ante ālīquanto quam tu nātus es, A good while before you were born.*—Cic.

*Neque ante dimisit eum quam fidem dedit ādōlescens ab his sacris se*  
*temperaturum, Nor did she leave him till the young man gave her his word*  
*that he would refrain from taking part in these rites.*—Liv.

*Dēcessit post annum quartum quam expulsus erat, He died four years*  
*after he had been banished.*—Nep.

(b.) *With Subjunctive.*

*Prins Placentiam pervēnere quam sātis sciret Hannibal ab Ticīno*  
*prōfectos, They reached Placentia before Hannibal was well aware that*  
*they had left the Ticinus.*—Liv.

*Interfuit pugnae nāvāli apud Sālāmīna, quae facta est prius quam*  
*poenā liberaretur, He was present at the naval battle of Salamis, which*  
*was fought before he was liberated from his penalty.*—Nep.

*Obs.* 1. The Subjunctive is rare when only a specification of priority or subsequence of Time is indicated.

*Obs.* 2. *Ante . . . quam, post . . . quam,* are usually separated from each other: see above examples.

§ 502. *Quamvis*, however much, and *licet*, although, used concessively, govern the Subjunctive: as,

*Quamvis* Elysios mirētur Graecia campos, *However much* Greece may admire her Elysian plains.—Virg.

Assentatio *quamvis* perniciosa sit, nocēre tamen nēmīni potest, nisi ei, qui eam recipit atque eā delectatur, *Flattery, however injurious it may be, can harm no one saving the man who takes it in and is gratified by it.*—Cic.

*Quamvis* sit magna (expectatio), tamen eam vinees, *Though expectation be ever so high, you will yet go beyond it.*—Cic.

*Licet* ipsa vitium sit ambitio, frēquenter tamen causa virtutum est, *Though ambition in itself is a fault, yet it is often the cause of virtues.*—Quint.

Vita brēvis est *licet* supra mille annos exeat, *Life is short even if it should exceed a thousand years.*—Sen.

Obs. 1. *Quamvis* is most often found in connexion with an adjective.

Obs. 2. In the poets and later writers *quamvis* is often equivalent to *quantum*, and takes the Indicative: as,

Erat inter eos dignitate regiā, *quamvis* cārēbat nōmine, *He enjoyed the rank of king amongst them, though he had not the title.*—Nep.

§ 503. *Quanquam*, etsi, etiāmsi, although, take either the Indicative or Subjunctive, according to the fundamental distinction between these Moods (§ 421): as,

*Quanquam*,—etsi priore foedere stārētur,—satis cautum erat de Saguntinis, *Although,—even if the former treaty were adhered to,—sufficient security had been taken for the Saguntines.*—Liv.

*Quanquam* festinas, non est mōra longa, *Though thou art in haste, it would involve no long delay.*—Hor.

Sed *quanquam* nēgent, nec virtūtes nec vitia crescēre, attāmen, etc., *But although they (the Stoics) should deny (it), affirming that neither virtues nor vices increase, yet, &c.*—Cic.

Obs. Later writers make *quanquam* govern the Subjunctive, whilst they use *quamvis* with the Indicative (§ 502. Obs.): as,

Phraates *quanquam* depūlisset exercitus dūcesque Rōmānos, cuncta vērērantium offleia ad Augustum vertērat, *Phraates, though he had repulsed the armies and generals of Rome, had yet directed all the observances of respect towards Augustus.*—Tac.

## CHAPTER XLVIII.—THE INFINITIVE MOOD.

504. The Infinitive Mood is an indeclinable verbal Substantive, capable of being used as a Nominative or an Accusative only. For the other Cases, the Gerund takes the place of the Infinitive

### 1. The Infinitive as Subject.

§ 505. The Infinitive is used as Subject chiefly in connexion with such quasi-impersonal Verbs as jūvat, delectat,

(it) *delights*; or such phrases as *pulchrum, dēcōrum est, (it) is fine, becoming, &c.*; as,

*Jūvat integros accēdēre fontes, atque haurīre, It is delightful to repair to untroubled fountains and quaff.*—Lucr.

(Here *accēdēre, haurīre*, form subjects to *jūvat*.)

*Dulce et dēcōrum est pro patriā mōri, It is sweet and glorious to die for one's country.*—Hor.

*Usque adeone scire tuum nīhil est, nīsi hoc sciat alter, Is your knowledge so utterly worth nothing, unless your neighbour know it!*—Pers.

(This use of an Infinitive with an *attributive Adjective* is rare, and not to be imitated.)

## 2. The Infinitive as Object.

§ 506. The use of the Infinitive as Direct Object is rare and chiefly confined to the poets: as,

*Quid sit fātūrum cras fūge quærēre, What is to be on the morrow forbear inquiring.*—Hor.

*Pro nōbis mitte precāri, Give over praying for us!*—Ov.

*Obs.* 1. For the Infinitive after Verbs of *willingness, ability, &c.*, see § 512.

*Obs.* 2. The Infinitive is sometimes used by the poets where a prose writer would employ the Gerund, or Gerundive: as,

*Necquequam . . vitābis . . cēlūrem sēqui Ajācem, In vain wilt thou try to avoid Ajax, swift to pursue.*—Hor.

(*Celer sequi* = *celer ad sequendum*.)

## 3. Accusative and Infinitive.

§ 507. Verbs of *saying, thinking, perceiving, knowing, hearing*, and the like, are followed by the Accusative and Infinitive in the proposition which they introduce: as,

*Thales Milesius āquam dixit esse initium rerum, Thales of Miletus affirmed that water was the first principle of all things.*—Cic.

*Sensit Animus se mōverī, The soul is conscious that it moves.*—Cic.

*Non enim ambrosia deos aut nectāre lactari arbitror, For I do not believe the gods delight in nectar and ambrosia.*—Cic.

*Scio tibi ita placere, I know that to be your opinion.*—Cic.

(The Subject or Accusative before *placere* is involved in *ita*.)

*Obs.* Occasionally after a Verb of *saying*, the Nominative is found with *esse*, being descriptive of the subject. This is called *attraction*: as,

*Vit esse p̄ratus . . se p̄rātum esse, He declares himself to be ready*—Hor. (Ep. 1, 7, 22)

This is a Greek construction (ὁ φησὶν ἑτοίμος εἶναι), and not found in good prose. Similarly, Virgil has, *sensit delapsus . . se delapsum esse, He perceived that he had fallen.* . . . (τεκ. ἤσθαρ' ἐμπεσών).

§ 508. Not only Verbs of the above kind, but Phrases equivalent or analogous to them are followed by the Accusative and Infinitive, as,

*Ea erat confessio, căput rĕrum Rōmam esse, That was a confession (=to confess) that Rome was at the head of affairs.—Liv.*

*Auctōres sūmus tūtam ibi mājestatem Rōmāni nōmīnis fōre, We will answer for it that the majesty of the Roman name shall be safe there.—Liv.*

*Caesārem certīorem faciunt sese non facile ab oppīdis vim hostium prōhibēre, They inform Caesar that they find it no easy matter to beat off the violence of the enemy from their towns.—Cacs.*

§ 509. Also many Verbs denoting various feelings of the mind, as, joy, grief, wonder, etc., may be followed by the Accusative and Infinitive: as,

*Salvum te advēnīre gaudeo, I rejoice that you come in safety.—Plaut.*

*Infēriōres non dōlĕre (dēbent) se a suis supĕrārī, Inferiors ought not to be grieved at being surpassed by their friends.—Cic.*

*Mīror te ad me nīhil scribere, I am surprised that you write nothing to me.—Cic.*

*Peccasse ĕnim se non anguntur, objurgārī mōleste fĕrunt, They are not sorry that they have done wrong; they take it amiss that they are cund fault with.—Cic.*

*Obs. 1.* But the above Verbs more frequently take *quod*, with Indicative or Subjunctive (v. § 438).

*Obs. 2.* Concerning the construction of *pŕidet, pŕiget, &c.*, v. § 241.

§ 510. Various impersonal phrases, such as *certum est*, it is certain; *mānifestum est*, it is manifest; *aequum, justum est*, it is fair or just; *ōpus, nĕcesse, est*, it is necessary; *sĕqŭitur*, it follows; *constat*, it is acknowledged; *expĕdit*, it is expedient, are followed by the Accusative and Infinitive: as,

*Certum est libĕros a pārentibus āmārī, It is certain that children are loved by their parents.—Quint.*

*Quae libĕrum scīre aequum est ādōlescentem, Things which it is proper a young gentleman should know.—Ter.*

*Constat ad sālūtem civium inventas esse lĕges, It is acknowledged that laws were devised for the safety of citizens.—Cic.*

*Nĕcesse est ĩgītŭr lĕgem hābĕrī in optimis rĕbus, It is a necessary consequence then, that law should be reckoned among the best of things.—Cic.*

*Lĕgem brĕvem esse ōportet, quō fācilis ab impĕritis tĕneātur, A law ought to be short, that it may the more readīly be comprehended by the illiterate.—Cic.*

*Cāto nĕgat jus esse, eum qui mīles non sit, cum hoste pugnāre, Cato affirms that it is not right for one who is not a soldier to fight with the enemy.—Cic.*

*Nec sĕqŭitur illīco esse causas immūtābīles, Nor does it follow therefore that there are immutable causes.—Cic.*

*Obs.* *Restat, reliquum est*, it remains; *proxīmum est*, the next thing is, and the like; as also sometimes, *sĕqŭitur*, it follows; *expĕdit*, it is expedient; *mos (moris) est*, it is a custom, are often followed by *ut* and the Subjunctive: as,





§ 513. When a predicative Adjective or Substantive is attached to the Infinitive Mood in the above cases, it agrees in case with the Subject of the Infinitive: as,

*Ubi vōles pater esse, ibi esto, When you choose to be the father, then you must be so.*—Plaut.

*Capio in tantis reipublicae pēriculis, me non dissolutum vidēri, I am desirous in such perils as menace the state, that I may not seem lax.*—Cic.

*Obs.* The Imperfect and not the Perfect Infinitive as in English, is used after the above Verbs: thus, *I wished to have been consul*, is *Vōlui me consulem esse, not fuisse*: see last example.

§ 514. Verbs signifying to begin, continue, or leave off; also to be or become accustomed, govern the Infinitive: as,

*Incipe, parve puer, matrem cognoscere risu, Begin, little child, to know thy mother by her smile!*—Virg.

*Illud jam mirari desino, That I am now ceasing to wonder at.*—Cic.

*Qui mentiri solet, pējorare consuevit, He who is in the habit of lying, has learned to be a perjurer.*—Cic.

§ 515. The Verbs to seem, to be thought, said, believed (*videor, ūtor, crēdor, dicor, fēror, nuntior*, etc.), are generally used personally (see § 232, *Obs.*): thus we find,

*Lectitavisse Plātonem studiōse Dēmōsthēnes (not Demosthenem) dicitur, Demosthenes is said to have been a most diligent reader of Plato.*—Cic.

*Lūna (not lunam) sōlis lūmine collustrari putatur, It is thought that the moon is illumined by the sun's light.*—Cic.

*Obs.* But the impersonal construction is not uncommon with *videor*.

## 5. The Infinitive in exclamations.

§ 516. The Infinitive is used in exclamations to denote surprise, without any preceding Verb being expressed: as,

*Mēnē desistere victam, (To think that) I should give over as vanquished!*—Virg.

*O Aeschine! haecēne flagitia facere te, O Aeschinus, to think that thou should disgrace yourself in this way!*—Ter.

*Adeōne rem rediisse, To think it should have come to this!*—Ter.

## 6. Historical Infinitive.

§ 517. The historical writers often use the Imperfect Infinitive instead of the corresponding tenses of the Indicative: as,

*Intereū Manlius in Etruriā plēbem sollicitāre, Meanwhile Manlius in Etruria was stirring up the common people to insurrection.*—Sall.

*Suo quisque mētū pēricula mēiri, Each one was measuring the extent of the danger by his own fears.*—Sall.

*Obs.* This use of the Infinitive is most frequent in descriptive passages: where it serves rather to place a circumstance in a lively manner before the eye, than merely to state that it took place.

## 7. Circumlocution for the Future Infinitive.

§ 518. Instead of the Future Infinitive, whether in the Active or Passive Voice, we often find *fore ut* with the Subjunctive: as,

*Clāmābant hōmīnes, fore ut ipsi se dii immortāles ulciscērentur, The men exclaimed, that the immortal gods themselves would avenge them.—Cic.*

Especially of course when a Verb wants the Supine: as,

*Spero fore ut contingat id nobis, I hope such a piece of good fortune may fall to us.—Cic.*

§ 519. Infinitive in Oratio Obliqua: see § 466.

## CHAPTER XLIX.—PARTICIPLES.

§ 520. The Participle expresses the same notion as the Verb to which it belongs, but in the form of an Adjective. It does not contain the *Copula* (§ 213, *Obs.* 1) involved in the Verb, and is chiefly used in the way of *Apposition*: as,

*Dionysius, cultros metuens tonsoris, candenti carbōne sibi adurēbat capillum, Dionysius, being afraid of barbers' razors, singed his hair with a live coal.—Cic.*

§ 521. Active Participles govern the same Case as the Verb to which they belong: as,

*Ipsa suā Dido concidit ūsa mānu, Dido fell, by (Lit., using) her own hand.—Ov*

*Puer bōne sibi fidens, A youth trusting well to himself.—Cic.*

*Obs.* When a Participle is used as an Adjective denoting *disposition* or *capacity* for, it governs the Genitive: see § 277.

§ 522. The Latin Verb is deficient in its Participles, having in the Active Voice only an *Imperfect* and a *Future*; and in the Passive only a *Perfect* and the Gerundive Participle of *Necessity*. Thus the Active Voice has no *Perfect* Participle and the Passive no *Imperfect*.

*Obs.* 1. Deponents are the only Verbs in Latin which regularly form a *Perfect* Participle Active: as, *ādeptus, having acquired*; *ūsus, having used*, &c. (See § 103.)

*Obs.* 2. The lack of an *Imperfect* Participle Passive is in some cases supplied by the Gerundive: as,

*Multi in equis parandis adhibent eūram, in amicis eligendis negligentes sunt, Many take pains in getting horses (Lit. horses being got), but are careless in choosing friends.—Cic.*

This construction of the Gerundive is explained in § 537.

§ 523. The *Imperfect Participle Active* represents a thing as *going on* at the time spoken of. as,

*Cūrio ad ſeum adducit magnū auri pondus Samnites quum attul-  
ſſet, repudiari eunt.* When the Samnites brought Curio as he was ſitting  
at his fire ſide a great weight of gold, their offers were rejected. — Cic.

*Scripta tua jam diu expectans non audeo tamen ſcribere.* While  
expecting for a long while your writings, I yet do not venture to  
write you for them. — Cic.

(c). Instead of the *Imperfect Participle*, *quum* with the *Past-Imperfect* is  
often used : as,

*Audiui quum diceret, I heard him ſaying.* — Cic.

§ 524. The *Perfect Participle Active* represents a Person as *having done* something at the time spoken of. It is found  
only in *Deponents* and in certain *Active Verbs*.

The following is a list of the principal *Active Verbs*  
which have a *Perfect Participle* with an *Active* ſenſe :—

Audeo,	<i>I dare,</i>	ausus,	<i>having dared.</i>
Gaudeo,	<i>I rejoice,</i>	gāviſus,	<i>having rejoiced, rejoicing.</i>
Solco,	<i>I am wont,</i>	ſolitus,	<i>having been wont.</i>
Fido & comp.,	<i>I truſt,</i>	fiſus,	<i>having truſted.</i>
Jūro,	<i>I ſwear,</i>	jūrātus,	<i>having ſworn.</i>
Œeno,	<i>I dine,</i>	coenātus,	<i>having dined.</i>
Prandeo,	<i>I breakfaſt,</i>	pranſus	<i>having breakfaſted.</i>
Nūbo,	<i>I am married,</i>	nupta	<i>having married.</i>
Ōdi,	<i>I hate,</i>	ōſus	<i>having hated, hating.</i>

§ 525. Some *Deponents* uſe their *Perfect Participle* both  
in an *Active* and a *Paſſive* ſenſe : the following are among  
the principal ones that do ſo :—

Adīpiſcor	<i>I attain to,</i>	ādēptus, <i>having attained, or hav- ing been attained.</i>
Cōmītor,	<i>I accompany,</i>	cōmītātus, &c.
Confīteor,	<i>I confeſs,</i>	confessus, &c
Mētor,	<i>I meaſure,</i>	menſus.
Expērior,	<i>I try,</i>	expertus.
Mēdītor,	<i>I practiſe,</i>	mēdītātus.
Teſtor,	<i>I call to witneſs,</i>	teſtātus.
Mōdēror,	<i>I control,</i>	mōdērātus.
Pōpūlor,	<i>I deſtroy,</i>	pōpūlātus.
Partior,	<i>I divide,</i>	partītus.
Pāciſcor,	<i>I bargain,</i>	pactus.

§ 526. The want of a *Perfect Participle* in other Verbs  
is ſupplied in two ways :

(A.) By the Perfect Participle *Passive* in agreement with its Substantive as an *Adjective Absolute*.

(B.) By *quum* with the Subjunctive Mood.

(A.)

Mucius silus in castra Persennae venit, eumque interficere, *proposit* sibi morte, conatus est, *Mucius went to the camp of Persenna, and having set death* (Lat., death having been set before his eyes, attempted to slay him.—Cic.)

Cognito Caesaris adventu, Arminius legatos ad eum mittit, *Having heard of Caesar's arrival, Arminius sent ambassadors to him.*—Cic.

Dextrâ Hercules datâ, eum se accipere ait, *Hercules offering his right hand, said he accepted the woman.*—Liv.

(B.)

Epaminondas *quum* videret Lacedaemonios apud Mantinæam, atque ipse gravi vulnere se exanimari videret, quævit, salvus esset e pugna, *Epaminondas, having captured the Lacedaemonians in the battle of Mantinea, and seeing himself to be dying of a bad wound, asked if he should be safe.*—Cic.

For more examples see § 352.

Obs. Similarly the want of an Imperfect Participle in the Passive may be supplied by *quum* and the Present or Imperfect Subjunctive, as,

*Quum civitas in libere assidue responderet urbes finium, The people being occupied in the incessant labour of restoring the cities.*—Liv.

(Similarly with *dam* and the Present Indicative, § 353.)

§ 527. The *Future Participle Active* is used to denote (1) simple *futurity*; (2) *intention* or *purpose*: as,

Deli morituro, O *Dellius, who art ever ready to die.*—Hor.

Perius recitit, belli eam de integro testaturus, *Perius returned intending to try the chances of war afresh.*—Liv.

Obs. The *Future Participle* occurs most frequently in combination with the verb *sum*.

§ 528. The Nominative of the Perfect Participle is sometimes used as an Abstract Substantive: as,

Nam priusquam tu ipse, *malice*, et uli consuleris, recte non quiescis, *For before you make a consultation, you can't counsel, and when you have taken counsel, you can't prevent it.*—Sall.

Nihil priusquam *volueris* habere, *They were not in a position to restrain.*—Sall.

§ 529. The use of the *Gerundive Participle* is explained in the next chapter.

§ 530. *Frequent use of Participles.* Participles are very often used in Latin, so as to avoid the use of Conjunctions when several predications are united in a sentence: as,

*Leti potes post, Post te impetud and his precibus.*—Ov.

*Rursus in obliquum verso pertrahit aratro, Again he turns the plough, and breaks up the soil in a cross direction.*—Virg.

*Tyrtæus carmina compōita exercitui recitavit, Tyrtæus composed songs and repeated them to the army.*—Justin.

## CHAPTER L.—THE GERUND AND GERUNDIVE PARTICIPLE.

§ 531. The Gerund is a Verbal Substantive used in all cases except the Nominative and Vocative: as, *rēgendi*, of ruling; *rēgendo*, to, for, or by ruling; *ad rēgendum*, for the purpose of ruling.

*Obs.* Instead of a Nominative Case of the Gerund, the Infinitive Mood is used (see § 505).—In such sentences as *pārendum est*, we must obey; *mōriendum est*, we must die; the form in -dum is the neuter of the Gerundive Participle, not the Gerund. See § 536.

§ 532. The Cases of Gerunds have the same construction as the corresponding Cases of ordinary Substantives: as,

*Gen.*—*Practereāmus igitur praecepta Lātīnē lōquendi* (§ 263), *Let us then pass over the rules for speaking Latin.*—Cic.

*Dat.*—*Āqua nitrōsa utilis est bibendo* (§ 298), *Water full of natron is useful for drinking.*—Plin.

*Acc.*—*Brēve tempus aetātis sātis longum est ad hēnē hōnestōque vivendum* (§ 248), *The brief time of life is long enough for living virtuously and honourably.*—Cic.

*Ab.*—*Orātor in dicendo* (§ 331) *exercitatus*, *An orator practised in speaking.*—Cic.

*Obs.* The Accusative Case of the Gerund is found only with Prepositions, and cannot be used as the direct object after a transitive verb.

§ 533. The Gerund, though virtually a Substantive, still retains the power of governing its proper case as a Verb: as,

*Parsimōnia est scientia vitandi sumptūs supervācuos*, *Economy is the science of avoiding needless expense.*—Sen.

*Publica prōtendo tua nequicquam serves*, *By betraying the public wealth, you would in vain try to preserve your own.*—Liv.

§ 534. The Gerundive Participle signifies that a thing is necessary or proper to be done. It is always Passive in meaning, whether coming from a Verb strictly Passive or from a Deponent. It has the following modes of construction:—

(A.) It is used in the Nominative Case along with the Verb *est*, *sunt*, etc., in agreement with a

Substantive, to signify that something *ought to be done*.

(B.) It is used (impersonally) in the *Neuter* Gender along with the Verb *est*, with the same force as in the former case.

(C.) It is used in all Cases except the Nominative or Vocative, in agreement with a Substantive, as equivalent to a Gerund governing the Accusative.—NOTE. *The agent or doer in both (A) and (B) is put in the Dative Case.*

§ 535. (A.) If the verb governs an Accusative, the Gerundive agrees with the Nominative of its substantive: as,

*Diligentia est cōlenda, We must practise diligence.*—Cic.

Obs. Such a construction as *poenas timentum est, we must fear punishment* (Lucr.), is exceptional, and is borrowed from the Greek.

§ 536. (B.) If the verb governs any other case than the Accusative the Gerundive is used impersonally with *est* in the Nominative Singular Neuter: as,

*Rēsistendum sēnectūti est.....pugnandum tanquam contra morbum, sic contra sēnectūtem, We must resist old-age; we must combat with old-age as with a disease.*—Cic.

*Corpōri subvēniendum est, We must aid the body.*—Cic.

Obs. 1. In such cases the Gerundive Participle governs the same Case as the Verb to which it belongs. (See examples.)

Obs. 2. The Dative of the Agent is frequently omitted. (See examples.)

Obs. 3. The Gerundives of Deponent Verbs which govern the Ablative are used both impersonally and in agreement with Substantives in the Nominative case: as,

*Ūtendum ērit verbis, We shall have to make use of words.*—Cic.

*Non p̄randa nōbis solum sapiētia sed etiam fruēda est, We must not only get wisdom, but also enjoy the use of it.*—Cic.

Obs. 4. Instead of the Dative of the agent, the Ablative with *a* or *ab* may be used to avoid confusion: as,

*Quibus est a vobis cōsulendum, Whose interests should be consulted by you.*—Cic. (Manil. 2, extr.)

§ 537. (C.) The Gerundive is frequently used instead of the Gerund, when the verb governs the Accusative. The following changes then take place:

1. The Accusative is put in the same case as the Gerund.

2. The Gerund is changed into the Gerundive.

3. The Gerundive being an Adjective agrees with its Substantive in gender, number, and case: thus,

*Ars puēros edūcandi difficilis est*

becomes

*Ars puērōrum edūcandōrum difficilis est*

in the following way: (1.) The Substantive *pueros* is put in the same case as the Gerund *educandi*; consequently *puerorum*. (2.) The Gerund *educandi* is changed into the Gerundive *educandus*, *a*, *um*. (3.) The Gerundive is made to agree with *puerorum* in gender, number, and case; consequently, *educandorum*. For example:

*Nihil Xenophonti tam regale videtur, quam studium agri colendi.*  
Nothing seems to Xenophon so princely as the pursuit of tilling the soil.—Cic.

*Regulus retinendi officii causâ cruciatum subiit voluntarium.* *Regulus*  
for the sake of keeping to his duty submitted to voluntary torture.—Cic.

*Obs. 1.* So also are used the Gerundive Participles of *utor*, *fruor*, *patior* *rescor*, *fungor*: as,

*Ad agrum fruendum invitât atque allecat seneectus.* *Old age invites and tempts us to the enjoyment of the country.*—Cic.

*Hostes in spem potiundorum castrorum venerant.* *The enemy had got hopes of obtaining possession of the camp.*—Caes.

*Obs. 2.* The Gerund is used in preference to the Gerundive, when the use of the latter would cause any ambiguity, especially when the Object of the Verbal Substantive is a neuter Adjective: as,

*(Pars honesti) in tribuendo suum cuique versatur.* *A part of virtue consists in giving to every one his own.*—Cic.

§ 538. The Dative of the Gerundive is very often used with its Substantive to denote a *Purpose* or *Result*: as,

*Valerius consul comitia collegae subrogando habuit.* *Valerius the consul held the elections for choosing him a fresh colleague.*—Liv.

*Decemviri legibus scribundis.* *Decemvirs for framing a code of laws.*—Liv.

*Tiberius quasi firmandae valetudini in Campaniam concessit.* *Tiberius withdrew into Campania ostensibly for the purpose of recruiting his health.*—Tac.

(But here Cic. would have written *ad firmandam valetudinem*.)

*Obs. 1.* This use of the Gerundive is most frequent in describing the function of an official person or body: as in the expressions, *Triumviri agris dandis*, &c. (See examples above.)

*Obs. 2.* To this head belong the phrases, *esse solvendo* (*sc.*, *aeri*, for which *aere* also occurs, *alieno*), *to be capable of paying, solvent*; *oneri ferendo* *esse*, *to be adequate to the bearing of the burden*.

§ 539. The Gerundive is sometimes found with a similar meaning in the Genitive Case: as,

*Regium imperium, quod initio conservandae libertatis atque augendae reipublicae fuerat.* *The kingly government, which at the outset, had tended to the preservation of liberty and the increase of the Commonwealth.*—Sall.

*Obs.* This is to be regarded as a *Genitive of Quality* (§ 276).

§ 540. The following usage has been variously explained:—

*In castra vēnērunt causā purgandi sē,* They came into the camp for the purpose of clearing the *selves*.—Caes.

(Where we might have expected *purgandorum*.)

*Non vēreer nē quis hoc me vestri adhortandi (adhortandorum) causā magnifice lōqui existimet,* I have no fear that any one will think I am herein speaking boastfully for the sake of encouraging you.—Liv.

*Aliquid facere (eundi) (= ea § 537, Obs. 2, quae secundum naturam sunt, adipsi eundi causā,* To do a thing for the sake of attaining to those things which are in accordance with nature.—Cic.

*Permissā.....licentiā diripiendi (= diripiendorum pōmōrum,* Giving leave to pilfer the fruit.—Suet.

Obs. It is possible that the Gerund may in the above cases be treated as an ordinary Substantive, as we say, “The clearing of themselves,” “The doing of those things which are, &c.”

§ 541. The Gerund (or Gerundive) is sometimes used in the Ablative Case, after the manner of an *Ablative Absolute* when it has the force of an *Imperfect Tense*: as,

*L. Cornēlius, complexus Appium, non cui simulabat consulendo, dirēmit certamēn, Lucius Cornēlius embracing Appius—being concerned in reality not for the person for whom he pretended—put an end to the dispute.*—Liv.

*Ut non pētisse Saguntinos, sed sērie, finitimis dēmitis gentibus, jungendoque, tractus ad id bellum valēri posset,* So that he might seem not to have singled out the Saguntines for attack, but in the natural order, after having subdued the neighbouring tribes, and as he was linking them together, to have been dragged into the war.—Liv.

(In the above examples, *consulendo*, *jungenlo* = *quum consuleret*, *jungeret*.)

## CHAPTER LI.—THE SUPINES.

§ 542. The two Supines in *um* and *n* are properly the Accusative and Ablative Cases of Verbal Substantives of the Fourth Declension.

§ 543. The Supine in *um* is used only after Verbs signifying motion, and denotes a Purpose. It is thus equivalent to *ut* with the Subjunctive: as,

*Fābius Pictor Delphos ad oraculum veniens est solūtus quibus precibus deus posset placare, Fābius Pictor went to Delphi, to the oracle; in order to enquire by what prayers they might propitiate the gods.*—Liv.

*Adversus imp (or of several persons, adversus discipulos), To go to school.*—Cic.



Themistocles.....Argos *hābitūm concessit*, *Themistocles retired to live at Argos*.—Nep.

*Obs.* The phrase *ire perditum*, *to set about deliberately to destroy* (Cic., Sall.), should be noted.

§ 544. The Supine in *u* (which is properly an Ablative of *Manner*, § 311) is used after such Adjectives as *jūcundus*, *pleasant*; *fācilis*, *easy*; *hōnestus*, *honourable*; *crēdibilis*, *credible*; *mīrābilis*, *wonderful*; and the like, with their contraries, to denote in *what respect* they are predicated of anything: as,

*Quid est tam jūcundum cognītu atque auditu, quam sāpientibus sententiis grāvibusque verbis ornāta ōrātiō?* *What is so delightful, whether in the learning or the hearing, as speech adorned with wise sentiments and weighty words?*—Cic.

*Id dictu quam re fācilis*, *That were easier in the saying than in the doing*.—Liv.

*Nēfas est dictu*, *There were an impiety in so saying!*—Cic.

*Obs.* 1. Tacitus uses the Supine in *u* instead of the Infinitive Mood after the Verb *pūdet*: as,

*Pūdet dictu*, *I am ashamed as I say it!*—(Agr. 32.)

*Obs.* 2. The Supine in *u* may often be translated by the English Infinitive Mood: as,

*Mīrābile dictu*, *Marvellous to relate!*—Virg.

## CHAPTER LII.—ADVERBS.

§ 545. Adverbs qualify Verbs, Adjectives, and (other) Adverbs. To these parts of speech they sustain a corresponding relation to that of the Adjective to the Substantive; as in the following examples:

*Tantus amor*, *So great love.*

(Substantive qualified by Adjective.)

*Adco amāre*, *To love to such a degree.*

*Adco amans*, *So loving (affectionate).*

*Adco amanter*, *So lovingly.*

(Verb, Adjective, and Adverb, qualified by corresponding Adverb.)

§ 546. In the following cases an Adverb is found joined with a Substantive:

(1.) In the case of the Numeral Adverbs *it̄rum*, *tertium*, *quartum*, etc., as denoting the number of times an office has been held: as,

*Consul it̄rum, tertium*, *Consul for the second, third time, etc.*—Liv. (Where in Greek the word *consul* would appear as a participle: ὑπατεύων.)

- (2.) Some Adverbs of place : as, *circa* (very often),  
*extrinsecus*, and some others : as,

*Multae circa civitates, Many surrounding states.*—Liv.  
*Gravibus superne ictibus conflictabantur, They encountered severe blows from above.*—Tac.

- (3.) With some Substantives used participially : as,  
*Populus late rex, A nation widely ruling.*—Virg.  
(A poetical construction.)

- (4.) Occasionally with other Adverbs : as,

*Inter duo simul bella, Between two wars going on at once.*—Liv.

*Nulla magnopere clade accepta, No serious disaster having been suffered.*—Liv.

*Pacne miles, Hardly (yet) a common soldier.*—Cic.

§ 547. *Partim*.—The Adverb *partim* (originally accus. of pars) is often used as the Subject of a sentence ; especially where *partim . . . partim* = *alii . . . alii* : as,

*Eorum autem beneficiorum partim ejusmodi sunt ut ad universos cives pertineant, partim singulos ut attingant, Of these acts of beneficence, some are of a nature to extend to one's fellow-countrymen generally, others to affect individuals only.*—Cic.

*Obs.* In the above example *partim* governs the Genitive (of *beneficiorum*) according to § 271.

*N.B.* Concerning the use of a neuter Adjective as an Adverb, see § 344.

§ 548. The Comparative of Adverbs is in prose usually followed by *quam* : as,

*Vix me citius defecit quam nomina (not nominibus), Vix would sooner fail me than names.*—Cic.

*Odiam multo pejus hunc quam Clodium ipsum (rather than Clodium ipso), I hated him worse than Clodium himself.*—Cic.

*Obs.* 1. But in verse the Ablative is more common : as, *blandus Orpheo, more bewitchingly than Orpheus ; cautus sanguine viperino, (to avoid anything) more cautiously than viper's blood.*—Hor.

*Obs.* 2. Also in short phrases, the Ablative is preferred in prose : as, *magis citius, more than usual.*—Liv. 1, *dona citius, sooner said than done.*—Petr. 1. To these we may add the proverb, *lacrata nil citius areat, Nothing dries faster than tears.*—Cic.

*Obs.* 3. For the construction of *amplius, plus, minus*, see § 349.

§ 549. Adverbs are compared together in the same way as Adjectives (see § 330) : as,

*Avellens qualem fortissimus, More rapidly than ordinarily.*—Tac.

§ 550. Some Adverbs derived from Adjectives govern a Dative : see § 299.

§ 551. *Sic, Ita.*—*Sic* is derived from *hic* and *ita* from *is*, and the two Adverbs strictly differ from each other as do the Pronouns from which they are derived. Thus *sic* takes the place of a description, while *ita* simply makes reference to something in the context : as,

*Macte virtute puer : sic itur ad astra, A blessing on thy valour, boy! Thus do men go heavenwards.*—Virg.

(Compare the well-known *Sic vos non vobis*, etc.)

*Ut binæ regum faciès, ita corpōra gentis, As there are two species of kings [queen-bees], so there are (two) sorts among their subjects.*—Virg.

*Ut quisque est vir optimus, ita difficillime esse alios imprōbos suspicatur, Just in proportion to a man's excellence [in that proportion] does he find most difficulty in suspecting others to be evil.*—Cic.

*Obs.* From the two preceding examples it will be seen that *ita* is the regular correlative of *ut*.

§ 552. An Adverb occasionally appears as Predicate after the Verb *to be* : see § 213, *Obs* 2.

## CHAPTER LIII.—PREPOSITIONS.

§ 553. Prepositions serve to show the relation of one Substantive to another, or to some other word in the sentence.

§ 554. Some Prepositions are found with the Accusative only; others with the Ablative only; some with the Accusative or Ablative, according to the sense; and some with either the Accusative or Ablative indiscriminately.

*Obs.* *Tenus* is sometimes found with the Genitive : see § 557.

§ 555. Lists of the Prepositions, with the cases they govern, are given in §§ 134-137. The following are the principal uses of the several Prepositions. For further details the student is referred to the Dictionary.

### § 556. I. With the Accusative only.

1. *Ad*.—*To*, *at*, or *near*; *for*, in relation to, in comparison with : as,

*Ventum erat ad Vestæ (sc. aedem), We had come to the temple of Vesta.*—Hor.

*Ad quintum lapidem, By the fifth milestone.*—Nep.

*Ad arbitrium cuncta agit.*

Ad Veios, *Before the walls of Veii*.—Liv.

Omnēs ad unum, *All to a single man*.—Cic.

Ad unguem, *To the very nail*, i. e. *perfectly*.—Hor.

Ad nuptias cōquēre, *To cook for a wedding-feast*.—Plaut.

Natus ad agendum, *Born for action*.—Cic.

Agere ad praescriptum.—*To act according to express rule*.—Caes.

Vir bonus et non illiteratus, sed nihil ad Persium, *A respectable man and no mean scholar, but nothing in comparison to Persius*.—Cic.

Obs. Ad Rōmam, *before the walls of Rome, in the vicinity of Rome*, must be distinguished from Rōmae, *actually at Rome*. Before numerals ad is occasionally an Adverb; as,

Ocellis ad hominum milibus quattuor, *As many as 4000 being slain*.—Caes. (H. G. 2, 33.)

Ad duo milia et trēcenti, *As many as 2300*.—Liv. (10, 17.)

## 2. Adversus, adversum.—Used of motion, direction, disposition, *towards*, or *against*: as

Adversus montem, *Towards or up a hill*.—Caes.

Pietas iustitia adversus deos (est), *Piety is justice in relation to the gods*.—Cic.

Adversus lēges, *Contrary to the laws*.—Cic.

Adversus vēterem impēratorem comparabitur, *He will be matched against a veteran general*.—Liv.

Obs. Adversus differs from contra in that it does not, like the latter, always signify *opposition*: from erga, in having a greater variety of applications [see No. 9].

## 3. Ante.—Before; of place, time, comparison: as,

Ante ostium stare, *To stand before the door*.—Ter.

Ante urbem conditam, *Before the building of the city*.—Cic.

Ante omnes carissimus, *Before all most beloved*.—Nep.

Obs. Note especially the phrase Ante diem A.D. in giving the day of the month, as, ante diem xvi Kalendarum Januariarum (i. e. 2nd of December), where the preposition strictly belongs to Kalendarum, but is made to govern diem as well.

## 1. Apud.—Near; in the presence of; in the writings of: as,

Apud Mantinonem, *In the neighbourhood of Mantua*.—Nep.

Apud Lucanum, *In the house of Lucan*.—Cic.

Verba apud orationem facere, *To make a speech before the people*.—Cic.

Apud Xenophontem, *In the writings of Xenophon*.—Cic.

Obs. Apud is sometimes used with names of towns in the sense of *at* or *in*, as,

Apud urbem Neam, *In the city of Nea*.—Tac. (Ann. 1, 3.)

5. *Circum, circā.*—*Around, about, near about.* These forms are used somewhat differently

(a.) *circum.*—More precise than *circa*, *all round*: as,

*Urbes quae circum Cāpuam sunt, The cities which lie round about Capua.*—Cic.

*Terra circum axem se convertit, The earth turns round upon its axis.*—Cic.

*Ligāto circum collum sūdārio, With a handkerchief tied round one's neck.*—Suet.

*Omnium flagitiōrum (= flagitiosorum) circum se cātervas hābēbat, He had about his person gangs of all kinds of profligate characters.*—Sall.

(b.) *circā.*—Of place; *round, about, in the neighbourhood of*: of time; *about, towards*: of number (= *circiter*); *near about*: of relation; *about, respecting*: as,

*Circa montem Amānum, In the vicinity of Mount Amanus.*—Caes.

*Lēgātōs circa vicinas gentes mīsit, He dispatched ambassadors round to the neighbouring nations.*—Liv.

*Circa eandem hōram, About the same time of the day.*—Liv.

*Circa quingentos Rōmānorum, About 500 of the Romans.*—Liv.

*Circa verba dissensio, A dispute about words.*—Quint.

*Obs.* *Circa* in the sense of *concerning* (usually *de* with *abl.*) is chiefly found in later authors.

6. *Circiter.*—*About*: as a preposition used only with numerals: as,

*Octāvam circiter hōram, About the eighth hour.*—Hor.

N.B. But *circiter* is usually an Adverb.

7. *Cis, citrā.*—*On this side of*: *without* (rare): as,

*Citra or eis Rhēnum, On this side the Rhine.*—Caes.

*Citrā speciem, Without* lit. *on this side, on the wrong side of* beauty.—Tac.

*Citra fidem, Beyond belief.*—Tac.

*Obs.* The form *citra* alone is used in the latter (figurative) sense.

8. *Contrā.*—*Opposite to*; *against*: as,

*Inſulae tertium lātus est contrā septentriones, The third side of the island is opposite to (faces) the north.*—Caes.

*Contrā nātūram, offīcium, Contrary to nature, duty.*—Cic.

Contra Populum Romanum conjurare, *To conspire against the Roman people.*—Cæs.

*Obs.* For the distinction between contra and adversus see above.

9. **Erga.**—*Towards* ; of feeling or conduct : as,

Divina bonitas erga homines, *The divine goodness towards men.*—Cic.

*Obs.* Erga is almost always used of friendly feelings or conduct, contra being used of hostility.

10. **Extra.**—*Outside of, free from ; except* (rare) : as,

Extra portam Collinam, *Outside the Colline gate.*—Cic.

Extra noxiam, *Free from guilt.*—Ter.

Extra ducem paucosque praeterea, *Excepting their leader and a few besides.*—Cic.

11. **Infrā.**—*Beneath* ; of place or relation : as,

Infra coelum et sidera, *Beneath the sky and stars.*—Tac.

Infra se, *Beneath oneself* (in figurative sense).—Cic.

12. **Inter.**—*Between, among ; during* (esp. with gerunds) : as,

Inter Padum atque Alpes, *Between the Po and the Alps.*—Liv.

Inter tela versari, *To be in the midst of weapons.*—Cic.

Inter falcarios, *In the quarter or street of the shoe-makers.*—Cic.

Inter horam tertiam et quartam, *Between the third and fourth hour.*—Liv.

Hæc inter coenæ dictavi, *The above I dictated in the course of supper.*—Cic.

Inter bibulam, *During drinking.*—Just.

Hi omnes inter se differunt, *These all differ from one another.*—Cæs.

Pueri inter se loquuntur, *The boys talk each other.*—Cic.

Quod inter nos licet, *Between ourselves.*—Cic.

13. **Intrā.**—*Within* ; of place, time, or any other relation : as,

Intra muros, *Within the walls.*—Cic.

Intra sex menses, *Within the last six months.*—Plaut.

Intra centum, *Within one hundred.*—Liv.

Intra legem, *Within the law ; the limit prescribed by law.*—Cic.

14. **Juxtā.**—*Hard by ; next to* : as,

Juxta murum, *Close to the wall.*—Cæs.

Homo juxta Varronem doctissimus, *The most learned man after Varro.*—Gell.

*Obs.* Juxta differs either from the word or person.

15. *Ob.*—*Before* (of place); *on account of*: as,

Mors ob oculos saepe versata est, *Death was often before his eyes.*—Cic.

Ob rem iudicandam pecuniam accipere, *To take a bribe for one's judicial vote.*—Cic.

Mortem ob rempublicam obire, *To encounter death on account of the state.*—Tac.

16. *Penes.*—*In the possession, or power of*: as,

Quem penes est potestas, *To whom belongs the power.*—Cic.

Penes te es, *Are you in your senses?*—Hor.

Hi (servi) centum dies penes accusatorem (erant), *These slaves remained in the hands of the accuser one hundred days.*—Cic.

*Obs.* Penes is often put after its case, especially a Relative.

17. *Për.*—*Through, throughout, during; by means of; in the way of; on account of; by* (in oaths): as,

Per agros vagari, *To roam over the country.*—Liv.

Per hiemem, *Throughout the winter.*—Cato.

Per indutias, *In time of truce.*—Liv.

Per exploratores cognoscere, *To learn by means of scouts.*—Caes.

Per iram facere (aliquid), *To do anything through anger.*—Cic.

Per summum dedecus vitam amittere, *To lose life in circumstances of extreme disgrace.*—Cic.

Per actatem, *Through (on account of) age.*—Cic.

Per deos atque homines, *By gods and men.*—Cic.

*Obs.* 1. The meaning *on account of* is rare.

*Obs.* 2. In adjurations *per* is often separated from its Accusative: as,

Per ego te deos oro, *By the gods I entreat you!*—Ter.

Per ego te, inquit, fili, quaecunque iura liberos jungunt parentibus, precor, *By whatever claims bind children to their parents, I entreat thee, my son!*—Liv.

18. *Põne.*—*Behind* (rare): as,

Põne castra, *Behind (in the rear of) the camp.*—Liv.

Vinctae põne tergum manus, *Hands bound behind the back.*—Tac.

19. *Post.*—*Behind* (in lit. and fig. sense); *after*: as,

Post me erat Aegina, ante Mëgara, *Behind me was Aegina, before me Megara.*—Sulpic. ap. Cic.

Post tergum, *Behind one's back.*—Caes.

Nëque erat Lydia post Chloen, *Nor was Lydia behind Chloe (in favour).*—Hor.

Post M. Brütum proconsulem, *After the proconsulate of M. Brutus.*—Cic.

Maxīma post hūmīnum mēmōriam classis, *The largest fleet in (lit. since) the memory of men.*—Nep.

Obs. Post is usually preferred by classical writers to pōne, which, as a preposition, became nearly obsolete.

20. Praeter.—*Along, past (of motion); besides, except, contrary to:* as,

Praeter castra Caesāris cōpias suas transduxit, *He marched his forces past the camp of Caesar.*—Cacs.

Praeter cētēros lābōrāre, *To labour beyond (more than) the rest.*—Cic.

Amīcum tibi nēmīnem esse praeter Lucullum, *I see you have no friend except Lucullus.*—Cic.

Praeter spem, ōpiniōnem, *Contrary to expectation.*—Cic.

21. Prōpē.—*Near to; usually of place:* as,

Prōpe oppīdum, *Near to the town.*—Cacs.

Prōpe lūcem, *Towards daybreak.*—Suet.

Prōpe sēditionem ventum est, *It came very near to a mutiny.*—Tac.

Obs.—Prōpe is often an Adverb, and followed by the Preposition ab (a). So also is the compar. adverb prōpius, and less frequently proxīme.

22. Proptēr.—*Near (close) to; on account of (the most frequent meaning):* as,

Propter Plātōnis stātūam consēdimus, *We sat down close to the statue of Plato.*—Cic.

Pārēre lēgibus propter mētum, *To obey the laws on account of fear.*—Cic.

Obs. Propter sometimes follows its case.

23. Sēcundum.—*By, along; directly after, following upon; according to:* as,

Iter sēcundum māre facēre, *To journey along the sea-coast.*—Cic.

Sēcundum vindēmiam, *Directly after the vintage.*—Cato.

Vivēre sēcundum nātūrā, *To live according to nature.*—Cic.

Sēcundum libertātem vindicias dāre, *To grant a claim in favour of personal freedom.*—Liv.

24. Suprā.—*Above (in lit. or fig. sense), beyond:* as,

Supra me Atticus (accūbuerat), infra Verrius, *Next above me sat Atticus, below me Verrius.*—Cic.

Ille supra sēgētes nāvigat, *One sails over corn-fields.*—Ov.

Dux hostium cum exercītu supra cāput est, *The enemy hovers over our head with an army.*—Sall.

Supra millia vīginti, *Beyond (more than) 20,000.*—Liv.

Supra mōdum, *Beyond measure.*—Liv.

Obs. It is rarely used of time: as,

Paullo supra hanc mēmōriam, *A little before the present date.*—Caes.



25. Trans.—*Across, on the farther side of*: as,

Trans mare currunt, *They hurry across the sea.*—H. r.

Trans Tiberim habitat, *He lives on the farther side of the Tiber.*—H. r.

26. Ultra.—*Beyond*: as,

Cis Padum ultraque, *On the nearer and farther side of the Po.*—Liv.

Ultra modum, *Beyond a certain limit.*—Cic.

Ultra fas, *Beyond what is right.*—H. r.

Ne sutor ultra crepidam, *Let not the shoemaker go beyond his last.*—Vet. Prov.

27. Versus.—*Of direction towards (only of local direction)*: as,

Arpinum versus, *Towards Arpinum.*—Cic.

Italiam versus navigare, *To sail in the direction of Italy.*—Sulpic. ap. Cic.

Obs. 1. Versus is often used in combination with *ad* or *in*: as,

T. Labium ad Oceanum versus proficisci jubet, *He directs T. Labienus to set out in the direction of the Ocean.*—Caes.

Obs. 2. Versus is put after its case, like the English *-wards*.

## § 557. II. With the Ablative only.

1. Ab. ā.—*Of separation or origin, from, by*: of proximity, *on the side of*; to denote the agent after a Passive Verb: as,

Non longe a finibus Tolosatium absunt, *They are not far from the territories of the Tolosates.*—Caes.

Rem omnem a principio audies, *You shall hear the whole matter from the beginning.*—Ter.

A puero, *From a boy* = *from boyhood.*—Cic.

Cornix est ab laeva, *The crow is on the left.*—Plaut.

Haec a nobis sunt, *These things are on our side.*—Cic.

Nihil est ab omni parte beātum, *Nothing is in every respect happy (from every point of view).*—Hor.

Ossa ejus clam in Attica ab amicis sepulta (sunt), *His bones were secretly buried in Attica by his friends.*—Nep.

A frigore labi rare, *To suffer from cold.*—Plin.

A manu servus, *An amanuensis.*—Suet. (See also § 715.)

Obs. 1. Sometimes only the context can determine whether *ab* is used in the sense of *by* or *from*: as,

Postulatur a populo, *The demand is made by (or from) the people.*—Cic.

Obs. 2. In such expressions as *a manu* (servus), *ab epistolis*, etc., the preposition denotes the *province in which* service is rendered.

Obs. 3. *Ab* is used chiefly before consonants and *a* before vowels (including *h* only: *abs* is rare, except in compounds).

Obs. 4. The primary meaning of this preposition appears to have denoted *origin*.

2. *Àlsque* (rare).—*Without* : as,

*Absquē te esset, Without you ; were it not for you.*—Plaut.

*Obs.* According to Zumpt, *absque* occurs but once in Cicero, and there only for the sake of euphony.

3. *Cōram*.—*In the presence of* : as,

*Cantābit vācuus cōram lātrōne viātor, The empty-pocketed traveller will whistle in the presence of the highwayman.*—Hor.

4. *Cum*.—*With, along with* : as,

*Esse cum tēlo, To be (provided) with a weapon.*—Cic.

*Cum pāce laxior annōna rēdiit, Along with peace returned greater cheapness of provisions.*—Liv.

*Ex sēmine cum dēcimo rēdit, There is a tenfold (lit. with a tenth) return from the seed.*—Varr.

*Obs.* 1. *Cum* is not used to introduce the instrument of an action : thus *cum gladio interfectus est* would not mean, *he was slain with a sword*, but *he was slain having a sword with him*.

*Obs.* 2. But *cum* is often used of the attendant circumstances, or characteristics of an action : as,

*Summa cum cēlērītāte ad exercitum rēdiit, He returned with the utmost speed to his army.*—Hirt.

*Obs.* 3. With the Ablatives of Pronouns *cum* is written as an enclitic : as, *meum, tecum, nobiscum, quibuscum*, etc.

5. *Dē*.—*Down from, from* ; of time, *during, in the course of* ; of material, *made of* ; *concerning* : as,

*De mūro se prōjēcit, He cast himself down from the wall.*—Caes.

*Caupo de via Lātīna, An innkeeper from the Latin way.*—Cic.

*Pauci de nostris cādunt, A few from amongst our men fall.*—Caes.

*Diem de die prōferre, To put off from day to day.*—Liv.

*De die, de nocte, By day, by night.*—Cic.

*De tertiā vigiliā, In the course of the third watch.*—Caes.

*Niveo factum de marmore signum, A statue made of snow-white marble.*—Ov.

*De republicā scripti libri, Books written on the subject of the commonwealth.*—Cic.

*Obs.* The adverbial phrases, *de novo, de integro, anew, afresh*, *de improviso, unexpectedly*, *de industria, on purpose*, should be noted also, *de (Galīs, &c.) triumphare, to triumph for victories gained over (the Gauls, &c.)*.

6. *Ex*, *ē*.—*Out of, from* ; of time, *immediately after* ; of material, *made out of* ; *on account of* ; *in pursuance of*, *in accordance with* : as,

*Solem e mūdo tollere videntur, qui amicitiam e vita tollunt, They seem to take the sun out of the world, who take friendship out of human life.*—Cic.

Ex equo cādēre, *To fall from one's horse.*—Cic.

Stātīm e somno lāvantur, *They (the Germans) bathe immediately on rising from sleep.*—Tac.

Cotta ex consulatū est prōfectus in Galliam, *Immediately after his consulate, Cotta started for Gaul.*—Cic.

Quidam ex militibus, *(A certain) one of the soldiers.*—Caes.

Stātua ex aere facta, *A statue made of bronze.*—Cic.

Urbem o suo nōmīno Rōmam iussit nōmīnāri, *He directed the city to be called Rome from his own name.*—Cic.

Quum esset ex aere aliēno commōta civitas, *The city being in a commotion on account of debt.*—Cic.

Ex littēris Caesāris supplicatio dēcrēta est, *A supplication was decreed in accordance with Caesar's dispatch.*—Caes.

Obs. Note also the phrases, e rēgiōne, *over against*; ex aequo, *in an equal degree*; ex imprōvisō, *unexpectedly*, &c.

7. Prae.—*Before*; *because of*; *in comparison with*: as,

Prae se grēgem āgens, *Driving the herd before him.*—Liv.

Prae se ferre, ostentāre, *To make a public show of.*—Cic.

Prae maerōre lōqui (non) pōtuit, *He could not speak for grief.*—Cic.

Prae cētēris Cātō in sēnectūte flōrnit, *Cato was distinguished above others in the character of an old man.*—Cic.

Obs. Prae in the sense of *because of* chiefly occurs in negative sentences. Plautus, however, has such sentences as, Prae laetitiā laetimaē praecliunt mihi, *Tears start to my eyes for joy.* (Stich. 3, 2, 13.)

8. Pro.—*Before*, *in front of*; *instead of*, *on behalf of*; *in consideration of*; *in proportion to*: as,

Castra pro moenibus locata erant, *The camp had been pitched in front of the walls.*—Liv.

Pro suggestu (dicere), *To speak from the front of a platform.*—Caes.

Ego pro te mōlam, *I will grind for you.*—Ter.

Pro patria mōri, *To die for one's country.*—Hor.

Pro vectūrā solvere, *To pay for freight.*—Cic.

Pro Caesāris in se bēnēficiis, *In consideration of Caesar's favours done to him.*—Caes.

Proelium atrōcius quam pro nūmēro pugnantium, *A battle more sanguinary than might have been expected from the number of the combatants.*—Liv.

9. Sine.—*Without*: as,

Non sīno dis, *Not without the help of the gods.*—Hor.

Nullus dies sine linea, *Not a day without a line.*—Prov. in Plin.

10. Tēnus.—*Up to, as far as : as,*

Cápulo tēnus abdedit ensem, *He buried his sword up to the hilt.*—Virg.

Tauro tēnus, *As far as Mount Taurus.*—Cic.

Obs. 1. *Tenus* is sometimes found with the Genitive : as,

Crūrum tēnus, *Up to the legs.*—Virg.

Obs. 2. *Tenus* always follows its case.

## § 558. III. With the Accusative and Ablative.

1. In.—*In, into ; towards, until ; against.*

## (a.) With the Accusative : always implying motion or direction towards : as,

In coelum ascendēre, *To ascend into heaven.*—Cic.

Chōrus virtūtam in equūleum impōsitus, *A whole company of virtues put on the rack.*—Cic.

Belgae spectant in septentriones et orientem sōlem, *The Belgae face towards the north and east.*—Caes.

Dormiet in lūcem, *He will sleep till broad day.*—Hor.

Sōlis defectiōnes Itemque lūnae praedicuntur in multos annos, *Eclipses of the sun and moon are foretold for many years to come.*—Cic.

In praesens, in futūrum, in perpētuum, *For the present, for the future, for ever.*—Cic.

In libēros nostros indulgentia, *Fondness towards our children.*—Cic.

In utramque partem dispūtare, *To argue a question on both sides.*—Cic.

Oratiōnes in Cātulinam hābitae, *The speeches delivered against Catiline.*

Obs. 1. Note the adverbial phrases, in commūne, *for the common good ;* in unīversum, *in general ;* in pējus, *for the worse.*

Obs. 2. Occasionally the Accusative after *in* has the force of the Ablative : as,

Eam optīmam rempublicam esse dūco, quae sit in pōtestatem optimātium, *I deem that the best form of government which is in the power of the aristocracy.*—Cic. (Leg. 3, 17.)

## (b.) With the Ablative : of rest or action in a place ; in or during ; among : as,

Caedes in Appia via facta est, *A murder was committed on the Appian road.*—Cic.

Sedēre in equo, *To sit on horseback.*—Cic.

In omni vita, *In the whole of one's life.*—Cic.

In summo omnium timōre, *During the excessive alarm of all.*—Cic.

Thāles qui sapiētissimus in septem fuit, *Thales who was the wisest among the seven.*—Cic.

2. Sub.—*Under, up to, etc.*

- (a.) With the Accusative:
- under, up to*
- (of motion); of time,
- just after or before*
- : as,

Exercitum sub iugum mittere, *To pass an army under the yoke.*—Caes.

Sub montem succedunt milites, *The soldiers make their way up the hill.*—Caes.

Sub noctem, *At nightfall.*—Caes.

Sub galli cantum, *Just about cock-crow.*—Hor.

Sub eas (litteras) statim recitatae sunt tuae, *Directly after that letter was read yours.*—Cic.

- (b.) With the Ablative:
- under*
- (usually without motion); of time,
- just upon, after*
- : as,

Sub pellibus hiemare, *To winter under skins or tents.*—Caes.

Sub divo, *Under the open sky.*—Hor.

Sub hoc iugo Dictator Aequos misit, *Under this kind of yoke the Dictator made the Aequians pass.*—Liv.

Sub ditione alicujus esse, *To be under any one's power.*—Caes.

Adhuc sub iudice lis est, *The matter is still before the judge undecided.*—Hor.

Sub adventu Romanorum, *Just before the arrival of the Romans.*—Liv.

3. Super.—*Above, beyond, concerning.*

- (a.) With the Accusative:
- above, whether of place or some other relation*
- : as,

Super vallum praecipitatus est, *He was pitched headlong over the ramparts.*—Sall.

Nomentanus erat super ipsum, *Nomentanus sat next above (our host) himself.*—Hor.

Super omnia, *Above all things.*—Liv.

- (b.) With the Ablative:
- above, of place; concerning*
- : as,

Ensis (illi) super cervice pendet, *A sword hangs suspended over his neck.*—Hor.

Multa super Priamo rogatans, super Hectore multa, *Asking many a question concerning Priam, many concerning Hector.*—Virg.

4. Subter.—*Under*: in Prose almost always with the Accusative: as,

Manum subter togam exserere, *To thrust the hand out from under the toga.*—Liv.

Rhoetico subter litore, *'Neath the Rhoetean shore.*—Cat.

5. *Clam*.—*Without the knowledge of*: used indifferently with the Accusative or the Ablative: as,

*Clam patrem, Without a father's knowledge.*—Ter.

*Clam vōbis, Without your knowledge.*—Caes.

*Obs.* *Clam* is properly rather an adverb than a Preposition.

## CHAPTER LIV.—CONJUNCTIONS.

§ 559. Conjunctions connect sentences together and show the relation between them. They thus sustain the same relation towards sentences which Prepositions sustain towards Substantives (see § 553).

*Obs.* Sometimes Conjunctions appear to connect words; where however it may generally be shown that they virtually connect sentences: as,

*Ēgo et tu crēdīmus, I and you believe* = *ego crēdo et tu crēdis.*

§ 560. Conjunctions may be arranged in the following classes: Connective, Adversative, Hypothetical, Concessive, Causal, Conclusive, Final, Temporal.

N.B. For lists of the above, see § 139.

### 1. Connective Conjunctions.

§ 561. *Et* is the Conjunction most used simply to connect words and sentences: as,

*Virtus hōmīnibus instituendo et persuādendo trādītur, Virtue is imparted to men by instruction and persuasion.*—Cic.

*Cārī esse et diligī vōlāmus, We wish to be dear (to others) and to be loved by them.*—Cic.

§ 562. *Et* often introduces the first member as well as subsequent ones. it may then be translated by *both . . . and*; in the first place . . . and then; not only, but also; and similar expressions: as,

*Te et mōneo et rōgo, ut rēcordēre consilium nostrum, I both advise you and request you to call to mind my advice.*—Cic.

*Ōrātiunculās et quas postulas, et plūres etiam mittam, I will send you not only the little speeches you ask for, but others too.*—Cic.

*Sed et ipse errābat, et ālios etiam errāre cōgēbat, But in the first place he was himself in error, and then he forced others likewise to err.*—Cic.

*Obs.* Very often the introductory *et* is not translated in English: as,

*Hoc et ratio doctis, et necessitas barbāris, praescripsit, This lesson reason has taught the civilized and necessity the uncivilised.*—Cic.

(Concerning the Concord of the Predicate in such cases, see § 220.)

§ 563. The enclitic *quē* is used in preference to *et* when things are closely connected in any way: as,

*Arma contra deos ārasque et fūcos tālit, He bore arms against the gods and their altars, and against our fire-sides.—Cic.*

*Pēdestres nāvālesque pugnae, Battles by land and sea.—Cic.*

§ 564. *Et* . . . . *nēque* (*nec*). When two propositions are connected, one of which is positive and the other negative, the following arrangements are found:

*et* . . . . . *nēque* (*nec*); *et non*.

*nēque* (*nec*), *et non*, . . . *et*.

*nēque* (*nec*), . . . . . *que*.

*Intelligitis et ānimum ei praesto fuisse, nec consiliū dēfuisse, You see that not only had he presence of mind, but that counsel was not lacking.—Cic.*

*Sextus et rem agnoscit, neque hōmīnem ignōrat, Sextus is [both] acquainted with the affair, and no stranger to the individual.—Cic.*

*Africānus nēque [cessabat] unquam, et interdum collōquio altērius non ēgēbat, Africanus was never idle, and at times could do without the intercourse of another.—Cic.*

*Is locus mēlior quem et non cōquit sol et tangit ros, That is a better situation where on the one hand the sun does not scorch, and the dew reaches.—Varr.*

*Sed nec illa extincta sunt, ālunturque pōtius et augentur cōgitatione et mēmōria, But in the first place those things are not dead; and then they rather derive nutriment and increase from thought and recollection.—Cic.*

*Obs.* In such cases the *neque* (*nec*) is usually resolved in English into *and not*, on the  $\left\{ \begin{smallmatrix} \text{one} \\ \text{other} \end{smallmatrix} \right\}$  hand . . . *not*, or the like.

§ 565. *Atque* (*ac* before consonants only) is mostly used when a second member is at the same time to be brought into comparison or contrast with the preceding one:

*Dīvina atque hūmāna prōmiscua nihil pensī nēque mōdērāti hābēre, Things divine and human without distinction they treated without respect or restraint.—Sall.*

*Vita misēra atque inhōnesta, A life at once wretched and dishonourable.—Sall.*

*Obs.* 1. *Atque* does not differ essentially from *que*, and is preferred to it when *que*, if used, would follow short and unaccen'ed syllables. See the above examples.

*Obs.* 2. When several members are connected together, the conjunction may either be repeated after each member, or else omitted altogether: as,

*Virtus et hōnestas et pūdor, Virtue, honour, and shame.—Cic.* (*Not* *virtus, honestas et pudor.*)

*Mētellum multi filii, filiae, nēpōtes, nēptes, in rōgum impōsuērunt, A number of sons and daughters, grandsons and daughters, joined to place Metellus on the funeral pile.—Cic.*

(This latter construction is called *Asyndeton*, ἀσύνδετον; the former *Polysyndeton*, πολυσύνδετον.)

§ 566. *Quum* (*tum*) . . . *tum*, *whilst, not only . . . also*, are used chiefly in introducing different particulars respecting the same thing: as,

*Impārātus quum a militibus tum a pecuniā, Unprepared not only in the article of men but also of money.—Cic.*

*Epistola summæ quum bonævolentiæ tum etiam prudentiæ, A letter characterised by the utmost good-will as well as the utmost sagacity.—Cic.*

*Tum semper tum in his temporibus, Both in general, and especially in these times.—Cic.*

*Dissero in utramque partem, tum Græcè tum Latine, I debate on both sides, now in Greek, now in Latin.—Cic.*

§ 567. *Non modo* (*solum*) . . . *vērū* (*sed*) *etiam*, *not only . . . but also*, are used to give emphasis to a statement: as,

*Non solum natura sed etiam studio, Not only by nature, but also by industry.—Cic.*

*Obs.* When there is a double negative in the sentence, as, *not only not even*, but *not even* midding, the negative particle may be omitted from the former member, the latter being usually expressed by *sed ne* . . . *quidem* (656): *non modo præstantes, sed ne mediocres quidem.* Cf. *Cic. Rep.* 2, 13, *quæ non solum facta, sed ne fieri quidem potuisse, not only not actual facts, but not even possible.* But the negative is quite as often expressed in both.

§ 568. *Næque* (*nec*), *neither . . . nor*. When two or more Subjects of the Third Person are connected by *neque* (*nec*), the Predicate is made to agree with that Subject along with which it is expressed: as,

*Nec toga nec focus est, Neither toga nor fire place is there.—Mart.*

[*Vobis*] *nece actus, neque honores, neque virtus . . . dubedonem vivendi minores poterit, For you neither years, nor honours, nor worth, will avail to lessen your fondness for life.—Cic.*

§ 569. But in the case of the Personal Pronouns *ego* or *tu*, the Verb may be put in the Plural Number: as,

*Hæc neque ego neque tu facimus, If neither you nor I have done these things.—Ter. Ad.* 1, 2, 23.

[*Indignabantur*] *quod in decemviris neque ego neque Cato habiti censeamus, They were indignant that neither I nor Cato should have been appointed among the Decemvirs.—Ventr.* ap. *Cic.*

*Obs.* 1. It must come the Person of the Verb is of course determined according to the regular rules. See § 541.

*Obs.* 2. *Neque*, *non* are used interchangeably before nouns and conjunctions.

§ 570. *Aut*, *vel* (*vél*), *or*. *Aut* is a disjunctive word, and introduces something quite different from what has gone



before: *vel* is copulative, and implies not so much a new alternative as a modification of the preceding one: as,

*Omne enunciātum aut vĕrum aut falsum est, Every proposition is either true or false.*—Cic. (New alternative "*false*," and exclusive of the other.)

*Pāce vel Quīrīni vel Rōmūli dixerim, By favour of Quirinus or (shall I call him) Romulus.*—Cic.

*Vi aut clam āgendum est, It must be managed by open force or else by secrecy.*—Cic. (Alternatives directly opposed.)

*Ordo vel pāci dēcōrus vel bello, An order seemly whether for peace or war.*—Liv. (Both alternatives included.)

*Obs. 1.* The above distinction cannot however be always traced with equal clearness.

*Obs. 2.* *Ve* is abbreviated from *vel*, and has a similar use: as,  
*Duābus tribusve hōris, In two or three hours.*—Cic.

*Obs. 3.* *Ve* is also found in the compound *sive* (seu): as,  
*Sive cāsu sive consilio deorum immortalium, Whether by accident or by the counsel of the immortal gods.*—Caes.

## 2. Adversative Conjunctions.

§ 571. Adversative Conjunctions are those which are used in stating a proposition in some way opposed to what has preceded. They are the following: *sed, autem, vĕrum, vĕro, at* (poet. *ast*), *atqui, cĕtĕrum, tāmen, attāmen, vĕruntāmen*, in English, *but, yet*. They do not affect the structure of a sentence

§ 572. *Sed, autem, but.*—*Sed* denotes a more direct and emphatic opposition than *autem*, and therefore stands at the head of its sentence, while *autem* takes the second place: as,

*Non ěgo hĕrus tibi, sed servus sum, I am not your master, but your slave.*—Plaut.

*Hoc non mōdo non laudāri, sed ne concĕdi quĭdem pōtest, This not only cannot be praised, but cannot even be allowed.*—Cic.

*Gyges a nullo vidĕbātur, ipse autem omnia vidĕbat, Gyges was seen by no one, while he himself saw everything.*—Cic.

*Ōrātiōes Caesāris mīhi vĕhĕmenter prōbantur; lĕgi autem complūres, Caesar's speeches have my warm admiration; and I have read a good many.*—Cic.

§ 573. *Vĕrum* and *vĕro, but*, are used with the same distinction as *sed* and *autem*. *Cĕtĕrum* is similar in its use to *vĕrum* or *sed*.

§ 574. *Vĕro* is often used as an affirmative particle: as,

*Ego vĕro cūpio te ad me scribĕre, I do in truth desire you to write to me.*—Cic.

*Immo vĕro, inquit, vivunt, Yea, verily, they do live.*—Cic.

Sometimes it is used where in English we say *yes* : as,

Fuisti, crēdo, in schōlis phīlōsōphōrum? Vēro, ac libenter quīdem.  
*You have attended the schools of the philosophers, I believe? Yes, and  
 with pleasure too.—Cic.*

§ 575. *At*, *but* ; *on the other hand* ; *but*, *you say* ; is especially used in stating objections : as,

At mēmōria mīnuītur : crēdo, nīsi eam exerceas, *But, say you, the  
 memory decays. I believe, if you do not keep it in practice.—Cic.*

*Obs.* In stating an objection, *at* is often strengthened by *enim* : as,

At enim cur a me pōtissimum hoc praesidium petiverunt, *But, you say,  
 why have they come to me rather than any other for this protection?—  
 Cic.*

§ 576. *At* is idiomatically used in sudden transitions, vehement exclamations of displeasure, etc. : as,

Consurgit Turnus in ensem et fērit. . . . At perfidus ensis  
 fraugitur in mēdio, *Turnus rises upon his sword and strikes. . . . But,  
 lo! the faithless sword snaps in two.—Virg.*

Una māter Cluentium oppugnat. At quae mater, *The mother of  
 Cluentius is his only assailant. But then what a mother!—Cic.*

At o deorum quidquid in coelo rēgit, . . . quid iste fert tāmulus,  
*Why, in the name of all the gods that rule above, what means this to-do?—  
 Hor. (at the beginning of a piece.)*

§ 577. *Atqui*, *and yet*, is similar to *at* : as,

Magnum narras et vix crēdibile. Atqui sic hābet, *What you say is  
 astonishing and hardly credible. And yet so it is.—Hor.*

§ 578. *Quodsi* (negative *quodni*, *quod nisi*), *but if*, *and if*, is about equivalent to *si autem* : sometimes the *quod* serves as a pure connective : as,

Quodsi quis illorum vētēranorum lēgat acta, *But if (or now if) any-  
 one would read the actions of those veterans.—Nep. Eun. 8, 2.)*

Quodsi te sors Afris aut Hispanis aut Gallis praefecisset, *Now if  
 fortune had placed you over Africa, Spain, or Gaul.—Cic. (Q. Fr. i. 1, 9.)*

### 3. Hypothetical Conjunctions.

§ 579. Hypothetical Conjunctions are those which are used in stating an hypothesis : concerning their syntax see §§ 422, 891.

### 4. Concessive Conjunctions.

§ 580. Concessive Conjunctions are those which may be rendered in English by *although*, *even if*, *granting that*. They

et si, etsi, etsiam, tamen, tametsi, quoniam, quamvis, licet, &c. They are discussed in treating of the use of the Subjunctive Mood. (See §§ 456, 481, 500, 501.)

## 5. Causal Conjunctions.

§ 581. Causal Conjunctions are those which are used in stating a reason; they can mostly be translated by *because*, *for*, *seeing that*. (For a list of them see p. 93.) Their syntax, with the exception of *nam* and *enim*, is treated under the Subjunctive Mood (§§ 477, 481; 486-495).

*Nam* (*namque*) is more emphatic than *enim*, and begins its own clause; *enim* stands second and is often used as a Particle (see § 654): as,

Percentatorem fagite; *nam* garrulus idem est, *Shun an inquisitive person; for he is also a gossip*.—Hor.

Scribe ad me quam saepissime, *nam* nihil enim me levante tunc litterae. *Write to me as often as possible, for your letters relieve me a little*.—Cic. ad Att.

Obs. 1. *Nam* is often used elliptically, where the thought is readily supplied: as, *Nam* quid ego de Cicerone dicam, [I will not], *for why need I, speak of Cicero*.—Cic. (Fam. 14, 1.)

Obs. 2. *Namque* sometimes stands after the first word in a sentence, especially in Livy: see § 716.

## 6. Conclusive Conjunctions.

§ 582. Conclusive Conjunctions are those which are used in drawing a conclusion, and may be translated by *therefore*, *accordingly*, *wherefore*. (For a list of them see p. 94.) They have no effect upon the structure of a sentence.

§ 583. *Ergo*, *therefore*, stands usually, though not always, at the head of its sentence: as,

*Ergo* avārus [is] erit sed finīte, *Accordingly such a person will be covetous, but to a limited degree*.—Cic.

*Ergo* Quintiliū perpetuus sōpor urget, *So then perpetual slumber weighs upon Quintilius*!—Hor.

Nemo *ergo* non miser? Prorsus nemo. *Is there no one who is not miserable? Absolutely none*.—Cic.

Obs. *Ergo* is also used after a Genitive in the sense of *causa*: see § 264.

§ 584. *Igitur*, *accordingly*, *then*, is less emphatic than *ergo*, being rather a particle to express transition, and does not regularly stand at the head of a sentence: as,

Est igitur il quo illa conficiuntur hōmīne melius, *That power, then, by which those things are done, is more excellent than man*.—Cic.

*Rationem igitur pontis hanc instituit, The following, then, was the plan of a bridge he resolved on.—Caes.*

*Obs.* Sallust often begins with *igitur* (§ 693): as,

*Igitur, ex divitiis luxuria atque avaritia . . . invasere, Accordingly, as the consequence of wealth, luxury and covetousness made their way in.—Sall.*

§ 585. *Itaque*, and so, accordingly, is similar to *igitur*, but denotes a consequence in action rather than in reasoning: as,

*Itaque rem suscipit, Accordingly he undertakes the business.—Caes.*

It is sometimes used with *ergo*: as,

*Itaque ergo, ut magistratu abire, Accordingly, therefore, when they had retired from their office.—Liv.*

## 7. Final Conjunctions.

§ 586. Final Conjunctions are such as are used to denote the purpose or consequence of an action. They are treated in dealing with the Subjunctive Mood (§§ 449-463).

## 8. Temporal Conjunctions.

§ 587. Concerning *antequam*, *priusquam*, *postquam*, see § 501. Concerning *ut*, *ut primum*, *simul atque* (*ac*), *as soon as*, see § 401.

---

PART II. (SYNTAX.)—*Continued.*

## BOOK II.—SYNTAXIS ORNATA.

§ 588. The preceding portion of the Syntax comprises the ordinary grammatical rules: the following is devoted chiefly to peculiarities of the Latin idiom.

---

## CHAPTER LV.—SUBSTANTIVES.

## 1. Common Substantives.

§ 589. *Concrete for Abstract.*—Concrete Substantives are used in preference to abstract to denote,

- (1.) The period of a person's life during which something happens: as,

*Me puëro, In my boyhood.*—Cic.

*Dēfendi rempublicam jūvenis, non dēsēram sēnex, I defended the commonwealth in my youth, I will not abandon it in my old age.*—Cic.

*Obs. Similarly sexāgēnarius, octōgēnarius, In one's sixtieth or eightieth year.*

- (2.) The office held: as,

*Consul idem fēci, I did the same in my consulate.*—Cic.

*Consūle Planco, In the consulate of Plancus.*—Hor.

*Sātūno rēge, In the reign of Saturn.*—Virg.

§ 590. *Collective for Plural.*—Singular Substantives are not unfrequently used in a collective sense: as,

*Ager bōnus pēcōri, arbōre infēcundus, Soil good for stock, unproductive in trees.*—Sall.

*Pulvīnus rōsā fartus, A cushion stuffed with roses.*—Cic. (So Hor. *multa in rosa*, Od. 1, 5, 1.)

*Armāto milite, With armed men.*—Virg.

§ 591. *Plural for Abstract.*—In cases where the corresponding abstract Substantive is wanting, we often find the plural of the concrete Substantive used to supply the deficiency: as,

Quum videamus tanta officia morientis, *When we see such conscientiousness displayed by him on his deathbed.*—Cic. (Fin. 2, 31, 99.)

Stadia literarum, numerorum, sonorum, *The study of literature, arithmetic, acoustics.*—Cic.

Lēpos quīdam faciētiæque, *A certain elegance and facetiousness.*—Cic.

§ 592. *Abstract for Concrete.*—The use of abstract Substantives for concrete occurs chiefly in the following cases:

- (1.) Some Substantives denoting *age, rank in life or office*, are used as *Collectives*: as *jūventus*, a *body of young men*; *nōbilitas*, the *nobility*; *servitium* (also *servitia*, pl.), the *slaves*; *impēria* (pl.), *persons in office*; *lēvis*, *grāvis armātura*, *light or heavy-armed troops*: also less frequently, *advocatio*, the *body of advocati*; *salutatio*, of *morning callers*; *rēmīgium*, the *rowers*; *ministrum*, the *servants*; *lātrōcinium*, *banditti*, etc.

*Obs.* Not *adolescentia* or *senectus* however.

- (2.) Substantives of *quality or character* are used for the persons to which they apply: as,

Neque ego per ignāciam ineerta pro certis captārem, *Nor would I by the help of cowardly men grasp at uncertainties for certainties.*—SALL. (Cat. 20.)

Omnium flagitiorum atque fœderum circa se cātervas habebat, *Catiline had about him gangs of profligate fellows and desperadoes.*—SALL. (Cat. 14.)

Parcendum est caritati hominum, *We must spare those who are dear to us.*—CIC. (Or. 2, 58, 237.)

§ 593. *Generic Plural.*—Sometimes the plural of a Substantive may be rendered by “*kinds of*,” as,

Quattuor perturbationes sunt, tria constantiæ, *There are four kinds of mental disturbance, three of tranquillity.*—CIC. (Tusc. 4, 6, 14.)

Somno et quietibus ceteris, *By sleep and other kinds of rest.*—CIC. (Off. 1, 29, 103.)

§ 594. Similarly the plural is used to denote *repeated manifestations* of a quality: as,

Ultatibus tua pectus carere, *I can dispense with your sorrows.*—CIC. (Pam. 16, 3 *pl.*)

Ipsorum Deorum sepe prædicatione, *The repeated instances of appearance of gods themselves.*—CIC. (N. D. 2, 66, 106.)

So *crûdeltâtes*, *acts of cruelty*; *perfidia*, *of treachery*; *bônités*, *of goodness*, etc.

§ 593. *Verbal Substantives*.—A Verbal Substantive is often generalised by the addition of *rerum* (not needing to be translated): as,

*Cognitio, ignôrâtio rerum*, *Knowledge, ignorance*.—Cic.

*Nîmis cêlêri despêrâtione rerum*, *By too precipitate despair*.—Liv.

*Nâtûra rerum*, *Nature* (in widest sense).—Cic.

§ 596. Instead of a Verbal Substantive we not unfrequently find used a Perfect Participle Passive (see § 528): as,

*Post Hasdrûbalis exercitum dêlêtum*, *After the destruction of Hasdrûbal's army*.—Liv.

*Propter crêbrius de coelo lapidâtum*, *On account of unusually frequent showers of stones*.—Liv. (29, 10.)

*Obs.* Rarely as the Subject of a sentence however:

*Quum occûsus dictator . . . pulcherrimum facinus vidêrêtur*, *When the assassination of the dictator seemed a most glorious achievement*.—

Tac. (Ann. 1, 5.)

§ 597. *Substantives governing the case of their Verbs*.—This takes place chiefly with Substantives derived from Verbs governing the Dative: as,

*Justitia est obtempôrâtio legibus*, *Justice is obedience to the laws*.—Cic. (See § 291, 6.)

*Spe dômum rêditiônis sublâtâ*, *The hope of returning home having been taken away*.—Caes.

*Obs.* The above construction is, however, exceptional. Still more rare is the Accusative after Substantives derived from a Transitive Verb: as,

*Quid tibi hanc digito tactio est*, *What right have you to touch this woman with your finger!*—Pl.

(For such a construction as *id dare operam*, see § 253.)

§ 598. *Substantives as Adjectives*.—Substantives derived from Verbs denoting the *agent* are sometimes used as Adjectives: as,

*Contemptor ânîmus*, *A scornful temper*.—Sall.

*Foedêrum ruptor dux et pöpûlus*, *The treaty-breaking general and his people*.—Liv.

*Ille scelerâm et pêne dêlêtriz hujus impêrii sica*, *This accursed dagger [and] well nigh fatal to this empire*.—Cic.

*Plêbiscita tribûnus plêbis*, *A popularity-courting tribune*.—Cic.

*Obs.* Similarly we find such expressions as *exercitus tiro*, *a raw army* (Cic.), and the like.

§ 599. *Nēmo*.—Instead of *nullus* we frequently find *nēmo* in apposition with Substantives denoting *men*: as,

*Nēmo vir bonus, nēmo adūlescens, nēmo pictor, No good man, no youth, no painter.*—(all in *Cic.*)

*Obs.* In the same manner we find *quisquam homo, quisquam cīvis*, etc.

§ 600. *Diminutives*.—These are used with great variety of signification: implying *affection, pity, contempt*, and kindred feelings (cf. § 703): as,

*Hac tāmen oblectābar spēcūlā, However I pleased myself with this gleam of hope.*—*Cic. Fam.*

*Mercēdulā adducti, Induced by paltry gain.*—*Cic.*

*Graecūlus ēsūriens, The poor half-starved Greek.*—*Juv.*

*Illa aureōla ōrātiunculā, That golden little speech.*—*Cic. (N. D. 3, 17, 43.)*

§ 601. *Ellipsis*.—The following Substantives are often left to be understood from the Gender of Adjectives: as,

*Aqua, water*; in the expressions *frigīda, cālīda (calda), cold, hot water*.

*Cāro, flesh, meat*: as, *fērīna, the flesh of wild animals, game, venison*; *agnīna, lamb*; *būbūla, beef*; *porcīna, pork*.

*Castra, -orum, camp, soldiers' quarters*: as, *hiberna, winter quarters*; *aestīva, summer quarters*; *stātīva, fixed quarters*.

*Febris, a fever*: as, *tertiāna, quartāna, a tertian, quartan fever*; *frigīda quartāna, a quartan ague*.

*Pecūniae, moneys*; in the phrase *repētundae, moneys to be reclaimed; extortion*.

*Pars, part*; esp. in *pl.*: as, *prīmas, sēcundas agēre, to play the first or second part*.

*Tempus, time*: especially in the phrases, *ex quo, from what time*; *ex illo, from that time, &c.*

§ 602. *Henriadys* (cf. § 724, 2).—Sometimes two Substantives are used to convey a single notion (*ἐν εἰς εἶναι*): as,

*Pāt'ris libavit et auro, He poured out libations from bowls of (Lit. and) gold.*—*Virg.*

*Huc accēdit summus timor, quem mihi nātūra pudorquo meus attri-buit, To this is added an extreme timidity, which my natural bashfulness (Lit. nature and bashfulness) occasions me.*—*Cic.*

§ 603. *Plural equivalent to Singular*.—The following Plurals among others are used (especially in poetry) without considerable difference from Singulars:

pectōra,	the breast.	regna,	realms, a kingdom.
cervices,	the (back of the) neck.	teeta,	abode.
colla,	the neck.	otia,	repose.
ōra (os),	the face.	silentia,	silence.
terga,	the back.	pondēra,	weight.

*Obs.* This usage is especially frequent in the case of words whose singular would be less manageable in verse.



§ 604. *Metonymy*.—Sometimes a Substantivo is by a figure of speech used to denote something with which it is closely connected: as,

ālea,	a gambling-table,	is used for	gambling.
Bacchus,	god of wine,	„	wine.
Ceres,	goddess of corn,	„	corn.
fascēs,	the fasces,	„	the consulate.
mānus,	the hand,	„	violence; ownership.
Mars,	god of war,	„	war, strife.
Minerva,	goddess of art,	„	art, genius.
nōmen,	name,	„	nation; debt.
sāgum,	a war-cloak,	„	a state of war.
sēcūres,	axes,	„	power of life and death.
sica,	a dagger,	„	assassination.
stilus	a writing-style,	„	writing; style.
stōla,	a matron's gown,	„	a matron.
tōga,	the gown of peace,	„	the state and arts of peace.
venter,	the belly,	„	gluttony.
Vēnus,	goddess of love } and beauty, }	„	love, beauty.
Vulcānus,	god of fire,	„	fire.

§ 605. *Synecdōche*.—Sometimes a characteristic part of a thing is put for the whole. The following Substantives among others are so used:

cārīna,	a keel,	is used for	a ship.
cāput,	a head,	„	an individual.
pecten,	a quill or stick } for a lyre, }	„	the lyre.
puppis,	a stern,	„	a ship.
tectum,	a roof,	„	a house.

## 2. Proper Names.

§ 606. *Names of tribes for countries*.—The names of tribes and nations, especially those less known, are often used for the country in which they live: as,

Caesar ex Mēnāpiis in Trēvīros vēnit, *Caesar came out of the country of the Menapii into that of the Treviri*.—Caes.

Lēgātus in Persas prōfectus est, *He set out as ambassador into Persia*.—Nep.

*Obs.* In the case of obscure tribes there often exists no separate name for the country.

§ 607. The singular of a national name, as Rōmānus, Poenus, Graecus, and the like, is often used where the sense requires the plural (comp. § 590): as,

Romanus consēcrēre pugnam ..... contra elūdēre Poenus, *The Romans were for coming to close quarters; the Carthaginians on the other hand were content to baffle them*.—Liv.

*Obs.* This idiom is common in Livy, especially in his more animated passages.

§ 608. Names of nations are sometimes used adjectively by the poets : as,

*Galla* (= Gallica) *crūdēlitas*, *Gallic cruelty*.—Mart.

*Syra* (= Syria, *Syriāca*) *merx*, *Syrian wares*.—Hor.

*Obs.* Similarly *Rōmulus*, and some other proper names, are used as Adjectives : as,

*Romula* (= Romulea) *tellus*, *The land of Romulus*.—Virg.

§ 609. *Patronymics*.—In the poets Masculine and Feminine Patronymics (see § 184) are used instead of *filius* and *filia* : as,

*Priāmides Hēlēnus*, *Helenus son of Priam*.—Ov.

*Atlantis Maia*, *Maia daughter of Atlas*.—Ov.

*Obs.* 1. But the proper name and the patronymic are not used together as above, except where needful for the sake of distinction.

*Obs.* 2. In the plural number the poets often use a characteristic patronymic as a national name : as,

*Aeneīdae*, *The house of Aeneas*, i.e. *the Romans*.—Lucr.

*Rōmūlidae*, *The sons of Romulus* (in same sense).—Virg.

## CHAPTER LVI.—ADJECTIVES.

§ 610. The principal uses of Adjectives have been already explained (Chap. XLIII.). It only remains to notice a few peculiarities.

§ 611. *Adjectives equivalent to Substantives* (comp. §§ 340-342).—Under this head two cases remain to be noticed :

- (1.) A Substantive and Adjective are often equivalent to a Substantive and a Genitive Case (§ 263) : as,

*Serrilis tāmultus* (= *tumultus servorum*), *The servile tumult or war*.—Caes.

*Pœcūniæ aliēnæ* (= *aliorum*), *The money of others*.—Cic.

*Decemvirāle* (= *decemvirorum*) *ōdium*, *The hatred entertained for the Decemviri* § 268.—Liv.

*Xenōphontēs* (= *Xenophontis*) *Hercūles*, *The Hercules of Xenophon*.—Cic.

- (2.) An Adjective is used in agreement with a Substantive, where the English idiom would employ the corresponding abstract Substantive derived from the Adjective : as,

*Dēfiniō amicitiam p̄ribus officiis et v̄luntātibus*, *To define friendship to consist in reciprocity of good offices and good-will*.—Cic.

*Ōpes factiōnis, vestra pātientia, nullum jus, The strength of the oligarchy; your tameness of spirit; the absence of rights* LIL. *the no right* —Sall.

*Obs.* The converse is perhaps as frequent: as,

*In hac varietate studiorum, In these various pursuits (= in his variis studiis).—Cic.*

§ 612. *Nullus*.—The Adjective *nullus* in colloquial language is sometimes used adverbially (= non): as,

*Philotimus non mōdo nullus venit sed, etc., Philotimus not only does not come, but, &c.—Cic. (Att. II, 21.)*

*Si non quaerit, nullus dixēris, If he does not ask, don't you say.—Ter. (Hee. I, 2, 4.)*

*Obs.* 1. In such cases *nullus* is more emphatic than *non*.

*Obs.* 2. Very often we may trace the proper force of *nullus* with verbs: as,  
*Nōlīte existimāre, me quum a vōbis discessēro, nusquam aut nullum fore,*  
*Do not suppose that when I have left you I shall not exist any where or*  
*AT ALL (= be a person at all).—Cic. (Cat. de Sen. 22, 79.)*

*Haec bōna in libūlas publicas nulla rōdiērunt, No such goods have been entered in the public books AT ALL.—Cic. (Rosc. Am. 44, 128.)*

§ 613. *Sexcenti*.—This numeral is used to denote an indefinitely large number: as,

*Sexcenta millia mundōrum, Hundreds of thousands of worlds.—Cic.*

*Sexcentae epistōlae, An immense number of letters.—Cic.*

## CHAPTER LVII.—PRONOUNS.

§ 614. *Strengthening of Pronouns*.—It has been already observed (§ 357) that the Personal Pronouns are not usually expressed when they are the Subjects of sentences, unless for the sake of emphasis. They may be rendered still more emphatic by the following means:

(1.) By the addition of *ipse*; with which however the words *ego*, *tu*, etc., are not usually expressed (see § 377).

(2.) By the suffixes *met*, *te* (see § 75, *Obs.* 1): as *egōmet*, *tēmet*, *nosmet*, etc. The suffix *met* may be added to all cases of the pronouns *ego*, *tu*, *sui*, excepting the Gen. Pl. of *ego*, *tu*, and the Nom. Sing. of *tu*: *-te* is used only with *tu* (*tūte*).

*Obs.* The suffixes are often combined with *ipse*: hence, *nosmētipsis*, *nobismetipsis*, etc.

(3.) By the addition of the enclitic *ādeo*: as,

*Tuque ādeo, And thou especially.*—VIRG. (G. 1, 24).  
(Comp. Catull. 64, 28.)

Similarly with other Pronouns (comp. § 653): as,

*Id ādeo, si placet, considerāte, That very point, if you please, consider.*—CIC. (Cacc. 30, 87.)

§ 615. Sometimes a Pronoun (especially *ille*) is redundant in the second member of a double sentence, when it has been expressed or implied in the former. It then adds vivacity to the expression: as,

*Nunc dextra ingemīnans ictus, nunc ille sinistra, Now with his right hand redoubling his blows; now [he does it] with his left.*—VIRG. (Æ. 5, 457.)

*Nec dulces amōres*

*Sperne puer, neque tu chārēas, Nor scorn in youth sweet loves, nor scorn [thou] the dance.*—HOR. (Od. 1, 9, 16.)

*Obs.* This idiom appears to be imitated from the Greek. Compare

\**ἢ τινὰς ἐκ Πύλου ἄξει ἀμύντορας . . .*

\**ἢ ὁ γὰρ καὶ Σπαρτηθεν.*—HOM. (Od. 2, 327.)

§ 616. *Ille* is also sometimes used idiomatically with an appositive Adjective (§ 216), to which it gives emphasis: as,

*Philōsophi quīdam, minime mali illi quīdem, sed non satis acuti, Certain philosophers [those] far from bad men indeed, but not very acute.*—CIC. (Off. 3, 9, 39.)

Similarly with an Adverb: as,

*Enucleūte ille quīdem et pōlite, sed . . ., Clearly it is true [he speaks], and with polish, but, &c.*—CIC. (Br. 30, 115.)

*Obs.* When so used, *ille* is attended by *quīdem*.

§ 617. *Ipsø*.—The ordinary rule for the case of *ipsø* has been already given (§ 377). The following remarks are added by Zumpt (§ 696):

(1.) Cicero is partial to construing *ipsø* as the subject even when the emphasis belongs to the object: as,

*Ut non modo pōpulo Romano sed etiam sibi ipse condamnatus videretur, So that he seemed not only to the Roman people a condemned man, but even [himself] to himself.*—CIC. (Verr. 1, 6, 17.)

(Compare the foll.: *non ita abundo ingenio ut te consoler, quam ipse me non possim, id. Fam. 4, 8: quid est negoti contumero eos quibus praeis, si te ipse continens, id. Q. Fr. 1, 1, 2.)*

(2.) When joined to a possessive pronoun in a reflective clause *ipse* usually takes the case of the subject: as, *meam ipse legem negligo*, *tuam ipse legem negligis*, not *meam ipsius*, *tuam ipsius*, etc. The genitive is necessary only where *ipso* refers to another than the subject: as, *tuā ipsius causa* [ego] *hoc feci*, etc. But exceptions to this rule occur both in Cic. and elsewhere.

§ 618. *Et ipso* is used when a new subject is added to a predicate already expressed or implied: as,

*Cornelio minus copiarum datum, quia L. Manlius et ipse . . . in Galliam mittebatur*, *To Cornelius was allotted a smaller force, because L. Manlius was also being sent into Gaul.*—Liv. 21, 17. (It having been already mentioned that Cornelius was going into Gaul.)

*Is et ipse Alpinus amnis . . . difficillimus transitu est*, *This (the Durance) being also an Alpine stream, is very difficult to cross.*—Liv. 21, 31. (Two Alpine streams having been before mentioned.)

§ 619. The neuter of *is* *et id, idque* is used without reference to any particular substantive (comp. § 374), when an additional particular is stated (= “and that”) as,

*Doctum hominem cognovi, et studiis optimis deditum, idque a puero*, *I have known him to be a man of letters and devoted to the best pursuits, and that from a boy.*—Cic. Fam. 13, 16.)

(Similarly in Greek *καὶ ταῦτα*.)

§ 620. *Idem*.—The ordinary correlative of *idem* is *qui* (see § 379). Instead of the Relative we also find *atque* (ac), *et*; more rarely *ut, cum*; and (in poetry only) the Dative: as,

*Animus (est) erga te idem ac fuit*, *Her feelings towards you are the same as they were.*—Ter.

*Si quaeratur idemne sit pertinacia et perseverantia*, *If the question be asked whether obstinacy is the same thing as perseverance.*—Cic.

*Utrique idem faciunt, ut si laevam partem negligērent, dexteram tuerentur*, *Both act as if they were to neglect the left side and defend the right.*—Cic.

*Eodem mecum patre genitus*, *Born of the same father with me.*—Tac.

*Invitum qui servat idem facit occidenti*, *He who saves a man's life against his will does the same as one who should murder him.*—Hor. (Comp. Gr. *ταῦτ' αὖ μοι βούλει*.)

§ 621. *Qui, quis, aliquis*, etc.—The following use of *qui* in parenthetical clauses, and stating the ground of something requires to be noted:

*Si mihi permisisses rem, qui meus amor in te est, conficissem*, *If you had left the matter in my hands, such is my affection for you (= pro meo in te amore), I would have settled it.*—Cic.

*Pater tuus si vivēret, qui sēvritatē fuit, tu profecto non vivēres, If your father were living, such was his sternness, you certainly would not be living.—Cic.*

(Qua severitate, Abl. of Quality : see § 318.)

§ 622. *Quis* is sometimes used in a tone of impatience or indignation (Gr. *πρός*: cf. Aristoph. Eq. 162): as,

*Quem tu mihi Staseam, quem Peripateticum narras? Don't talk to me of your Staseas, your Peripatetics!—Cic. (Or. 1, 23).*

§ 623. The interrogative *quid* is used in animated language to pass from one point to another, where it may be rendered by “and then :” as,

*Quid lēges vētēres mōresque mājōrum? quid auspicia? etc., And then, the laws and customs of our ancestors : and then the auspices, etc.—Cic. (Or. 1, 10).*

*Quid in lēviōribus studiis? And then in less serious pursuits, etc.—Cic. (Cat. Maj. 14, 50).*

*Obs.* The expression is elliptical, *dicam* or some other word being understood.

§ 624. The neuter *quid* is often used interrogatively where persons are concerned : as,

*Quid nobis duobus laboriosius dici aut fingi potest? What can be mentioned or conceived more overwhelmed with trouble than we two?—Cic. (Mil. 2, 5).*

*Obs.* Similarly *nihil* : cf. Cic. Fam. 4, 4, *victor quo nihil erat moderatius* : and with a partitive genitive, *quantum* (e.g. *hominum*, Ter. Ph. 5, 6, 13) ; *quiquid* (e.g. *deorum*, Hor. Epod. 5, *init.*).

§ 625. *Quis*.—It has been already stated that *quis* as an Indefinite Pronoun, is chiefly found after *si*, *ne*, *num*, or in composition (§ 353). But it is sometimes used alone as the least emphatic *any* (= Gr. *τις*), when it is generally an enclitic : as,

*Simplicior quis est? Is one simpler than ordinary?—Hor. (S. 1, 3, 63).*

*Morbis aut egestas aut quid ejusmodi, Disease or privation or anything of that kind (= ταιῶν τι).—Cic.*

§ 626. *Nescio quis*, *I know not who*, i. e. *some one or other*, is treated as if it were a compound of *quis*, the *nescio* having no effect upon the syntax : as,

*Paronii nescio cuius querelis, By the complaints of one Paconius, whoever he may be.—Cic.*

*Prope me hic nescio quis loquitur, Some one or other is speaking here close to me.—Pl.*

*Obs.* Strictly *nescio quis* forms a sentence by itself, its verb being supplied from the other part of the sentence.

§ 627. *Si quis, if any*, is sometimes nearly equivalent to *quicumque, whosoever, whatsoever* (like Gr. *εἴ τις = ὅστις*): as,

*Nuda fere Alpium cæcūmina sunt, et si quid est pabuli, obruunt nives, The summits of the Alps are mostly bare, and if there is any pasture = what little pasture there is is buried beneath the snows.*—Liv.

*Araneolæ quasi rēte contexunt, ut si quid inhaeserit conficiant, Spiders spin a kind of net that they may destroy whatever gets stuck fast in it.*—Cic.

*Illī etiam, si quis facilius, apparent, Those also whomsoever we have put to rout appear again.*—Virg.

Especially when a modest statement is to be made: as,

*Ea, si quam habemus, facultas, Whatever ability—if any—I possess.*—Cic.

§ 628. *Quōtus, what number?* is an ordinal, corresponding to *primus, secundus, etc.* It is used idiomatically: as,

*Tu quōtus esse vellis rescribere, Write back what number you mean to make.*—Hor. Ep. 1, 5, 30.

*Quōtus erit iste denarius, qui non sit ferendus, What shall be the precise number of denarii that is not to be allowed?*—Cic. Verr. 2, 3, 94.

Especially *quōtusquisque* (or as two words), when it is implied that the number is small: as,

*Quōtus enim quisque formosus est, For what a small proportion of men are handsome!*—Cic. N. D. 1, 28, 79.

§ 629. *Alius*.—The use of *alius . . . alius* has already been noted (§ 390). The following additional examples may be useful:

*Dolus malus est, cum aliud agitur, aliud simulatur, It's jv w!, when one thing is actually done, and another pretended.*—Cic.

*Aliis miserandus, aliis irridendus esse videtur, To some he seems to deserve pity, to others ridicule.*—Cic.

*Alius* is often repeated in a different case (= *one . . . another*): as,

*Alius alio mōre viventes, Licing one in one way, another in another.*—Sall.

*Alias ex aliis fingendo mōras, Inventing one excuse for delay after another.*—Liv.

*Alii super alios, One on the top of the other.*—Liv.

*Obs.* So with an adverb in the second place, as *alius alio, alius aliter, one in one way, another in another, etc.*

§ 630. *Alius* is followed by *atque ac, et, praeter, nisi, quam*: as,

*Tullia longe aliā in fortunā est atque ejus pietas et dignitas postulat, Tullia is in a much worse position than her affection and rank entitle her to.*—Cic.

*Lux longa non est sicut et lychnis, The light of the sun is very different from that of lamp.*—Cic.

*Non aliquid est discere nisi recordari, Learning is nothing else than remembering.*—Cic.

*Non vitium quid aliud foret proinde vices, He could neither he was carrying anything else besides the bad.*—Cic. ap. Cic. (A note construction.)

*Iussu nihil aliud militis potest ut omnia civitates in sua tueri possint, L. Caesar assigned nothing short of having all the states under his own power.*—Nep.

Obs. The Analogy of comparison, § 311, after *aut* is altogether exceptional.

*Nere potes alium esseque beatum, And deem none happy other than the wise and good.*—Hor. (Ep. 1, 16, 28.)

## CHAPTER: LVIII.—VERBS.

§ 631. The principal uses of the Moods and Tenses have been already explained (§§ 552, seq.). The following observations are of a miscellaneous character.

§ 632. *Impersonal use of the Passive.*—This construction (see § 234, Obs. 2) is very frequent in the best writers, and is often preferred even where the same sense might be expressed by the Active Voice: especially—(1) When the Subject, being obvious, is readily supplied; (2) When it is indefinite: as,

1.) *De T. restat quædam tractatione in nostra aetate, The rest of the Tractation was merely added in the middle.*—Liv.

*Suppliciuma without consideratio peritiora, The wounds were repaired by the Senate [to all] as enemies by settlement.*—Id.

*Proinde hunc populum non, The whole ground where the battle had taken place was.*

2.) *Proinde non in nostra fuit, There had been a disturbance here [of] some persons in the camp.*—Id.

*Ipsa quædamque lingua, I do not say, Nisi non fuit, that the same thing was said of him.*—Id.

*De quo puto et tu parum scis, et plura, quæ videntur, et in the present time (but) you had been, and also I know of the matter (but) you had not, and in the future you will, I know not.*—Cic. Att. 12, 26. (Cic. Stulticia, p. 115.)

Obs. It was usual, for the most part, to use a relative in the active than the passive.

§ 633. *I am in Middle or Pluperfect (see also § 232).*—Passive Verbs have not unfrequently a reflexive meaning,



like the Greek Middle Voice : as, *mōvēri*, to move (oneself); *verti*, to turn (oneself), *revolve*; *prēmi*, to depress (oneself), *sink*; etc. as,

*Quod semper mōrētur aeternum est*, That which moves for ever is eternal.—Cic.

*Vertitur intēra cœlum*, Meantime the heavens revolve.—Virg.

*Mundus . . . prēmītur Libyæ dērexis ad Austros*, The world sinks and slopes downwards towards the south of Africa.—id. (G. 1. 241.)

*Obs.* Such was probably the origin of the Deponent Verbs (comp. Greek Deponents in -ομαι) : as, *ūtōr*, I serve or help myself, hence *use*; *nītōr*, I support myself (upon), *lean* (upon), *fungor*, I quit myself; etc.

§ 634. *Perfect used ἀορίστως*.—The Perfect Indicative is often used, especially in poetry, of that which regularly or repeatedly takes place : as,

*Illius immensae rūpērunt horrea messes*, That man's enormous crops burst his barns.—Virg. (G. 1, 49.)

*Saepe etiam stēriles incendēre prōfuit agros*, Often too it does good to fire the barren fields.—ib. 84.)

*Hinc apīcem Fortūna sustūlit*, illic pōuisse gaudet, From one head Fortune removes the diadem, on another she is pleased to rest it.—Hor. (Od. 1, 34. fin.)

*Obs.* In the last example, the Perfect Infinitive is used in the same way. The term *Aoristic* is applied to this construction, because the Aorist is regularly so used in Greek.

§ 635. *Ellipsis of the Verb*.—This of course occurs only in the case of verbs which may be without difficulty supplied :

(1.) The Copula (§ 213, *Obs.* 1) is very often omitted in short aphoristic sentences : as,

*Omnia praeclāra rāra*, All fine things [are] rare.—Cic.

*Quot hōmīnes, tot sententiae*, Many men, many minds.—Ter.

Also in descriptions : as,

*Anīmus audax, subdōlus, vārius*; *cujuslibet rēi simūlātor ac dissimūlātor*; etc., His spirit [was] daring, crafty, versatile; capable of assuming any mask or any disguise.—Sall.

(Sallust is partial to this kind of brevity : § 689.)

*Obs.* This ellipsis chiefly occurs where the Verb would be in the Present Tense (including the *Praesens Historicum*: § 393).

*Esse* is more frequently omitted than expressed in the Future Infinitive Active : as,

*L. Cincio ns xxcd constitui me cūrātūrum Idibus Febr.*, I have settled to pay into the hands of L. Cincius 20,600 sesterces on the 13th of February.—Cic.

- (2.) *Inquam*, *inquit*, or some such verb is frequently omitted when the words spoken follow. Especially in such phrases as

*Tum Cotta, tum Crassus, Then [said] Cotta, Crassus, etc.—Cic. de Or. passim.*

*Quid multa, Why [should I say] many words?—id.*

*Obs. 1.* But after *tum* the verb is very often presently added: as,  
*Tum ridens, Scævola, non luctabor, inquit, tecum Crasse amplius, Thereupon with a smile, says Scævola, I shall not dispute the point with you any further, Crassus.—id.*

*Obs. 2.* To this head belongs the common superscription of letters, *salutem sc. dicit, Cic. Ep. passim.*

- (3.) In dedications, *dicat*, or some such word: as,

*Aenêas hæc de Dâniis victoribus arma, Aeneas this trophy [dedicates], from the victorious Greeks.—Virg.*

*Obs.* So in titles of books: as,

*Cicéronis de Officiis ad filium suum liber [scriptus], A book of Cicero concerning moral duties, addressed to his son.*

- (4.) *Dent, duint*, in prayers: as,

*Dei nostri, The gods [grant] a better lot like our God forbidd!—Cic.*

- (5.) In colloquial language, any verb that may be readily supplied: as,

*Inde cōgito in Arpinum (sc. ire), After that I purpose [going] to Arpinum.—Cic.*

*A me Caesar pecūniā (sc. postulat), Caesar [expects] money from me!—id. Phil. 2, 29, 72.*

*Ne multa (sc. dicam); ceteros (sc. sciti sunt), Not to make a long story of it, as the notions [followed].—id. Alt. 1, 16.*

*Verbum cæve (sc. dicas) de nuptiis,*

*Ne ad morbum hoc etiam (sc. accedat), Take care not to say a word about the wedding, but in addition to her illness [there be added] this further shock.—Ter. And. 1, 5, 65.*

- (6.) When it may be supplied from another Verb in the same sentence: as,

*Ventrem nihil aliud [facere] quam datis voluptatibus frui, The belly they said [did] nothing else than enjoy the pleasures afforded it.—Liv. 2, 32.)*

## § 636. *Repetition of Verbs.* This takes place—

- (1.) In answering a question (where in English “Yes” or “No” would be used): as,

*Neque me aliud habere verbum, ut scire vellem? Permissum est, I had nothing but certum [of answer] avail for a long while—Yes, I say, nothing.—Cic. Tusc. 3, 5, 12.)*

*Daſne aut maneto animos poſt mortem, aut mori li-  
interire?—Do vero, Do you grant that the ſoul either ſurvives  
death, or perishes at the moment of death?—Yes I do.—*  
1, 11, 25.)

*Oſ.* But not always: as,

*An tu hæc non credis?—Miſiſmo vëro, Don't you believe in  
theſe things?—No, indeed!—ib.* 1, 5, 10,

- (2) Inſtead of the brief expreſſion *idque, et id*, “*and  
that*” (§ 619), the verb of the preceding claule is  
often repeated: as,

*Pompeius ſummos in republica hönöres aſſecütus eſt, et  
aſſecütus eſt (= idque) mäurius quam quiquam ante eum,  
Pompey attained to the higheſt honours in the ſtate, and that  
at an earlier period than any one before him.—Cic.*

- (3.) When a ſecond action is performed on the ſame  
object, the preceding verb is often repeated as a  
participle: as,

*Quum urbem vi cepiſſent, captamque diripiſſent, Having  
taken the city by ſtorm, and then pillaged it, &c.—Liv.* 22, 20.

*Eam rem conſules ad Patres diſcrunt; ſed delätam con-  
ſulere ordine non licuit, The conſuls laid the matter before the  
ſenate: but they were not allowed to conſider it [the matter as  
laid before them] in a regular way.—id.* 2, 28.

§ 637. Subſtantival Uſe of Participles.—What has been ſaid  
(§ 339) reſpecting the uſe of Adjectives Subſtantively, ap-  
plies generally to Participles. The following remarks are  
of a more ſpecial nature.

§ 638. Imperfect Participle.—The ſubſtantival uſe of this  
Participle is moſt frequent in the Plural. It is leſs fre-  
quent in the oblique caſes of the Singular, and in the Nom.  
Sing. does not occur at all: as,

*Addidit et aliam fidentiſ ſpëciem, He added an additional token of  
confidence [Lit. of one feeling confidence].—Liv.* 27, 2.

*Errandi monſträre viam, To point out the way to one who has ſtrayed.  
—Enn. ap. Cic.*

*[Quisque] acutius atque acrius vitia in diſcente quam recta videt,  
Everybody ſees faults in a ſpeaker more keenly and critically than excel-  
lencies.—Cic. Or.* 1, 25, 116.)

*Soli ratione ütentes jüre ac lëge vivunt, Only thoſe who make uſe of  
reaſon live according to right and law.—id.* N. D. 2, 62, 154.)

*Hoc gënus delibërantium pellätur e mädio, Let this claſs of queſtioners  
be baniſhed from our miſt.—id.* Off. 3, 8, 37.)

*Quid eſt tam commüne quam . . . märe fluctuantibus, litus ejectionis,  
What is ſo common as to thoſe tossed on the waves, the ſea; to thoſe ſhip-  
wrecked, the ſhore?—id.* Roſc. A. 26, 72.)



- (2.) In the Neut. Sing. (but not in the Nom. Case), with the force of abstract Substantives: v. § 528. Especially in such phrases as *ex composito*, *by composition*; *ex empto*, *ex vendito*, *by purchase*, *by sale*, etc.

§ 643. Zeugma.—Sometimes a Verb which is strictly appropriate only as applied to one Substantive, is by a modification of its meaning applied to two: as,

Romanis Germanisque Idem conducere [putabam], et pacem quam bellum probabam, *I deemed the interests of Romans and Germans to be the same, and approval of peace rather than war.*—TAC. Ann. 1, 58.)

(Here probabam has to be taken in the modified sense of putabam in the first member of the sentence.)

Nos Maurici Rustique visus, nos innocenti sanguine Senecio perfudit, *Us the sight of Mauricus and Rusticus [horried], us Senecio drenched with guiltless blood.*—TAC. (Agr. 45.)

Tacitus is fond of this construction.

Obs. Zeugma may also occur with other parts of speech besides Verbs: as,

Vir facundus et p̄cis artibus [h̄abilis, aptus], belli *inexpertus*, *An eloquent man and fitted for the arts of peace, inexperienced in war.*—TAC. Hist. 1, 5.)

## CHAPTER LIX.—ADVERBS AND PREPOSITIONS.

§ 644. Adverbs.—*Ita*, besides its ordinary uso (§ 551) has the following peculiar constructions:

- (1.) After non, haud, it is equivalent to *admodum*, *very*: as,

Sunt ea (sīmūlāera) p̄rampla et praeclāra, sed non *ita* antiqua, *Those statues are very magnificent and admirable, but of no very great antiquity.*—CIC.

Haud *ita* multum (praedae) militi dātum, *No very large proportion of the spoil was given to the soldiers.*—LIV.

Nec *ita* multo post, *And not very long after.*—CIC.

Obs. In such cases there is an ellipsis: *not so much so as might have been expected, &c.*

- (2.) In adjurations: as,

*Ite* me dii āment, lōnestus est, *So may heaven love me, he is a fine gentleman!*—TER. Eun. 3, 2, 21.)

Obs. In the same way *sic* is used: see Hor. Od. 1, 3, 1.

§ 445. *Satis* not unfrequently = "sufficiently," "fairly," "cell:" as,

*Satis eum periculis, With considerable risk.*—TER. (AND. 1. 1, 144.)

*Plantius est magna et in ea tunc lesa gratia.*—TER. *There was an increase of plain, and is it a kind of comfort to me.*—CAES. B. G. 1, 43.

*Hic nec in flammis et in hostibus, A person not without plumes and a few number.*—CIC. OR. 3, 14, 58.

§ 446. *Minus, parum, male.*—These three Adverbs are often used with a negative force, when they are equivalent to a softened *non*: as,

*Tertius enim belle habuit, Tertius has not been very well.*—CIC. (FAM. 9, 9.)

*L. Cotta . . . . . S. autem venit, L. Cotta hardly comes into the scene at all.*—CIC. 12, 2.

*Primus excolit quod ager, My husband is not cultivating so much.*—TER. (AND. 1. 1, 54.)

*Primus parvis laetis C. . . . ., He is not much less than light as what is not clear.*—HOR. A. P. 448.

*Pro Cicerone tunc Scaevola exprobravi, I have almost thought him of myself as L.*—CIC. ATT. 9, 15.

*Male gratus, Ungrateful.*—CIC. HOR. 7, 27.

*Ch. Minus excolit quod ager, after not cultivating, etc. Parum he never a small number; but, very few, and, very little.*

§ 447. *Nullus* in colloquial language = *non*: see § 412.

§ 448. *Prepositions* (see § 453, sup.).—When a Preposition occurs in composition with a Verb, it is often repeated after the Verb: as,

*Exire ex navis, To disembark from a ship.*—NAP.

*Parti ex urbe, To depart from the city.*—CIC.

Sometimes a different Preposition is used: as, *exire de navis, a patria* (CIC.).

§ 449. When in English two Prepositions are joined with the same Substantive, in Latin the Substantive is usually repeated: as,

*Hinc quia causa, hinc propter hoc data causa, Why one thing has been made for that, another for this.*—LIV. 4, 8.

*Diutius quidem, sed non ultra et in regem, He could not govern so long, because that tyranny had not been able to last so long and before his long reign.*—JUL. 12, 16.

*Ch. Hinc et in hoc et in prepositionibus, which were also used as Adverbs, the construction was the same in English: as,*

*Hinc hincque prepositiones, Hither and thither for conjunction.*—CIC. (B. C. 2, 12.)

*Super quodamque locum, Above and below (conjunctions).*—LIV. 10, 1.)

Or the Substantive may be expressed with one Preposition and understood with the other : as,

*Sûper theatrum circûque, Above and round about the theatre.*—Liv. (24, 39.)

*Illicos intra mûros et extra, Within the Trojan walls and without them.*—Hör. (Ep. 1, 2, 16.)

§ 650. *Inter* is sometimes repeated : as,

*Inter Péliden et inter Achillem, Between the son of Peleus and Achilles.*—Hör. Ep. 1, 2, 12.)

*Nihil inter te atque inter quadrupèlem interesse putas, You think there is no difference between you and a brute.*—Cic. Par. 1, 14.

*Certatum inter Ap. Claudium maxime, et inter P. Decium Murem, The contest was very warm between Ap. Claudius and P. Decius Mus.*—Liv. 10, 7.

*Obs.* Zumpt remarks that this construction is especially frequent with *interesse*.

§ 651. When the *same* Preposition belongs in English to two Substantives, the corresponding Preposition in Latin is repeated with the latter Substantive only when it denotes something quite distinct from the former : as,

*Légati ab Aeduis et ab Tréviris véniebant, Embassies arrived [separately] from the Aedui and from the Treveri.*—CAES. (B. G. 1, 57.)

*Cur de sua virtute aut de ipsius diligentia desperarent, Why did they despair either of their own valour, or of his conduct?*—ib. 40.

Otherwise it is not repeated : as,

*In Caesare populoque Romano, In Caesar and the Roman people.*—ib. 32.)

*Apud Ariovistum et Sequanos, In the hands of Ariovistus and the Sequani.*—ib. 33.)

## CHAPTER LX.—CONJUNCTIONS AND OTHER WORDS AS PARTICLES.

§ 652. The Conjunctions, as such, being treated above (§§ 559, sqq.), the following observations will be devoted to their use, and that of other short words as particles.

*Obs.* The term *particle* (see § 11) is especially applied to uninflected words without any syntactical power, but serving to call attention to some particular part of a sentence.

§ 653. *Adéo*—This particle is attached to single words for the sake of emphasis. In this way it is used after

Pronouns (§ 614) and other words, including the Conjunction *atque*: as,

*Multum adeo* [is] . . . *arva juvat*, *Much does such an one improve the soil.*—Virg.

*Hoc significant, atque adeo aperte ostendunt*, *This they hint and indeed openly show.*—Cic.

§ 654. *Ēnim*, though often used elliptically, for the most part retains its logical sense of *for* (see § 581). It is however sometimes merely a particle of emphasis = *indeed*, in *fact*: as,

*Tum Metilius Tr. Pl., id enim ferendum esse negat*, *Thereupon Metilius, tribune of the commons, declares that that is really not to be put up with!*—Liv. (22, 25.)

*Quid tute tecum?*—*Nihil enim*, *What were you saying to yourself?*—*Nothing at all.*—Plaut.

*Illā enim se negat (facturam)*, *The woman declares she cannot on any account do so.*—Ter. (Phor. 1, 2, 63.)

*Obs.* In the same way is sometimes used *nam* and also the compound *et̄enim* (= Gr. καὶ γάρ).

§ 655. *Nempe* (= *nam-pe*), *forsooth*, so it seems, *why*, occurs at the beginning of a sentence, and gives animation: as,

*Si Flacīdīus dat tantam pecūniam Flacco, nempe idcirco dat ut rāta sit emptio*, *If Flacīdīus gives so large a sum of money to Flaccus, I suppose the reason he gives it, is that the bargain may be good.*—Cic.

*Nempe dixi*, *I said, did I?*—Hor. (S. 1. 10, 9.)

*Nempe negas ad beatē vivendum sātis posse virtutē*, *You deny then, it seems, that virtue is sufficient for a happy life?*—Cic. (Tusc. 5, 12.)

*In quā tandem urbe . . . ? Nempe in eā quae, etc.*, *In what city pray? Why (or forsooth) in that which, &c.*—Cic. (Mil. 3, 7.)

§ 656. *Quidem*, *indeed*, *at least*, *even*, is usually placed next after the most emphatic word of a sentence, which it serves to mark: as,

*Sibi quidem persuādēri, etc.*, *He for his part was convinced, etc.*—Cic.

*Nihil sāne ex me quidem audire pōtuisse*, *You would not have been able to hear a word from me, at any rate.*—Cic.

Especially in connexion with *ne*: when *ne* . . . *quidem* = *not even* (see also § 567, *Obs.*): as,

*Nulla ne mīnīma quidem aura*, *Not even the least breath of air.*—Cic.

*Obs.* 1. *Quidem* is often equivalent to the Greek γάρ. When *ne* . . . *quidem* = *not even*, the emphatic word is put between the two particles.

*Obs.* 2. For the use of *quidem* after *ille*, see § 616.

*Obs.* 3. With the first person singular, *equidem* (= *ego quidem*) is used: also sometimes with other persons, see Lat. Dict. s. v.



§ 657. *Utique* is formed from *ut* or *uti*, and signifies *at any rate, certainly*: it usually follows the word to which it chiefly refers: as,

*Illud vëro atque* = Gr. γούν, *scire cupio, There is one thing at any rate I should like to know.*—Cic.

*Annum quidem atque tēnëto, You must at any rate maintain the limit of a year.*—Cic.

After *non* it may be translated by *certainly*: as,

*Universo pars continëtur: non utique accëlit parti quod üniversum est. The part is contained in the whole: but certainly the whole does not belong to a part.*—Quint.

§ 658. *Duntaxat* is similar to *quidem*, but usually *precedes* the word to which it refers: it may be translated by *just, at least, only*: as,

*Duntaxat ad hoc, Just for this purpose.*—Hor.

*Genus eloquentiæ duntaxat äölëscens adhuc Strabönis Cæsäris scëntus vidëtur. He appears, at least while still a young man, to have imitated Strabo Cæsar's style of oratory.*—Suet.

*Peditätu duntaxat præul ad spëciem ütitur, He employs his cavalry, only at a distance for show.*—Caes.

§ 659. *Certë*.—The use of the Adverb *certe* = *certainly, at least*, must be distinguished from that of *certo*, *for certain, of a truth*: as,

*Certe equidem pëjörem püërum quam te vidi nëmänem, Verily, a worse lad than you I never saw.*—Pl.

*Res fortasse vëräe; certe gräves, Matters, perhaps true, but at least important.*—Cic.

*Certo scio, I know for certain.*—Cic.

§ 660. *Vëro, dëmum, indeed, at length*, are used for the sake of giving a strong emphasis to the words to which they are attached: especially in the phrases, *is dëmum, that and nothing short of it*; *tum vëro* (Gr. τότε έν), *then if never before, then verily*: as,

*Tum vëro ardëmus scitári, Then more than ever we are fired with curiosity.*—Virg.

*Is dëmum vitam aquä lancee pensitabit, That man, and no other, will form a fair appreciation of life icho, etc.*—Plin.

§ 661. *Cunque* is rarely found alone; occurring for the most part in such compounds as *quicunque, ubicunque, etc.* When it does occur alone, it is equivalent to the Greek ποτέ, *ever, at any time*: as,

*Mihi cunque salve ritë vocanti, Be gracious to me whensoever duly invoking thee.*—Hor. 'Od. 1, 32, 15.'

*Obs.* In poetry *cunque* is not unfrequently separated from the word to which it belongs by *Tmesis*: as,

*Quae dëmant cunque dölörem, Whatever things may remove pain.*—Lucr.

## CHAPTER LXI.—ON THE ORDER OF WORDS.

§ 662. The terminations of the *inflected* words in Latin show at once their relation to each other; and the arrangement of these may therefore be varied without affecting the sense. Thus the words,

Scipio Hannibālem vicit

will have the same meaning whether they are arranged thus or in any other way: as,

Hannibalem Scipio vicit,

Hannibalem vicit Scipio, etc.

In English, from the Subject being only known by its position at the beginning, only one arrangement yields a certain sense.

*Obs.* But the *uninflected* words have in general the same positions as in English: see §§ 673, sqq.

§ 663. In ordinary language, however, the arrangement of words is pretty regular; the Subject leading off the sentence, and the Predicate following: as,

Alexander mortuus est; Nix est alba, etc.

*Obs.* According to the preceding section (*Obs.*), various preliminary uninflected words may precede the sentence proper: such as Conjunctions, Adverbs of Time and Place, etc.

§ 664. *Object.*—When a sentence consists of Subject, Verb, Object, the usual order in Latin is,

1	2	3
Subject,	Object,	Verb,

these several parts being each attended by their adjuncts. The following may serve as examples of such simple sentences:

Hæc Bābylōniam condidit, *She (Semiramis) it was who founded Babylon.*—Just.

Hannibal urbem tripartito aggrēditur, *Hannibal attacks the city with his army in three divisions.*—Liv.

Ingrātus unus omnibus mīseris nocet, *A single ungrateful person does injury to all the unfortunate.*—P. Syr.

*Obs.* 1. The same rule applies to Verbs Transitive proper (§ 234), and to such as govern a Dative or Ablative case.

*Obs.* 2. Not only the Accusative, but also the other oblique cases usually precede the Verb: as, *gladius* pugnāre, *gladio* hūmerum appōnere, *viam* perficere, *vitam* alicui eripere, etc. The Accusative generally precedes another Case, unless the latter be emphatic.

§ 665. But when the Predicate or Object is emphatic it may be brought to the beginning, the Subject often coming last: as,

*Vicit rationem amentia, The victory was gained over reason by folly.*—Cic.

*Ardua virumque cano, Ardua and the men I sing!*—Virg.

*Hæc ego omnia compèri, All these things have I brought to light.*—Cic.

Obs. Inquam, Inquit, say I, says he, are always used parenthetically. as, *nihil vèro, inquit, Cæsa, etc.*: cf. § 635, 2.

§ 666. The first place in a sentence being the most prominent, it is, where emphasis is needed, assigned to the most emphatic word: as,

*Fuit, fuit, ista quoniam in republica virtus, There was,—yea there was once—that vigour in the commonwealth.*—Cic.

*Ad mortem te Catilina duci jampridem oportebat, To execution, Catiline, thou oughtest long since to have been conducted!*—Cic.

*Elephanto nulla beluorum prudentior est, Than the elephant there is not a single quadruped more sagacious.*—Cic.

§ 667. Also the last place in a sentence may become strikingly emphatic for any word whose ordinary place would have been earlier: as,

*Arbores scriit diligens agricola quarum adspiciet hucam ipse nunquam, The industrious husbandman plants trees the fruit whereof he will never see at all.*—Cic.

*Provinciam cepisti duram, The task you have undertaken is hard.*—Ter.

*Apud Helveticos longe ditissimus fuit Orgetorix, Among the Helvetii by far the richest man was Orgetorix.*—Cæsar.

*Mæcenas atavis edite regibus, Thou Mæcenas sprung from the loins of kings.*—Hor.

Especially, sometimes, the last word of an Hexameter: as,

*Tantum religio potuit suadere malorum, To such illa could superstition tempt!*—Lucr.

*Parturiunt montes, nascetur ridiculus mus, The mountains are in labour; forth will come an insignificant mouse!*—Hor.

*Albanique patres atque altae moenia Romae, And Alban sires, and walls of lofty Rome.*—Virg.

Obs. In free conversational language or familiar letters, the arrangement approaches the English more closely: as,

*Ego quum accepissem tuas literas Nonis Aprilibus, Having received your letter on the 5th of April.*—Cic.

(Periodic order: ego quum literas tuas Non. Apr. accepissem.)

§ 668. A *Substantive or Adjective in Apposition* follows the word to which it refers: as,

Cicero orator, Consul Tullius, Plinius minor, etc.

Obs. 1. *Consul Tullius* or *Tullius consul* might be equally correct. The former would inform us that the consul's name was *Tullius*; the latter that *Tullius* held the office of consul (cf. Cic. Div. Q. Caecil. 10).

Obs. 2. Any adjuncts serving to qualify either word, may separate the two: as, *Attius Navius, inclitus eâ tempestâte angur, A. Navius, o famous angur of the time.*—Liv.

*Egerius frâtris hic filius erat régis Colubiae in praesidio relictus, Egerius*—thus was the king's brother's son—being left in charge of Colubia, &c.—Liv.

Obs. 3. Sometimes one or more unimportant words not adjuncts of either, are allowed to stand between: as,

*Evander tum ea profugus ex Peloponnêso régēbat lœca, Evander, at the time an exile from Peloponnæsus, ruled in these parts.*—Liv.

*Lucumoni contra, omnium hêrêdi bonarum, quum divitiarum jam animos facerent, Wealth now inspiring the Lucumo, on the contrary, who was heir to [his] entire property, with arrogance.*—Liv.

§ 669. *Dependent Genitive.*—No universal rule can be laid down for the position of a Genitive dependent upon another Substantive. But in the periodic style, at least, the Genitive more frequently precedes. Compare the following examples from Cic. Verr. v. 1-3:—

*Bellic pericula (his—accusationis rationem—imperatorum penuria—Siculorum testimonio—hostium duce—P. Romani laudem—judicium crudelitatem—defensionis rationem—citius principes—reipublicae tempora [tempora reipublicae, above: rhetorical effect]—victoriae gloriam—fugitivorum bello, copiae [also, bello fugitivorum, above; with emphasis on bello]—illorum adventum, etc.*

But where the style is simpler and less elaborate the order is very often the same as in English. Compare the following examples from Liv. I. i. 1, where the legendary history is treated in a somewhat easy and familiar manner:—

*Ducem advenarum—filium Anchisae et Veneris—fidem futurae amicitiae—nomen uroris—rex Rutulorum—adventum Aeneae—comes paternae fugae—auctorem nominis—pars Romanae urbis—voluntas patris—verecundia actus—spem huius—spem patris, etc.*

§ 670. When the Subjective and Objective are combined, the former generally precedes and the latter follows the Substantive: as,

*Cognovisse huius (Subj. Gen.) principium magistratum generis—(Obj. Gen.), Mark the commencement of holding office.*—Cic. (Verr. 1. 13, 34).

*Cur eorum (Subj. Gen.) spem reliquam fortunarum. Obj. Gen. v. ex terrore contraria, Why do you attempt to wring from them their only remaining hope of recovering their fortunes?*—Cic. (Div. in Q. Caecil. 6, 21).

§ 671. *Attributive.*—The ordinary position for an attributive Adjective is immediately before its Substantive: as,

Multas virtutes,—majore religione,—in tam propinquo loco (all from Nep. Them. 8; — ingens multitudo,—tam longi operis,—amplissimis verbis,—publica laetitia,—inscquens annus,—consularis potestas,—Fidē-nāti bello,—anelpiti proelio,—ex majōribus castris (from Liv. 5. 8, 9); etc.

Obs. 1. Some of the Adjectives in the above examples are emphatic; but the position does not render them so. On the contrary, the place next *after* the Substantive, as being less usual, is not unfrequently more emphatic: as, tempestate maximā (Nep. Them. 8), donum amplum (Liv. 5, 16), O puerum pulchrum (Cic. Off. 1, 40, 144), etc.

Obs. 2. A monosyllabic Substantive more frequently precedes its Adjective: as, res rusticae, res nāvālis, di immortales. Yet Cic. has magna spes, omnis spes, etc.

§ 672. Great emphasis may be given to an Adjective by separating it from its Substantive, so as to let it produce a more independent impression: as,

Num tibi haec parva videntur adjumenta, *Deem you these small helps!*—Cic. (Mur. 18, 38.)

Sit idem magnificentissimos et nullos unquam fecisse ludos, *Be it all the same thing (for a candidate) to have given the most magnificent games or none ever at all.*—ib. (19, 41.)

Filiam ejus parvulam arripuit, *He seized hold of his daughter, an infant.*—NEP. (Them. 8.)

Tribus in unum bellis collatis, *Three wars being accumulated all in one.*—Liv. (5, 13.)

Obs. In poetry, it is very common for a Substantive to be separated from its epithet by several words, without any special emphasis being intended. The Substantive and epithet then often stand in corresponding parts of a line.

Especially if the Adjective becomes in this way either the first or last word in a sentence: as,

Lābor omnia vincit  
*Imprōbus, Toil untiring conquers all (difficulties).*—Virg.

Hanc naturae tam diligentem fabricam, imitata est hominum vērē-  
cundia, *This so careful contrivance of nature, human modesty has copied.*  
—Cic. (Off. 1, 35, 127.)

Quod aliud iter haberent nullum, *Because, other route (they said) they had none.*—CAES. (B. G. 1, 8.)

§ 673. But the place immediately before a Substantive is for the (quasi-enclitic) pronominal Adjectives meus, tuus, suus, noster, vester, an emphatic position: as,

Clāmōres maximos pro vestrā salūte neglexit, *He thought little of the loudest outcries in comparison with the safety of you.*—Cic. (Mil. 2, 3.)

Per vos, ac per vestram fidem, *By means of you, and your protection.*  
—ib. (2, 4.)

Quum suā manu sororem esse interfectam faterētur, *When he confessed that by his own hand his sister had been put to death.*—ib. (3, 7.)

Meam potentiam invidiōse criminābatur, *He made invidious charges against (what he called) MY unconstitutional power.*—ib. (5, 12.)

(Compare Nep. Paus. IV. 2, where, writing to Xerxes, Pausanias says, *des ei filiam tuam*, and immediately after, *Gracciam sub tuam potestatem se redacturum pollicetur*. In the former case a prominence of the word *tuam* might seem likely to give offence, in the latter it could not be other than flattering.)

§ 674. Different forms of the same word, when used to indicate some contrast, correspondence, or reciprocity, are put close to each other: as,

*Mānus mānum lāvat*, *Hand washes hand* (= *One good turn deserves another*);—*Vet. Prov. in Sen.*

*Haeret pēde pes densusque vīro vir*, *Foot is locked to foot and man to man, in dense array*.—*VIRG.* (*Aen.* 10, 361).

*Omnia mea mēcum porto*, *I carry all my property about me.*

*Magnāque cum magno vēniet trītūra cālōre*, *And a great crop* [Lit. thrashing] *with great heat will ensue*.—*VIRG.* (*G.* 1, 190.)

*Magnum magno cōnāmīne mīsīt*, *The mighty 'stone' with mighty effort he threw*.—*OV.* (*Met.* 3, 59).

§ 675. The *ille* of celebrity (§ 365) follows the Substantivo to which it refers; as,

*Mēlēa illa. Acādēmīa illa* (*Cic.*), *testūla illa*, *The (fatal) oyster-shell used in ostracism* (*Nep.*): comp. § 365.

*Obs.* But when an Adjective is added, the *ille* may precede the Substantivo: as, *vīhēmēns ille consul*, *Cic. in Cat.* 2, 6.

§ 676. Some Adjectives regularly follow the Substantivos to which they refer. So do especially those which are equivalent to a dependent Genitive, or may be rendered in English by a Substantivo and a Preposition: as,

*Pōpulus Rōmānus*, *Pōpulus Albānus* (= *Romae, Albae*); *vincula publica* (= *pōpuli*, the prison of state; *diī publici*, the gods of one's country (*Nep.*); *mōtus civiēns* (= *civium*), a commotion amongst citizens; *pontifex maximus*, *aes aliēnum*; etc.

*Obs.* But we find always *tribūni militum consūlāri pōtestāte*, not *potestate consulari*; and in the case of some words the usage varies, as *pugna nāvālis* or *navalis pugna*; *civitas maritima* or *maritima civitas*.

§ 677. Sometimes an Adjective is put after a Substantivo because of its close connexion with what immediately follows: as,

*Bellum multiplex fuit eōdem tempore*, *There were going on at the same time a multitude of wars*.—*Liv.*

*Rōmānis indignitas māior quam cūra*, *The Romans felt more indignation than concern*.—*Liv.*

*Cavendum est ne tarditātibus ūtāmur in ingressu molliōribus*, *ut* [= *ut adeo molles ut*] *pompārum fereūlis similes esse videāmur*, *We must take care not to use in walking such effeminate slow movements as to look like the vessels carried in religious processions*.—*Cic.*

*Non Idibus Decembris, die sabbato, sed extemplo Kalendis Octobribus, They had entered an edict not on the 15th of December, the day proper for a sabbat, but at once on the 1st of October.—Liv.*

§ 678. *Adverbs* are usually placed immediately before the word they qualify: as, *satis magnus, diligenter curare*, etc. But they may be emphasised in a similar manner to *Adjectives* (comp. §§ 672, *sup.*): as,

*Nusquam opera sine emolumento est, Nowhere is work without its reward.—Liv.*

*Choro ab custodiibus subluxit, He, without being noticed, got away from his keepers.—Nep.*

(For *nequam* at the end of a sentence, see § 667.)

(3.) *Non* when it refers to a single word, stands immediately before it: as,

*Davos sum, non Oedipus, I am I, not Oedipus.—Ter.*

*Ille non aptissimus ad jocandum, A man not the best hand at a joke.*

—*Ca.*

But when it refers to the entire proposition, it often stands at the beginning: as,

*Non, melius fidius, possum prae lacrymis reliqua scribere, I cannot, I swear, write the rest for tears.—Ca., and Att.*

§ 679. When two words stand in the same relation to another word, they must either both precede or both follow it: as,

*Deus est datum atque oblatum (not datum divinitus atque oblatum); —sua spe ne praesentatione (not spe sua, &c.); —cum summa voluntate et expectantione Populi Romani (not cum voluntate summa P. R., &c.); —vere regi seque dicere; —amicorum studio officioque; —homo audacissimus atque amentissimus.—(All from Verr. Act. I. 1-3.)*

§ 680. *Prepositions*.—The ordinary position of the different Prepositions has been explained above (chap. LIII.). Concerning the connexion of two Prepositions with the same Substantive see § 619.

A Preposition may be separated from its Case not only by an attributive (as, *ex magnis civitatibus, ad bene vivendum*), or a dependent Genitive (as, *ex Caesaris castris*), but also (1) by the enclitic *que* (poet.); or (2) by an Accusative of the object governed by a transitive participle: as,

(1.) *Equae sacra resonant examina queren, And the swarms hum from the sacred oak.—Virg.*

(N. B.—*Adipem regem*, in *Nep. Dat. 7*, is probably a false reading for *ad regemque*.)

(2.) *Nec enim in constituentibus rempublicam, nec in bella gerentibus, &c., Per et a magistro scho manage politics or wage wars, &c.—(Cic. Br 12, 45.)*

*In eum cuique tribuendo, In giving each his due.—(ib. 21, 85.)*

*Obs.* 1. Sometimes when the governed Substantive has an attributive, the Preposition stands between the two: as, *una ex re* (Cic.); &c.

*Obs.* 2. Concerning *per* separated from its Substantive in adjurations, see § 556, 17. *Obs.*

§ 681. *Conjunctions*, as connecting and showing the relation between sentences, naturally precede the members they serve to introduce: for examples see Chap. LIV. The principal exceptions are there treated. Concerning *ne* . . . . . *quidem*, see § 656.

Also some Adverbs of Time and Place, as *intērim*, *intērea*, *sīmul*, *jam*, *nunc*, *tunc*, *tum*; *ibi*, *hic*, *illic*, etc., when they contain a reference to what has preceded, stand at the beginning.

*Obs.* *Inde* is very often treated as an enclitic: as,

*Dēdi inde inermes coepti*, &c.; *Agī inde de Apollinis dōno*, &c.; *Obstidio inde urbis*, &c.—Liv.

§ 682. *Subordinate clauses*.—Participial or adverbial clauses and clauses with *quum* (see § 526), also Relative clauses when serving the purpose of definition, are let into the body of a period: as,

At Xerxes *Thermōpylis expugnātis*, *prōtinus accessit astu*, *But Xerxes after having forced the pass of Thermopylae, approached the city.*—Nep.

Jamque *nuntiāto augūrio*, *quum duplex nūmērus Rōmūlo se ostendisset*, *utrumque rēgem sua multitudo consalūtāverat*, *And now, when the augury had been published, and the double number presented itself to Romulus, the different parties had each saluted their own king.*—Liv.

Compare also the following:

*Palatium primum, in quo ipse erat cōlocātus* (Rel. clause), *mūnīit: sacra dōs aliis Albā in ritu* (Adverb. clause), *Græco Herculi ut ab Ereandro instituta erant* (Adv. clause), *fācit.*—Liv. 1, 7.

*Magna pars [virginum] forte, et in quæ quæque inciderat* (Adv. clause, *raptæ*)—Liv. 1, 9.

*Athēnienses dixit suo consilio, quod commāni jure gentium fieri possent* (Rel. clause), *deos publicos suosque, patrios ac pēnates, quo facilius ab hoste possent defendere* (comp. § 641), *mūris sacpisse.*—Nep. (Thm. 7).

§ 683. But when a Relative clause introduces an altogether fresh predication it forms a new sentence or clause by itself: as,

*Inde non prius ēgressus est quam rex eum, datā dextrā, in fidem recepit, Quam praestitit. He did not quit the spot, until the king, giving him his right hand, took him under his protection: which he made good.*—Nep.

*Postquam audiēret muros instrui, legatus Athenis miserunt, qui ut fieri videret. When they heard that the walls were being built, they sent ambassadors to Athens, to forbid its being done.*—Nep.

*Obs.* In accordance with the above is the common practice of Latin authors of carrying forward narrative by means of the Relative.



§ 684. Similarly a Subjunctive clause with *ut* or *ne*, when not simply explanatory, follows the sentence to which it is attached: as,

*Triplex portus constitutus est, isque moenibus circumdatus, ut ipsam urbem dignitate acquirāret, A threefold port was formed and surrounded by walls, so as to vie with the city in importance.—Nep.*

*Tullius præcepērat suis, ne quid prius quam mandata agerent, Tullius had instructed his envoys not to attend to anything before their commission.—Liv.*

But in the following examples the clause with *ut*, *ne*, being explanatory, naturally precedes:

*Sed quia in civitate bellicōsā, plūres Rōmuli quam Nūmæ similes rēges putābat fore, ne sacra rēgiæ rītibus dēsererentur, flāminem Jōvi assīduum sacerdotem creāvit, But as in a martial commonwealth, he thought there would be more kings like Romulus than like Numa,—to prevent the sacred rites falling to the share of the king from being neglected,—he appointed a perpetual flamen to Jove.—Liv.*

*His, ut assidue templi antistites essent, stipendium de publico stāuit, To these—in order that they might serve the temple uninterruptedly—he assigned a salary from the public treasury.—Liv.*

*Obs.* It is not possible to define precisely the kinds of clauses treated of in the preceding sections. The longer clauses more frequently follow.

§ 685. Most sentences, and even clauses, are capable of being divided into shorter members, each of which is arranged according to the same general principles as an entire sentence: as,

*Atqui tōtus hic locus, philosophōrum putatur proprius, The whole of this subject, however, is regarded as belonging to philosophy (not rhetoric).—Cic.*

*Quidquid erit igitur, quācunque ex arte, quōcunque de gēnere, id orator si tanquam clientis causam didicērit, dicet melius et ornātius quam ille ipse ejus rei inventor atque artifex, Whatever it may be, therefore, from whatever art or science, and from whatever branch, the orator will, if he will only study it as he would his client's brief, speak upon it more effectively and impressively, than even the original discoverer or proficient therein.—Cic. (Or. 1, 11, 51.)*

*Obs.* After the enunciation of an emphatic word, the remaining words in the same member are unemphatic. In the second sentence the adverbs *melius*, *ornatius*, follow the verb *dicet* because of their close connexion with the following words *quam*, etc. (comp. § 677.)

§ 686. Regard must in all cases be had to euphony, concerning which it is impossible to lay down precise rules. It may however be remarked that a trochaic ending (— ◡) for a sentence is preferable to an iambic or dactylic one. Thus the following endings occur in the first chapter of the *De Oratore*:

*Esse possent, constitisset, fefellerunt, exstiterunt, recolendas, discrimen, redundarunt, roganti, voluntati; the only iambic ending in the same chapter being confēram (a creticus).*

PART II. (SYNTAX.)—*Continued.*BOOK III. — REMARKS ON THE STYLES OF SALLUST,  
CAESAR, CICERO, LIVY AND TACITUS.

## CHAPTER LXII.—STYLE OF SALLUST.

§ 687. The style of Sallust is marked by brevity and frequent use of antithesis; also by the recurrence or peculiar use of certain words and constructions; and by some archaisms.

*Obs.* There is something artificial about the style of Sallust. This is most apparent in the moralising introductions with which he has prefaced his *Catiline* and *Jugurtha*. In simple narrative or description he is often exceedingly vigorous and animated: see for example his delineation of the character of *Catiline* (c. 5); his account of the seizure of the dispatches of the *Allobrogian* embassy (ib. 44, 45); of the siege of *Zama* (Jug. 60); of the *Philaeni* (ib. 79).

§ 688. *Brevity*.—This is a general feature of the style of Sallust, and is seen most strikingly in such concise expressions as the following:

*Vitam silentio transire, to go through life without causing one's name to be heard of, (Cat. 1);—ingēnium, corpus, the entire faculties of the human mind or body, (ib. 2);—quae hōmīnes arant, nāvīgant, aedificant, the different kinds of activity put forth in husbandry, navigation, and building or architecture, (ib. 2).—āmāre, pōtāre, to indulge in the pleasures of licentiousness or intoxication, (ib. 11);—mānus, venter, gambling, gluttony, (ib. 14);—virtus, all kinds of excellent qualities; especially of the mind, (passim);—ars, any kind of occupation or course (passim).*

§ 689. *Asyndeton* (§ 565. *Obs.*).—In accordance with his love of brevity, Sallust is fond of dispensing with connectives; as in the following examples:

*Quibus p̄fecto contra nātūram, corpus vōluptāti, ānīmus ōnēri fuit, To whom—in opposition to what nature intended, unquestionably—the body was the only source of pleasure [and] the mind a burden.—(Cat. 2.)*

*Māre saevum, importunōsum; āger frūgum fertilis, bōnus p̄cōri, arbōre infēcundus: coelo terrāque p̄nūria āquārū, The sea [is] rough [and] without harbours; the soil fertile [and] good for stock [though] unproductive in trees; sky and earth [are alike] deficient in supply of water.—(Jug. 17.)*

(Compare also *Cat. 5.*)

*Obs.* Sallust is equally partial to the omission of the copula; as in the latter of the above examples.

§ 690. *Antithesis*.—The following may serve as specimens of the very frequent use of this figure by Sallust:

*Nam pro pudōre, pro abstinentiā, pro virtūte, audācia, largitio, āvāritia vīgēbant, For in place of modesty, of clean-handedness, of virtue, flourished effrontery, corruption, covetousness.*—(Cat. 3.)

*Laudis āvidi, p̄cūniāo libērales, Covetous of praise; liberal with money.*—(ib. 7.)

*Concordia maxīma; mīnīma āvāritia, erat, There was the utmost degree of harmony, the least of covetousness.*—(ib. 9.)

(Compare the whole of the last-named chapter: also Cat. 54, etc.)

§ 691. *Historical Infinitive*.—Sallust makes very frequent use of this construction (see § 517), which is particularly suited to animated description. This is well seen in his vivid picture of the state of the capital during the panic caused by the conspiracy (Cat. 31), or of the restlessness and insecurity of the guilty Jugurtha (Jug. 72).

§ 692. *Alius . . . aliud*.—This concise idiom (see § 629) is probably more frequent in Sallust than in any other writer. Thus we find—

*Aliud ālio ferri.*—(Cat. 2.)

*Alius ālii nātūra iter monstrat.*—(same chapter.)

*Alius ālio mōre vīventes.*—(ib. 6.)

*Alius ālium hortāri.*—(same chapter.)

*Practēra ālium ālio [mittit].*—(ib. 27.)

*Alios in ālia lōca [praemīsisse].*—(same chapter.)

And so in many other places.

§ 693. *Sed, nam, igitur*.—Sallust begins a great many of his sentences with one or other of these conjunctions (probably after the model of the Greek *ἐὐ* or *ἀλλά*—*γάρ*—*οὖν*). This has a somewhat bald and monotonous effect. Thus in the first short chapter of the Catiline, *nam* and *sed* each begin two sentences; and in five consecutive chapters (ib. 7—11), *sed* begins *nine* sentences; *igitur*, *four*; and *nam* (or *namque*), *three*.

*Obs.* By other authors *igitur* is placed second in a sentence, not first.

§ 694. *Favourite or peculiar words*.—There are some words (1) which Sallust is fond of repeating; others (2) which are rarely used by other writers or not in the same sense: the following are the principal of these:

(1.) *Mortāles* in sense of *hōmīnes* (*passim*). *Pōpūlāres*, for *accomplices* (Cat. 22, 24).

**Tempestas** for (*particular*) *time* (Gr. *καίρος*): *as*,

*Eā tempestāte* (Cat. 7, 17, 22, 26; Jug. 8, &c.), *quā tempestāte* (Jug. 79).

**Āgo** and its frequentative *āgīto*, in various senses: *as*.

*Civitas laeta āgēre*, *The whole city acted as, full of joy.*—(Jug. 55.)

*Incultius āgēre*, *To live in a more uncivilized manner.*—(id. 89.)

*Multa āgītāre*, *To turn over, meditate upon many things.*—(Cat. 53.)

*Vāgos āgītāre*, *To live a wandering life.*—(Jug. 19.)

*Agītāre* (absol.), *To move, gesticulate.*—(Jug. 60.)

*Vārius incertusque āgītābat*, *He acted in an inconstant and hesitating way.*—(ib. 74.)

**Hābeo**, in various senses: *as*,

*Virtus clāra aeternaque hābētur*, *Virtue is a glorious and imperishable possession.*—(Cat. 1.)

*Aequābilis sēse res humānae hābērent*, *Human affairs would go on more steadily.*—(ib. 2.)

*Aetātem praeul a rēpublica hābēre*, *To spend one's life aloof from public affairs.*—(ib. 4.)

*Nēque quicquam pensi hābēbat*, *Nor had he any consideration.*—(ib. 5.)

*So, condidēro atquo hābuēre, sicuti plerūque mortaliū hābentur, nōmen rēgiū hābēbant* (ib. 6),—*in promptu hābēre, libīdinem hābēbant* (ib. 7), and so on.

## (2.) Peculiar uses of words:

**Mēdiocris**, in senso of *equitable, good* (Gr. *ἐπιεικής*): Jug. 6.

**Gignentia**, for *plants, vegetation*: Jug. 79, *meil*.

§ 695. *Archaisms.*—Sallust somewhat affects these: the following may be noted:—

(1.) Accusative pl. of Substantives and Adjectives in *es* and *is* in *is* rather than *es*: *as*, *omnis*, &c.

(2.) Genitive sing. of 4th Decl. in *i* for *us*: *as*, *senāti* (Cat. 30, 36, 51).

(3.) Such contracted Genitives as *ingeni* (Cat. 1), *imperi* (ib. 6), *auxili* (ib. 40), &c.

(4.) He always uses *o* after *v*, and not *u*: *as* *divorsi* (Cat. 2), *convortit* (ib. 6), &c.

*Obs.* This last mode of spelling, however, appears to have been the usual one in the time of Sallust.

## CHAPTER LXIII.—STYLE OF CAESAR.

§ 696. The style of Caesar has few peculiarities. It is clear, direct, and unaffected. He is said to have carefully avoided unusual words or expressions.

*Obs.* The 'Commentaries' of Caesar were designed, as the name implies, to serve as "notes" or memoranda for history (see Suet. Caes. 56). But Cicero remarks that while "silly persons" (inepti) might think the unadorned materials of Caesar a good field to show off their fine writing, sensible people would shrink from meddling with what was in itself so excellent ("sanos quidem homines a scribendo deterruit : " Brut. 75).

§ 697. Caesar is generally brief and concise, though evidently without studying to be so like Sallust. Perspicuity is evidently more consulted than brevity. Hence perhaps, he often repeats the antecedent along with the Relative pronoun; as in the following:

Erant omnino duo itinera, quibus itineribus domo exire posset.—B. G. I, 6.

Diem dicunt quâ die ad ripam Rhodani omnes conveniant.—(same chapter.)

Re frumentariâ comparatâ equitibusque delectis, iter in ea loca facere coepit, quibus in locis esse Germanos audiebat.—ib. 4, 7.

§ 698. He is partial to the construction of the *Ablative Absolute*. Thus many passages begin with some such phrase as "Quibus rebus cognitis" (B. G. 19, etc.), "bello confecto" (ib. 30), "eo consilio dimisso" (ib. 31), "hac oratione habita" (ib. 32), "his rebus cognitis" (ib. 33), &c.

§ 699. A great many particulars are often gathered up in one sentence. Thus some of Caesar's periods contain perhaps more members than those of any other narrative writer: as,

Quod tibi Caesar compërit, omnibus his rebus confectis quarum causâ transducere exercitum constituërat, ut Germanis metum injiceret, ut Sigambros ulescërëtur, ut Ubios obsidiōne liberaret,—diebus omnino decem et octo consumptis,—satis et ad laudem et ad utilitatem profectum arbitratus,—se in Galliam recëpit pontemque rescidit, *When Caesar was informed of this, as he had accomplished all the objects he had in view in crossing [the Rhine],—namely, to strike terror into the Germans, to inflict vengeance on the Sigambri, and to raise the blockade of the Ubi,—having spent in all eighteen days and no more; thinking that enough had been achieved whether for his credit or his ends, betook himself back into Gaul and broke down the bridge.*—(B. G. iv. 19).

*Obs.* These inconveniently long periods doubtless owe their origin to haste of writing (see § 696, *Obs.*). For other examples see B. G. vii. 33, 34, 36.

## CHAPTER LXIV.—STYLE OF CICERO.

§ 700. The style of Cicero is that of a man who has at his command all the resources of the language. Every period is a work of art, and the cadences are full and sonorous. But perhaps the finest charm is to be found in his letters. He there allows himself more natural liberty in the use and coining of words, as well as in the structure of his sentences, while yet we nowhere miss that grace which is inseparable from him.

Only a few points will be noticed here, since the peculiarities of Cicero are mostly rhetorical rather than grammatical.

§ 701. He is fond of doubling his words: that is to say, he often uses together two or more words of nearly identical meaning, in order to convey a fuller or more precise sense. Thus we often meet with such combinations as the following:

*Amicus necessariusque, — superbia atque arrogantia, — sermo atque fama, — ignominia et turpitudine, — levitas et inconstantia, — cura atque opera, — sine iudicio controversiæque; — regere et administrare, — moleste graviterque ferre, — committere et credere, — struere et moliri, etc.* (all from the *Cluentius*).

*Obs.* In his frequent use of such parallel words Cicero was no doubt studying partly a more complete and exhaustive expression, and partly the cadence of his sentences.

§ 702. In his more rhetorical passages Cicero makes a bold use of Abstracts for Concretes (§ 592, 2): as,

*Prövinciam ad summam stultitiam nequitiamque venisse, The province had fallen into the hands of the greatest fools and knaves.*—*Verr.* 5, 15.

*Exerçitus collectus ex agraria luxuriâ, An army collected from all the profligates of the country.*—(*In Cat.* 1, 3.)

§ 703. *Diminutives.*—He makes a free use of these, and appears to coin them when it suits his purpose: as,

*Contutulae quaedam et minutae conclusiunculæ, Paltry little quibbling arguments.*—*Tusc.* 2, 18.]

*Nummuli acceptis, Having received some paltry coins.*—*Att.* 1, 16.

*Brüti nostri vulticulus, The dear (little) face of our Brutus.*—*Att.* 14, 20.

*Quintus filius Antöonii est dextella, My nephew Quintus is Antony's right-hand man (perhaps implying some contempt).*—(*ib.*)

*Obs.* This free use of diminutives is found chiefly in his letters and the conversational parts of his philosophical and other works.

§ 704. *Vulēri*.—Cicero is partial to the use of this verb, and sometimes uses it to soften a statement, where in English it cannot be translated: as,

*Restat ut de impērātōre ad id bellum dēligendo dicendum rēdeātur. It remains for me to speak respecting the choice of a commander for the said war.*—(Manil. 10, 27.)

(Comp. ib. 20, where the same phrase is repeated.)

*Obs.* This use of *videor* corresponds to that of *δοκέω* in Greek (cf. Xen. Anab. 1, 3, 12); and sometimes occurs in other authors besides Cicero: as,

*Nēque id sine causā arbitrāri rēdebantur, Nor were they [did they seem to be] without reason for that opinion.*—(Nep. Alc. 6.)

§ 705. *Versāri, rātio*.—These two words are used by Cicero very frequently, and in various senses: the following examples are taken from a large number in Nägelsbach (Stilist. pp. 167, 297):

- (1.) *Versāri*: *to be engaged in; to be in connexion with, in the domain of; to deal with; to be at work*: as,

*In omni gēnere fūrandi atque praedandi versāri, To be engaged in every kind of thieving and robbery.*—(Verr. 5, 1.)

*Uterque in summā sēvēritāte versatur, Both of them (Cato and Caesar) take the ground of extreme severity.*—(In Cat. 4, 4.)

*Meus lābor in privātorum pēriculis versatus, My exertions which have to do with the perils of private citizens.*—(Manil. 1 2.)

*Versatur magnus error, A great delusion prevails.*—(Leg. Agr. 2, 3, 7.)

- (2.) *Rātio*: *account, consideration; dealings; relation, province or domain (German, verhältniss); calculation; reasoning; theory, system, mode*: as,

*In ratiōnem inducere, To take into account.*—(Verr. 1, 4.)

*Ratiōnem habent cum terrā, They (farmers) have to do with the soil.*—(de Sen. 15.)

*Diversa stūdia in dissimili ratiōne, Diverse activities in a different field.*—(In Cat. 2, 5.)

*Dōmestica, bellica rātio, The domain or department of home affairs, of war.*—(Off. 1, 22.)

*Rātio vēnēficii, The domain, department or ground of the (alleged) poisoning.*—(Clu. 1.)

*Pētitiōnis tuae rātio, The question or matter of your canvass (little more than = petitio tua).*—(Fam. 15, 13, 1.)

*Sine ullā divīnā ratiōne, Without taking the gods into consideration at all.*—(N. D. 3, 35.)

## CHAPTER LXV.—STYLE OF LIVY.

§ 706. Livy is the greatest master of prose narrative. The periods of Cicero are those of a public speaker; those of Livy combine the stateliness of a historian with the copious flow and artistic grouping suitable to descriptive narration.

*Obs.* There seems to be no foundation for the opinion that the later decades were inferior in excellence to the earlier ones. (See Lewis, R. Hist. i. p. 253.) Livy was charged by his contemporaries with a certain provincialism (*Patavinitas*); but it is not known wherein the alleged peculiarities consisted.

§ 707. *Figurative language.*—Livy makes frequent use of metonymy (§ 604), and other figures of speech. Thus we find Mars for bellum (*passim*); ministēria, servitia, for ministri, servi (§ 592); praetōrium, not only for the office of commander-in-chief (21, 3), but also for a commander-in-chief's council of war (21, 54); praerōgātiva, for a prior election (21, 3); agrestium fūga, for agrestes fūgientes (3, 69); rōbōra vīrorum for rōbusti vīri (21, 54); etc.

§ 708. *Genitive.*—Livy uses the Genitive after Adjectives with more freedom than earlier writers: as,

Trēpīdi rērum suārum (= de rebus suis), In alarm about their own interests.—(5, 11.)

(See remarks on style of Tacitus: § 721.)

§ 709. *Singular for Plural.*—This use has been already noticed (§ 607).

§ 710. *Indicative for Subjunctive.*—Instead of the Subjunctive in Relative clauses of the *oratio obliqua* (§ 465), Livy not unfrequently uses the Indicative (even when such usage cannot be explained by 467, *Obs.*): as,

Proconsūlem P. Cornēlium, multōrum exemplo qui in māgistrātu non triumphāverunt (= triumphaverint), triumphāturum esse, P. Cornelius might he said 'enjoy his triumph as proconsul, after the precedent of a number who had not done so while actually in office.—(36, 39.)

Q. Fābium dicere, se . . . ab Romā Aequis bellum afferre, eadem dextra armāta, quam pācatam ille antea dederat (= dederit), Q. Fabius said, he brought war from Rome to the Aequians, with the same right hand armal which he had before offered them in peace.—(3, 2.)

§ 711. The *Subjunctive* is often preferred to the *Indicative* after dōnec, antēquam, priusquam, even when simple facts are spoken of: see §§ 499, 501 (f.).



§ 712. *Perfect Subjunctive after Past Tenses.*—This construction (§ 433) is perhaps more frequent in Livy than in any other writer. Compare the following :

*Eo fuit past-indef.) habitu oris, ut... ridentis etiam spēciem præbuerit, He wore such an expression on his features as to present the appearance of a laugh. (Lit. of one laughing. — 21, 2.)*

*Hand dabitum [fuit], quin nisi firmata extrema agminis fuissent ingens in eo saltu accipienda clādes fuērit, There was no doubt that had not the rear-guard been strengthened, a serious defeat must have been sustained in that pass.—(21, 34.)*

*Transeuntem Apenninum adeo atrox adorta tempestas est, ut Alpium foeditatem præpe superāverit, As he was crossing the Apennines, he was assailed by a tempest of such violence as almost to surpass the horrors of the Alps.—(21, 58.)*

(In all the above cases Cicero would probably have used the Imperfect or Pluperfect Subjunctive.)

§ 713. *Hypothetical use of Future Participle.*—Other writers use the Imperfect participle active and Perfect participle passive hypothetically: Livy extends this use to the Future participle in -rus: as,

*Dedituris se Hannibali non fuisse arcesendum Rōmānōrum præsidium, If they had intended to give themselves up to Hannibal, they ought not to have sent for a Roman garrison.—(23, 44.)*

§ 714. *Gerund and Gerundive.*—Livy is partial to the use of these verbal forms, which he uses with greater freedom than any other writer. (Compare § 541.) The following examples of his use of the Gerundive may be useful:

*[Saguntinis] oppugnandis (Abl. Absol. haud dubie Rōmāna arma mōvēbantur, By the attack upon Saguntum there was no question of a war with Rome being provoked.—21, 5.)*

(Cicero would have said *Saguntinis oppugnatis.*)

*Possidendis agris (= possessione agrorum contentus, Content with holding the (public) lands.—3, 14.)*

*Quum vix mōvendis armis (= ad arma mōvenda) spātium esset, There being hardly room to move their arms.—(23, 27.)*

*Ubi prōmōvendo adjunctam (= promotam atque adjunctam) muro viderunt turrem, When they saw that the tower, by being gradually pushed forward, had been brought close to the wall.—(23, 33.)*

*His avertendis terrōribus (= ad hos avertendos terrores: cf. § 538, n tridnum feriae indictae, To avert these terrors, a holiday of three days was notified.—(3, 5.)*

*Ante conditam condendamve urbem, Before the city was founded or designed to be founded.—(Pref.)*

§ 715. *Prepositions.*—Livy is somewhat peculiar in his use of certain Prepositions, especially *ab* (a), *ad*, as seen in the following examples:

- (1.) Ab. a. — *Directly after; by way of: on the part of* (cf. § 557, 1): as,

Ab (= ex) his praeceptis cōtiōnem dimisit, *Immediately after giving, these instructions, he dismissed the assembly.*—(44, 34.)

Ab irrisu (= per irrisum) linguam exserere, *To put out the tongue in ridicule.*—(7, 10.)

Ab regiis, *On the part of the royalists.*—(37, 23.)

Ad exsolvendam fidem a consule (= consulis), *To the making good of a promise on the part of the consul.*—(27, 5.)

Mettus Curtius ab Sabinis (= Sabinorum) princeps, *Mettus Curtius leader on the part of the Sabines.*—(1, 12.)

- (2.) Ad. — *At the instance of; in the department of:* as,

Ad (= propter) mētum, ad spem vēniae dēdere se, *To surrender in (at the promptings of) fear, or of hope of pardon.*—(36, 13.)

Ad dēsiderium rēlictārum (sc. bōum), mūgīre, *To bellow at missing the heifers that had been left behind.*—(1, 7.)

Tribūni militum ad lēgiōnes (= legionum), *The military tribunes of the legions.*—(7, 5.)

Servi ad rēmum, *The slaves at the oar.*—(34, 6.)

§ 716. Namque is frequently placed by Livy (as by later writers generally) second instead of first in a sentence: as,

Omnium namque laborum, etc., (5, 11.)

Ibi namque in tābernīs, etc., (3, 44.)

## CHAPTER LXVI.—STYLE OF TACITUS.

§ 717. Tacitus lived a century after the latest of the aforementioned masters of Latin prose. The language had then lost somewhat of its original chasteness and severity, but from an increased vocabulary and greater freedom of expression, it was perhaps better fitted to express the conceptions of so original and vehement a writer.

§ 718. Tacitus delights to express himself in striking and original ways. He has great variety of phraseology; his turns of thought are often abrupt and even startling; and he frequently suggests much more than he expresses. He uses freely many idioms rarely or never found in writers of the preceding century, and his language has much of a poetical complexion.

§ 719. The scale of this work does not admit of a full treatment of so various a subject as the style of Tacitus. For fuller particulars the student is referred elsewhere.\* We shall notice only the more prominent points.

§ 720. (A.) VARIETY.—This is shown chiefly in the following particulars :

(1.) *Different forms of the same word* : as,

Plebs and plēbes—sēnectus and sēnecta—oblivium and ob-  
livio—quōtiens and quōties—tēgūmen, tēgūnen and tegmen—  
pārentum (*gen. pl.*) and pārentium, &c.

(2.) *Different grammatical constructions without difference of meaning* : as,

(Lēgiōnem .... pro ripā componēret), *subsīdio* (*Dat. of Purpose or Result* : § 297) *victis et terrōrem* (*Apposition*) *adversus victōres*, *As an assistance to them if conquered, and a terror to their conquerors.*—(Ann. 12, 29.)

*Corpore ingens, animi* (§ 285) *immōdicus*, *In body huge in mind* (*ambition, unmeasured.*)—(Hist. 1. 53.)

*Cum Parthus* (§ 607) *distrāhēret turmas, Sarmātae irruērent*, *While the Parthians tried to separate the squadrons, and the Sarmatians rushed, &c.*—(Ann. 6. 35.)

Especially in comparisons (§ 350) :

Vehēmentius quam cante.—Agr. 4.)

Clāris mājōribus quam vētustis.—Ann. 4, 61.)

Quanto inōpīna, tanto mājōra.—(Ann. 1, 68.)

Quanto quis clārior, mīnus fidus.—Hist. 3, 58.)

(3.) *Various words and phrases employed to denote the same thing* : as,

Finis sponte sumptus—quaesīta mors—suo ictu mortem invēnīre—finem vitāe sibi pōnēre—vōluntārio exitu eādēre—vitam rēlinquēre—etc., all to denote *self-destruction*.

Vēnas, brāchia exsolvēre, rēsolvēre, abrumpēre, interseindēre, abscindēre, incidēre—lēvem ietum vēnis inferre—all of *opening the reins in order to cause death*.

(4.) *Peculiar uses of words.*—Tacitus not only uses (a) many new words, but also (b) old ones in rarer meanings : the following may serve as examples :

(a) Centūriōnātus, exstīmūlātor, instigātrix, inturbidus, quinquīplicāre, prae posse, prōvivēre, pervigēre, sūperstagnāre, sūperurgēre.

\* See Bütticher's 'Remarks on the Style of Tacitus,' prefixed to Dr. Smith's Tacitus, from which the present sections are partly taken.

(b) *Adductus* (*drawn to; tight*), in sense of *serere*: hence, *adductus regnari, to be under stricter rule.*—(Ger. 43.)

*Expédire, to go on an expedition* (Gr. *σπαρεῦεσθαι*).—(Hist. 1, 88.)

*Externus, hostile*: hence *externa mōliri, to make hostile movements*—(Hist. 3, 5.)

*Diversus, also hostile*: as *diversa acies, the enemy's line.*—(Ann. 14, 30.)

*Annus, yearly crop.*—(Ger. 14.)

*Sinister = m̃lus.*—(Agr. 5.)

## § 721. (B.) PECULIAR IDIOMS.—Under this head fall—

### (1.) *His use of the Genitive* (see § 285):

(a) After Adjectives; as, *immōdicus ānīmi, ingens animi, ṽtus op̃eris ac lāboris, virtūtum st̃erilis, &c. &c.*

(b) With the Gerundive, to denote a purpose (see § 539): as, *Aegyptum pr̃ficiscitur cognosceudae antiquitātis, He sets out for Egypt, in order to study its antiquities.*—(Ann. 2, 59.)

*Vitandae suspiciōis, an quia p̃avidis consilia in incerto sunt, Either in order to avoid suspicion, or else because the plans of the timid fluctuate.*—(Ann. 3, 9.)

### (2.) *His free use of the Dativo of purpose* (see § 297); as,

*R̃pertus est ñdus . . . ex̃er̃tando corp̃ori, He was found stripped for exercise.*—(Ann. 14, 59.)

*Num . . . c̃t̃era expugnandis urbibus attulissent, (He asked) whether they had brought the other (appliances) for taking cities.*—(Hist. 3, 20.)

### (3.) *Of the Accusative without a Preposition after verbs of motion*: as,

*Ripam acc̃d̃re—oppidum irrump̃re—advolvi g̃enna—incidere locum, &c.*; in which cases a Preposition is mostly used by Cicero. Tacitus has also such expressions as *verticis montium insid̃re*, Ger. 43; *summa collium insidere*, Agr. 37. (Comp. § 236.)

### (4.) *Of the Ablative Absolute* (see § 333. Obs. 2).

### (5.) *His frequent use of an Adjective instead of the Genitive of a Substantive*: as,

*Caiānae exp̃ditiones, The expeditions of Caius (Caligula).*—(Hist. 4, 15.)

*M̃tus hostilis, Fear of the enemy.*—(Ann. 12, 51.)

*Obs.* This idiom is found in earlier writers (§ 611: it is its frequent use that is peculiar to Tacitus.

### (6.) *Of the plural of Abstract Substantives*: as, *and̃ciae* (Ann. 1, 74), *ir̃cundiae* (14, 4), etc., where the use of the plural indicates *separate manifestations* of the abstract quality (see § 594).

(7.) Of the *Infinitive* :

(a) As Historical (comp. § 517) :

Tacitus uses this idiom more frequently than any other writer (Sallust included : § 691). He has it even after such Adverbs of time as *ubi*, *cum* : as,

*Ubi crūdescēre sēditio*, When the mutiny was growing fiercer.—(Hist. 3, 10, &c.)

(b) After verbs of advising, commanding, preventing, &c., instead of the Subjunctive and *ut*, *ne*, *quin*, *quōminus*. Thus we find,

*Obstitit* Oceānus in se sīmul atque in Hercūlem *inquiri* (= *quominus inquireretur*, § 463), *Ocean prevented inquiry at once into himself and Hercules*.—(Ger. 34.)

(8.) *Zeugma* (see § 643).

§ 722. (C.) ABRUPTNESS, &c.—This is seen in the unexpected turns often given by Tacitus to a sentence : as,

*Ferrum clātum dēfērebat in pectus—ni proximi dextram vi attinuisent*, He raised his sword, and was in the act of plunging it into his bosom—[and would have done so] had not the by-standers held his hand by main force.—(Ann. 1, 35.)

*Germania a Sarmātis Dācisque mētū aut montibus sēpāratur*, Germany is bounded on the side of the Sarmatians and Dacians by fear or by mountains.—(Ger. 1.)

*Cibos et hortāmēna pugnantibus gestant*, They carry to the combatants provisions and encouragement.—(Ger. 7.)

§ 723. Tacitus is a writer who suggests more than he says, and his brief comments are frequently marked by bitterness and irony. This is seen in the following sentences :

*Nec corrumpere et corrumpi saeculum vocatur*, Nor is the conduct of seducer and seduced there called “the [fashion of] the age.”—(Ger. 19.)

*Māneat, quaeso, dūretque gentibus, si non amor nostri, at certo odium sui ; quando urgentibus impērii fātis, nihil jam praestare fortuna mājus potest quam hostium discordiam*,—Heaven grant there may remain and abide in the nations, if not love of us, at least hatred of one another ; since, now that the destiny of the empire weighs upon us, Fortune can no longer confer on us anything better than strife amongst our foes.—(Ger. 33.)

*Sanctiusque ac reverentius visum de actis deorum credere quam sciret*—It seemed more pious and devout to believe in the doings of the gods than to know about them.—(Ger. 34.)

§ 724. (D.) POETICAL COMPLEXION.—This is felt throughout in reading Tacitus ; and consists partly in the use of the “poetical” constructions which have been illustrated. The following points may be added :

- (1.) The use of abstract substantives in concrete sense :  
as,

Titus ingens rerum fiducia accessit, *In Titus he found a great prop of his fortunes.*—(Hist. 4.)

Militiae = milites (Hist. 3, 18).

Exsilia = exsules (Hist. 1, 2).

Matrimonía = uxores (Ann. 2, 13).

- (2.) Hendiadys (see § 602) : as,

Nec ullum in barbaris saevitiae genus omisit ira et victoria, *Nor did the rage of the victors fail to practise any species of cruelty known among barbarians.*—(Agr. 16.)

Super sexaginta millia . . . oblectationi oculisque ceciderunt, *More than 60,000 were slain for the gratification of our eyes.*—(Ger. 33.)

Impetu et ira, *In a fit of passion.*—(Ger. 25.)

- (3.) A general use of elevated and figurative language :  
as,

Glória frontis, *Pride of aspect (of the tall, handsome horns of cattle).*—(Ger. 5.)

Nudi aut sagulo leves, *Naked or lightly [clad in] a soldier's mantle.*—(ib. 6.)

Sera juvenum Venns, *Their youth are late in arriving at the age of puberty.*—(ib. 20.)

Silvam, | auguriis patrum et priscā formidine sacram [a Hexameter line], *A forest consecrated by the auguries of ancestors, and awe of old.*—(ib. 39.)

Domitae gentes, capti reges, et monstratus fatis, Vespasianus, *Tribes were subdued ; kings led captive ; and Vespasian pointed out (by the finger of) destiny.*—(Agr. 13.)

Urbs incendiis vastata : . . . plenum exsiliis mare ; infecti caedibus scopuli, *The capital was ravaged by fire ; the sea crowded with exiles ; the cliffs stained with carnage.*—Hist. 1, 21.

Non tumultus, non quies : quāle magni metus et magnae irae silentium est, *There was neither uproar nor calm ; like the stillness of deep dread or deep wrath.*—(Hist. 1, 40.)

N.B.—The book entitled *Dialogus de Oratoribus* differs greatly in style from the other works ascribed to Tacitus ; being characterised by a fluent rhetorical diction. It seems probable that it was one of the historian's juvenile productions.

## PART III.—PROSODY.

---

§ 725. PROSODY treats of the *Quantity* of Syllables and *Metre*, or the laws of Verse.

*Obs.* *Prosody* is a Greek word (*προσῳδία*), which signifies literally the tone or accent of a syllable.

---

### CHAPTER LXVII.—QUANTITY.

§ 726. The Quantity of a Syllable is either long (—), short (˘), or doubtful (≈).

#### (A.) GENERAL RULES.

§ 727. All diphthongs are long : as, *ā*urum, *gold*, *pō*ena, *punishment*, *cū*, *to whom*.

EXCEPTION.—*Prae* in composition is usually short before a vowel : as, *prae*-acutus, *sharpened at the end*.

*Obs.* 1. A vowel arising from a diphthong remains long : as, *oc*-cīdo, *to kill*, from *caedo*, *to strike* ; *con*-clūdo, *to shut up*, from *claudio*, *to shut*.

*Obs.* 2. Some Greek diphthongs are shortened : as, *pō*esis (*ποίησις*), *platē*a (*πλατεία*) as well as *platē*a.

§ 728. All contracted syllables are long. as, *cō*go from *cō*āgo, *to collect*, *bō*bus from *bō*vībus, *to or by oxen*, *jū*nior from *jū*vēnior, *younger*, *prū*dens from *prō*vīdens, *possessed of foresight*.

§ 729. A vowel is long by position, when it is followed by two or more consonants, by a double consonant (*x*, *z*), or by *j* : as, *mē*n̄sa, *a table*, *dū*x, *a leader*, *Amā*zon, *an Amazon*, *ē*jus, *of him*.

*Obs.* In Prosody, quantity is for the sake of convenience regarded as belonging only to Vowels. Thus in the word *nū*x (*a nut*), root *nūc*-, the vowel *u* is said to be long (by position) : though strictly speaking, it is the syllable which is lengthened by the addition of the consonant *s*, the vowel retaining its quantity as in other cases ; *nūc*-i, *nūc*-em, *nūc*-es, etc.

EXCEPTION 1. *Bijugus, yoked two together, quadrijugus, yoked four together.*

*Obs. 1.* *Qu* is a single consonant: hence, *ŭqua, water. H* is a simple breathing: hence, *ŭdhuc, as yet.*

*Obs. 2.* A syllable is also long by position when one consonant ends a word, and another consonant begins the next word: as, in *mare, into the sea; fruitŭr vita, he enjoys life.*

*Obs. 3.* But if a word ends in a short vowel, and the following word begins with two consonants, the vowel *usually* remains short: as,

In solio Phoebus claris lucēntē smāragdis.—Ov.

*Obs. 4.* But a short vowel rarely stands before *sc, sm, sp, sq, and st.*

EXCEPTION 2. Before a mute and either of the liquids *l* or *r*, a vowel naturally short becomes doubtful: as, *dŭplex* or *dūplex, twofold, pātris* or *pātris, of a father.* It generally remains short before *tl*, as, *Ātlas; cl*, as *assēcla*; and *fl*, as *mellifluus, flowing-with-honey.*

*Obs. 1.* It is only in Greek words that a vowel remains short before a mute and either of the liquids *m* or *n*: as, *Tēcnessa* or *Tēcnessa, Prēcne* or *Prēcne, cŷgnus* or *cŷgnus, a swan.*

*Obs. 2.* A vowel *naturally long* remains long before a mute and a liquid: as, *ŭceres* from *ŭcer, sharp.*

*Obs. 3.* In composition, if one syllable ends with a mute, and the other begins with a liquid, the vowel is long by position: as, *ŭb-ruo, not ŭb-ruo, to overwhelm, sŭb-latum, not sŭb-latum, lifted up.*

§ 730. A vowel followed by another vowel is usually short: as, *pŭs, pious, flēo, to weep, pŭer, a boy*: or if *h* intervenes between the vowels, as *trāho, vēho.*

EXCEPTIONS. The following vowels are long before another vowel:—

1. The *a* in the old Genitive of the First Declension: as, *aquāi.*
2. The *a* and *e* of proper names in *-aius, -eius*: as, *Caius, Pompŭius* (*Cājus, Pompējus*).
3. The *e* in the Genitive and Dative Singular of the Fifth Declension, when a vowel precedes: as, *diēi*: but *rēi* and *fidēi* except in archaic poets.
4. The *e* in the Interjection *ēheu.*
5. The *i* in the Genitive *alius* (but always short in *alterŭs*). In the other Genitives in *ius*, the *i* is long in prose, but doubtful in poetry: as, *illŭs, ipsŭs, unŭs.*
6. The *i* in *fio* when not followed by *r*: as, *fŭo, fŭebam, fŭam, but fierem, fieri.*
7. The *i* in *dia* (*δία*), *divine.*
8. The *i* in *Diana* is doubtful: *Dŭana* and *Dŭana.*
9. The *o* in the Interjection *ohe* is doubtful: *ŭhe* and *ŭhe.*
10. All vowels long in the original Greek words: as, *āēp*, *Aenēas* (*Αινέας*), *Alexandria* (*Ἀλεξάνδρεια*) *Brisŭs* (*Βρισηΐς*).



§ 731. *Radical Vowels*.—No rules can be given for the quantity of Root Vowels, which is only to be learnt from the Dictionary: as, *lēvis*, *light*, *lēvis*, *smooth*, *lēgo*, *I pick*, *read*, *lēgo*, *I depute*, etc.

§ 732. The Root Vowel has sometimes been lengthened in the Present Tense: as, *dūco*, *I lead*, root *dūc* (compare *dux*, *dūcis*: *ēdūco*, *I educate*); *dīco*, *I say*, root *dīc* (compare *index*, *-dīcis*, *mālēdīcus*, etc.).

§ 733. The Vowels used in connecting two or more roots are short: as, *rēgīfūgium* (name of a festival), *rēgīficus*, *kingly* (*rex*, *fūgo*, *fācio*); *ōpīfēr*, *aid-bringing* (*ops*, *fēro*); *lānīger*, *wool-bearing* (*lāna*, *gēro*); *magnīlōquus*, *grandly speaking* (*magnus*, *lōquor*), etc.

Obs. In *levāmentum*, *instrūmentum*, *lenīmentum*, etc., *a*, *u*, *i* are Stem Vowels.

§ 734. Derivative or Compound words retain the quantity of the words from which they are derived: as,

*gēr-ēbam*, *gēr-ens*, *lānī-gēr*, from *gēr-o*.

*rēg-ius*, *rēg-ina*, *rēg-ī-fūgium*, from *rex*, *rēg-is*.

EXCEPTIONS: <i>cūrūlis</i> ( <i>sella</i> ),	<i>the curule chair</i> , from <i>currus</i> (?)
<i>tēgūla</i> ,	<i>a tile</i> , .. <i>tēgo</i> .
<i>sēdes</i> ,	<i>a seat</i> , .. <i>sēd-co</i> .
<i>lūcerna</i> ,	<i>a lantern</i> , .. <i>lūc-eo</i> .
<i>sēcūs</i> ,	<i>otherwise</i> , .. <i>sēcūs</i> .
<i>prōnūba</i> ,	<i>match-maker</i> , .. <i>nūbo</i> .
<i>jūcundus</i>	<i>pleasant</i> , .. <i>jūvo</i> .
<i>hūmānus</i> ,	<i>human</i> , .. <i>homo</i> .
<i>sōpor</i> ,	<i>sleep</i> , .. <i>sōpio</i> .
<i>pējēro</i> and <i>dējēro</i> ,	compounds of <i>jūro</i> .

with some others.

Obs. 1. Some exceptions are rather apparent than real: as, *index*, *-dīcis*, *an informer*; *prædīco*, *I affirm*; *mālēdīcus*, *evil-speaking* (all with *i* short, compared with *dīco*, *I say*, *addīco*, *I assign to*, etc. Here all the words must alike be referred to the root *dīc*, which is lengthened in the Present Tense of *dīco*, but keeps its natural quantity in the other derivatives.

Obs. 2. In *cognitum*, *agnitum* (from *nōtum*), the Prefix has led to the abbreviation of the Vowel. Compare *cāpio*, *accēpio*, etc., *a* being a fuller vowel sound than *i*.

§ 735. In dissyllabic Perfects and Supines the first syllable is long: as,

<i>lāvo</i> ,	<i>lāvi</i> ,	<i>lōtum</i> ,	<i>to wash</i> .
<i>video</i> ,	<i>vīdi</i> ,	<i>vīsum</i> ,	<i>to see</i> .
<i>mōveo</i> ,	<i>mōvi</i> ,	<i>mōtum</i> ,	<i>to move</i> .
<i>jūvo</i> ,	<i>jūvi</i> ,	<i>jūtum</i> ,	<i>to assist</i> .

EXCEPTIONS. 1. A vowel before a vowel remains short: as, *rūi*.

2. The following Perfects have the first syllable short :

Bibi, dādi, fāi, tūli,  
Stēti, stiti, fidī, scēdi.

For the meanings, see §§ 149. *sqq.*

3. The following Supines have the first syllable short :

Dātum, rātum, sātum, rūtum,  
Ītum, cītum, litum, sītum (quītum).

For the meanings, see §§ 149. *sqq.*

From sto comes stātum : from sisto comes stātum.

§ 736. The first syllable of the reduplicated Perfect is short : as pōposci from posco, *to demand* ; tētīgi from tango, *to touch* ; cēcidi from caedo, *to cut*.

§ 737. The prefix *pro* is short in prōcella, *a storm*, prōcul, *far off*, prōfanus, *profane*, prōfestus, *not kept as a holiday*, prōficiscor, *to set out*, prōfecto, *truly*, prōfiteor, *to profess*, prōfugio, *to flee to a distance*, prōfundus, *deep*, prōfundo, *to pour forth* (with a few exceptions, *e.g.* : “Has postquam moesto prōfudit pectore voces,” Cat.), prōnepos, *great-grandson* (but prōnepos once in Sidonius), prōpitius, *propitious*, prōtervus, *wanton* : it is doubtful in prōcuro, *to manage another's affairs*, prōpago, *layer, offspring*, prōpago, *to propagate*, prōpino, *to drink to another*, prōpello, *to push forward* (ō in Lucr. only) : it is long in all other words : as, prōcedo, *to go forward*, prōcurro, *to run forward*, &c.

*Obs.* Prōpago, in sense of *layer* ; prōpago, *offspring* (Virg.).

§ 738. Di is short only in dīrimo (disimo), *to separate*, and disertus, *eloquent*.

§ 739. Ne is short only in nēquo, *neither* ; nēqueo, *to be unable* ; nēfas (and its derivatives), *unlawful* ; nēfandus, *abominable* : long in other words, as nēmo (ne-hemo or homo), *no one* ; nēquicquam, *in vain*.

§ 740. O for ob is short in ōmitto, *to let go by*, and ōperio, *to shut up*.

§ 741. Si is short in sīquidem.

§ 742. Re is always short, except rēfert (= rem fert), *it concerns* (but rēfert from rēfero).

§ 743. Ve is long, except in vēhomens (= vē-mens), *forcible*.

§ 744. Monosyllabic words ending in a vowel are long : as, sī, tū, tē, mē, sē, nō, ē, dē.

EXCEPTIONS. The enclitics are short : as, quē, vē, nē, cē, tē (tutē) psē (repsē), pto (snoptē) : quā (usu. preceded by si, num, etc.) N. m. Sing. Fem. and Nom. Acc. Pl. Neut. from quis.

## (B.) RULES RESPECTING FINAL SYLLABLES.

## I. FINAL VOWELS.

§ 745. *a* is *long* :

1. In the Ablative Sing. of the First Declension : as, mensā.
  2. In the Vocative Sing. of the First Declension of Substantives in *as* and *es* (excepting *tes*) : as, Aeneā, Anchisā.
- Obs.* But those in *es* (excepting *tes*) more frequently make *ē* : see § 746, 2.
3. In the Imperative Active of the First Conjugation : as, amā.
  4. In Prepositions, Adverbs, and Numerals : as ā (āb), contrā, suprà; anteā, frustrā; trigintā, quinquagintā.

(But see next paragraph : 4.)

*a* is *short* :

1. In the Nominative and Vocative Sing. of the First Declension : as, mensā
2. In the Voc. of Greek nouns in *tes*, as Orestā.
3. In the Nom., Acc., and Voc. Plural of all Neuters : as, regnā, mariā, cornuā.
4. In the Adverbs itā, posteā, the Conjunction quia, and the Interjection ejā.

*Obs.* *a* in Acc. Sing. from a Gk. word in *cus* is doubtful : as Theseā.§ 746. *e* is *long* :

1. In the Ablative Sing. of the Fifth Declension : as, diē; and consequently in hodiē, quarē. Also in the contracted forms of the Genitive and Dative : as, fidē (= fidēi).
2. In Greek words in *e* of the First Declension : as, epitomē, Anchisiadē (Voc. of Anchisiades); and in Greek Neuters Plural contracted : as, Tempē, ectē.

3. In the Imperative Active 2nd Person Sing. of the Second Conjugation : as, *monē*. But the following are doubtful : *vidē*, *valē*, *cavē* ; and sometimes (esp. in the comic poets), *habē*, *tacē*, *manē*, *jubē*.

*Obs.* In conversation *care* appears to have been pronounced *cau* : cf. Cic. Div. 2, 40.

4. In the Adverbs derived from Adjectives of the Second Declension : as *doctē*, *aegrē* : with the exception of *benē*, *malē*, *supernē*, *infernē* (in Lucr. and Auson.), *internē*.

5. In the Adverbs *ferē*, *fermē*, and the Interjection *ohē*.

*Obs.* Concerning monosyllables in *e*, see § 744.

*e* is short in all other words : as, *dominē*, *regē* (subs. and verb), *fuerē*, *impunē*.

§ 747. *i* is generally long : as, *puerī*, *corporī*, *dicī*, *audī*, *docuistī*, *vigintī*.

*i* is short :

1. In *nisī*, *quasī*, *sicubī*, *necubī*, and in the very rare form *cūī* for *cū*.
2. In the Dative and Vocative of Greek Substantives of the Third Declension : as, Dat. *Paridī*, Voc. *Alexī*.

*i* is doubtful in *mihī*, *tibī*, *sibī*, *ibī*, *ubī*.

*Obs.* *ūtique* always ; but always *ibidem*, *ubique*. We find also *cūlique*.

§ 748. *o* is mostly common : as, *amō*, *amatō*, *leō*, *octō*.

But *o* is long :

1. In Datives and Ablatives of the Second Declension : as, *dominō*, *deō*, *magnō*.
2. When it represents the Greek  $\omega$  : as, *Didō*, *Plutō*.
3. In monosyllables : as, *dō*, *prō*.

*o* is short in *egō*, *duō*, *modō*, *only*, *putō*, *I think*, and *cedō*, *tell me* (both used parenthetically), *nesciō*, *I know not* (in the phrase *nesciō quis*), and *quando* when compounded with *quidem* : as, *quandōquidem*.

§ 749. *u* is always long : as, *cornū*, *auditū*.

## II. FINAL CONSONANTS.

§ 750. *as* is almost always *long*: *as*, *mensās*, *civitās*, *laudās*.

*as* is *short* only:

1. In *anās*, *anātis*, a *duck*.
2. Acc. Plur. of Greek Substantives of the Third Declension: *as*, *Arcadās*. And some Greek Noms. *as* *Iliās*, &c.

*Obs.* In *vas* (*vādis*) the Nom. is probably doubtful.

§ 751. *es* is almost always *long*: *as*, *vulpēs*, a *fox*, *leonēs*.

*es* is only *short*:

1. In the Nom. and Voc. Sing. of some dissyllabic and polysyllabic Substantives in *es*, which have the penultimate short in the Genitive: *as*, *milēs*, *ītis*, *interprēs*, *ētis*: and *adj.* *praepēs*, *ētis*; but *mercēs*, *ēdis*; *pēs*, *pēdis*; *abiēs*, *abiētis*.
2. In the Nom. and Voc. Plur. of Greek Substantives: *as*, *Arcadēs*: also *Hippomanēs* (Nom. Sing. Neut.), *Demosthenēs* (Voc. Sing.).
3. From *esse*, *to be*; *as*, *es*, *adēs*, *potēs*.
4. In the Preposition *penēs*.

§ 752. *is* is usually *short*: *as*, *navīs*, *lapidīs*, *regīs*, *regerīs*.

But *is* is *long*:

1. In Dat. and Abl. Plural of Substantives, Adjectives, and Pronouns: *as*, *musīs*, *dominīs* (contr. from *musa* + *is*, *domino* + *is*: see §§ 17, 19. *Obs.*), *nobīs*, *vobīs*.
2. In Acc. Plur. of Third Declension (archaic for *es*); *as*, *omnīs* (or *omneis*) for *omnēs*.
3. In Second Person Sing. of Present Indic. of Fourth Conjugation: *as*, *audīs* (= *audi* + *is*: see § 104).
4. Also in the contracted forms *velīs*, *nolīs*, *malīs*; *sīs*, *possīs*.

*Obs.* 1. In Fut. Perf. Indicative, the *is* of Second Person Sing. is common, as *fuctīs*.

*Obs.* 2. Monosyllables are mostly long: *as*, *vis* (noun and verb), *glīs*: but *is*, *quīs* (pron.), are short.

§ 753. *os* is almost always *long*: as, *puerōs*, *honōs* (*ōris*), *arbōs* (*ōris*). (But *arbōr*, *honōr*, etc.: see § 760.)

*os* is only *short*:

1. In the Nom. Sing. (archaic) of the Second Declension: as, *avōs servōs* (= *avus*, *servus*): see § 19. *Obs.*
2. In *impōs* (*ōtis*), *compōs* (*ōtis*).
3. In the Gen. Sing. of Greek Substantives: as, *Thetidōs*: and in some Greek Noms., as *Argōs* (neut.): besides *ōs*, *ossis*, already mentioned.

§ 754. *us* is usually *short*: as, *dominūs*, *gradūs*, *sumūs*.

It is *long* only:

1. In the Nom. Sing. of the Third Declension, which have long *u* in the penultimate of the Genitive: as, *virtūs*, *ūtis*: but *pecūs*, *pecūdis*.
2. In the Gen. Sing., and Nom., Acc., and Voc. Plur. of the Fourth Declension: as, *manūs*.
3. In contractions from the Greek, as *Sapphūs*: but we have *polypūs*, *Oedipūs*, from *ποῦς*.

§ 755. *ys* in some Greek words is *long*: as *Phorcys*, *Erinnys*: in *Tethys* it is common (*Tethys*).

§ 756. Final syllables in *b*, *d*, *t* are *short*: as, *āb*, *apūd*, *amāt*.

EXCEPTIONS. Some (rare) contracted forms of verbs ending in *t*: as, *irritāt* for *irritavit* (*Lucr.* 1, 71): see § 110, 1.

§ 757. *c*. Final syllables in *c* are mostly *short*: as, *nēc*, *donēc*.

EXCEPTIONS. *Lūc*, *mīlc*; *hūc* (adv.), *here* the pronoun *hic* is doubtful; *hūc*, *hither*; *sic*, *thus*: the Imperatives *dūc*, *duc* (shortened from *dūce*, *duce*). *Fāc* is *short* (for *fācē*).

§ 758. 1. Final syllables in *l* are *short*: as, *semēl*, *animāl*.

EXCEPTIONS. Monosyllables: *ul*, *sol*, *sal*, *nil*.

§ 759. *n*. Final syllables in *n* are *short*: as, *carmēn*, *tamēn*, *ūn*.

EXCEPTIONS.—1. Monosyllables: *ul*, *rēn* (a *kidney*), *sin* (= *sī non*, but if *not*), *splēn* (the *spleen*), *en* (*to*), *non* (*not*).

2. Greek Accusatives from nouns in *us* and *is* (First Decl.: as, *Aenean*, *Anchisen*, *Penelopēn*).

3. Greek Nominatives of the Third Declension: as, *Lacedaemon*, *Titan*, *Actaeon*.

§ 760. *r*. Final syllables in *r* are short: *as*, *puēr*, *vīr*, *sempēr*.

EXCEPTIONS.—1. Most monosyllables: *as*, *fūr* (*a thief*), *pār* (subs. and adject.), *lār*, *vēr*, *eur*. (But *cōr*, *the heart*, is short.)

2. A few Substantives in *er* taken from the Greek: *as*, *aēr* (*ἀήρ*), *the air*; *aethēr* (*αἰθήρ*), *the sky*.

N.B. *Celtibēr* is common. (Mart.)

## CHAPTER LXVIII.—METRE.

§ 761. RHYTHM (*ῥέω*, *ῥυθμός*) consists in the recurrence of accent or stress of voice at regulated intervals; as in the following lines:

Quādrupē | dāntē pū|trēm sōnī|tū quātīt | ūngulā | cāmpūm.—Virg.

Pāssēr | dēlicī|āē mē|āē pu|ēllae.—Catullus.

Flūmīnā | cōnstītē|rīut ā|cūtō.—Hor.

§ 762. This stress of the voice is called **Arsis** (*ἄρσις*, *ictus*), and is denoted by the sign '. It nearly always falls on a long syllable, or on two short syllables, representing one long: as, *vīdimus*, *ārma*, *tēnūia*, *dēerat*. The unaccented syllable is called **Thesis** (*θέσις*), and is denoted by the sign `: as, *ārmā*.

*Obs.* Sometimes, though rarely, the Arsis falls upon a short syllable, which is thereby made long: as, *Itāllam* (Virg. *Æn.* I. 2). The Grammarians call this *Diastolē*.

§ 763. The subdivisions or measures of a metrical line are called *feet* (*pēdēs*): thus the first of the above lines contains *six* feet; the second *five*; and the third *four*.

The following are all the feet which have distinctive names:

### 1. OF TWO SYLLABLES.

~~ Pyrrhichius (Pyrrhic)... *pātēr*, *bōnē*.

~ ˘ Iambus ..... *ādēst*, *mēō*.

˘ ~ Tröchaeus (Trochee).... *ārmā*, *flēbīt*.

-- Spondēus (Spondee)..... *ōrās*, *ēmī*.

### 2. OF THREE SYLLABLES.

~ ~ ~ Tribrāchys ..... *hōmīnīs*, *rēcīpē*.

˘ ~ ~ Dactylus (Dactyl)..... *ōmnīā*, *fēcīmūs*.

— — —	Anapaestus (Anapaest) .	<i>ā' ēō, lējērēs.</i>
— — —	Amphibrāchys . . . . .	<i>āmāūt, diēbūs.</i>
— — —	Creticus or Amphimacer,	<i>ēxp' ēō, sērītūs.</i>
— — —	Bacchius . . . . .	<i>ā' nīcōs, sūpēllēx.</i>
— — —	Antibacchius . . . . .	<i>āūdirē, rēxissē.</i>
— — —	Molossus . . . . .	<i>lūisistī, dīvināē.</i>

## 3. OF FOUR SYLLABLES.

— — — —	Proceleusmaticus . . . . .	<i>īnīūū, cēērītēr.</i>
— — — —	Ionicus a Minore . . . . .	<i>ō ērābūt, gēnērōsī.</i>
— — — —	———— a Majoro . . . . .	<i>ūl' is vār, sōā' ī ē.</i>
— — — —	Choriambus . . . . .	<i>ērī, dūt, sīpīl' īā.</i>
— — — —	Antispastus . . . . .	<i>ī ēch' ītūs, pēv' āstrīs.</i>
— — — —	Paeon Primus . . . . .	<i>ē cīp' īs, rēp' ī lāt.</i>
— — — —	———— Secundus . . . . .	<i>ō ē ē ē, dē ē ē ēs.</i>
— — — —	———— Tertius . . . . .	<i>ī ī ī īs, p' ē ē ē ē.</i>
— — — —	———— Quartus . . . . .	<i>ī ī ī ī, nī s' rēcōrs.</i>
— — — —	Epitritus Primus . . . . .	<i>lū ērānālō, sāl' ī ātīs.</i>
— — — —	———— Secundus . . . . .	<i>ā lūl' īstrāns, ī p' rātrīx.</i>
— — — —	———— Tertius . . . . .	<i>ā tōrīd's, īntē īj' s.</i>
— — — —	———— Quartus . . . . .	<i>ā sērītūtēr, ī fīnītā.</i>

*Obs.* Two Iambi, Trochees or Spondees together, are sometimes called *Ditambus*, *Ditrocheus*, and *Dispondus* respectively.

§ 764. Verses are called *Monometer*, *Dimeter*, *Trimeter*, *Tetrameter*, *Pentameter*, or *Hexameter*, according to the number of measures (*μετρα*) which they contain.

*Obs.* A *Dactyl* or *Chorambus* constitute each one measure; an *Anapaest*, *Iambus*, or *Trochee* only a half-measure.

Hence a line consisting of six *Dactyls* is called *Hexameter* (ἑξ, six); while a line consisting of the same number of *Iambi* or *Trochees*, is called *Pentameter* (πεντα, five); and a line consisting of four *Anapaests*, *Dimeter* (δι, two).

§ 765. *Elision* (έλιση) or *Synaloepha* (συναλοπη) is the striking out of a vowel, or a syllable ending with *is*, at the end of a word, when the following word begins with a vowel or *h*, and is indicated by the sign — *is*,

Caesurae — *Caesurae* (— *Caesurae* — *Caesurae* — *Caesurae*)

*Meter* — *Meter* (— *Meter* — *Meter* — *Meter*)



Pêrque hîēmēs (pêrqu'hîē|mēs).

Ūmbrârūm hæc sēdēs (ūmbrâr'|hæc sēd|ēs).

*Obs. 1.* Monosyllabic words are rarely elided, and least of all at the beginning of a verse: as,

Sî ad vitulam spectas.—Virg.

*Obs. 2.* The Elision of a long vowel before a short one is rare: as,

intimō āmore.

*Obs. 3.* The Elision of an iambus is avoided: as,

disce mēō exemplo.

*Obs. 4.* If *est* follows a final vowel, the *e* of *est* is elided, and not the final vowel: thus,

nostra est, nostri est, nostrum est, should be written and read  
nostra'st, nostri'st, nostrum'st.

*Obs. 5.* Sometimes a final long vowel remains in *Hiatus*, and is not elided: as,

Ter sunt | conat|I im|ponere | Peliō | Ossam.—Virg.

*Obs. 6.* The Interjections *ô*, *hen*, *ah*, *proh*, are not elided: as,

Ō pater | ō hōmīn|um di|vumque aet|erna pot|estas.—Virg.

Āh ĕgō | non alit|er trist|es e|vincere | morbos.—Tib.

*Obs. 7.* Occasionally a long vowel or diphthong at the end of a word becomes short before a word beginning with a vowel: as,

Te Cory|dōn, ō Āl|exi; tra|hit sua | quemque vol|uptas.—Virg.

Īnsūlāē | Ioni|o in mag|no quas | dira Ce|laeno.—Virg.

N.B. This is an imitation of the Greek usage.

*Obs. 8.* Earlier writers sometimes elide *s*: as,

Nam si de nihilo fierent, ex omnibu' rebus.—Luer.

§ 766. *Synaerēsis* (συναιρέσις) is the combination of two vowels into one, and is indicated by the sign  $\sim$ ,  $\sim$ . It is admissible only in the case of words which metrical laws would otherwise exclude, and more especially in the case of proper names at the end of a verse. as,

Seu len|to fue|rint al|vēaria | vimine | texta.—Virg.

Caucase|asque re|fert volu|eres fur|tumque Pro|methēi.—Virg.

So Orpheā, Typhoēā.

*Synaeresis* is chiefly found in the following words. dêinde, prōinde, abiēte, ariēte, dēesse and its derivatives, antēhāc, and in the whole verb antēire.

§ 767. *Diaerēsis* (διαίρεσις) is the separation of a diphthong into two syllables: as, pictai.

## I. DACTYLIC HEXAMETER METRE.

§ 768. The Dactylic Hexameter, usually called simply Hexameter, is employed especially in epic poetry, whence it is also termed the Heroic Verse. It consists properly of six dactyls ( $\text{—} \text{—} \text{—}$ ), the last of which is shortened by one syllable, so that the place of the last syllable is supplied by a trochee ( $\text{—} \text{—}$ ), or, as the final syllable of each verse is common, by a spondee ( $\text{—} \text{—}$ ). Instead of the first four dactyls, spondees may be used, but the fifth foot is regularly a dactyl. Hence, the following is the scheme of the verse:

1	2	3	4	5	6
$\text{—} \text{—} \text{—}$	$\text{—} \text{—} \text{—}$	$\text{—} \text{—} \text{—}$	$\text{—} \text{—} \text{—}$	$\text{—} \text{—} \text{—}$	$\text{—} \text{—}$
$\text{—} \text{—}$	$\text{—} \text{—}$	$\text{—} \text{—}$	$\text{—} \text{—}$	$\text{—} \text{—}$	$\text{—} \text{—}$

§ 769. The following are examples of the different combinations of the first four feet:

1. *Four Dactyls.*

- (a) Rádít itér líquídúm cēlērēs nēquē commovet alas.

2. *One Spondee and Three Dactyls.*

- (b) Ímpēnsúquē súf pōtérít súpērare cruoris,  
 (c) Témporā lābūntúr tātísquē sēnescimus annis,  
 (d) Nítimúr ín vētítúm sēmpér cūpimusque negata.  
 (e) Asplēiúnt ōcūlís súpērí mōrtalia justis;

3. *Two Spondees and Two Dactyls.*

- (f) Dúm virēs ánníquē sinúnt tōlérato labores,  
 (g) Quárúm quae mēdiá'st nōn ést hábitabilis aestu,  
 (h) Cúrváriquē mánús ét adúncōs crescer' in ungues,  
 (i) Át pātér út terrās mūndúmquē rúbescere vidit,  
 (k) NúmInā nēe spērni síne poenā nostra sinamus,  
 (l) Cōntígēránt rāpídās limōsī Phasidos undas;

4. *Three Spondees and One Dactyl.*

- (m) Nátūram éxpellás furcū tāmēn usque recurret,  
 (n) Út desínt virēs tāmēn ést laudanda voluntas,  
 (o) Aut prodéssē vólúnt aut dēlectare poetae,  
 (p) Pártiárúnt montēs nascétur ridiculus mus;

5. *Four Spondees.*

- (q) Éx nequē captís ardébānt mentibus ambo.

§ 770. Sometimes, but rarely, the fifth foot is a spondee, but then the fourth foot is a dactyl. Such a verse is called *Spædææ*. It usually concludes with a word of four syllables or one syllable: as,

Constant et pœculla Parca castigata cernit apertæ:

Quæ clausa sedebat, magnæ Jovis turris ædificata:

Omnia patribus populoque, post longæ et magnæ doli.

*Ch.* Very rarely indeed do we find such a verse as,

Aut hinc arces quædam dantur in ortu.—Virg. *Æn.* VII. 634.

§ 771. Every Hexameter verse must have at least one *Cæsura* (from *cædo*, “to cut”) which is a division of the foot, so that one part of it is in one word, and another part of it in another word. Hence the following line has five *Cæsuras*.

Dæmæ | eris | felix | multos | numerabilis | amicos.

§ 772. The *Cæsura* may be either strong or weak. The *strong Cæsura* is when the foot is cut after its first *long* syllable: as,

Ænea virumque cæcæ | Trojæ quæ primus ab æris.

The *weak Cæsura* is when the foot is cut after the first *short* syllable of a *Dactyl*: as,

O pœni graviter | dabit deus his quoque finem.

§ 773. The *Cæsuras* are named after the number of the half feet in Greek (*ἡμι-* and *μῆρος*): hence, *Triemimeral*, after the first three half feet; *Penthemimeral*, after the first five half feet; *Hephthemimeral*, after the first seven half feet; *Ennehemimeral*, after the first nine half feet.

*Ch.* The two short syllables of the *Dactyl* are counted as one half foot.

§ 774. Every Hexameter verse has either the *Penthemimeral*, or *Hephthemimeral* *Cæsura*. The *Penthemimeral* strong *Cæsura* is the most common. The *Hephthemimeral* is generally used along with the *Triemimeral*: as

Fama volat | quo non aliud | velocius ullum.

§ 775. Besides the *Pause* of the *Cæsura*, a Hexameter usually has another pause, when the foot terminates with the word. Thus, in the following line, there are two pauses in addition to the *Penthemimeral Cæsura*: as,

Tantæ | molis erat | Romanam | condere gentem.

§ 776. The last word of a Hexameter line usually consists of either two or three syllables. But a foreign word of four or more syllables is occasionally found in this position; especially if difficult to introduce elsewhere. Compare Virg. Aen. 3, 680 (cŷpā | rissī); Bucol. 8, 1 (Ālphēsi | boei); etc.

*Obs.* 1. A monosyllable may end a line if closely connected with another preceding it. Hence such endings as laus ēst (Hor.), ūsa ēst (Virg.), are admissible.

*Obs.* 2. Also a single monosyllable may be chosen to end a line, with a view to a particular effect: as,

Vértitur intéreā coelum, ét ruit océanó Nox (Virg.).

§ 777. It is not usual except for the conveyance of a particular idea, to make the first four feet of a Hexameter exclusively dactyls or exclusively spondees. An accumulation of dactyls produces a rapid movement: an accumulation of spondees a heavy movement. These opposite effects are designedly produced by Virgil in the following lines:

Quadrupedānte putrēm sonitū quatit úngula cāmpum.

Ílli intēr sesé magnā vi bráchia tollunt.

§ 778. *Hypermeter*.—Lines are thus designated which have a syllable over the full measure (ὑπὲρ μέτρον). But this is only allowed when the redundant syllable ends in a vowel (or *m*), and the following line begins with a vowel: as,

Inseritur vero ex fetu nucis árbūtūs hōrrida,  
Et steriles, &c.—Virg.

Janque iter emensi turres ac tectā Lātínōrum  
Ardua ceruebant, &c.—Virg.

*Obs.* In Virgil, the redundant syllable is frequently the enclitic *-que*.

## II. DACTYLIC PENTAMETER.

§ 779. The Dactylic Pentameter is found only in conjunction with a Hexameter, the distich thus formed being called an Elegiac couplet: as,

Postera lūx oritur.    Ianguis antónsque favete.  
Nūnc dicēda bonā | sūnt bonā verba dic.—Ov.

It has the following scheme:

— — — | — — — — — | — — — | — — — | —

Hence it appears :

1. That it consists of two members, separated by a Pause (the Penthemimeral).
2. That each member consists of two *entire* feet, originally Dactyls, followed by an imperfect or *half* foot, consisting of a monosyllable. ( $2\frac{1}{2} + 2\frac{1}{2} = 5$ . Hence the name Pentameter.)
3. That the first two Dactyls only may be replaced by Spondees.
4. That it has six arses, but only four theses (§ 762).
5. That the last syllable of the verse is common.

*Obs.* The best poets, however, generally take care that a short syllable at the close shall end with a consonant : as,

Vix Priamús tantí || tótaque Trója fuff.—Ov.

§ 780. The two Dactyls in the latter half of the verse are unalterable : the first half admits of the following four varieties :

- 1 Two Dactyls : as,  
Crédidimús gēpērí || nómīnībúsque tuís :
2. A combination of a Spondee and a dactyl : as,  
Trájectám gládió || mórte períre juvát :  
Cúm mālā pēr lōngús || cóvaluere morús : (most usual form) :
3. Two spondees : as,  
Súprēmám bellís || ímposuisse manum.

§ 781. The following are the principal rules observed by the most accurate poets in the structure of Pentameter Verse :

- (1.) The ending of the line is regularly a dissyllable.

*Obs.* But Catullus, Propertius, and others employ quadrisyllabic, and, *less frequently*, trisyllabic endings.

- (2.) A monosyllable at the close of either half of the line is avoided.

- (3.) Elision is avoided both at the end of the first half and altogether in the second.

*Obs.* The best model for Elegiac Verse is Ovid.

(For further particulars see Principia Lat. Part III.)

## III. TRIMETER IAMBIC (ACATALECTIC) VERSE.

§ 782. The Romans called this Verse *Senarius* from its six feet; it originally consisted of three double-iambi (*διποδια ιαμβικαι*), but amongst the best poets it has the following form:—

1      2      3      4      5      6  
 — — | — — | — || — | — — | — — | — — |

§ 783. Hence it appears that the *odd* places (1, 3, 5) admit spondees instead of iambi: the 5th foot being regularly a spondee. The principal caesura is the penthemimeral: as,

Mētis pavórquē || fúnus ét frëndéns dolór,  
 Prônást timóri || sémper ín pējús fidēs.

*Obs.* A Verse is called *Catalectic* (*καταλήγω, to leave off*), when the last foot wants one or sometimes two syllables; *acatalectic*, when it is complete; *hypercatalectic*, when there is a syllable over.

§ 784. As the long syllable can be resolved into two short (except in the case of the last syllable of the verse), we often find

(A.) A tribrach in the 2nd and 4th place.

(B.) An anapaest or a dactyl in the 5th place.

(C.) A tribrach, an anapaest, or a dactyl in the 1st and 3rd place: as,

Quae poénā mǎnēat mémet ét sedés scio ;  
 Hic laéva frénis dóctā mōdērandís manus ;  
 Pyrrhí manú mactétur ét tūmúlúm riget,  
 Tu tú malórum máchinátrix fácinorum ;  
 Ān āllíqua poénæ párs meae ígnotást mihi,  
 Lǎcēraeve fíxis únguibús venaé fluant,  
 Quín pōtíus íra cóncitúm pectús doma ;  
 Fas ómne cédāt ābēat éxpulsús pudor,  
 Evásit ét pēnētrálc fúnestum áttigit,  
 Parum ípse fidēs mīhímet ín tutó tua.

*Obs.* 1. The complete scheme of Iambic Trimeter, as used by Horace in his Epodes, is given below: § 807.

*Obs.* 2. Iambic *Dimeter* (acatalectic) corresponds with Iambic Trimeter, minus the first measure. See below, § 802, *Obs.*; 807.

§ 785. Very rarely both the long syllables in the same foot are resolved so as to make a proceleusmatic (— — —) : as,

Pāvēt ānīmus, ārtus hōrridūs quassāt tremor.

Obs. 1. By the less exact poets a spondee instead of an iambus is introduced into all the places except the 6th foot : as,

• Ut mōs ēst vūlgi pāssim ēt cērtatim ruit.

Obs. 2. We sometimes find even in good authorities examples of the original pure *iambi* : as,

Sābīnūs illē quēm vīdēbīs hōspītēs,  
Gēnēr sōcērquē pēdidistīs ōmniā.

In Hor. Epod. 16, the *even* lines consist of pure *iambi* throughout.

§ 786. *Choliambus*.—A kind of *limping* movement is given to the Senarius, by substituting a trochee for an Iambus in the sixth foot. Such a verse is called *choliambus* (halt-iambus), *seazon* (σκαζω, *to limp*), or *senarius claudus* (Gr. χαλός, *limping senarius*). Being at the end of a line, a spondee (— —) may be used for the trochee. The scheme is,

1      2      3      4      5      6  
— — | — — | — — || — — | — — | — — | — —

Quae tū volēbās || nec puēlla nōlēbat,  
Ān aémulātūr || improbi jocōs Phaēdrī.

The *iambus* is indispensable in the 2nd, 4th, and 5th feet.

Obs. 1. The *choliambus* is only adapted for use in short poems.

Obs. 2. Rarely, instead of the penthemimeral caesura, we find a principal pause or verse-caesura at the end of the *iambus* in the 2nd place and a foot-caesura before the fourth *arsis*, as,

Quodcūmq; agit || renidet hūc habēt mōrbum.

Obs. 3. In this scheme the resolution of a long syllable into two short is allowed only in the commencing syllable and in those on which the *arsis* falls in the first four feet : examples are,

Et cūpīt et instat ēt p̄cātūr ēt dōnat,  
Et mūlta frāgrat tēsta sēnīb; aūtūmnis,  
Āquīsque sīm̄les fīcēre nōctuās quāeris.

N.B.—The *seazon* is also called *Hipponactius* from its reputed inventor Hipponax, and was employed in Greek by Babrius in his *Æsopian* fables.

#### IV.—TROCHAIC TETRAMETER (CATALECTIC).

§ 787. *Comic Tetrameter*.—This verse, also called *Quadratus* from having four measures (see § 764), *Octonarius Catalectic*

from having eight feet all but a syllable, and *Septenarius* from having only seven *full* feet, has the following scheme:—

1    2    3    4    5    6    7    8  
 — — | — — | — — | — — || — — | — — | — — | —

Pérecrēpá pūgnām Pōpilli || fáctā Cōrnēlī cānē,  
 Nulla vōx humána cōnstāt || absque sēptem lītteris.

§ 788. Consequently it has a pause or verse-caesura exactly in the middle, *i.e.* before the fifth *arsis*. In the 1st, 3rd, 5th, and 7th feet it preserves the pure trochee (which, however, may be resolved into a tribrach); but in the 2nd, 4th, and 6th feet it admits, instead of the trochee, a spondee (which can be resolved into a dactyl, an anapaest, or occasionally a proceleusmaticus); and the last syllable of the verse is common: as,

Rōtā rēsistat mēmbra tórquens || tāngāt Íxiōn hūmum,  
 Méque ōvāntem scēlērē tānto || rāpīte Ín áltos gúrgitēs,  
 Ímplūm rāpīte átquē mérsum || prēmītē pērpētāís mālís,  
 Úndā mīseris grātā Lēthes || vósquē tórpentēs lācis.

#### V.—ANAPAESTIC DIMETER.

§ 789. The Anapaestic Dimeter Acatalectic Verso consists regularly of *four* anapaests (which are interchangeable with spondees), and has always a principal caesura exactly in the middle of the line: we obtain, therefore, the following varieties:—

##### 1. *Four Anapaests.*

(a.) Fūglāt trēpidī || cōmēs éxilití.

##### 2. *One Spondee and Three Anapaests.*

(b.) Jām nōn stābillís || rūēt áretōphyláx,

(c.) Sōlitas mūndí || pēriérō vícēs,

(d.) Phrygiámquē nēmús || matrís Cybelēs,

(e.) Áltárquē sitís || lātice íngestō.

##### 3. *Two Spondees and Three Anapaests.*

(f.) Sēgnūm celsí glaciálē pōlí,



- (g.) Jām caerulēis ēvēctūs āquīs,  
 (h.) Intēr sūbītōs stētīt hōrrōrēs,  
 (i.) Plācīdūs fessūm lenīsquē fōvē.  
 (k.) Vōlūcēr mātrīs gēnūs Āstrācāe,  
 (l.) Sēnīs īn jūgūlō telūm Pýrrhī.

4. *Three Spondees and One Anapaest.*

- (m.) Lāxōs aurā cōmplēntē sīnūs,  
 (n.) Ērrāt cūrsū lēvis īncērtō,  
 (o.) Hīc quī nitīdō taurūs cōrnū,  
 (p.) Pātēr ō rērūm pōrtūs vitac.

5. *Four Spondees.*

- (q.) Nūnc vélōcēs figīs dāmās.

The spondees in the 1st and 3rd feet (but not elsewhere) may be resolved into dactyls (which dactyls, however, must not be immediately followed by an anapaest), so that we obtain the following:

6. *One Dactyl and Three Spondees.*

- (r.) Nōn cūpīt ūmquām māgnōs mōtūs,  
 (s.) Ēt cōngēstō paupēr īn aurō'st.

7. *One Dactyl, Two Spondees, and One Anapaest.*

- (t.) Sōrdīdā pārvae fortūnā dōmūs,  
 (u.) Sīvē fērōcīs jūgā Pýrēnēs,  
 (v.) Mōllī pētūlāns haedūs īn hērbā,  
 (w.) Lībēt īnfaustōs mīttērē quēstūs.

8. *One Dactyl, One Spondee, and Two Anapaests.*

- (x.) Pēctōrā lōngīs hēbētātā mālīs,  
 (y.) Vācūae rēpārāt ūbērā matrēs.

9. *Two Dactyls and Two Spondees.*(z.) *Contrāhīt ignēs lūcē rēnātā.*

§ 790. The last syllable of each line is *not* common; for in the Anapaestic system there exists a *Synaphēa* (συνάφεια) or *connexion* of all the verses, so that a short syllable at the end of one line should (though exceptions may very rarely be found) itself end in a consonant, and be followed by a word in the next line beginning with a consonant: as,

Grege dimissō pabūla carpit  
Ludit pratō, etc.

§ 791. After a series of Dimeter Anapaestics it is usual to close the system with a monometer which for the most part takes the form of the *versus Adonius* (— ∪ ∪ | — ∪): as,

Nos ē tantō visi populō  
Dignē premerēt quos inversō  
Cārdinē mādūs.

Other forms are — — ∪ ∪ ∪: as,

cōmpēnsāt itēr; vicinā pōlō;

∪ ∪ — ∪ ∪ ∪: as,

přěuntě, mōři;

and (very rarely) — — — —: as,

itē ad plānctūs.

This break may occur after a series of any length, and the last syllable is then common.

## VI.—HENDECASYLLABIC VERSE.

§ 792. The Hendecasyllabic Verse (ἑνδεκά, *eleven*), also called Phalaeccian (from the poet Phalaeccus, Φάλακκος), has in its most elegant form the following metre:—

— — | — ∪ ∪ | — ∪ | — ∪ | — ∪ |

consisting of one spondee, one dactyl, and three trochees, for the third of which, as the last syllable of a verse is common, a spondee may stand. As,

Tām toll ūm — hī | pāsūr|em ābst. fēt s.  
Sōlēs | decide re ēt red frē | pōssunt.

*Obs.* 1. Occasionally the liberty is taken of commencing with a *trochee* or *iambus*: as,

Nē tibi libeat foras abire,  
Minister vetuli puer Falerni.

*Obs.* 2. A still greater liberty, seldom indulged in, is the substitution of a spondee for the dactyl in the second part: as,

Quas voltū vīdi tamen serenas.

§ 793. The monotony which might be apprehended from the uniformity of the measure is to a great extent obviated by the freedom it enjoys from any fixed laws of caesura and elision: as,

Frūstra blānditiāe venītis ad me,  
Dēfessūs || tamen omnibūs || medullis,  
Amicōs || medicōsque cōvocate,  
Electīssima pessīmī || poetae,  
Quōt sunt quōtque || fuēre Mārce Tulli.

*Obs.* Hypermeter lines (for the conditions relating to which see § 773) occur sometimes in this metre: as,

Quaenam te mala mens miselle Rāvide  
Agit praecipitem.

## VII.—CHORIAMBIC VERSE.

§ 794. Choriambic has usually a spondaic commencement or base (βάσις or ἀνάκρονσις) and an iambic conclusion (κατάληξις). The principal forms of it are—

(N.B.—The term *anacrūsis*, from ἀνα-κρούω, to beat upwards, denotes the syllable or syllables which precede the first *ictus* in a line.)

### 1. With one *choriambus*,

— — | — — — — | — —, as:

Audax | omnia per|peti,  
Cui frons | turgida corn|ibūs.

### 2. With two *choriambi*,

— — | — — — — || — — — — | — —, as:

Sen ru|pit teretes || Marsus aper | plagūs,  
Myrto|um pavidus || nauta sec|et marē.

*Obs.* This and the following form (3) are called *Asclepiadean* (from the grammarian Asclepiades). The latter is called long *Asclepiadean*.

### 3. With three *choriambi*,

— — | — — — — || — — — — || — — — — | — —, as:

Morda|ces aliter || diffugiunt || sollicitū dinēs,  
Quae mens | est hodie || cur eadem | non puero | fuit.

§ 795. By Catullus (but not by Horace and the more correct poets) the spondaic commencement in the first form is changed for a trochaic or iambic: *e. g.* :

Mōnti|um domina ut | fores,  
Pūell|ac et pueri in|tegri.

This form is called GLYCONIAN (from the poet Glycon), and Catullus closes a series of them with what is called (from the poet Pherecrates) a PHERECRATIAN verse, of which the scheme is

— ˘ | ˘ ˘ ˘ ˘ | ˘,

and an example,

Lūtē|ūm pēdē sōc|cum.

Horace, however, uses the first form only in connexion with other rhythms, as in the following stanzas:—

(1). Ó fons Bāndūs|aē || splēndid|ior vitrō, } (2nd chor. form) :  
Dūlei digne mēro || nōn sīnē flōribūs, }

Crās dōnābēris haedō (Pherecratian verse) :

Cui frōns tūrgidā cōrnibūs (1st chor. form) :

(2). Scrībēris Vārō || fōrtis ēt hōstiūm  
Vīctor, Maeōnī || cārminis ālitē } (2nd chor. form) :  
Quām rēm cūnquē fērox || nāvibūs aut ēquīs }  
Mīlēs, tē dūcē, gēssērīt (1st chor. form).

And (3) the couplet,

Quētm tu Mēlpōmēnē sēmēl (1st chor. form) :

Nāscēntēm plācidō || lūminē vīdēris (2nd chor. form) :

*Obs. 1.* Neglect of the verse-caesura, or division of the line at the end of a foot, in the second and third forms (see preceding page) is very rare: *e. g.* .

Dum flagrantia de — torquet ad oseula,

Non incendia Car—thaginis impiae.

Arcanique fides || prodiga per — lucidior vitro.—(Hor.)

*Obs. 2.* In the second form it may be noticed :

1. That division after the verse-caesura causes nothing unpleasant to the ear, *e. g.*

Anditam modere|re arboribus fidem :

2. That each foot may consist of a single word: as,

Quassas indocilis || pauperiem pati :

3. That a short syllable is (rarely) lengthened by *arsis*.

Perrupit Acheronta Herculeus labor.

Obs. 3. The following are examples of Hypermeter lines (see § 775, in a system of Choriambic (Glyconian) verses of the first form :

Unguentate glabris mōrite  
abstinere.

Munere assidue valētem  
exerceat juventam.

Sancta nomine Rōmūlique  
antique.

Saluumque rēcōnditōrum  
omniumque sonantum.

### VIII.—MINOR IONIC AND GALLIAMBIC VERSE.

§ 796. There is but one ode in Roman literature written in *Ionic à minori* verses (Horace Od. lib. iii. 12): it appears to have four divisions, each consisting of ten connected *Ionic à minori* feet without *hiatus* or *common* syllable at the end of a foot: the scheme is

$\cup \cup \acute{ } - \cup \cup \acute{ } - \mid \cup \cup \acute{ } - \cup \cup \acute{ } -$   
 $\cup \cup \acute{ } - \cup \cup \acute{ } - \mid \cup \cup \acute{ } - \cup \cup \acute{ } -$   
 $\cup \cup \acute{ } - \cup \cup \acute{ } -$

Miserārum est neque amōri | dare lūdum neque dūci,  
Mala vino lavere; aut exanimāri metuētes  
Patruāe verbera līnguae.

One short ode is not sufficient to enable us to ascertain the laws of this metre.

§ 797. An offshoot of the *Ionic à minori* verse is the Galliambic (so named from the Galli or priests of Cybele, for whose rites its vibratory rhythm was well adapted). The general scheme is,

$\cup \cup \acute{ } \cup \acute{ } \cup \acute{ } - \parallel \cup \cup \acute{ } \cup \acute{ } \cup \acute{ } -$

Examples are :

Itaque ut domūm Cybēbes | tetigēre lassulāe,  
Aliēna quāe petētes | velut exulēs locā.

Then by the change, at the beginning of each half-verse, of the two pyrrhics ( $\cup \cup$ ) into a long syllable, and the resolution of the long syllable at the 1st, 2nd, 4th, and (especially) the 5th *arsis* into two short, we obtain

$- \acute{ } \cup \acute{ } \cup \acute{ } - \parallel - \acute{ } \cup \acute{ } \cup \acute{ } -$ , as :

Jām jān dolēt quod ēgi | jān jānque poenitēt.



and Iambic, or Iambic and Trochaic. The following kinds occur, but only in combination with other metres:—

— ◡ — | — ◡ — ◡ || ◡ — — | ◡ — — | ◡  
 ◡ — — | ◡ — — | ◡ || — ◡ — ◡ | — ◡ — ◡

Nivésque deducúnt Jovem || núnc mare núnc silvae  
 Móllobus ín pnerís || aut ín puéllis úrere.

*Obs.* The Logaoedic is less correctly regarded as an asynartete metre.

## XI.—SAPPHIC VERSE.

§ 800. The Sapphic Strophe or Stanza, so called from Sappho of Lesbos, was Latinized by Horace, who adopted the following scheme:

◡ — | ◡ — | ◡ — — | ◡ — | ◡ — (thrice)  
 — — — | — —

Cláre | Maéce|nás eques | út pa|térni  
 Flúmi|nís ri|paé simul | ét jö,cósä  
 Rédder et laud|és tibi | Váti|cáni  
 Móntis | imógo.

§ 801. The following may serve as illustrations of the caesura:—

1. Cláre Maécenás || eques út patérni.
2. Mércurí || facúndē nēpós || Atlántis.
3. Laúreä || donándüs Äpollinári.
4. Férvet immensús-quē rūit || profúndo.
5. Lénis llithyíä tüere mátres.

*Obs.* 1. The caesura with elision should not be imitated, *e.g.*:

Ímbriúm dívina ávis imminentum.

*Obs.* 2. Once a short syllable is lengthened by *arsis* at the caesura:

Angulus ridēt, ubi non Hymetto.

*Obs.* 3. Of Hypermeter lines (see § 778) the following are specimens:—

Romulae genti date remque prôlēmque  
 et decus omne.

Mugiunt vaccae tibi tollit hinnitum  
 apta quadrigis equa.

Dissidens plebi numero bēātōrum  
 eximit virtus.

*Obs.* 4. In the Sapphic stanza there is a close connexion between the third line and the Versus Adonius; hence Horace sometimes divides a word between them: as,

Labitur ripa Jove non probante ux-  
 orius amnis.  
 Thracio bacchante magis sub inter-  
 lunia vento.

*Obs. 5.* Horace differs from his model Sappho in making the fourth syllable always long instead of short.

## XII.—ALCAIC VERSE.

§ 802. The Alcaic Strophe or Stanza, so called from Alcaeus of Lesbos, was Latinized by Horace, who adopted the following scheme:—

⌒ | ⌒ ⌒ | ⌒ — || ⌒ — — | ⌒ — — (twice) (Alcaic line).  
 ⌒ | ⌒ ⌒ | ⌒ — | ⌒ — | ⌒ — | (Trochaic Dimeter with anacrusis ⌒)  
 ⌒ — — | ⌒ — — | ⌒ — | ⌒ — (Logaoedic).

It should be observed, however, that the *long* anacrusis is preferable; and that the concluding syllable of each line, if not in itself long, usually ends with a consonant: as,

Nūn | semper | imbrēs | nubibus | hispīdīs  
 Mānant in | agros | aut mare | Caspīam  
 Vēxant in | aequā | a procellā  
 Cūque nec | Armeniās in | uris.

But a short syllable is found in both places: as,

Vides ut | alta | stat uxo candida  
 Soliēto | nec jam | sustinet ulla  
 Silvae labantē | rē | colūmē  
 Flumina | cūstiterunt | acuto.

*Obs.* The third line may also be scanned as Iambic Dimeter Hypercatalectic:—

⌒ — — — | ⌒ — — — | ⌒

But the fifth syllable is usually long: *see* § 791, *Obs. 3.*

§ 803. The practice of Horace, after he himself had become more perfect in his metres (i. e. in his later Odes), should both in Sapphic and Alcaic verse be chiefly imitated. The following appear to be the best caesural verse divisions:

### 1. In the first two lines

Ille lva fūctus | lva rēp fūctus  
 Latē rēp fūctus | lva rēp fūctus



*Obs.* An elision here does not interfere with the verse-caesura : as,  
Regum timendorum in proprios greges.

## 2. In the third :

- (a.) Non vultus instantis tyranni.  
Quos inter Augustus recumbens.  
Deprome quadrimum Sabina.  
(b.) Spargent olivetis cupressi.  
(c.) Si fractus illabatur orbis.

## 3. In the fourth, in order of frequency :

- (a.) Impavidum ferient ruinae.  
(b.) Nec virides metuunt colubros.  
(c.) Flumina constiterint acuto.  
(d.) Aut digito male pertinaci.  
(e.) Levia personuere saxa.  
(f.) Cuncta supercilio moventis.

*Obs.* 1. Once a short syllable is made long by *arsis* at the second *arsis* of the fourth line :  
Caeca timet aliunde fata.

*Obs.* 2. A monosyllable at the place of the caesura in the first two lines is unusual, though sometimes found in Horace :

Non est meum, si mugiat Africae,  
Carthagini jam non ego nuntios,  
Quid debeas, o Roma Neronibus,  
Te copias, te consilium, et tuos,  
Te fontium qui celat origines.

*Obs.* 3. *Et* is frequently—but not in the fourth Book of the Odes—found (usually with an elision) at the end of a line ; but a monosyllable in the last place is generally (esp. if preceded by another) disagreeable to the ear ; e.g.,

Cur non sub alta vel platano vel hac.

Cy., O quae beatam diva tenes Cyprum et } and Aedesque labentes deorum et  
Memphim carentem Sithonia nive : } Foeda nigro simulacra fumo.

*Obs.* 4. A short syllable is never found at the place of the caesura in the first two lines, and the resolution there of the long syllable into two short, as in

Hinc Omne principium huc refer exitum

is very exceptional.

*Obs.* 5. The verse-caesura is hardly ever neglected : such a line as

Mentémque lymphat — am Mareotico

is altogether abnormal.

*Obs.* 6. Hypermeter lines are occasionally admitted : e.g. :

Sors exitura et nos in aeternum  
Exilium, etc.

*Obs. 7.* The *genit.* case in *ii* is not admitted: *i* is the form: *e. g.* :  
vis consill experts, etc.

*Obs. 8.* The hiatus in *jam Daedaleo | oclor Icaro*, is not to be imitated.

### XIII.—DOUBLE OR ALTERNATING VERSES.

§ 804. This system, to which the Elegiac verse belongs, has been carried out by Horace in great variety.

§ 805. There is one ode (Od. I. 8) in which the odd lines have the following scheme (choriambic without base):

┐ ┐ ┐ ┐ | ┐ ┐ ┐, as :

Lȳdiā, dīc | pēr ōmnēs :

and the even the following (also choriambic, with Trochaic Dimeter base: sometimes called *long Sapphic*):

┐ ┐ | ┐ ┐ | ┐ ┐ ┐ ┐ || ┐ ┐ ┐ ┐ | ┐ ┐ ┐, as :

Tē dē, ōs ōr ō Sȳbārīn || cūr prōpērās | āmāndo.

§ 806. Horace has also one ode (Od. II. 18) in which a Trochaic Dimeter Catalectic verse in the odd lines is followed by an Iambic Trimeter Catalectic in the even. The latter verse has such a pause (or verse-caesura) that the rhythm of the latter half becomes trochaic. The scheme is :

┐ ┐ ┐ ┐ | ┐ ┐ ┐  
┐ ┐ ┐ ┐ || ┐ ┐ ┐ ┐ ┐, as :

Nōn ēbūr nēq;ue aūrēum,  
Mēā rēnidēt || īn dōmō lācūnār.

*Obs. 1.* The metre is called by the schollast Aeron *Hipponactean* from the already-mentioned poet Hippōnax.

*Obs. 2.* The last syllable is common; and there is no synaphea, as may be seen from

Rapacis Orci | fine destinata  
Aula divitem manet.

§ 807. Horace has imitated Archilochus in many instances: in the first ten Epodes we have after his model the following scheme :

┐ ┐ ┐ ┐ | ┐ ┐ ┐ ┐ (Trimeter Iambic Acatalectic),

┐ | ┐ ┐ ┐ ┐ | ┐ ┐ (Dimeter Iambic Acatalectic), as :

Beātūs illē | quī prēcūl nēgōtīs,  
 Ūt | priscā gēns mōrt | ālūm :  
 Pōsītōsque vernās | dītis exāniēn domus :  
 Sēn̄īlo guttur fregerit :  
 Nēc mūnūs hūmēris | effīcaeīs Hēreulīs :  
 Viderē prōpēran̄tes domum :  
 Pavidumque lēporem ēt | advenam \*lāquēō gruem :  
 Jueunda captat praemia :  
 Quid dixit aut quīd tacuit, etc.  
 Quod si pudicā mūller in partem juyet.

*Obs.* A diphthong is (very rarely) shortened before another vowel, as :

Ēt|Ēsquīlīnaē ālites (§ 765, *Obs.* 7).

§ 808. Another combination, after Archilochus, is (once Od. IV. 7) formed by the *second* half of a Pentameter appended to a Hexameter verse, as :

Diffūgēre nivēs ; redeūnt jam gramina cāmpis  
 Árboribúsque comac.

*Obs.* The Hexameter may be varied according to the rules already laid down, but the even lines must always correspond to the *second* half of the Pentameter.

§ 809. Another, after Archilochus (Epod. XIII.), consists of a Hexameter, to which is appended an *asynartete* line made up of a Dimeter Iambic and the second half of a Pentameter : as,

Horrida tempestas coelum contraxit, et imbres  
 Nivēsque dedūcūnt Jōvēm || nūnc mare, nūnc siluāē ;  
 Threīcio Aquilone sonant ; rapīamus, amici,  
 Ōccasionem de die || dumque virent genuā ;  
 Cetera mitte loqui : deus hacc fortasse benigna  
 Reducet in sedem vicē . || Nunc et Achaemenio.

*Obs.* The even line in the above is the even line *reversed* of Epode XI.

§ 810. Another, after Archilochus (Epod. XI.), consists of a *senarius* (see TRIMETER IAMBIC ACATALECTIC), to which is appended an *asynartete* line made up of the *second half* of a Pentameter together with an Iambic Dimeter Acatalectic (see § 784, *Obs.* 2) : as,

Amore qui me praeter omnes expedit  
 Mōllibūs | in pūēr̄īs || aut̄ in pūēll̄īs ūrērē :

Hic tertius December, ex quo destiti,  
 Inachia fure,rē, silvis honorem decutit  
 Unde expedire non amicorum queant,  
 Libera consili,ā nec contumeliae graves.

*Obs.* The hiatus in

Vincere mollitiē || amor Lycisci me tenet

is explained, as is the short syllable at the verse-caesura, by the fact of the two halves of the line being composed in distinct measures, in each of which the last syllable of the verse is common.

§ 811. Another (Od. I. 4), after Archilochus, consists of a logaoedic line (§ 798, 2), followed by an Iambic Trimeter Catalectic: as,

Pállidā | mōrs aeq̄ uō pūls,āt pēdē || paup̄crūm tābērñās,  
 Rēgūmq̄e tūrrēs. Ó bēātē Sēxti:  
 Altern'o terr'am quat̄,unt pede || dum graves Cyclopum,  
 Volcanus ardens urit officinas.

§ 812. Moreover, Horace has (Od. I. 7, 28; Epod. XII.) a Hexameter followed by a line made up of three dactylic feet (of which the last must be pure) and a spondee or trochee (Dactylic Tetrameter Catalectic), the scheme of which is,

⏏ ⏏ | ⏏ ⏏ | ⏏ ⏏ | ⏏ =. as:

Laudabunt alii claram Rhodon aut Mitylenen,  
 Aut Ēphēs'ōn bīmār'isvē Cōr'inthī;  
 Moenia, vel Baccho Thebas vel Apolline Delphos  
 Insīgn|ēs, aut | Thēssālā | Tēmpē:  
 Nec tam Larissae percussit campus opimae,  
 Quām dōmūs | Ālbūnē|ae rēsōn|āntis.

§ 813. And, lastly, Horace has (Epod. XIV. and XV.) a Hexameter followed (1) by an Iambic Dimeter Acatalectic: as,

Nox erat et coelo fulgebat luna sereno  
 Intér minóra sīderā;

Or (2), by a pure *senarius* (Epod. XVI.): as,  
 Altera jam teritur bellis civilibus actas  
 Suis et ipsa Roma viribus ruit.

*Obs.* This metre is called Pythiambic.

## XIV.—THE PRIAPEAN VERSE.

§ 814. The Priapean Verse (Catull. XVII., XVIII., and XIX.) consists of the placing together (unintermingled) of a Glyconic and Pherecratian verse, so that the scheme is

— ◡ | ◡ ◡ ◡ — | ◡ ◡ || — ◡ | ◡ ◡ — ◡ ;

Paupēr|is tūgūrī | pātēr | fili|ús-quē cōlōnī,

Hūjūs | nām dōmīnī | cōlūnt | mē dē|úmquē sālūtānt,

Quērēūs | āridā rūst|icā || cōnfōrmātā sēcūrī,

Altēr | āssidūā | cōlēns || diligē|ntiā ūt hērbā.

*Obs.* 1. The spondee of the Pherecratian half of the verse becomes more frequently than not an Iambus.

*Obs.* 2. Catullus occasionally makes a short syllable long at the pause (or verse-caesura) || : *e. g.* :—

Nutrio magis et magis || et beabo quotannis.

## XV.—THE SATURNIAN VERSE.

§ 815. The Saturnian was the oldest native Roman verse, and it remained in use till the Hexameter was introduced by Ennius. Its rhythm is controlled not by the quantity of syllables as long or short, but by word-accent only.

It consists of two members, each of which has three accents. The first member has a monosyllabic anacrusis. The following two lines may serve as specimens; the former ascribed to the poet Naevius, the latter a retort upon him by one of the 'Metelli':—

Fatō Romae<sup>ˆ</sup> Metelli || fiunt cōsulēs.

Dabūnt malūm Metelli || Naeviō<sup>ˆ</sup> poētac.

§ 816. The Saturnian line has been described as Iambic Trimeter Hypermeter, or Trochaic Trimeter with anacrusis; but it is better to regard it as a distich written in a single line, as in the old English ballad metre.

*Obs.* The oldest English metre consists in like manner of a distich regulated only by word-accent, often treated as a single line : as,

Ín a sōmer sēson,  
When sōfte wās the sōnne. (Piers Plowman).

§ 817. In the Saturnian metre Naevius wrote his poem on the First Punic War, the first line of which was,

Virūm mí (mihī) Casména || inseré (*i. e.* insequere, verūtum).

The song of the Arval Brothers (Donaldson, *Varron*. p. 194), some fragments of Salian hymns, and probably certain inscriptions and epitaphs are also in this metre.

*Obs.* An old Latin translation of the inscription of Pyrrhus has been thought to show a mixture of Saturnian and Hexameter verse :—

Qui ántedhác invícti | fuvére vírī || pătēr | ōptíme Ōl|ýmpī  
 Hos égo in púgna víci ||  
 Victúsque súm ab ísdem || (see *Farron*. p. 228).

Or, as we may perhaps write the lines,

Qui ántedhác invícti || Fū|vērē vír,ī pătēr | ōptím' Ōlýmpī ||  
 Hos égo in púgna víci || Víc|túsquē sum āb | ísdēm ||

# XVI.—THE TELIAMBIC OR MIURIC VERSE (*dock-tailed* ; from μειῶ, οὐρά).

§ 818. The Teliambic Verse is a Hexameter terminated by an Iambus (τέλος, ἱαμβος) instead of a Spondee (⌋ ⌋ for ⌋ ⌌). As the last syllable of the line is common, the Iambic may become a Pyrrhic (⌋ ⌋). As,

Dīrīge ōd|ōrīs ēq|uōs ād | cērtā cūb|illā | cānēs.

*Obs.* The effect of this line is similar to that of the Choliambic (§ 786), the rhythm being suddenly interrupted.

## PART IV.—ETYMOLOGY.

## CHAPTER LXIX.—THE ALPHABET.

§ 819. The Latin Language is a member of that great family of languages known by the name of Indo-European or Aryan. At some remote period a race migrated from the East, embracing the ancestors of both the Greeks and Italians. From this race the Italians branched off, and were themselves divided into two stocks, the *Latins* on the west, and the *Umbro-Samnites* on the east, the latter including the Umbrians, Sabines, Samnites, and their numerous colonies.

*Obs. 1.* The term *Indo-European* points to the eastern and western limits of the languages so designated. It includes the Indian, Persian, Slavonian, Lithuanian, Greek, Latin, Gothic or German, and Celtic languages. The term *Aryan* is derived from one of the most ancient names of nations included in the above family (*Gr.* Ἄριοι, *Lat.* Arit), and contains the root *Ar-* (ἀρετή), *noble, brave*.

*Obs. 2.* The *Umbro-Samnite* branch, though more closely related to Latin than to Greek, was distinct from the Latin. It was itself divided into two main dialects, the *Umbrian* and the *Oscan*, the latter being spoken by the Samnites. Of both of these dialects some remains have come down to us.

§ 820. The Latin Alphabet was derived from the Dorian Greeks of Cumae and Sicily. Of the 24 letters of the Grecian Alphabet, the Latins omitted  $\theta$ ,  $\phi$ , and  $\chi$ , and changed the Digamma or Vau ( $\varphi$ ), having the power of V or W, into F. The Latin Alphabet consisted originally of 20 letters, to which X, making the whole number 21, was added at a very early period:

1. A.	8. H.	15. P.
2. B.	9. I (J).	16. Q.
3. C.	10. K.	17. R.
4. D.	11. L.	18. S.
5. E.	12. M.	19. T.
6. F.	13. N.	20. V (U).
7. Z.	14. O.	21. X.

Hence Cicero mentions an alphabet of 21 letters, of which  $x$  was the last (*Nat. Deor.* ii. 37).

*Obs. 1.* Z, corresponding to the Greek Zeta, was found in the earliest Roman Alphabet, and it occurred in the *Carmen Saliare*. At what time it disappeared is unknown. It is not found in the Twelve Tables. It first came into use again in Cicero's time, but then only in writing Greek words. At the same time *F* was introduced for the same purpose. (Further, v. 836.)

*Obs. 2.* The Latins originally wrote CS instead of X. The letter X appears to have first come into use in the time between the Decemviral legislation and the capture of Veii; but the first document in which it is found is the *Senatus Consultum de Bacchanalibus*, B.C. 186.

*Obs. 3.* It appears that when the Dorian Alphabet was introduced among the Latins, C was the Guttural Media, corresponding to the Greek γ, and K the Guttural Tenuis, corresponding to the Greek κ. But at a very early stage of the Latin Alphabet, the difference between the Guttural Media and Tenuis disappeared, so that C and K came to have the same sound. C was thus used to express both the Tenuis and Media. Hence in the Twelve Tables, *ni cum eo pacit* and *ni pacunt* occur, from the same verb as *pango*, *pepigi*. So on the Columna Rostrata we find the forms *leciones*, *maci-stratos*, *ecfociont*, *pucnandod*, *Cartocinienses*, equivalent to *legiones*, *magi-stratus*, *exfugiant*, *pugnando*, *Carthaginieneses*. In like manner C and Cn., the ancient representatives of the names Gaius and Gnaeus, were retained down to the latest times. As K gradually went out of use, being only retained in a few words, of which the chief were *Kaeso*, *Kalendae*, *kalumnia*, *kaput*, the difference between the Tenuis and Media again became marked, and a new letter G, formed from C by adding a tail to the latter, was introduced to indicate the Media. This letter is found in the time of the First Punic War, on the sarcophagus of L. Scipio Barbatus, and was placed in the alphabet between F and H by a freedman of Sp. Carvilius Ruga, the old letter Z having by this time become obsolete. (Plut. *Quaest. Rom.* c. 59).

*Obs. 4.* The Emperor Claudius introduced three new letters; namely, an inverted Digamma,  $\mathfrak{J}$ , to distinguish the consonant *r* from the vowel *u*; the Anti-sigma,  $\mathfrak{O}$ , to express the sounds *bs* and *ps*, answering to the Greek ψ; and the sign of the Greek aspirate  $\mathfrak{H}$ , to express the intermediate sound between the vowels *i* and *u* (v. § 840, 3). These letters were used in inscriptions, some of which are extant; but they soon went out of use (Tacit. *Annal.* xi. 14); and Priscian and the other grammarians mention therefore an alphabet of only twenty-three letters, in which *x* and *y* are included.

## (A.) THE CONSONANTS.

§ 821. Consonants are divided :—

I. According to the part of the mouth, where they are produced, *i. e.* according to their *organ*, into—

1. GUTTURALS—*c* (*k*), *g*, *q*, *h*, *n*, *x*.
2. DENTALS—*t*, *d*, *n*, *l*, *r*, *s*, *z*.
3. LABIALS—*p*, *b*, *f*, *v*, *m*.

II. According to their *power*, that is, whether they can be pronounced with or without a vowel, into :

### 1. MUTES :—

	Gutturals.	Dentals.	Labials.
(a.) <i>Tenues</i> (sharp)	<i>c</i> , <i>k</i> , <i>q</i> ,	<i>t</i> ,	<i>p</i> .
(b.) <i>Mediae</i> (flat)	<i>g</i> ,	<i>d</i> ,	<i>b</i> .
(c.) <i>Aspiratae</i> (aspirates)	<i>h</i> ,	none.	<i>f</i> .



## 2. VOCALS:—

(a.) *Liquids*—*l, m, n, r.*(b.) *Sibilants*—*s, x, z.*(c.) *Semivowels*—*j, v.*

## I. Gutturals.

§ 822. **K. C.** (1) The early history of these letters has been already explained (§ 820, *Obs.* 3). The Latin *C*, except at an early period, has the same sound as *k* in the cognate languages. Hence it stands in place of *g* and *h* before the tenuis *t* and the sharp sibilant *s*:

rectum,	rexī [rec-si],	from rego.
auctum,	auxī [auc-si],	„ augeo.
tractum,	traxī [trac-si],	„ traho.
vectum,	vexī [vec-si],	„ veho.

*C* represents *d* before a guttural tenuis: as,

iccirco,	for idcirco	quicquam,	for quidquam
quicquid,	„ quidquid	nequicquam,	„ nequidquam.

*Obs.* The forms with *c* are the orthography of the best MSS.; but we generally find *quidquid* (relative).

(2) *C* disappears:—i. Before *n*: as,

ara-nea	[=arac-nea] comp. δρᾶχνη	de-ni	[=dec-ni] comp. decem
la-na	[=lac-na] „ λᾶχνη	qui-ni	[quinc-ni] „ quinquē.
lu-na	[=luc-na] „ luceo		

ii. Before *t* when the nasal precedes: as,

quin-tus	[=quinc-tus]	Quin-tius	[=Quinc-tius].
----------	--------------	-----------	----------------

iii. Before *t* and *s* if *C* is preceded by the liquids *r* or *l*: as,

ar-tus	[=arc-tus],	comp. arceo
far-tus	[=farc-tus],	„ farcio
tor-tus	[=torc-tus],	„ torqueo
hor-tus	[=horc-tus],	} herctum
co-hortes	[=co-horctes],	
cor-tis	[=core-tis],	„ ἔρκος
mul-si	[=mule-si],	„ mulceo
mul-ta	[=mule-ta]	„ mulco.
au-tor	[=auc-tor],	„ augeo
au-tumnus	[=auct-umnus],	„ augeo

(3) *C* had its hard or *K* sound even before *e* and *i* (with the single exception mentioned below), and was not sibilated as it is in

English. Hence we find that C in Latin words before *e* and *i* is always expressed in Greek by K: as, *ensor*, κήνωρ: *Cicero*, Κικέρων; and that the Romans, in writing Greek words in Latin, always expressed K by C: as, *Cecrops*, *Cilix*, *Cineas*, *Cybele*.

On the other hand, the fact that in several Latin words *ci* and *ti* before a vowel were written indifferently, proves that these sounds must have been pronounced similarly. Thus we find in inscriptions, *tribunitiae* and *tribuniciae*; and on the other hand, *mundicie* for *munditie*; the sound being in either case that of a sibilant. So likewise in inscriptions we have both forms in proper names: as,

Larcus	and	Lartia,	Accius	and	Attius,
Marcus	„	Martia,	Abucius	„	Abutius,
Mucius	„	Mutius,	Neracius	„	Neratius.

In the oldest MSS. we have a similar fluctuation: thus we find,

solacium	and	solatium,	suspicio	and	suspitio,
convicium	„	convitium,	secius	„	setius.

It must be observed, however, that this interchange of *ci* and *ti* takes place only before a vowel: we never find, for instance, *milicis* instead of *militis*, or *felitis* instead of *felicis*. From the sibilant sound of *ti* arose in modern Italian such forms as *palazzo* from *palatium*; *Piacenza* from *Placentia*, &c.

A similar sibilation before *i* occurs in Greek: thus πάσσω, θάσσω, μάσσω, represent παχίων, ταχίων, μακίων; and βράσσω, κρέσσω or κρείσσω represent βραδίων, κρετίων: in like manner φυλάσσω, τάσσω, ταράσσω represent φυλακίω, ταγίω, παρακίω. (See Curtius, *Gr. Gr.* § 57).

*Obs.* Still the fluctuation between *ci* and *ti* with a vowel following did not really occur in many words in which it is usually given. For example:

1. *Contio* (not *concio*) is the only form found in the oldest MSS. of Plautus and Gaius. The former orthography is in accordance with the etymology; for the form *coentionid* (= *coventione*) in the S. C. de Bacchanalibus proves that *contio* is a contraction of *co(n)centio*.
2. *Nuntius* (not *nuncius*) alone occurs in the best inscriptions and MSS. This form also is in accordance with the etymology. The old form was *nuntios*, connected with *norus*. From *norus* was derived a verb *nocere*; from the present participle of which, *nocens*, *noent-is*, came, with the suffix *ius*, the word *nocentius*, just as *Florus*, *florere*, *Florentia*. Then *noentius* was shortened into *nuntius*, as *nocendinae* into *noundinae* (*nundinae*).
3. *Indutiae* (not *induciae*) (Gell. l. 25). *Fetialis* (not *Fecialis*), comp. Gr. φητιαίος. *Otium* and *Negotium* are the only correct forms.
4. *Condicio*, on the other hand, alone occurs in the best inscriptions and MSS. It is doubtful, however, whether the word is derived from *condicere* or *condere*; and consequently whether *condicio* or *condicio* is etymologically the more correct.

§ 823. **Q.**—The Guttural Tenuis Q is, as a general rule, used only in the combination of QV, followed by a vowel, with which it forms one syllable. It is a Guttural tenuis followed by a labial semivowel, and forms a transition between the Guttural tenuis *k* and the Labial tenuis *p*. The close connexion of QV with these sounds is seen by a comparison of the same word in Sanskrit, Greek, Latin, and the Italian dialects:—

K.	Q V.	P.
<i>Sansk.</i> kis,	<i>Lat.</i> quis,	<i>Oscan,</i> pis,
„ kat,	„ quod,	„ pod,
<i>Gr.</i> κόση,	„ quanta,	<i>Umbrian,</i> panta,
		<i>Gr.</i> πόση,
<i>Sansk.</i> çatvar,	„ quattuor,	<i>Umbrian,</i> petur,
		<i>Gr.</i> πίσυρες,
	„ quinque,	<i>Gr.</i> πέμπε,
		<i>Sansk.</i> pañcan,
<i>Lat.</i> cocus,	„ coquo,	<i>Lat.</i> popina,
<i>Lat.</i> secundus,	<i>Lat.</i> sequor,	<i>Gr.</i> ἔπομαι.

*Obs. 1.* In inscriptions of the Republican period, the relative pronoun generally has QV in forms written subsequently with a C: as, quouis, quoci, quom; later, cujus, cui, cum, &c. It must not, however, be inferred from this, that QV was more ancient than C. In many Latin words C appears in the roots and QV in the derivatives: as,

Quirites	from Cures (curis),
inquilinus	„ incola,
sterquilinium	„ stercons,
querquetulanus	„ quercetum,
inquinare,	„ cunire.

*Obs. 2.* Instead of QV, when the word *u* followed, Q was frequently written alone, especially from the time of the Gracchi: thus we find in Inscriptions:

qura	instead of cura,	pequdes	instead of pecudes,
pequnia	„ pecunia,	persequio	„ persecutio.
pequlatu	„ peculatu,		

§ 824. **G.**—(1) The late introduction of the medial G into the Latin Alphabet (taking the position of the obsolete *z*) when C became exclusively a Tenuis, has been already mentioned (§ 820, *Obs. 3*).

In many words *c* is softened into *g* before vowels and the liquids *l*, *m*, *n*, *r*: as,

#### 1. Before vowels:

Sigambri	for Sicambri,	gurgulio	for curculio,
negotium	„ nec-otium,	triginta comp.	τριάκοντα,

#### 2. Before liquids:

neglego	for nec-lego,	Gnossus	for Cnossus,
gloria (see <i>Obs.</i> )	comp. cluo, κλύω,	Guidus	„ Cnidus.

*Obs.* From the Stem *clu-*, with the suffix *or*, came a Substantive *clu-or* (like *hon-or*, &c.), from which with a second suffix *ia*, was formed *clu-oria* (like *u-riorius* from *u-rior*). *Clu-oria* was shortened into *cloria* (*gloria*), as *puer* into *por* in *Marci-por*.

(2) G often disappears:—

i. At the beginning of words, and followed by the liquids: as,

lamentum compare	clamare,	navus compare	i-gnavus,
lactis	„ γάλακτος,	nosco	„ co-gnosco.
natus	„ gnatus,		

ii. Before *s*, when it is preceded by the liquids *r* or *l*: as,

spar-si, spar-sum,	from spargo,	mul-si	from mulgeo,
ter-si, ter-sum	„ tergeo,	ful-si	„ fulgeo.
al-si	„ algeo,		

iii. Sometimes before *m*: as,

conta-minari	from ta(n)go,	exa-men	from exago.
--------------	---------------	---------	-------------

In other words, such as *agmen*, *tigmen*, the *g* remains.

iv. Often before *v*: as,

nives (nigvis),	comparo	ninguo,
fruo (fruor),	„	fruges, fructus,
fluvium (fluvium),	„	fluxi,
conniveo (connigveo),	„	connixus; cf. nico, uicto,
vivo (vigvo),	„	vixi, victus.

*Obs.* 1. In the same way the following words seem to have had originally a *G*, which disappeared before *r*:

brevis, comp.	Gr. βραχυς,	
levis, „	„ λαχιν.	Sansk. laghu,
prævus, „		„ prabhav,
malva, „	„ μαλαχ	

*Obs.* 2. *G* followed by the semivowel *i* with an accompanying vowel often disappears; the *i* in such cases was pronounced as a *y*, though written *j* in English: as,

ma-jor, major	(orig. mag-jor) comp. mag-is,
Ma-jor	(orig. Mag-jor) „ mag-nus,
ma-jor	(orig. mag-jor) „ ming-jor, μαλινγ.

*Ma-jor* signifies the "growing-m-nth," as the root *mag*, Sansk. *magh*, signifies originally "to grow."

*Obs.* 3. In like manner *d* disappears, when followed by the semivowel *i* and an accompanying vowel, as *Jovis* instead of *Djovis*, *Janus* instead of *Djanus*.

§ 825. H.—(1) *H* was originally a Guttural aspirate; the traces of which are still retained in *trahi*, *trahere*, from *traha*, and *veh*, *rectari*, from *veh*. But in all other cases, *H* in Latin is only the rough breathing, corresponding to the Greek spiritus asper.

(2) H often represents *f*, a sound peculiar to the Italian languages: as,

hoedus	for	foedus,	haba	for	faba,
hordus	„	fordus,	hircus	„	fircus,
hostis	„	fostis,	hariolus	„	fariolus,
horreum	„	farreum,	hebris	„	febris, &c.

(3) H at an early period was often dropped in pronunciation. Hence we find in Inscriptions and MSS., the following words written both with and without the aspirate:

harundo	and	arundo,	heres	and	eres,
haruspex	„	aruspex,	hora	„	ora,
hoedus	„	oedus,	humerus	„	umerus,
hasta	„	asta,	Hamilcar	„	Amilcar,
harena	„	arena,	Hasdrubal	„	Asdrubal,
hedera	„	edera,	Hannibal	„	Annibal,
herciscere	„	erciscere,	Hammon	„	Ammon.

The form without the aspirate is in most cases the more correct. The tendency was to drop the *h*, until at length it completely disappeared, as in the modern Italian.

(4) H in the middle of words between two vowels was frequently dropped; but the older form was also retained along with the more modern. Thus, while *nemo* always occurs instead of *nehemo*, we find in use at the same time:

Ahala	and	Ala,	nihil	and	nil,
vehemens	„	vemens,	cohors	„	cors,
prehendo	„	prendo,	dehibeo	„	debeo,
mihi	„	mi,	prachibco	„	praebeo.

## II. Labials.

§ 826. P.—(1) It has been already remarked that in the Indo-European languages the Guttural Tenuis C or K frequently passes into the Labial Tenuis P, and that the Latin QV, which is a Guttural with a Labial semivowel attached, formed the transition between them (§ 823).

*Obs.* In the Oscan and Umbrian *p* often represents an original *k*: see examples in § 823. In Latin this is rarely the case; and even the few Latin words, which have *p* instead of the original *c*, are probably all borrowed from other dialects. Thus *porina* is the Oscan form of *coquina*, from *coquo*; *palumbes* probably comes from the Oscan, *columba* being the pure Latin form. *Epona*, which is usually derived from *equus*, is unquestionably a Celtic word. *Lupus* is the Greek *λύκος*, but it probably comes immediately from an Italian dialect. If *limpidus* be the same as *liquidus*, the former must be regarded as a dialectical variety, *liquidus* being the pure Latin form.

(2) P at the end of a word, when the final vowel was dropped was, as a general rule, softened into the medial *b*: as,

ab	Gr.	ἀπό	Sansk.	ápa,
sub	"	ὑπό	"	úpa,
ob	"	ἐπί	"	úpa.

(3) B before the tenuis *t* and the sharp sibilant *s*, was pronounced as *p*. Hence there arises a fluctuation in the orthography, some writing *ps*, *pt* according to the pronunciation, and others *bs*, *bt* according to the etymology. Down to the Augustan age, the orthography according to the pronunciation was the more usual; and hence we find, in the inscriptions of the two last centuries of the republic, such forms as *apstulit*, *apstinere*, *opsignetur*, *opsidione*, *optinebit*, *supsignent*. In the perfects and supines the orthography according to pronunciation prevailed: as,

nub-o	nup-si	nup-tum,
scrib-o	scrip-si	scrip-tum.

(4) P is sometimes inserted between *m* and *s* or *t* to facilitate the sound: as,

emptus	from emo,
sumpsi, sumptus	" sumo,
comptus	" como,
contempsi, contemptus	" contemno,
hiemps	" hiems.

*Obs.* The form *tempto*, which also occurs in the best MSS. instead of *tento*, is opposed to both etymology and analogy. *Tento* comes from *tentus*, the participle of *tendo*; consequently no *m* precedes requiring the insertion of a *p* to facilitate the sound. It would seem that a confusion was made between the participle *temptus* from *temno* and the participle *tentus* from *tendo*; and that the orthography of the former word was erroneously transferred to the latter.

§ 827. B.—(1) B was pronounced as *p* before *s* and *t*, as already remarked (v. § 826).

(2) *Du* in the older language became *b* in the words:

duellum	.. ..	bellum,
duellens	.. ..	bellicus,
Duellus	.. ..	bellus,
duis	.. ..	lis,
duellus	.. ..	bellus,
duonus	.. ..	bonus.

So *dv* became *v* in the words:

duviginti (comp. duo)	.. ..	viginti,
duvies (comp. duobus, Gr. δύο)	.. ..	duos.

But these examples do not prove that *b* and *p* simply were interchangeable, since the preceding *d* exercises a disturbing influence

(3) The Romans avoided the juxtaposition of *b* and *f*, as the forms *aufero* and *aufugio* shew. Hence *afui*, *afuturus*, *afore*, &c., are strictly the correct forms, not *abfui*, *abfuturus*, *abfore*, &c.

§ 828. **F.**—(1) *F* was a sound peculiar to the Italian languages, and may be described as the Labial Aspirate. In the Etruscan, Umbrian, and Oscan alphabets it was represented by a peculiar character, **8**; but in Latin it was expressed by the so-called Aeolic digamma (*F* or **F**).

In the middle of Latin words the *f* underwent two changes: (1) the aspirate was lost and the labial alone remained; or (2) the labial sound was lost and the aspirate only remained.

(1) *Loss of the aspirate in f*:

Gr.	ἄμφω	comp. with Lat.	ambo,
	ὀμφαλος	„	umbilicus.

In the same way the Sanskrit suffix *-bhyam* (as in *tu-bhyam*, *Dat. sing.* of 2nd personal pronoun) corresponds to the Gr. *-φι*, and the Oscan *-fe*, and the Latin *-bi* instead of *fi*. Hence *b* has arisen out of *f* in *ti-bi*, *si-bi*, *i-bi*, *u-bi*.

So also *b* has arisen out of *f* in the terminations *-bam* and *-bo* of the Imperfect and Future, which come from the root *FU* in *fui*, as *eram* and *ero* come from the root *ES* in *est*.

In the Perfect terminations *-vi*, and *-ui*, for *fui*, the *f* has been disturbed by the following semivowel, like the *d* in *viginti* (v. § 827) and the *g* in *nives* (v. § 824).

(2) *Loss of the labial in f*: as, *hoedus* for *foedus*, &c.: see examples in § 825 (2).

In *mi-hi* the *f* has become a mere aspirate, while in the corresponding forms it has become *b*: as *ti-bi*, *si-bi*, &c.

So also in the pronominal adverbs in *-im*, as *ill-im*, *ist-im*, &c., the original termination was *-fim*, corresponding to the Sanskrit *-bhyam*. The *f* first became *h*, so that from *illo-fim*, *isto-fim*, arose *illo-him*, *isto-him*: then *h* disappeared between two vowels, according to the general practice; and *illo-im*, *isto-im* were then contracted into *illim*, *istim*.

*Obs.* The forms *ex-im*, *i-n-de*, *u-n-de*, *ali-cu-n-de*, &c. are of the same origin; the old forms *i-fim* and *cu-fim* coming from the pronominal roots *i* (is) and *cu* (qui), *f* sinking into *h*, and disappearing between the two vowels.

### III. Dentals.

§ 829. **T.**—*T* had a weaker sound at the end than at the beginning and middle of words. Hence we find the *t* of the 3rd Person of verbs sometimes dropped in Latin, as it regularly is in Greek. Even in

old Latin inscriptions we have the 3rd persons *dede, dedro, dederi, censuere*. In the 3rd Person Plural of the Perf. Active the termination *ere*, instead of *erunt*, occurs in the best period of the language.

On the sibilant of *t* followed by *i* and another vowel v. § 822 (3).

§ 830. D.—(1) The Dental Media D at the end of words was pronounced nearly like the Tennis *t* (Comp. Quint. i. 7, § 5). Hence we find in the best MSS., *t* at the end of words instead of *d*, and in the same MS. both forms often occur side by side: as,

it	and id,	at	and ad,
quot	„ quod,	aput	„ apud,
quit	„ quid,	set	„ sed,
istut	„ istud,	haut	„ haud.
aliut	„ aliud,		

(2) By a comparison with the Sanskrit, we learn that *t* was the original termination of the Neuter of the Pronouns and Pronominal Adjectives: thus *quod* corresponds to the Sanskrit *kat*. So, also, the Preposition *ad* or *at* corresponds to the Sanskrit *ati*. The termination of the Ablative Singular in Sanskrit is *t*, which was in like manner softened in old Latin into *d*, and finally dropped. Hence we find on the Columna Rostrata, the old Ablatives *altod, murid, dictatored, navaled*; and similar forms in other inscriptions.

(3) The softening of a final *t* into *d*, and then the disappearance of the latter, appears in many other Latin words.

1. We have the three forms *haut, haud, and hau*.

2. In the Imperative, the *d* arising out of *t* is regularly dropped in Latin: comp.

esto	with the Oscan	estud,	facito	with the Oscan	factud,
agito	„	actud,	liceto	„	licitud.

*Obs.* It has been already noticed that the *t* of the 3rd Person of Verbs is frequently dropped (v. § 829). That the *t* was in such cases first softened into *d* appears from forms found in inscriptions, such as the Latin *fecid, cread*, and the Oscan *sfecid, hipid, fuid*, &c.

In the middle of Latin words there was also a fluctuation in the pronunciation and orthography of *d* and *t*, especially after *r* and *u*.

Compare	quatuor	and	quadratus,
	quatrividuum	„	quadraginta,
	mentiri	„	mendax.

(4) On the disappearance of *d* followed by *v* at the beginning of words, as *duellum* (bellum), *duis* (bis), *duonus* (bonus) *dviginti* (viginti); and on its disappearance followed by *i*, as *Janus* (Dianus), *Diovis* (Jovis), v. §§ 827, 824, *Obs.* 3.

(5) On the change of *d* into *l* and *r*, v. §§ 831, No. 2; 832. No. 2.



IV. Liquids.

§ 831. L.—(1) L had its *fullest* sound at the end of words, like *sal, mel, consul, vigil*. This is the reason why *l* always retains its place at the end of Latin words, while so many other consonants in the same position disappear.

(2) L had a *lighter* sound at the beginning of words, as in *latere, laetari, lectus, lotus*, &c., and in the middle of words between vowels, as in *talis, fidelis, facilis, hostilis*. Since the *l* in this position was pronounced only lightly with the tongue, it was frequently interchanged with *r*. Thus the suffixes *-alis* and *-aris* (§ 187, No. 9) are the same; *-alis* being used when *r* precedes, and *-aris* *l* precedes : as,

austr-alis	vall-ar-is,	mur-alis	proeli-ar-is,
rur-alis	sol-ar-is,	corpor-alis	regul-ar-is.

For the same reason we have *caeruleus* instead of *caeluleus* from *caelum*, and *Parilia* instead of *Palilia* from *Pales*.

In consequence of the lighter sound of *l* in the beginning and middle of words, we find it interchanged in these positions with *d* : as,

lacrima	instead of	dacrima,	Gr. δάκρυον,
levir	„		δάφνηρ,
lautia	„	dautia	(Fest. p. 68),
lingua	„	dingua,	Goth. tuggo, Eng. tongue,
oleo	comp.	odor,	Gr. ὄδωδα.

D represents *l* in the forms :

cadamitas	for	calamitas	(Mar. Victor. p. 2456),
Capitodium	„	Capitolium	(ib. p. 2470).

(3) L had its lightest sound when it was the second *l* of *ll*. The difference in sound between *l* and *ll* seems to have been so slight, that in inscriptions many Proper Names were written both with one *l* and with two : as, *Ofilius* and *Ofillius, Silius* and *Sillius*, &c.

For the same reason we find in the best MSS. both *mille* and *mile, millia* and *milía*. The more correct orthography of these two words is *mille* and *milía*. The reason for this is that *i* before *a* was pronounced as *y*; and as the second *l* seems to have had nearly the same sound (like a second *l* in French), the combination of sound *millia* (= milyya) was nearly impossible.

Obs. 1. On the same principle, we may understand how in Greek βάλλω arises from βαλλω, τίλλω from τιλλω, &c. (See Curtius, Gr. Gr. § 252.) In the same way in Latin :

percello	arises from	percelio	Perf. perculi,
pello	„	pelio	pepuli,
tollo	„	tolio	tetuli.

*Obs. 2.* Words in *-ela*, when a short vowel precedes, ought to be written with a double *l*: as,

loquella,	not loquela,	luella,	not luela,
querella,	„ querela,	fugella,	„ fugela.
sequella,	„ sequela,		

But when a long vowel precedes the *-ela*, the single *l* is the correct orthography: as, *custodela*, *clientela*, *suadela*, *candela*, &c. See Lachmann, ad Lucret. 3, 1015.

§ 832. **R.**—Of all the liquids, and indeed of all the consonants, *R* is the most closely related to the vowels. In Sanskrit there is a vowel *r* sound distinguished by a separate character from the consonantal *r*.

(1) In Latin an original *s* constantly becomes *r* between two vowels: as,

Lares	for Lases,	Spurius	for Spusius,
arae	„ asae,	Valerius	„ Valesius,
feriae	„ fesiæ,	Papirius	„ Papisius,
arena	„ asena,	quaero	„ quaeso.

In the same way :

aeris	from aes,	Veneris	from Ventus,
cruris	„ crus,	Cereris	„ Ceres,
generis	„ genus,	pulveris	„ pulvis,
temporis	„ tempus,	cineris	„ cinis.

So also in composition :

dir-imere	for dis-imere,	dir-ibere	for dis-hibere.
-----------	----------------	-----------	-----------------

The termination *-rum* of the Genitive Plural is instead of *-sum* in such words as *faba-rum*, *bono-rum*, *die-rum*, *bove-rum*, &c.

Even at the end of words *s* sometimes becomes *r*: as,

arbor	for arbos,	honor	for honos,
labor	„ labos,	lepor	„ lepos.

The *r*, which is the sign of the Passive, arises in like manner from the *s* of the Reflective Pronoun *se*.

*Obs.* The time at which *s* began to be changed into *r*, is partly indicated by the statement of Cicero (*ad Fam.* ix. 21), that L. Papirius Cursor, who was consul B.C. 336 (consequently in the time of the Samnite wars), was the first of his family named Papirius, while all his ancestors were called Papii. Compare Livy, iii. 4, *not.*

(2) *D* was also changed into *r*, especially in the preposition *ad* in composition. Thus we find in the grammarians and in inscriptions :

arvenae	for advenae,	arfinis	for adfinis,
arvocati	„ advocati,	arfunse	„ adfunse.
arvorum	„ advorum,		

So also in the usual forms :

arbit<sup>er</sup> for adbit<sup>er</sup> (comp. adbit<sup>ere</sup>),  
arcesso „ adcesso,  
meridies „ medidies (from medius dies).

§ 833. **N.**—(1) **N**, at the beginning of all words, had a sharp full sound. Hence we find no examples in which **N** in this position undergoes any change.

(2) **N**, at the end of words, was pronounced more feebly, as is clear from its frequent disappearance in this position; as, for instance, in the Nominative case of all Stems in *on*: as *leo* from *leon*, in the *homo* from *homon*, &c. So also in such forms as *ceteroqui* for *ceteroquin*, *alioqui* for *alioquin*.

(3) **N**, in the middle of words, when it represents *m* and stands before *d* and *t*, had a full sound; as, *eorundem*, *tandem*, *duntaxat*, *septentrio*. It had the same sound in the middle of words between two vowels. Hence the orthography in this position often fluctuates between a single and double **N**: as, *Porsena* and *Por-senna*, *Caecina* and *Caecinna*, &c. In the oldest MSS. of Plautus, Virgil, Lucretius, and Gaius, words are sometimes written with a single *n*, where etymology would require two: as, *conubium*, *conectere*, *conexus*; which forms are most readily explained on the supposition that **N** in this position had so full a sound as to render the two letters unnecessary.

(4) But **N**, in the middle of words, had a very faint sound before the aspirate *h*, the semivowels *j* (= *y*) and *v*, and the sibilant *s*, and hence frequently disappears before these letters :

i. Before *h*: as,

cohaereo,	cohors,
coheres,	cohortari.
cohibere,	

ii. Before *j* (= *y*) and *v*: as,

coicio	compared with	conicio (conjicio),
cojectura	„	conjectura,
cojunct	„	conjunct,
cojuncti (whence cuncti)	„	conjuncti,
coventionid (in S. C. de Bacch.)	„	conventio (whence contio, v. § 822, Obs. 1.).

iii. Before *s*, which occurs still more frequently :

(a.) In the Suffix *-iens*: as,

quoties	instead of	quotiens,
toties	„	totiens,
quinquies	„	quinquiens.

(b.) In the Suffix of the Ordinal Numbers *-esimus* for *-ensumus*: as,

vicesimus	instead of	vicensumus,
quadragessimus	„	quadragensumus,
duodevicesimus	„	duodevicensumus.

(c.) In the Suffix of the Gentile Adjectives in *-ensis*: as,

Apulesis	instead of	Apulensis,
Ostesis	„	Ostensis,
Narbonesis	„	Narbonensis.

(d.) In the Stems of some words: as,

cesor	instead of	ensor,
cosul	„	Consul,
mesis	„	mensis,
mostrum	„	monstrum,
tosor	„	tonsor.

(e.) In Lucretius, Plautus, and early Inscriptions, the *n* of the *nt* of the termination of the Imperfect Participles sometimes disappears; namely, when the *t* of the Stem has been dropped before *s*, the sign of the Nominative: as,

animas	instead of	animans,	lacrimas	instead of	lacrimans,
cogitas	„	cogitans,	dormies	„	dormiens,
curas	„	curans,	obedies	„	obediens.

(5) *N* had a guttural sound before the gutturals *c*, *g*, *ch*, *x*, and was probably pronounced like the French *n*. Some of the ancient writers, as we learn from Varro (ap. Prisc. i. 39), sought to express this sound by *g*, as in Greek, writing

Agchises	instead of	Anchises,
agceps	„	anceps,
aggulus	„	angulus.

Hence we can explain the forms

ec-ce	instead of	en-ce,
ec-quis	„	en-quis,
ec-quando	„	en-quando.

(6) *N* is changed into *m* before labials, and is assimilated before the liquids, *l*, *r*: as,

im-peritus	instead of	in-peritus,
im-modicus	„	in-modicus,
col-laudo	„	con-laudo,
col-ligo	„	con-ligo,
cor-ripio	„	con-ripio,
cor-ruo	„	con-ruo.

§ 834. **M.**—(1) **M**, at the beginning of Latin words, had the same full sound as it had in the cognate languages.

(2) **M** had a weaker sound in the middle of words before the labial consonants, as in *umbra*. Further, in the middle of words **M** was changed into:—

- i. The guttural *n* before the guttural *c*: as, *anceps* (for *ambi-ceps*).

*Obs.* On the other hand, *m* generally remained before *q*: as, *quemquam*, *tamquam*.

- ii. Into the dental *n* before the dentals *d*, *t*: as, *tantundem*, *veruntamen*, *eandem*. The only exception to this rule is *circumdo*.

- iii. Into a faint nasal sound (which frequently was not written), before *j* (= *y*), *v*, and *s*: as, *conjunct* or *cojunct*, *consul* or *cosul*, &c. (v. § 833, No. 4).

- iv. In composition, the *m* of *circum* and of *com* frequently disappears before a vowel: as,

circuire, circuitus,	coagulum,	coactus,
coemptio,	coire,	cooptare, &c.

(3) **M**, at the end of words, was pronounced so faintly as to be almost inaudible. In Latin verse, a word ending in a vowel and **M**, was for metrical purposes regarded as ending only in a vowel. Hence **M** was frequently not written at the end of words. Its disappearance is of importance for the history of the Latin Declensions and Conjugations.

*Obs.* 1. In the Verb, the *m*, which is the sign of the first Person Sing., is dropped in most tenses of the Indicative, but retained in the Subjunctive. This *m* must have disappeared very early, as it is also dropped in Greek in the present tense of verbs in *-ω*, and retained only in verbs in *-μι*. In Latin, the *m* is preserved in only two verbs in the Present Indicative, *s-u-m* (= *es-u-m*, comp. Gr. *ἐσ-μι*) and *inqua-m*.

*Obs.* 2. In Nouns, the final *m* is sometimes written and sometimes omitted in inscriptions of the time of the Punic wars: thus we find such forms as *dono* and *donom*, *viro* and *sacrom*, &c. From the time of the S. C. de Bacchanalibus, the final *m* of the nouns regularly appears. But that it still continued to be omitted in the popular dialect, is evident from the inscriptions scribbled by the populace on the walls of Pompeii, in which the *m* of the Accusative is usually wanting: as, *tota*, *puella*, &c., for *totam*, *puellam*, &c. From the third century A.D., the *m* of nouns and other words is constantly omitted in inscriptions, because it had by this time ceased to be pronounced in the popular dialect. This dropping of the *m* first in pronunciation and then in writing, seems to have been one of the main causes of the destruction of the Latin Declensions in the popular language.

## V. Sibilants.

§ 835. 3.—(1) The grammarians give us hardly any information respecting the pronunciation of S; but it clearly had more than one sound in Latin.

(2) S, at the beginning of words, had a sharp sound. It is found, at the beginning of words, only before consonants, in the combinations *sp, sc, st*: as, *spargere, scindere, stare*. On account of its sharp sound, it disappeared before *f* at the beginning of words: as, *fallo* compared with *σφάλλω*, *fungus* with *σφύγγος*, *fundu* with *σφενδόνη*, *fidis* with *σφίδη*.

(3) S, in the middle of words, was pronounced sharply both before and after consonants. This is shown by the change of the Labial Media into the Tenuis before *s*: as, *nup-si, lap-sus*, &c. (v. § 826, No. 3): and also by the fact that *s* is retained only before sharp sounds, while it is dropped before *m, n, l, d*: as,

ca-mena,	po-no,	corpu-lentus,	ju-dex,
(cas-mena),	(pos-no),	(corpos-lentus),	(jus-dex),
o-men,	ce-na,		i-dem,
(os-men),	(ces-na),		(is-dem),
po-moerium,	ahe-neus,		di-duco,
(pos-moerium),	(ahes-neus),		(dis-duco),
du-mosus,	vide-n',		tre-decim,
(dus-mosus),	(vides-n'),		(tres-decim).

*Obs.* In the same way *s* disappears before *b*: as, *ju-beo* (= *jus-beo*), which is a contraction of *jus-hibeo*.

Sometimes S is changed into *r* before the same sounds: as,

car-men,	veter-nus,	diur-nus,
(cas-men),	(vetes-nus),	(dius-nus).

(4) S, in the middle of words, had a softer sound between two vowels, as it has in the Romance languages: as, Lat. *rosa*, Ital. *rosa*, French *rose*. This is also shown by the change of *s* into *r* between two vowels (v. § 832, No. 1), which could not have been of such frequent occurrence had not the *s* in this position been the softer sibilant.

*Obs.* In *spes* and *dies*, the *s* belongs to the Stem, and has been dropped in the Gen. and Dat. cases Sing., *spe-i* = *spes-i*, *die-i* = *dies-i*. That the *s* of *spes* belongs to the Stem is proved by the Nom. and Acc. Pl. *speres* in Ennius, and by the verb *spero*. That the *s* of *dies* belongs to the Stem appears from the forms *diur-nus* = *dius-nus*, *ho-dier-nus* (= *ho-dies-nus*), and *Dies-piter*.

(5) S, at the end of words, was from the earliest times very

faintly sounded in Latin. In many of the Case-endings, *s* was dropped altogether. Thus it disappeared in the Nom. Sing. of such words as *Numa, poeta, puer, vigil*; in the Gen. Sing. of the 1st, 2nd, and 5th Declensions, originally ending in *a-is, o-is, e-is*, from which arose the later forms *ae, i, ei*; in the Nom. Pl. of the 1st and 2nd Declensions, where *a-is* and *o-is* were the original forms of the later *ae* and *i*. In verbs, in like manner, the *s*, which was the sign of the 2nd Person Sing. of the Imperative, was dropped, *rege, mone, audi* having at one time ended in *s*. So also in the 2nd Person Sing. of the Pres. and Imperf. Indic. and Subj., and of the Fut. Indic. Passive, we have the forms *amare, amere, amabare, amarere, amabere*, together with *amaris, ameris, &c.* The adverbs *magis* and *potis* were also at an early period written *mage* and *pote*.

*Obs.* In the inscriptions of the time of the Punic War, we find words of the 2nd declension in the Nominative case without *s*: as, *Terentio, Albonio, &c.* In the Roman poets down to the time of Cicero, the final *s*, followed by a word beginning with a consonant, did not make the preceding vowel long, which proves that it was not then pronounced. Cicero styles this pronunciation *subrusticum* (*Orat.* 43, 161), which shows that the *s* was still dropped in his time in the country dialect. In the later Imperial inscriptions the final *s* in the case-endings usually disappears. This omission of the final *s*, like the similar disappearance of the final *m*, was one of the main causes of the destruction of the Latin Declensions.

§ 836. Z.—(1) Z was found in the oldest Roman alphabet and occurred in the *Carmen Saliare*. At what time it disappeared is unknown. It is not found in the Twelve Tables, and we are told that the tragic poet Attius did not use it. It first came into use again in Cicero's time, but then only in Greek words.

(2) The Romans, in the time of Plautus and Pacuvius, expressed the Greek *z* at the beginning of words by *s*, and in the middle of words by *ss*: hence they wrote and pronounced *Saguntum, Sethus, sona, badisso, Atticisso, &c.* Such forms in the present MSS. of Plautus, as *zona, Zacynthus, badizo, trapezita* were introduced in the recension of the text by the grammarians, in accordance with the orthography of their time.

*Obs.* It would seem that at a later period the Roman *z* had in it something of *d* sound as well as of a sibilant. Hence in the Imperial times, when *di* followed by a vowel was sibilated, it was sometimes expressed by *z*: thus we find *diabolus, diaconus, &c.*, written *zabolus, zaconus, &c.*

§ 837. X.—(1) Whether X is classed among the gutturals or the sibilants is immaterial, as it represented both sounds united. It is here placed with the sibilants, because in course of time it degenerated into a mere sibilant.

*Obs.* It has been already shown that X did not belong to the earliest Roman Alphabet; yet still it was written at a period earlier than the most ancient inscriptions (v. § 820, *Obs.* 2). It can be only an accident that we do not

find it in the short inscriptions of the earliest times. It first appears in the S. C. de Bacchanalibus in the words : *exdeicendum, exdeicatis, extrad.*

(2) From the time of the Gracchi, that is from the time of Lucilius and Attius, who did much to fix the Latin orthography, *X* was frequently written *xs*: as, *saxsum, maxsume, proxsimum, deduxsit, lexs*, &c. This orthography is found even in monuments of the Augustan age. Hence it is clear that the sibilant was pronounced very strongly. From this predominance of the sibilant we may account for the fact, that before consonants, the guttural part of *x* disappeared and the sibilant *s* alone remained; whence we find in inscriptions *sescentas, Sestius, praetestati*. The remaining *s* then disappeared before those consonants with which it did not harmonize, that is, before *d, n, m, v* (v. § 835, No. 3): as, *se-decim, se-ni, se-mestris, se-vir*.

## VI. Semivowels.

§ 833. J.—(1) The same character, namely *I*, was used by the Romans to express the vowel *i* and the semivowel *j*.

The semivowel *J* had its simplest sound at the beginning of simple words, and at the beginning of the second member of compound words: as,

ab-judico	ad-jungo	con-jectus
e-juro	de-jectus	di-judico.

In such cases *J* was pronounced like the English *y*. If the *J* was followed by *i*, the *J* was dropped: therefore the correct orthography is—

eicit <i>not</i> ejicit,	proicit <i>not</i> projicit,
reicit „ rejicit,	coicit „ cojicit.

A short vowel thus preceding *J* in composition remained short, just as before a simple consonant: as,

bijugus,	quadrijugus,	trijugus,	altijugus.
----------	--------------	-----------	------------

(2) *J* in the middle of simple words between two vowels had a fuller sound, more similar to a vowel. Hence, as we learn from Quintilian (i. 4, § 11), this sound was represented by a double *i* by Cicero, who wrote, for example, *aiio* and *Maiia* (cf. Prisc. i. 18; vii. 19). We find in inscriptions such forms as *Pompeiius, eiIus, cuiIus, maiIorum*, the second *I* in some cases being written higher than the other letters.

(3) The guttural is omitted before *J* in:

mājor, mājus	for	māgior,
Majus (Māus)	„	Māgius,
pulējum	„	pulēgium,
mējo	„	mēgio (cf. mingo),
ājio	„	ājio (cf. Sansk. <i>ah</i> , “dicere”).



*v* is omitted before *J* in :

Gājus (Gāius) for Gavius.

*r* in :

pē-jero for perjero (cf. perjurium)

*s* in :

dī-judico for disjudico.

*s* with *n* preceding in :

trā-jicio for transjicio

*s* with *c* preceding in :

sē-jugis for sexjugis.

*Obs.* In the later popular pronounciation *J* was sibilated and pronounced nearly like the English *j* and the Italian *gi*. In a very late inscription we find *coniuncta*, written for *conjuncta*. Hence the Italian words *giunto*, *giovane*, *giogo* from *junctum*, *juvenem*, *jugum*.

§ 839. V.—(1) The same character, namely *V*, was used by the Romans to express the vowel *u* and the semivowel *v*.

*Obs.* The semivowel *v* was reckoned by Cicero among the laoiāi consonants. (Mar. Victorin. p. 2162.) The Emperor Claudius, as already remarked (v. § 820, *Obs.* 4), introduced for this sound the character *Δ*, which, however, after his death fell into disuse.

(2) Many Greek words, which originally began with a Digamma, begin in Latin with a *v*: as,

vomo,	ἐμέω,	vitulus,	ἵταλος,
voco,	εἶπον, rt. ἐπ-,	ver,	ἦρ,
volvo,	εἴλω,	vestis,	ἐσθής,
vinum,	οἶνος,	vespera,	ἐσπέρα,
viola,	ῥον,	Vesta,	Ἑστία.

*Obs.* The Latin *v* was expressed in Greek, after the disappearance of the Digamma, by either *ou* or *β*; and the same word is sometimes written indifferently in either way; as,

Varro,	Οὐάρρων,	Βάρρων,
Vala,	Οὐάλης,	Βάλης,
Valentia,	Οὐαλεντία,	Βαλητία,
Valerius,	Οὐαλέριος,	Βαλεριανός,
Venusia,	Οὐενοντία,	Βενουσία.

This fluctuation in the orthography between *ou* and *β* proves that *v* in Latin occupied an intermediate sound between the vowel sound *ou* and the consonant *β* in Greek, which was the case with the Greek *F*. *V* would therefore seem to have been pronounced in the beginning of words like the English *v*.

*V* rarely comes into contact with a preceding consonant, except the liquids *r* and *l*. It either (1) drives out the preceding consonant, or (2) is changed into *u*, or (3) disappears altogether.

(1) *D* disappears before *v* (v. § 827, No. 2) in :

viginti,

suavis.

G disappears before *v* (v. § 824, No. 2, iv.) in :

nives, frnor, fluvium, conniveo, vivo.

F, having previously become *h*, disappears before *v* (v. § 823) in :

proba-vi for proba-fui, &c.

(2) V is changed into *u* in the suffix *-uus* after Mutes and *n* : as,

vacuus,	perpetuus,
mortuus,	ingenuus.

But if *r* or *l* precedes, the suffix *-uus* retains its original form : as,

alvus,	acervus,
calvus,	curvus.

(3) V disappears altogether before *d*, *t*, and *s* : as,

te, tibi, comp.	tu, tuus, . . .	Sansk. tvam,
se, sibi, „	sui, suus, . . .	„ svas.

*Obs.* A comparison of these pronouns with the Sanskrit shows that *r* was the original form, subsequently changed into *u*, and then dropped.

(1) In like manner V rarely comes into contact with a consonant following; for, when a vowel following is dropped, *v* becomes *u*, and then coalesces with the preceding vowel into a diphthong. Thus *av* becomes *au*, when the vowel following is dropped : as,

fuitor	from	favitor,
nauta	„	navita,
auceps	„	aviceps,
audeo	„	avideo; comp. avidus.

So *ov* becomes *ou* (afterwards written *u*), when the vowel following is dropped : as,

nuper	for	novumper (v. <i>Obs.</i> 1),
nunc	„	novunce (v. <i>Obs.</i> 2),
Jupiter	„	Jovipiter,
Juno	„	Jovio,
juvenculus	„	juvenculus,
prulens	„	providens.

In such cases *v* was probably pronounced like the English *u*.

*Obs.* 1. In *nuper* for *novum-per*, the preposition is added as an enclitic, like *parum per*, *semper*, *semper*, *semper*, *semper*.

*Obs.* 2. *Novum* becomes first *novum*, *novum*, and then *novum* just as *humus* becomes *humus*, and *tumens* becomes *tumens*.

(2) V between vowels is frequently dropped : as,

peti	for petivi,	visi	for visivi,
conversum	„ conversum,	notum	„ notum,
amantem	„ amantem,	diver	„ diver,
peti	„ peti,	vita	„ vita.

The *v* in the Perfect of the First Conjugation seems to have been usually omitted in the popular pronunciation; hence the perfect forms of the modern Italian *lavorai*, *amai*, *chiamai*, &c.

## (B.) THE VOWELS.

§ 840.—(1) The vowels appear to have been pronounced in Latin much as they are in the modern Italian. According to the organs with which they are pronounced, A has the nearest relation to the Gutturals, I to the Dentals, and U to the Labials; while E has an intermediate sound between the Guttural *a* and the Dental *i*, and O an intermediate sound between the Guttural *a* and the Labial *u*.

(2) We learn from Quintilian that *e* in some cases had an intermediate sound between *e* and *i* ("in here neque *e* plane neque *i* auditur," i. 4, § 18), which sound was expressed in the prae-Augustan period by *ei*.

(3) There was in Latin an intermediate sound between *i* and *u*, very nearly equivalent to the sound of the Greek *υ*, the French *u*, and the German *ü*. This sound is frequently mentioned by grammarians. It is stated by them to have occurred in the following words:—

Before *m* in :

<sup>i</sup> maxumus,	<sup>i</sup> pulcherrumus,	<sup>i</sup> sumus,
<sup>i</sup> intumus,	<sup>i</sup> acerrumus,	<sup>i</sup> contumax,
<sup>i</sup> extumus,	<sup>i</sup> justissumus,	<sup>i</sup> contumelia,
<sup>i</sup> lacrumac,	<sup>i</sup> volumus,	<sup>i</sup> existumat,
<sup>i</sup> optumus,	<sup>i</sup> nolumus,	<sup>i</sup> monumentum,
<sup>i</sup> minumus,	<sup>i</sup> possumus,	<sup>i</sup> alumenta.

Before *b*, *p*, and *f* in :

<sup>i</sup> manubiac,		
<sup>i</sup> lubido,	<sup>i</sup> aucupium,	<sup>i</sup> aurufex.
<sup>i</sup> intubus,	<sup>i</sup> mancupium,	
<sup>i</sup> artubus,	<sup>i</sup> aucupare,	
<sup>i</sup> manubns,	<sup>i</sup> manupretium,	

And there are many words of a similar kind. This variation in the orthography is found chiefly before Labials. In the old inscriptions all such words appear with *u*, but in the inscriptions in the time of Caesar, Cicero, and Augustus, with an *i*. We are expressly told by the ancient grammarians that Caesar and Cicero employed the *i*,

though the country-people used the more ancient pronunciation with the *u*.

The Emperor Claudius attempted to introduce the new character **†**, for this intermediate sound between *i* and *u* (v. § 820, *Obs.* 4); but it is curious that, in inscriptions, this character does not occur in any of the words already mentioned, but only as a representative of the Greek *υ*, as in: Aeg **†** pti, C **†** cnus, Bath **†** llus, &c.

Even in late inscriptions we sometimes find the *u* in such words; so that the intermediate sound between *u* and *i* seems never to have passed completely into *i*. In modern Italian the *i* is the most frequent, as in *ottimo*, *massimo*, *prossimo*, *intimo*, *libidine*, &c. But the *u* is still retained in *monumento* and *documento*.

(4) The following arrangement shows the comparative weight of the vowels in Latin, *a* being the heaviest and *i* the lightest:

*a,      o,      u,      e,      i.*

---

## CHAPTER LXX.

### FORMATION OF THE CASES.

§ 841. There appears to have been originally but one mode of declining Nouns in Latin—namely, by adding to the Stem a certain suffix for each case. The present “Five Declensions” have arisen through the changes undergone by these suffixes in combination with the final letter or letters of the Stem. In the following chapter it is shown in what way these changes were probably developed.

The origin of the case-suffixes is for the most part quite unknown. Their ultimate form is ascertained by comparison of the oldest known languages of the Indo-European or Aryan family. Yet it must not be supposed that Latin any more than Greek is *derived* from Sanskrit or any other known language. Only by approaching nearer to the source from which the streams of the Indo-European languages have diverged, we obtain their original elements in a less altered and corrupt form.

§ 842. Instead of the ordinary “Five Declensions,” nouns may be classed according to the final letter of their Stem into Two Principal Declensions:

I. The Consonant Declension;

II. The Vowel Declension: the latter being subdivided into the

A = Declension,

E =        ”

I =        ”

O =        ”

U =        ”

§ 843. The "Five Declensions" correspond to these in the following way:—

1 Declension.	2 Declension.	3 Declension.	4 Declension.	5 Declension.
A Decl.	O Decl.	Consonant and I Decl.	U Decl.	E Decl.

The case-endings appear for the most part in their original forms in the Consonant Declension; while in the Vowel Declensions they undergo various changes through the combination of the vowels of the Stems with the vowels of the case-endings.

## 1. The Nominative Singular.

### A. MASCULINE AND FEMININE NOUNS.

§ 844. The suffix of the Nominative Singular of Masculine and (in most cases) Feminine Nouns is *s*, added immediately to the Stem: as,

1 or A Decl.	2 or O Decl.	3 or Cons. and I Decl.	4 or U Decl.	5 or E Decl.
(Aenea- <i>s</i> ).	avo- <i>s</i>	trab- <i>s</i> , avi- <i>s</i> .	gradu- <i>s</i> .	re- <i>s</i>

§ 845. *Third Declension*.—(1) In the Consonantal Stems, the ordinary euphonic changes must be observed. Thus: *cs*, *gs* = *x*; while *t*, *d*, and *s* disappear before the suffix: as, *dux* = *duc* + *s*; *lex* = *leg* + *s*; *aetās* = *aetat* + *s*; *vas* = *vad* + *s*.

*Obs.* In *nix*, *nivis*, the Stem was *nixv*, which accounts for the *x* in the Nominative, while the *g* disappears in the oblique cases (v. § 24, No. 2, iv.).

(2) Stems ending in *n* mostly reject *s*: as, *tubicen*, for *tubicien* + *s*; *flamen*, for *flamen* + *s*. But in some cases the *s* is retained and the *n* dropped: as, *sanguis* for *sanguin* + *s*.

(3) Stems ending in *on* reject both *n* and *s*: as, *natio*, for *natio* + *s*; *virgo*, for *virgon* + *s*; *homo*, for *homon* + *s*.: v. § 833, No. 2.

(4) Stems ending in *l* and *r*, reject the suffix: as, *pater*, *dator*, *fur*, *consul*, *vigil*.

*Obs.* Stems ending in *ant* and *ent* frequently reject the *n* as well as the *t* before *s* in the more ancient writers, as: *cogitas* instead of *cogitans*. For further examples, v. § 833, No. 4, iii.

(5) Many Stems have changed the earlier *s* of their Stem into *r*: as, *arbos*, *arboris*; earlier, *arbos*, *arboris*. Similarly *honos* for *honor*; *labos* for *labor*, etc. (v. § 832, No. 1). Even the *s* of the Nominative is in one instance changed into *r*: namely, *quirquir* for *quisquis* (Varr. *L. L.* vii. 8, Müller).

§ 846. *Third Declension*:—I-stems.—(1) Many Stems in *I* have lost the *i* before the *s* of the Nominative, so that they apparently

belong to the Consonant Declension; but the majority have *-ium* in the Genitive Plural, thus retaining their original vowel. Stems of Adjectives in *-ati*, *-eti*, *-iti*, *-ti*, mostly formed from Substantives, and signifying belonging to a place, had in the time of Naevius, Ennius, Plautus, and Cato, the full Nominatives in *-atis*, *-etis*, *-itis*, *-tis*; but subsequently *-as*, *-es*, *-is*, *-s*, the *i* disappearing and the *t* being then elided according to euphonic laws: as,

Later Forms.	Old Forms.	Later Forms.	Old Forms.
Arpinas	Arpinatis	infimas	infimatis
Capenas	Capenatis	nostras	nostratis
Ardeas	Ardeatis	cujas	cujatis
Ferentinas	Ferentinatis	Samnis	Samnitis
Ravennas	Ravennatis	Quiris	Quiritis
Lavinias	Lavinatis	Caeres	Caeretis
primas	primatis	„	Caeritis
optimas	optimatis	Laurens	Laurentis
summas	summatis	Tiburs	Tiburtis.

§ 847. In like manner a great number of Nouns formed by the suffix *ti*, drop the *i* before the *s* of the Nominative: as,

mens	mons	ars
dens	pons	pars
ingens	sons	mors
fons	frons	cohors, &c.

*Obs.* The Nom. in *is* in many of these words occurs in old writers: as Nom. *mentis* in Ennius quoted by Varr. *L. L.* v. 59; Nom. *sortis* in Plaut. *Cas.* ii. 6, 28.

§ 848. If a liquid precedes the *i*, the *s* of the Nominative is dropped as well as the *i*: as,

mugil	for mugilis
pugil	„ pugilis
vigil	„ vigilis
linter	„ linteris
Arar	„ Araris (Prisc. v. 13)
par	„ paris (Prisc. vii. 64)
vomer	„ vomeris (Cat. <i>R. R.</i> 135)
caro(n)	„ carnis (Prisc. vi. 17).

*Obs.* Hence the original form of the Nom. of *caro* must have been *caroni-s*, which became both *caro* and *carnis*. The Gen. Pl. *carni-um* is explained by the Stem being *car(o)ni*.

§ 849. Adjectives ending in the Nominative Masculine and Feminine in *er*, *ris* (v. § 55), as, *acer*, *acris*; *pedester*, *pedestris*, have Stems ending in *eri*. In such forms as *acer* and *pedester*, the *i* is

dropped altogether; while in *aeri-s* and *pedestr-is*, the *e* disappears before the *r* as in the oblique cases.

§ 850. *First or A Declension*.—The Nominative of Masculine nouns of the A Declension must have originally ended in Latin in *s*, as they do in Sanskrit and Greek; but the frequent disappearance of *s* at the end of Latin words has been already pointed out (v. § 835, No. 5). *S* appears never to have been added to form the Nominative of Feminine Nouns of this Declension, as it is not found either in Sanskrit or Greek in Feminine Nouns in A. The final *a* of Feminine Stems was originally long in the Indo-European languages, as it is always in Sanskrit, and usually in Greek. In Latin it is short in the latter time of the Republic, and in the Augustan age; but it was long in the earlier poets, as in Ennius (*Annal.* 484, ed. Vahlen)—

Multo foro ponit et ageā longa repletur.

§ 851. *Second or O Declension*.—The Nominative originally ended in *o-s*, whence we find in inscriptions such forms as *filiōs* and *primos* in the Nominative. Subsequently this *o* was softened into *u*; but since the combination *vu* and *uu* was avoided in Latin, the final *o* was retained, when preceded by *v* or *u*, even in the time of Augustus: as *Nom.* *avos, servos, mortuos, &c.*

§ 852. If an *r* precedes the final *o* of the Stem, both the *o* and *s*, the sign of the Nom., are usually dropped: as *puer* for *puerus* (comp. *Voc.* *puere*, *Plaut. As.* 2, 3, 2).

§ 853. The same omission takes place in one instance, where the *o* is preceded by *l*: as, *famul* instead of *famulus* (*Enn. Ann.* 317; *Lucret. iii.* 1035, ed. Lach.). Compare the omission of *i* in I nouns, when the final *i* of the Stem is preceded by *r* or *l* (§ 848).

*Obs.* Only a few Substantives and Adjectives retain *us* after *r*: as *numer-us*, *humer-us*, *vesper-us* as well as *vesper*, *uter-us* (*Gr.* *οὔτερας*), *moriger-us* (as compared with *laniger*, *armiger*, *opifer*).

§ 854. In some of the pronominal Stems in *o*, the Nom. *s* is omitted, and the *o* or *u* is softened into *e*. In this way came *ille*, *ipse*, *iste*, from *illus* (*ollus*), *ipsus*, *istus*. In like manner the *o* of the Vocative is softened into *e* (v. § 859)

## B. NEUTER NOUNS.

§ 855. All Neuter Nouns have the Nominative, Vocative, and Accusative cases alike in each number. There are three forms for these cases in the Sing.: they are either (1) the same as the Stem; or (2) formed by adding *m*; or (3) by adding *d*, which is confined to pronouns.

§ 856. *Nom., Acc., and Voc., the same as the Stem*.—This is the case with Nouns of the Consonant and U Declensions: as, Stem and

Nom. *fulgur*, *genu*. In such Nominatives as *corpus* and *crus*, the *s* is part of the Stem and not the sign of the Nom., as is proved by the Gen. *corpor-is* and *crur-is*, in which the *r* represents the original *s* (v. § 832, No. 1). In *corpus*, the *o* of the Stem is softened into *u* as in the Nom. of the O Declension. In like manner, in such words as, *genus*, *gener-is*, the original Stem was *genos* as in Greek (γένος, softened γένεσ-), the *o* being softened into *u* in the Nom., and into *e* in the oblique cases. In Greek, the *σ* disappeared between two vowels, which then were contracted into one. Thus from an original Dative form *genos-i*, we have Lat. *gener-i*, and Gr. γένει.

So also the *o* has been softened into *u* in *ebur*, *femur*, the suffix *-ur* being a weakened form of *-os* and *-us*.

*Obs.* In such Adjectives as *capax*, *amans*, the Neuter, contrary to all analogy, retains in the Nom. the sign of the Masc. and Fem. Nom.; and the same form is used for the Neut. Acc.

In Stems in *I*, the final *i* either sunk into *e*: as, *mare*, *facile*; or, it was dropped altogether, especially in the terminations *oli* or *ari*. In the following words both forms occur:

animal	animale	cochlear	cochleare
tribunal	tribunale	torcular	torculare
puteal	puteale	exemplar	exemplare
pulvinar	pulvinare	lacunar	lacunare.

§ 857. *Nom., Acc., and Voc., with the case-ending m.*—This occurs only in the 2nd or O Declension: as, *dono-m* or *donu-m*. It is evidently the sign of the Accusative transferred to the Nominative; probably on the ground that a Neuter Substantive cannot be a true Subject, but is naturally regarded as Object.

§ 858. *The Nom., Acc., and Voc., with the case-ending d.* This is confined to pronominal stems, ending both in *o* and *i*: as, *istud*, *illud*, *quod*, *aliud*, *i-d*, *qui-d*. By comparing the similar forms in Sanskrit, we learn that *t* was the original termination; and even in Latin these Neuters are frequently written with a final *t* instead of *d* (v. § 830, No. 1).

## 2. The Vocative Singular.

§ 859. The Vocative seems to have been originally the same as the stem, since in merely calling a person there was no occasion for a case-suffix to mark the relation of the word to other words in the sentence. But this form of the Vocative is retained only in the 2nd or O Declension, in which, however, the *o* ordinarily sinks into *e*: as, *eque*, *lupe*. In all the other Declensions the Voc. is the same as the Nom.; and even in the 2nd Declension the old Latin often exhibits the termination *us* in the Voc.: as, *Populus Albanus*, *O thou*



*people of Alba.* Also, *deus* is used as a Voc. (comp. Gr. *Θεός*, Voc. *Θεός* · later, *Θεέ* · N. Test.).

### 3. The Accusative Singular.

§ 860. The suffix of the Accusative Singular of all masculine and feminine nouns is *m*. When the stem ends in a vowel, the *m* is added to it immediately; when in a consonant, a connecting vowel (*ē*) is used: as,

1 or A Decl.	2 or O Decl.	3 or Cons. and 1 Decl.	4 or U Decl.	5 or E Decl.
<i>musa-m</i>	<i>avo-m</i>	<i>reg-em</i>	<i>gradu-m</i>	<i>re-m</i>
	<i>dominu-m</i>	<i>navi-m.</i>		

*Obs.* On the change of *o* into *u* in the 2nd Declension, see § 851.

§ 861. In the I Declension the old form *-im* is for the most part softened into *em*, though some words always, and others generally, retain the *i* (v. § 31).

*Obs.* 1. The termination *im* is almost always retained in Accusatives in *tim* and *sim*, used as adverbs: as,

<i>conjunctim,</i>	<i>praesertim,</i>
<i>strictim,</i>	<i>cautim,</i>
<i>punctim,</i>	<i>gregatim,</i>
<i>partim,</i>	<i>acervatim, &amp;c.</i>

The suffix *tim* is softened into *sim*, when preceded by a dental or a liquid: as,

<i>caesim</i> ( <i>caedo</i> '),	<i>sensim</i> ( <i>sentio</i> '),
<i>divisim</i> ( <i>divido</i> '),	<i>sparsim</i> ( <i>spargo</i> '),
<i>cursim</i> ( <i>curro</i> '),	<i>expulsim</i> ( <i>expello</i> ').

In one adverbial accusative the *im* becomes *em*; namely, *saltem*.

*Obs.* 2. In the Accusative of consonant stems, the Latin preserves an older form than the Greek. Cf. Lat. *dentem*, Sansk. *dantam*, with Gk. *δ-δοντα*. The Greek sometimes even drops the *n* after stems in *o* or *ω* of the 3rd Declension: as, *αἰδώς*, *shame*; Acc. *αἰδῶα* (contr. *αἰδῶ*).

### 4. The Genitive Singular.

§ 862. The Suffix of the Genitive Singular was originally *is* for all Declensions.

1 or A Decl.	2 or O Decl.	3 or Cons. and 1 Decl.	4 or U Decl.	5 or E Decl.
<i>musa-is</i>	<i>avo-is</i>	<i>reg-is</i>	<i>manu-is</i>	<i>re-is</i>
<i>musa-i</i>	<i>avo-i</i>	<i>nav(i)-is</i>	<i>manūs</i>	<i>re-i</i>
<i>musae</i>	<i>avi</i>			

§ 863. There was, however, a still older form, *os*, answering to the Greek *os*, which is found in inscriptions in some nouns of the 4th or U Declension:

<i>senatu-os,</i>	<i>magistratu-os,</i>	<i>domu-os.</i>
-------------------	-----------------------	-----------------

The form *domu-os* was used by Augustus (Suet. Oct. 87 vulg. *domos*).

In inscriptions down to the time of Marius, we also find Genitives in *us*: as,

nomin-us	Vener-us
Castor-us	Cerer-us.

We may therefore conclude that the original form was *-os*, first softened into *-us* (v. § 851), and then into *-is*: e. g. *Κάστωρ-os*, Castor-us, Castor-is.

*Obs.* The reason of the retention of the *o* in *senatu-os*, *magistratu-os*, *domu-os*, is because the combination *uu* was avoided in Latin (v. § 851).

§ 864. The ancient form of the Suffix *-us* is retained in such words as:

istius	illius	ipsius
unius	totius	alius
ejus	cujus	hujus, &c.

*Obs.* The reason for the retention of the *u* in such words is that the combination *ii* was avoided in Latin.

§ 865. *Third or Consonant and I Declension.*—In Consonant Stems the *-is* is added to the Stem unaltered; in I Stems the *i* is dropped, but the vowel is not lengthened: as, *navīs*.

*Obs.* In the oldest inscriptions we also find a *Gen.* in *es*: as,

Salut-es	Apollon-es;
----------	-------------

but the form in *is* was in all periods of the language the usual one in this Declension. In later times the popular dialect returned to the form in *es*: hence we find Caesar-es, campestr-es, pag-es (A.D. 508) for *pacis*.

§ 866. *First or A Declension.*—In the 1st, 2nd, and 5th Declensions the final *s* of the termination *-is* is dropped, as is so frequently the case with a final *s* (v. § 835, No. 5). Then from the original form *a-is*, as *musa-is*, arose two sets of forms:

(i.) *āī*, *āī*, *ae* (-e).

Or retaining the *s*:

(ii.) *acs*, *as* (cs).

(1) The final *s* was dropped, whence the forms which frequently occur in the old poets and even in Virgil:

vitāī,	pictāī,	acquīī.
--------	---------	---------

Both syllables were originally long, *āī*, which were first contracted into *āī* and subsequently softened into *ae*.

(2) Or the final *s* of *aīs* was preserved, and *ai* was then softened into *ae*, as *dimidiaes*: or the *i* was dropped, as *terras*.

The form in *aes* frequently occurs in both the Republican and Imperial inscriptions, especially in the names of females: as,

Pesceniaes,	dimidiaes,
Ileraes,	suacs.

The form in *as* is frequently found in the older poets: as,

terras	fortunas
vias	escas.

It is retained in later writers in the common word *paterfamilias*.

*Obs.* The further softening of *ae* into *e* occurred in the third century A.D., and is found frequently in inscriptions of that period: as,

bone (for <i>bonae</i> )	provincies (for <i>provinciae</i> ).
mire (for <i>mirae</i> )	victories (for <i>victoriae</i> ).

§ 867. *Second or O Declension*.—After dropping the *s* of *o-is*, the diphthong *oi* was contracted into *i*. This *i* forms an intermediate sound between the E sound and I sound, and was represented by EI. Thus we find in inscriptions such forms as:

Romanci	agrei
populei	vinei.

*Obs.* As this intermediate sounded EI was sometimes pronounced like I and sometimes like E, we find it represented by both I and E. Hence we have in the *Nom. Pl.* of the O Declension the ancient forms, *magistreis*, *magistris*, *magistres* = *magistri* (v. § 835); and in the *Acc. Pl.* of the I Declension, *naveis*, *navis*, *naves*.

§ 868. Stems in *io* form the Genitive in *i*, not *ii*, in order to avoid the combination of two similar vowels: as,

præmi	Septimi
mancipi	Virgili, &c.

This is the correct orthography even in the Augustan age, though in later writers we find *ii*. The Single *i* is often written taller than the rest of the word: as, VIRGILI.

§ 869. *Fourth or U Declension*.—The oldest form was *u-os*, afterwards *u-is*, contracted usually into *ūs*, sometimes into *i*, with the final *s* omitted. Genitives in *u-os* have been already mentioned (v. 863):

as,          senatu-os,          magistratu-os,          domu-os.

Genitives in *u-is* occur in the ancient writers: as,

anu-is,	fructu-is	quaestu-is,
senatu-is,	domu-is	exercitu-is.

The diphthong *ui* is not only contracted into *u*, whence the common form *senatūs*, but also into *i*, as *senati*: just as *oi* is contracted into *i* in the O Declension (v. 867). The form in *i* is found in writers down to the time of Caesar: as,

victi	tumulti	flucti
gemiti	sumpti	soniti
quaesti	strepiti	exerciti.

§ 870. *Fifth or E Declension*.—From the original form *e-is*, as *dic-is*, we have the forms:

-es,	-ei,	-e,	-ii.
------	------	-----	------

§ 871. The *Gen.* *in*-s is found in the old writers and grammarians: *di*-s (Fam. A. ad. 194, Vol. 1), *fac*-s (Cicero's Quinctus in Gell. ix. 14, § 6), *ru*-s (Livy. i. 1-3, Lactantius); and *cel*-s (*l.*) also found *di*-s in old MSS. of Cicero and Virgil. We likewise find in other old writers quoted by grammarians:

*per*-s, *luxu*-s.

§ 872. The form *in*-s occurs in Plautus, Sallust, and even in the poets of the Augustan age, as,

*di*-s                      *re*-s  
*fac*-s                      *fac*-s.

§ 873. There was also in ancient times a form in *-u*. Cicero (*l. c.*) quotes the following instances:

*di*-u                      *re*-u  
*fac*-u                      *per*-u  
*fac*-u                      *fac*-u  
*luxu*-u                      *spe*-u.

## 5. The Dative Singular.

§ 874. The Suffix of the Dative Singular was *-i* for all Declensions.

1st A. Decl.	2nd F. Decl.	3rd M. and F. Decl.	4th U. Decl.	5th E. Decl.
<i>puer</i> -i	<i>puer</i> -i	<i>puer</i> -i	<i>puer</i> -i	<i>puer</i> -i
<i>puer</i> -i	<i>puer</i> -i	<i>puer</i> -i	<i>puer</i> -i	<i>puer</i> -i

There was, however, a still older *di*-s, which appears in

*di*-s                      *re*-s                      *re*-s  
*di*-s                      *re*-s                      *re*-s  
*di*-s                      *re*-s                      *re*-s  
*di*-s                      *re*-s                      *re*-s

This Suffix corresponds to the Sanskrit *-i*, to the Greek *-i*, to the Latin *-i*, and the German *-i* (§ 875, 2). The most Suffix appears in *di*-s. It has been already seen that, as the *di*-s has been lost in *di*-s, *re*-s, *re*-s, so the *di*-s has disappeared in *di*-s (§ 876).

The old Suffix has been retained in the *di*-s, *re*-s.

§ 875. Comment on *di*-s Declension.—Instead of *i* we also find in the *di*-s Declension:

(1) <i>di</i> -s, <i>re</i> -s	<i>puer</i> -i	<i>puer</i> -i
	<i>puer</i> -i	<i>puer</i> -i
	<i>puer</i> -i	<i>puer</i> -i
(2) <i>di</i> -s, <i>re</i> -s	<i>puer</i> -i	<i>puer</i> -i
	<i>puer</i> -i	<i>puer</i> -i

Even in the flourishing period of Roman literature we find the datives *aer-e* and *jur-e*.

§ 876. *First or A Declension*.—The original form *a-i* was softened into *ae*, as in the Genitive. But the form *ai* frequently appears in inscriptions even in the time of Augustus and subsequently : as,

colonia-i	Julia-i
dea-i	Agrippina-i.

§ 877. *Second or O Declension*.—The lengthened *ō* (cf. Greek *ω*) is the only remaining trace of the original Suffix.

(1) But *o-i* is preserved in inscriptions and by the grammarians : as,

populo-i	quo-i (for cui)
Romano-i	ho-i-c (for hui-c).

*Obs.* *Quoi* and *hoi-c* became *cui* and *hui-c*, because the *U* sound is more nearly related to *i* than to *o*.

(2) The form *ci* occurs in inscriptions in words which form their genitives in *-ius* : as,

quoiei	= cui
eiei	= ei
ipsei	= ispi.

§ 878. *Fourth or U Declension*.—(1) Instead of the common form in *u-i* we find in an inscription *senatu-ci*.

(2) As *ui* passed easily into *u*, we find the latter form, which Caesar declared the preferable one (Gell. iv. 16), in all periods of the language. Thus it occurs in :—

Sallust.	Virgil.	Livy.	Tacitus.
luxu	metu	exercitu	luxu
exercitu	victu	usu	
usu	concupitu.		

It is the regular form in the Neuters : as,

cornu,	gelu.
--------	-------

§ 879. *Fifth or E Declension*.—In the same way in this Declension *ei* passed into *e*. Thus we find in the classical writers :

facie,	fide,	pernicie.
--------	-------	-----------

§ 880. In the first three Declensions, which include all names of places, the Dative has in almost every instance been confused with the old

*Locative Case*.—This case, which in Sanskrit is most frequently marked by the Suffix *i*, no doubt originally existed in Greek and Latin with the same termination. The Greek *οἰκοι* and *χαμαί* are genuine Locatives; and such Latin forms as *Romae* (= *Romai*), *at Rome*,

Mileti, *at Miletus*, are strictly Locatives and not Genitives (v. § 257, *Obs.*). In the same way, domi, *at home*, and humi, *on the ground*, are Locatives.

## 6. The Ablative Singular.

§ 881. The oldest Suffix of the Ablative in Latin was *d* or *ed*, a softened form of *t*, the termination of the Ablative Singular in Sanskrit. We find on the Columna Rostrata and in other ancient inscriptions the following forms:

1 or A Decl.	2 or O Decl.	3 or Cons. and I Decl.	4 or U Decl.
Hinnad	poplicod	dietatorid	senatud
ead	Gnaivod	conventionid	
sententiad	altod	marid	

The *d* was subsequently dropped and the final vowel of the Stem lengthened: as,

musā,	avō,	navī.	manū,	rē.
-------	------	-------	-------	-----

Though the final *e* of the 3rd Declension is short in the poets of the Augustan age, it is long in Ennius, and is represented by *ei* in the earlier inscriptions. Thus we find:

virtutei  
partei  
fontei.

In Greek this Ablative Suffix is preserved in Adverbs in *-ως* (= *ωρ*), as *ὁμῶς* from the Stem *ὁμο*, where we also find the long vowel.

*Obs. 1.* This old Ablative form is preserved in Latin in other words. *Mēd* and *tēd* are found in Plautus as Ablatives of *ego* and *tu*. *Sed* is also an Ablative of *sui*, signifying originally "by one's self," and then "apart," "but:" in composition the *d* is dropped, as *sē-cerno*, *sē-cedo*, &c. In the same way *pro*, originally *prod* (cf. *prod-eo prod-igus*), was an Ablative.

*Obs. 2.* Adverbs in *e* formed from Stems in O were originally Ablatives, which have lost their final *d*. This appears from the form *facilumed*, which we find in the *Senatusconsultum de Bacchanalibus*.

## 7. Nominative and Vocative Plural.

### MASCULINE AND FEMININE NOUNS

§ 882. The Suffix of the *Nom. Pl.* is *s*, with some connecting vowel, which was probably added to the *Nom. Sing.*: as *avi-s*, *pl. avis-ēs* contracted into *avēs*; *rex* (i. e. *reg-s*), *pl. regs-ēs*, contr. *regēs*; *gradu-s*, *pl. gradūs-ēs*, contr. *gradūs*.

1 or A Decl.	2 or O Decl.	3 or Cons. and I Decl.	4 or U Decl.	5 or I Decl.
musa-is	avos-is	regs-es	gradus-es	res-es.
musai	avis	reg-es	gradū-s	re-s.
musae	avi	avis-es		
		av(i)-es		

§ 883. *Consonant and I Declension.*—In both these classes of Stems, besides the Suffix *es* we have *eis* and *is*, though these terminations are more common in the Accusative than in the Nominative. Thus Varro (L. L. viii. 66, Müller) expressly says that the *Nom. Pl.* *puppis* and *restis* were used as well as *puppēs* and *restēs*; and we also find the *Nom. Pl.* in *is* in the best MSS.

§ 884. *The First or A Declension.*—The Suffix *s* was added to the Nominative by means of the connecting vowel *i*, so that the original form was *musa-is*. We find in the *Senatus-consultum de Bacchanalibus* and in a few old inscriptions, a *Nom Pl.* in *ai*: as,

tabulai	eai
datai	litterai, &c.

This diphthong *ai* was, however, early softened into *ae*. Though the form *a-is* as a *Nom. Pl.* is not found, the *s* must have originally existed, since it occurs in the O Stems down to the time of the Social War (v. § 885), and in all the other Stems down to the latest period of the language.

§ 885. *The Second or O Declension.*—The Suffix *s* was added to the Nominative by means of the connecting vowel *i*, so that the original form was (*avos-is*) *avo-is*. The *s* is preserved in inscriptions down to the time of the Social War, and the diphthong *oi* underwent the following changes, of all which we have examples in inscriptions:

oe=oi.	e.	ei.	i.
pilumnoe	magistre-s	magistrei-s	magistri-s
poploe	duomvire-s	gnatei-s	ministri-s
(both in	modie-s	liberei-s	magistri
Carmen	ploirume	filiei	ministri
Saliare)	plurume	oinvorsei	universi.

*Obs.* From the diphthong *OI* arose the sound *Ei*, which was intermediate between *i* and *ē*, and which was sometimes written *I*, and sometimes *E* (v. 867, *Obs.*).

## 8. The Accusative Plural.

### MASCULINE AND FEMININE NOUNS.

§ 886. The Accusative Plural appears to have been originally formed by the addition of *s* to the Accusative Singular, before which the nasal (*n* or *m*) was elided.

1 or A Decl.	2 or O Decl.	3 or Cons. and I Decl.	4 or U Decl.	5 or E Decl.
musam-s	avom-s	regem-s	inanum-s	rem-s
musā-s	avō-s	regē-s	manū-s	rē-s.
		avim-s		
		avī-s		

*Obs.* In Gothic the Suffix *ns* of the Acc. Pl. has remained entire: as, *culpa-nis* (= *lupō-s*, *gasti-nis* (= *hosti-s*, *sunu-nis* (= *pecū-s*). Compare in Greek the Acc. Pl. *ἀγρῶν* (for *ἀγρῶν-ς*), where the diphthong compensates for the omission of the final *n*: so, *τυπτοῦσι*, *ὀδοῦσι*, for *τυπτοῦν-σι*, *ὀδοῦν-ς*.

§ 887. In the Consonant and I Stems the Acc. Pl. was also written *eis* or *is* as well as *es*, as in the Nom. (v. § 883). From Stems in *i* the form in *is* was common, along with that in *es*, in the best periods of the language.

## NEUTER NOUNS.

§ 888. Nom., Voc., and Acc. Plural of all neuter nouns end in *ā*: as,

corpor- <i>ā</i>	regn(o)- <i>ā</i>	cornu- <i>ā</i>
mari- <i>ā</i> .		

In Zend, Greek, and Gothic we have the same Suffix for these cases in the Neuter. The Sanscrit suffix is *-nī*.

*Obs.* The origin of this Suffix is doubtful. It is perhaps a vocalization of the *n*, which appears in Sanscrit; as in Herodotus, *Καμβύσηα* for *Καμβύσην*. The light vowel *i* would then be readily absorbed.

## 9. The Genitive Plural.

§ 889.—(1) The original Suffix of the Genitive Plural was *-aum*, softened into *-rum*; the *s* or *r* is usually dropped in the Consonant, I and U Declensions.

1 or A Decl.	2 or O Decl.	3 or Cons. and I Decl.	4 or U Decl.	5 or E Decl.
musā-rum	avō-rum	bov- <i>ŕ</i> -rum	arcu-um	die-rum
		(v. § 390.)		
		reg-um		
		navi-um.		

*Obs.* The original form of the Genitive Plural in the Indo-European languages is *-sām* or *-sām*. In Sanskrit *-sām* is the Suffix of the Gen. Pl. of pronouns as, *tē-sām* = *istī-rum*. In Greek the *s* is dropped, but the long *ō* preserved. as, *μουσῶν* for *μουσα-σῶν*. In Latin the *s* is changed into *r* (v. § 832, No. 1), and the *-rum* softened into *-rum*.

§ 890. Even in the Consonant Declension the *r* of the Suffix is preserved in some ancient forms, as *bov-e-rum*, *Jov-e-rum* (Varr. L. L. vii. 74, Muller), and *unc-e-rum*, *reg-e-rum*, *lapid-e-rum* (Charis. i. p. 40, P.). On the other hand, the early poets frequently dropped



the *r* in the A and O Declensions: as, *meum factum* for *meorum factorum*, *duum virum* for *duorum virorum* (Cic. Or. 46, § 155, who quotes other instances). Even in later times, the *-um* was the more usual form in many nouns of the A and O Declension, especially with words signifying money, weights, measures, and trades, as *drachmum* for *drachmarum*, *nummum* for *nummorum* (v. § 17, Obs. 3; § 19, Obs. 4).

§ 891. Genitives in *-i-um*, as a general rule, come from Stems ending in *I*, and Genitives in *-um* from Stems ending in a *Consonant*. Such forms as *mentium*, *sortium*, *animalium*, are no exceptions to this rule, as the Stems of those words originally ended in *i* (v. §§ 847, 848). But there appears to have been some confusion between the Stems in *I* and those ending in a *Consonant*, probably arising from the omission of the *i* in the Nom. Sing. Thus we find *civitat-ium* from a *Consonant* Stem, and *canum*, *panum*, *juvenum* from *I* Stems. In the same way Cicero has in one place (Sext. 20) *sedum* for *sedium*; Virgil (Aen. iv. 464), *vatum* for *vatum*; and Ovid (Met. viii. 500), *mensum* for *mensium*.

## 10. The Dative and Ablative Plural.

§ 892. The original Suffix of these cases appears to have been *-bius*, corresponding to the Sanskrit *-bhyas*. From the contraction of the vowels arose the two forms *-bis* and *-būs*, afterwards *-būs*. The form *bis* occurs in *no-bis*, *vo-bis*, and in the A and O Stems, with elision of the *b*, as in the A Stems in Sanskrit. The form *bus* occurs in the other Stems.

1 or A Decl.	2 or O Decl.	3 or Cons. and I Decl.	4 or U Decl.	5 or E Decl.
musa-(b)is	avo-(b)is	reg-ī-bus	manū-bus	rē-bus
musīs	avīs	navī-bus	manī-bus.	

Obs. 1. The long *u* in *būs* is found in *omnibūs*, Plant. Aulul. ii. 8, 8; *pectorbūs*, Virg. Aen. iv. 64.

Obs. 2. The form *-bus* occurs in some A Stems, as *dea-bus*, *filia-bus*, &c. (v. § 17, Obs. 4.)

Obs. 3. In the A and O Stems the vowels *a-is* and *o-is* have undergone several of the changes already mentioned (v. §§ 866, 885). In A Stems we find in inscriptions *eis* for the ancient *a-is* : as,

*incolcis, vicis, tabuleis.*

In O Stems the old forms,

*suo-is, gnato-is,*

are still preserved in inscriptions. Besides these we find *eis* for *ois* : as,

*amiceis, sueis, agreis.*

## CHAPTER LXXI.

## FORMATION OF THE COMPARATIVE AND SUPERLATIVE.

§ 893. There are two forms of the Comparative in Latin: (1) *-ior* (originally *-ios*) *Neut. -ius* and (2) *-ter*; the former corresponding to the Gr. *ιωv*, *ιov*, and the latter to the Gr. *τεpos*.

§ 894. The suffix *-ios* (*-ior*) is sometimes shortened into *-us* and *-is*, just as from *-bius*, the original termination of the *Dat.* and *Abl.* Pl. arose the two forms *-bus* and *-bis* (v. § 892).

(1) The form in *-us* from *-ius* is seen in

minus,

plus.

(2) The form in *-is* from *-ius* is seen in *magis*; also in the following adverbs, which appear to have been originally Comparatives:

nimis,  
aliquantisper,  
paullisper,  
pauxillisper,  
tantisper.

§ 895. The suffix *-ter* appears only in words not usually recognised as Comparatives: as,

al-ter,      u-ter,      neu-ter,      dex-ter.

Also in the following words, which contain a double comparative suffix:

mag-is-ter,      min-is-ter,      sin-is-ter.

§ 896. The common suffix of the Superlative in Latin is *-issimus*, which appears to have arisen from a combination of the Comparative suffix *-is* (*ios*, *ior*) with the Superlative suffix *-timus* (Sanskrit *-tamas*): i. e. *is-timus*, by assimilation *issimus*.

The Superlative suffix *-timus* appears in

op-timus (rt. op: cf. op-es, *good things*, *riches*),  
in-timus,  
ul-timus,  
ci-timus,  
ex-timus,  
dex-timus,

sin-is-timus (Fest. p. 74, Superlative of sinister, like dextimus of dexter).

soll-is-timus (Fest. p. 269, Superlative of sollus).

To this head may also be referred the forms in *-llimus* and *-rrimus*, by assimilation from *-ltimus* and *-rtimus*: as,

facil-linus	=	facil-tinus,
simil-linus	=	simil-tinus,
pulcher-rinus	=	pulcher-tinus,
veter-rinus	=	veter-tinus.

*Obs.* Also perhaps *maximus* = *mag-ti-mus*.

§ 897. The suffix *-timus* itself appears to be a combination of the suffixes *-tus* and *-mus*.

(1) *-tus* appears as a Superlative suffix in:

quan-tus,	quin-tus,	sex-tus,	quo-tus.
-----------	-----------	----------	----------

(2) *-mus* appears as a Superlative suffix in:

pri-mus,	min-i-mus,	supre-mus,	infi-mus.
----------	------------	------------	-----------

## CHAPTER LXXII.

### FORMATION OF THE PERSONS AND TENSES OF THE VERBS.

#### (A) ACTIVE VOICE.

##### Personal Endings.

§ 898. *Personal Endings of Singular*.—It has been already pointed out (§ 105) that these are the Personal pronouns in a mutilated form (*m, s, t*). These characteristic consonants are in Greek in the Present Tense (of verbs in *μι*), and in Sanskrit in the Present and Future Tenses of all verbs, followed by a short vowel. Compare the following:—

	Present.	
Sanskrit.	Greek.	Latin.
da-dā-mi.	δί-δω-μι.	do.
da-dā-si.	δί-δω-σ(ι).	da-s.
da-dā-ti.	δί-δω-τι (old form).	da-t.

In Latin the final short vowel has everywhere fallen away; and it has been followed by the *m* of the first person in all Present Tenses except *sum*, *inquam*, and those of the Subjunctive Mood; and in the Future Tenses without a single exception.

§ 899. *Personal Endings of Plural*.—These are perhaps derived from the corresponding forms of the Singular, by the use of a plural suffix: namely, *s* in the first and second persons, and *n* in the

third. Thus, amamus = ama-*mi* + s; amatis = ama-*ti* + s (the original form of the second personal pronoun being in *t* not *s*); amant = ama-n-t (the plural sign preceding the *t* for the sake of enphony).

### Formation of the Tenses.

§ 900. *Present Indicative*.—The present Indicative has ordinarily no tense suffix. Thus the forms am-o, ama-s, ama-t, are formed immediately from the stem ama. In this respect the Latin differs from the Greek and Sanskrit, in which languages the tense prefixes and suffixes are constant. The following are the cases in which tense elements of formation have been either retained or added:—

(1) *Reduplication*: as,

gi-g'n-o (Gr. γι-γ'ν-ο-μαι),

si-st-o (Gr. ἴ-στη-μι, Sanskr. si-stâ-mi).

(2) The liquid *n* after *r*: as,

ster-no (Gr. στοπέ-ννυ-μι),

cer-no (Gr. κρί-νω).

(3) A liquid (*m* or *n*) before a mute: as,

fra(n)go,

rt. fräg-,

ta(n)go,

„ täg- (Gr. θιγ),

pa(n)go,

„ päg- (Gr. παγ),

fi(n)go,

„ fīg-,

pi(n)go,

„ pig-,

ju(n)go, *I join*,

„ jūg- (Gr. ζυγ),

fi(n)do, *I cleave*,

„ fīd-,

sci(n)do, *I read*,

„ scīd-,

ru(n)do, *I burst*,

„ rūp-,

[cu(in)bo, *I lie*],

„ cūb-.

(4) The lengthening of the root vowel: as,

dūco,

rt. dūc-,

fīdo, confīdo,

„ fīd- (as in fīd-es),

dīco,

„ dīc- (as in male-dīcus, in-dīc-o, etc.).

*Obs.* Compare Gr. λαίπω, rt. lái-; σπειρω, rt. spep- (as in σπερ-μα). The process is rare in Latin.

(5) The inceptive suffix -sco: as,

cre-sco,

rt. cre- (as in cre-o),

adol-e-sco,

„ (ad)-ol-,

re-min-i-scor,

„ (re)-men- (as in men-s).

(6) The letter *t* after *c*: as,

plec-to,

rt. plec- (Gr. πλεκ-ω),

plec-tor,

„ plēc- (Gr. πλεττω).

The stem of the Present Indicative is used in forming the other Imperfect Tenses: as, si-n-do, *Past-Imperf.* find-e-bam, ster-n-o, *Fut.* ster-n-am.

§ 901. *Past-Imperfect Tense Indicative.*—The suffix of this Tense is *-bam*, added to the stem of the Present: as, ama-bam. Before it a short vowel is lengthened: as, amā-bam, monē-bam, reg-e-bam, audi-ē-bam. The long connecting vowel in verbs of the third and fourth conjugations, is probably owing to analogy with verbs of the second conjugation. Verbs of the fourth conjugation originally ended in *-i-bam*, without the connecting vowel: thus we find in the older poets, and sometimes in the poets of the Augustan age, such forms as,

sci-bam,	nesci-bam,
ai-lam,	exaudi-bam,
inuni-bam,	poli-bam, &c.

*I-bam* from *eo* is the regular form in all writers.

The suffix *-bam* is probably a shortened form of *fu-am*, *I was*, from the root *FU*, like *er-am* from the root *ES* (*sum*). The aspirate is dropped in *-bam*, as explained in § 828.

*Obs. 1.* The Imperfect *er-am* (*es-am*) is the only remaining instance of the original formation of the tense. Compare Sanskr. *as-am*, from *ṛt. as* (*to be*); Gr. *ἔ-τυπτ-ορ*, from *τυπτω*.

*Obs. 2.* The form *fu-am*, assumed as formative element above, corresponds with Gr. *ἔ-φυν*.

*Obs. 3.* No trace remains in Latin of the Augment of the Greek and Sanskrit Past Tenses.

§ 902. *Future Tense Indicative.*—The suffix of this tense is *-bo*, added to the stem of the present: as, amā-bo, monē-bo. It is probably a shortened form of *fuo*, the future of the stem *FU*, like *ero* from the root *ES* (*sum*).

The third and fourth conjugations had originally the same suffix as the first and second: besides *i-bo* from *eo*, and *sci-bo* from *scio*, we frequently find in the older language the suffix *-bo* in the fourth conjugation: as,

nesci-bo,	audi-bo,	expedi-bo,
aperi-bo,	oboedi-bo,	servi-bo,
saevi-bo,	grandi-bo,	operi-bo,
veni-bo,	subveni-bo,	dormi-bo.

This form is rarer in the third conjugation, but we find the following Futures in the older writers, the *-bo* being affixed by means of the connecting vowel *e*: as,

viv-e-bo	instead of	viv-am,
dic-e-bo	„	dic-am,
exsug-e-bo	„	exsug-am.

§ 903. But in the third and fourth conjugation the formation in *-bo* was in course of time lost, and the defect supplied by the substitution of the Potential form

a-m,	e-s,	e-t,
e-mus,	e-tis,	e-nt.

The formative element is *-ya* or *-ia*, the suffix of the Optative. The suffix is contracted into *ê*, except in the first person, which follows the first person of the Present Subjunctive. See further, § 907.

§ 904. *Perfect Tense Indicative*.—There are four ways of forming the Perfect:

(1) By added *-vi* and *-ui* to the stem, which is the most common form, and the usual way of forming the Perfects of the first, second, and fourth conjugations: as, *ama-vi*, *mon-ui*, *audi-vi*. This suffix is the same as the Perfect *fui* of the auxiliary verb, the *f* disappearing before the *v* and the *u*, like *d* before the *v* in *vigiuti*, and *g* before the *v* in *nives*: v. § 827, No. 2; § 824, No. 2. In some of the kindred Italian dialects we find the full form of the auxiliary verb preserved: as in the Umbrian perfects *pila-fei* and *ambre-furent*.

*Obs. 1.* The Perfect of the root *rv* was probably formed by adding the Present tense of *sum*, as the Past-Perfect, and Future-Perfect of *rv* were formed by adding the Imperfect and Future tenses of the same verb: as, *fu-eram*, *fu-ero*. The root of *'s-um* is *rs*, which appears in the Perfect of *rv* in the shortened form *is* (comp. English *is*). We may, therefore, suppose the oldest form to have been:

fu-is-(m)	(Comp. Gr. $\epsilon\sigma\mu\iota$ ),
fu-is-ti	( " $\epsilon\sigma\sigma\iota$ ),
fu-is-t,	
fu-is-mus,	
fu-is-tis,	
fu-is-unt.	

This accounts for the forms *fu-i*, *fu-is-ti*, and *fu-er-unt*, where the *er* represents *is*, as in *pulvis*, *pulver-is*. It also accounts for the fact that the final vowel of the third person singular of the Perfect is often long in the poets, since *-it* was originally *-ist*.

(2) By adding *-si* to the stem, which corresponds to *-σα*, the characteristic of the Greek First-Aorist: as, *scrip-si*, *plexi* (cf. Gr.  $\epsilon\text{-}\pi\lambda\epsilon\xi\alpha$ ).

*Obs. 2.* The original form of this suffix is seen by comparison of the parallel forms in Greek and Sanskrit, *-σα* and *-sam*. It is the Imperfect tense of the verb *'s-um*, namely, *es-am* (*er-am*); which was added to the stem, with elision of the initial vowel. Compare Lat. *scrip-s-i*, with Gr.  $\epsilon\text{-}\delta\epsilon\iota\chi\text{-}\sigma\alpha$ , and Sanskr. *a-dik-sham*.

(3) By *Reduplication*, which is the regular mode of forming the Perfect in Greek: as, *te-tend-i*.

*Obs. 3.* The most ancient form of the Reduplication was probably a repetition of the root syllable of the verb, denoting completeness of action.

(4) By *lengthening the vowel* of the stem : as, *mōvi* from *mōveo*.

*Obs.* 4. This may have been also a reduplicated form originally : *mō-mōvi* becoming *mōvi*.

§ 905. *Past-Perfect and Future-Perfect Indicative*.—These tenses are formed by adding to the stem of the Perfect, the Imperfect and Future of *sum* : as, *amav-eram*, *amav-ero* (v. § 904, *Obs.* 1). But in the Future-Perfect there was a still older suffix *-sso* instead of *eso=ero*. This form was preserved in the ordinary language of the classical age only in *faxo=fecero*; but it occurs in many other words in the older writers. In verbs of the first and second conjugations the *s* is doubled, hence it appears in the forms *asso* and *csso* : as,

amasso	= amavero,	prohibesso	= prohibuero,
indicasso	= indicavero,	capso	= cepero,
enicasso	= enicavero,	accepso	= accepero,
levasso	= levavero,	occepso	= occepero,
liberasso	= liberavero,	recepso	= recepero,
peccasso	= peccavero,	rapso	= rapuero.
observasso	= observavero,		

In the same way *-sim* occurs instead of *-erim* in the Perfect Subjunctive : v. 909.

§ 906. *Imperative Mood*.—(1) The short (Present) form of the Imperative Singular anciently ended in *s* (softened form=*Sansk.* *-dhi*; *Gr.* *-θι*), which was subsequently dropped : as *ama-s*, *mone-s*, *audi-s*, *reg-e-s*, afterwards *ama*, *mone*, *audi*, *reg-e* : v. § 835, No. 5. In like manner *τύπτ-ε* was originally *τύπτ-ε-s*.

(2) The longer (Future or Emphatic) form of the Imperative is strengthened in the second and third Persons Singular by the suffix *-to* (*Sansk.* *-tu*; *Gr.* *-τω*), originally *-tod*. *Es-tod* occurred in the laws of the kings (*Festus*, p. 230, *Müller*). This suffix corresponds to the Oscan *-tud* : as, *es-tud*, *ac-tud*, *fac-tud*, &c. : v. § 830, No. 3.

§ 907. *Present Subjunctive*.—In Latin the Subjunctive and Optative are united in one mood. The formative element of the Subjunctive appears to be *-a* in the Aryan languages : and this is the sign of the Present Subjunctive in Latin, in verbs of the second, third, and fourth conjugations : as, *mone-a-m*, *reg-a-m*, *audi-a-m*. This vowel element also accounts for the length of the final syllable in the Greek Subjunctive : as, *τύπτ-τω*, *-ης*, *-η*, &c.

The formative element of the Optative appears to be *-ya* or *-ia*, and sometimes simply *-i*. In Greek it appears in the form *-ι*.

Thus from the Sanskrit *as*, “to be,” and the Greek *τίπτω*, “I strike,” we have :

Sing. 1. <i>s-yâ-m</i> from <i>as-yâ-m</i> ,	<i>τίπτο-ι-μι</i> ,
2. <i>s-yâ-s</i> ,	<i>τίπτο-ι-ς</i> ,
3. <i>s-yâ-t</i> ,	<i>τίπτο-ι</i> .
Plur. 1. <i>s-yâ-ma</i> ,	<i>τίπτο-ι-μεν</i> ,
2. <i>s-yâ-ta</i> ,	<i>τίπτο-ι-τε</i> ,
3. <i>s-yus</i> ,	<i>τίπτο-ι-εν</i> .

In Latin we have the formative element of *i* in the Subjunctives :

<i>sim</i> (old form <i>siem</i> ),	<i>duim</i> ,
<i>velim</i> ,	<i>adduim</i> ,
<i>nolim</i> ,	<i>interduim</i> ,
<i>malim</i> ,	<i>perduim</i> ,
<i>edim</i> ,	<i>creduim</i> .
<i>comedim</i> ,	
<i>exedim</i> ,	

Also in the first conjugation :

<i>amem</i> = <i>ama-im</i> ,
<i>ames</i> = <i>ama-is</i> ,
<i>amet</i> = <i>ama-it</i> , &c.

The same formative element appears in the Future Indicative of the third and fourth conjugations : v. § 903.

§ 908. *Imperfect Subjunctive*.—The suffix of this tense is *-rem* (originally *-sem*), and with the connecting vowel *-ĕ-rem* : *as*, *ama-rem*, *monc-rem*, *audi-rem*, *reg-ĕ-rem*.

The form *-sem* is seen in *es-sem* ; and in the following words the *s* assimilates to the preceding liquid :

<i>vel-lem</i> = <i>vel-sem</i> ,
<i>mal-lem</i> = <i>mal-sem</i> ,
<i>nol-lem</i> = <i>nol-sem</i> ,
<i>fer-rem</i> = <i>fer-sem</i> ,

§ 909. *Perfect and Past-Perfect Subjunctives*.—These tenses are formed by adding to the stem of the Perfect *-erim* and *-issem*, which are the Present and Imperfect Subjunctive respectively of the verb *sum* : *-erim* being the same as *esim* or *'sim*, and *-issem* as *essem*.

In the Perfect Subjunctive the suffix *-sim* is used in some older forms, like *-so* instead of *-ero* in the Future-Perfect Indicative. This form was preserved in the ordinary language of the classical age only in *faxim* = *fecerim*, and *ausim* from *audeo* ; but it occurs in many other words in the older writers. In verbs of the first and second conjugations the *s* is doubled. Several of these



verbs are given in § 905. The following are a few more examples :—

appellassis = appellaveris,	habessit = habuerit,
amassint = amaverint,	prohibessint = prohibuerint,
intrassis = intraveris	serpsit = serpsit.

§ 910. *Imperfect Infinitive*.—The suffix is **-re** (originally **-se**), and with connecting vowel **-ē-re**: as, ama-re, mone-re, audi-re, leg-c-re. The *s* of the original suffix appears in *es-se*.

This suffix differs not only from the Greek and Sanskrit, but also from the Oscan. The Greek Infinitive ends in **-μεναι** or **-μεν**, in some cases shortened into **-ναι**, in others into **-ειν**; the Sanskrit Infinitive is the Accusative of a verbal substantive, and ends in **-um**; also the Oscan Infinitive ends in **-um**. This corresponds to the Latin first supine.

§ 911. *Perfect Infinitive*.—The suffix is **-isse** added to the Stem of the Perfect, and is the same as *esse*, the Infinitive of *sum*: as, amav-isse.

§ 912. *The Imperfect Participle*.—The suffix is **-nt**, or with connecting vowel **e-nt**, of course in the Nom. **-ns**: as, ama-n-s, ama-nt-is. It is the same with the Sanskr. **-ant** (Nom. masc. **-an**); Gr. **-οντ**; Germ. **-end**; Anglo-Sax. **-and**; Eng. **-ing**.

§ 913. *The Gerund and Gerundive*.—The suffix is **-undo**, **-endo**, **-ndo**. The oldest form of the suffix is **-undo**, of which there was a still more ancient form **-ondo**, which occurs in inscriptions: for instance, faci-ondam and vere-condus. The form **-undo**, except in the case of a few words, was supplanted by that of **-endo**.

There have been various conjectures as to the origin of this suffix, but that of Corssen is the most probable; that it consists of two parts, **un-do**, of which the **-un**, originally **-on**, is the same as the **-on** in the verbal nouns:

ger-on,	Nom. gero,
ed-on,	„ edo,
com-bib-on,	„ combibo.

From this the gerund was perhaps formed by adding the passive adjectival suffix **do-s**: whence

ger-on-do-s,	afterwards ger-un-du-s,
ed-on-do-s	„ ed-un-du-s,
com-bib-on-do-s,	„ com-bib-un-du-s.

Corssen shows clearly that the notion of necessity or duty does not

belong originally to the gerund, but that it is a verbal adjective or noun: for instance, *ori-un-dus* signifies simply *rising from*, *sec-un-dus* (from *sequor*), *following*. (Compare § 714.)

§ 914. *The Future Participle*.—The suffix is *-tura-s*, which is probably the same as the suffix *-tus*, with an adjectival termination: as, *da-tor*, *da-tur-u-s*, *ama-tor*, *ama-tur-u-s*.

*Obs.* From the Future Part. is formed the Desiderative suffix *-tūrio*, in which the addition of a new formative element (*ya*, § 907), has caused the shortening of the antepenultima.

§ 915. *The Suffixes*.—The suffixes are *-tum*, *-tu*, sometimes *-sum*, *-su*, which are verbal substantives in the Accusative and Ablative Case respectively. (Compare § 910.)

## (B) Passive Voice.

§ 916. The Latin Passive Verb is formed in a totally different way from the Greek and Sanskrit. Those languages exhibit in the Middle (or Passive) a double form of the Personal Pronouns: thus, Gr. *τίπτομαι* = *τιπτ-ο-μα-(μ)-ι*, *I strike myself*; *τίπτεσαι* (old form of *τίπτει* or *η*) = *τιπτ-ε-σα-σι*, *Thou strikest thyself*; &c. In Latin, the Passive (or Reflective) is formed by adding to the corresponding forms of the Active the Reflective Pronoun *se*, *oneself*. Thus *amor* = *amo-se* (*s* becoming *r*, according to § 832); *amaris* (afterwards shortened into *amare*) = *amas-(i)-se*; *amatur* = *amat-u-se*. Similarly, in the plural, *amamur* = *amamus-se*; *amantur* = *amant-(u)-se*. The form *amamini* (*estis*) has been already explained (§ 105, note).

Similarly in the Past-Imperf. and Future, *amabar* = *amabam-se*, *amaberis* being lightly sounded in Latin, and therefore readily elided (cf. § 834, No. 5); *amabaris* = *amabas-(a)-se*; *amabatur* = *amabat-(u)-se*; &c.

In the Imperative Mood, *amare* is equivalent to *ama-se*. The second pers. plur. *amamini* is used with an ellipsis of the Imperative Mood etc. The form *inor* (second pers. plur.) is obscure, but is probably formed from an archaic second pers. sing. in *ino*, according to the analogy of *amato-r*, *amato-r*, etc. Comp. *præfaminō* (= *præfaminōs* etc.), *Cato*, R. R. 141.

§ 917. *Infinitive Passive*.—The original termination of the Imperfect Infinitive Passive was in *-ier* (see § 111, 1), a form difficult to analyse. But the double vowel (*ie*) is probably due to the originally long final of the Infinitive Active (*ē*). Thus perhaps *amar-ē-r* may have resolved itself into *amar-ier*. The common form in *i* is an abbreviation of this.

§ 918. *Perfect Participle*.—The participial ending in **-minus** (Gr. *-μενος*) has ceased in Latin to retain its original function. Instead of it is used the suffix **-tus** (Sansk. *-ta-s*, with same function; Gr. *τός*, usually with force of a Latin adjective in *-bilis*).

*Obs.* 1. But the participial termination *minus*, *menus*, has left various traces of itself: as,

(1.) In the second pers. plur. of all uncomponnd tenses in the Passive Voice (§ 105, note): as, *amamini*, *amabamini* (formed after the analogy of the Present), etc.

(2.) In a few substantives in **-umnus** (syncopated for Gr. *-όμενος*); as, *aiumnus* (from *alo*), *one who is being nurtured, a nursling*; *Vertumnus* (*vertor*), *the deity who constantly turns and changes, the god of the seasons*.

(3.) In a large number of substantives in **-men** (§ 181, 7), some of which have retained their passive force, while in others it can no longer be traced: as, *ag-men* (*ago*), *that which is being led, an army in motion*; *gesta-men* (*gesto*), *anything that is wont to be carried*; *se-men* (*sero*), *that which is sown, seed*: also, *flu-men*, *that which flows*; *ful-men*, *that which flashes*, etc.

*Obs.* 2. The termination **-men** is further lengthened by the addition of the element **-tum**: as, *monu-men-tum*, from *moneo*; *in-cre-mentum*, from *cre-sco*: Also probably we may recognise the same element in such words as *matri-mon-ium*, *natri-mon-ium*. (Schleicher.)

Another passive participial suffix is **-nus** (Sansk. *-nas*), equivalent to **-tus**. This is found after only a few verbal roots in Latin: as, *dig-nus*, lit. *shown, pointed at* (rt. *dig*—Gr. *δεικ*, *to show, point*), hence, *worthy*; *mag-nus*, (*made*) *great* (rt. *mag*-).

*Obs.* But the same suffix is probably to be recognised in adjectives in **-i-nus** (Gr. *ivos*), **-a-nus**, **-nus**: as, *quer-nus*, *made of oak*; *salig-nus*, *made of willow-wood*; *hum-a-nus*, *of the nature of man, human*; *femin-i-nus*, *of women*, etc.

## APPENDIX I.—LATIN AUTHORS.

§ 919. A. *Præ-classical Period* (B.C.).

- CN. NÆVIUS (3rd cent.):—Epic poem on the First Punic War; and other poetry.
- Q. ENNIUS (239-169); born at Rudiae in Calabria:—Epic poem on Roman History; Dramas, Satires, etc.
- M. PACUVIUS (cir. 220-130); probably born at Brundisium:—Tragedies.
- L. ATTIIUS OR ACCIUS (170-cir. 90); son of a freedman:—Tragedies.
- M. PORCIUS CATO (234-149):—History of Rome (*Origines*); Treatise *De Re Rustica*.
- CAECILIUS STATIUS (ob. 168); born at Mediolanum (Milan), and a slave by birth:—Comedies.
- LUCILIUS (148-103); Satires.
- L. AFRANIUS (flor. 94):—Comedies.
- T. ACCIUS (more properly MACCIUS) PLAUTUS (254-184, B.C.); born at Sarsina in Umbria:—Comedies, twenty in all extant, besides fragments.
- P. TERENCE AFRER (195-159, B.C.); a freedman, and said to have been a native of Carthage:—Comedies (*six*).
- Obs.* With the exception of the treatise on farming (*De Re Rustica*) by M. Porcius Cato, and the Comedies of Plautus and Terence, only fragments of the works of the above authors have come down to us.

§ 920. B. *Golden Age*.

- M. TERENCE VARRO (116-28, B.C.); born at Rome:—wrote *De Lingua Latina*, and *De Re Rustica*; besides a work on Roman History and some Satires, not extant.
- M. TULLIUS CICERO (106-43, B.C.); born at Arpinum:—Rhetorical works; Speeches in private and public cases; philosophical and ethical works; Letters.
- C. JULIUS CAESAR (100-44, B.C.); born at Rome:—Commentaries or memoirs of his own times, viz., the Gallic and Civil Wars.
- T. LUCRETIIUS CARUS (95-52, B.C.); born at Rome:—Poem in six books, expounding the Epicurean philosophy ("*De Rerum Natura*").
- C. VALERIUS CATULLUS (87-47, B.C.); of Verona:—Lyric and elegiac poetry.

- C. SALLUSTIUS CRISPUS (86-35, B.C.); born at Amiternum:—Historical works; of which the *Catiline* and *Jugurtha* are extant.
- P. VERGILIUS (or VIRGILIUS) MARO (70-19, B.C.); born at Andes near Mantua:—*Bucolics*, *Georgics*; *Aeneid*; also some short pieces.
- Q. HORATIUS FLACCUS (65-8, B.C.); born at Venusia:—*Odes*, *Satires*, familiar and critical *Epistles* in Verse.
- CORNELIUS NEPOS (flor. cir. 30, B.C.); of Verona; *Lives* of eminent men.
- ALBIUS TIBULLUS (? 54-18, B.C.); born at Pedum near Tibur:—*Elegiacs*.
- SEX. AURELIUS PROPERTIUS (? 51-19, B.C.); born in Umbria:—*Elegiacs*.
- T. LIVIUS PATAVINUS (59-19, B.C.); of Patavinum (Padua):—*History* of Rome; of which only about one-fourth part is extant.
- P. OVIDIUS NASO (43 B.C.-13 A.D.); born at Sulmo:—*Elegiacs*; “*The Metamorphoses*,” a poem in 15 books, and other works.
- M. VITRUVIUS POLLIO (? temp. August.):—work on architecture.
- M. MANILIUS (? temp. August.):—Astronomical poem.
- T. PHAEDRUS (flor. cir. 15, A.D.); freedman of Augustus:—*Fables*.

§ 921. C. *Silver Age*.

- M. ANNAEUS SENECA, father of L. Seneca (60 B.C.-15 A.D.); born at Corduba (Cordova), in Spain:—*Rhetorical* works.
- L. ANNAEUS SENECA (? 5 B.C.-65 A.D.); born at Corduba:—*Philosophical* and *ethical* works: also *Tragedies*; unless the author of these be a third Seneca.
- C. VELLEIUS PATERCULUS (cir. 19 B.C.-31 A.D.); probably born at Rome:—*Roman History*.
- L. JULIUS MODERATUS COLUMELLA (flor. cir. 20 A.D.); born at Gades (Cadiz):—*Agriculture*.
- A. PERSIUS FLACCUS (A.D. 38-65); born at Volaterrae in Etruria:—*Satires* (*six*).
- C. SILIUS ITALICUS (A.D. 25-100):—*Epic* poem (“*Punica*”).
- M. ANNAEUS LUCANUS (A.D. 38-65); born at Corduba:—*Epic* poem (“*Pharsalia*”).
- C. PLINIUS SECUNDUS (A.D. 23-79); born either at Verona or Comum:—*Natural History* (37 books).

C. PLINIUS CAECILIUS SECUNDUS, nephew of the foregoing (61-?); probably born at Comum:—Epistles and Oration.

VALERIUS MAXIMUS (1st cent.?):—Historical Anecdotes.

C. VALERIUS FLACCUS (1st cent.); born at Padua:—Poem ("Argonautica").

Q. CURTIUS RUFUS (date and place of birth unknown):—History of Alexander the Great.

M. FABIUS QUINTILIANUS (ob. 88 A.D.); born at Calagurris in Spain:—Work on Rhetoric.

P. PAPINIUS STATIUS (ob. A.D. 95); born at Naples:—Poetry.

M. VALERIUS MARTIALIS (A.D. cir. 43-105); born at Bilbilis in Spain:—Epigrams (14 books).

JUNIUS JUVENALIS (latter part of 1st cent. A.D.); born at Aquinum:—Satires.

L. ANNAEUS FLORUS (?):—Summary of Roman History.

C. CORNELIUS TACITUS (cir. A.D. 60-120); place of birth unknown:—History of Rome from Augustus; Life of Agricola; Treatise on Germany; Dialogue on Oratory.

C. SÆTONIUS TRANQUILLUS (latter part of 1st and beginning of 2nd cent. A.D.); place of birth not known:—Lives of the Caesars, and others.

POMPONIUS MELA (latter part of 1st cent.); born in Spain:—First systematic writer on Geography in Latin.

T. PETRONIUS ARBITER (ob. 66, A.D.):—Satiric Romance.

AULUS GELLIUS (fl. 150, A.D.):—"Noctes Atticae," a kind of literary miscellany.

L. APULIUS or APPULEIUS (2nd cent.); born at Madaura in Africa:—Philosophical and imaginative works.

GAIUS or CAIUS (fl. 160, A.D.):—Law.

D. MAGNUS AURELIUS (4th cent.); born at Burdigala (Bordeaux):—Poetry.

JUSTINUS (?):—History.

AUR. THEODOSIUS MACROBIUS (ob. 395):—Critical and antiquarian works.

## APPENDIX II.—THE CALENDAR.

§ 922. The months in the Roman (Julian) Calendar corresponded to our own. But *Julius* and *Augustus* were called *Quintilis* and *Sextilis* down to the time of the emperor Augustus. The names of the months were adjectives, with which *mensis* was understood or might be expressed.

The days of the month were not, as with us, counted straight on from the beginning of the month to the end. Instead of this, three fixed points were taken in each month, and any particular day was reckoned as so many days from the nearest of those points in advance of it.

These three points were called,

- (1.) *Kālendae*, arum; *the Kalends*: being the 1st day of the month.
- (2.) *Nōnae*, arum; *the Nones*: being in certain months the 5th and in others the 7th day of the month, i. e., *nine* days before the Ides.\*
- (3.) *Īdūs*, um (*f.*); *the Ides*: being either the 13th or 15th day of the month. Thus the Ides divided the month into two nearly equal parts.

\* The following lines contain the names of the months in which the Nones (and consequently the Ides) fall late:

“In Mareb, July, October, May,  
The Nones fall on the seventh day.”

In the remaining eight months they fall on the fifth.

§ 923. The first day of a month being called its “*Kalends*,” the last day of the preceding month is called *the day before the Kalends* (*prīdie Kālendae*). Thus, the 31st of December is called *the day before the Kalends of January*: often written *prīdie Kal. Jan.* Then the day before that, is the 3rd of the Kalends, and so on back to the Ides, and from thence again to the Nones, which form fresh points of calculation, as seen in the following table:—

## CALENDAR FOR THE MONTH OF DECEMBER.

1. KALENDIS DECEMBRIBUS.	17. XVI. ante Kalendas Januarias.
2. IV. ante Nonas Decembres.	18. XV.       ”       ”
3. III.       ”       ”	19. XIV.       ”       ”
4. Prīdie Nonas Decembres.	20. XIII.       ”       ”
5. NONIS DECEMBRIBUS.	21. XII.       ”       ”
6. VIII. ante Idus Decembres.	22. XI.       ”       ”
7. VII.       ”       ”	23. X.       ”       ”
8. VI.       ”       ”	24. IX.       ”       ”
9. V.       ”       ”	25. VIII.       ”       ”
10. IV.       ”       ”	26. VII.       ”       ”
11. III.       ”       ”	27. VI.       ”       ”
12. Prīdie Idus Decembres.	28. V.       ”       ”
13. IDIBUS DECEMBRIBUS.	29. IV.       ”       ”
14. XIX. ante Kalendas Januarias.	30. III.       ”       ”
15. XVIII.       ”       ”	31. Prīdie       ”       ”
16. XVII.       ”       ”	

§ 924. In order to reduce an English to a Roman date, the number of the day in the English Calendar must be subtracted from that of the nearest fixed point in advance of it in the Roman Calendar of the same month. And as the Romans counted inclusively from one day to another, a unit must be added to the number thus obtained. Thus, the 10th of December is not the 3rd before the Ides, but the 4th, &c. Also, as the Kalends form an extra day, beyond the month, a unit must be added to the number of days in the month, in counting on to them

*Obs.* Hence the rule,—After subtracting, add *one* for the Nones or Ides, and *two* for the Kalends.

§ 925. In giving the day of the month as a date, the Ablative was used (§ 322): as, Kalendis Martiis, Idibus Martiis, die quinto ante Kalendas Martias. Both *die* and *ante* were often omitted, as XIV. Kal. Mai., which may be either Accusative or Genitive. But another very common way was to begin with *ante*, when the Ablative became changed into the Accusative under the government of the preposition: as, ante diem decimum quartum Kalendas Maias, usually written ad. XIV. Kal. Mai. In this construction, the Accusative Kalendas remained unchanged, as if it were still governed by *ante*.

§ 926. The expression *ante diem* must be considered as an indeclinable Substantive, since we find it often preceded by prepositions which govern the Accusative or Ablative: as,

In ante diem octāvum et septimum Kālendās Octōbres cōmītiis dicta dies. *The time was fixed for the comitia for the eighth and seventh days before the Kalends of October.*—Liv. 43, 16.

Supplicatio indicta est ex ante diem quintum Idus Octobres. *A public thanksgiving was appointed (to begin) from the fifth day before the Ides of October.*—Liv. 45, 2.

§ 927. When a day needed to be intercalated in the Julian Calendar, it was done by reckoning the 6th of the Kalends of March twice. Hence the name for Leap-year, Bissexile (*bis-sextus*). The two *sixths* (24th and 25th February) appear to have been distinguished as *prior* and *posterior*.

NOTE.—A complete Calendar for an ordinary year is given on the following page:—



§ 928. KALENDARARIUM.

Our days of the Month.	March, May, July, October, have 31 days.	January, August, December, have 31 days.	April, June, September, November, have 30 days.	February has 28 days, and in Leap Year 29.
1.	KALENDIS, VI.	KALENDIS, IV.	KALENDIS, IV.	KALENDIS, IV.
2.	V.	III. } ante Nonas.	III. } ante Nonas.	III. } ante Nonas.
3.	IV.	Idus Nonas.	Idus Nonas.	Idus Nonas.
4.	III.	Idus Nonas.	Idus Nonas.	Idus Nonas.
5.	Idus Nonas.	Idus Nonas.	Idus Nonas.	Idus Nonas.
6.	Idus Nonas.	Idus Nonas.	Idus Nonas.	Idus Nonas.
7.	Idus Nonas.	Idus Nonas.	Idus Nonas.	Idus Nonas.
8.	Idus Nonas.	Idus Nonas.	Idus Nonas.	Idus Nonas.
9.	Idus Nonas.	Idus Nonas.	Idus Nonas.	Idus Nonas.
10.	Idus Nonas.	Idus Nonas.	Idus Nonas.	Idus Nonas.
11.	Idus Nonas.	Idus Nonas.	Idus Nonas.	Idus Nonas.
12.	Idus Nonas.	Idus Nonas.	Idus Nonas.	Idus Nonas.
13.	Idus Nonas.	Idus Nonas.	Idus Nonas.	Idus Nonas.
14.	Idus Nonas.	Idus Nonas.	Idus Nonas.	Idus Nonas.
15.	Idus Nonas.	Idus Nonas.	Idus Nonas.	Idus Nonas.
16.	Idus Nonas.	Idus Nonas.	Idus Nonas.	Idus Nonas.
17.	Idus Nonas.	Idus Nonas.	Idus Nonas.	Idus Nonas.
18.	Idus Nonas.	Idus Nonas.	Idus Nonas.	Idus Nonas.
19.	Idus Nonas.	Idus Nonas.	Idus Nonas.	Idus Nonas.
20.	Idus Nonas.	Idus Nonas.	Idus Nonas.	Idus Nonas.
21.	Idus Nonas.	Idus Nonas.	Idus Nonas.	Idus Nonas.
22.	Idus Nonas.	Idus Nonas.	Idus Nonas.	Idus Nonas.
23.	Idus Nonas.	Idus Nonas.	Idus Nonas.	Idus Nonas.
24.	Idus Nonas.	Idus Nonas.	Idus Nonas.	Idus Nonas.
25.	Idus Nonas.	Idus Nonas.	Idus Nonas.	Idus Nonas.
26.	Idus Nonas.	Idus Nonas.	Idus Nonas.	Idus Nonas.
27.	Idus Nonas.	Idus Nonas.	Idus Nonas.	Idus Nonas.
28.	Idus Nonas.	Idus Nonas.	Idus Nonas.	Idus Nonas.
29.	Idus Nonas.	Idus Nonas.	Idus Nonas.	Idus Nonas.
30.	Idus Nonas.	Idus Nonas.	Idus Nonas.	Idus Nonas.
31.	Idus Nonas.	Idus Nonas.	Idus Nonas.	Idus Nonas.

## APPENDIX III.—MONEY.

§ 929. The original monetary unit of the Romans was the *as assis*, or *pound*, viz., of *copper*. The fractions of the *as* were designated as follows:—

Uncia,	one ounce;	$\frac{1}{12}$	of an <i>as</i> .
Sextans, ntis,	two ounces;	$\frac{1}{6}$ , that is, $\frac{1}{6}$	"
Quadrans, ntis,	three "	$\frac{1}{4}$ , "	"
Triens, ntis,	four "	$\frac{1}{3}$ , "	"
Quincunx, ncis,	five "	$\frac{1}{2}$ , "	"
Sēmis, issis,	six "	$\frac{1}{2}$ , "	"
Septunx, ncis,	seven "	$\frac{1}{2}$ , "	"
Bes, bēsis,	eight "	$\frac{1}{2}$ , "	"
Dodrans,* ntis,	nine "	$\frac{1}{2}$ , "	"
Dextans,† ntis,	ten "	$\frac{1}{2}$ , "	"
Deunx, ncis,	eleven "	$\frac{1}{2}$ , "	"

\* = de-quadrans

† = de-sextans.

*Obs.* The substantive *as* and its fractions are used of other units. Thus *terna jūgēra et septunces* (Liv.), is *three acres and seven-twelfths (a-piece)*: *hēres ex asse, heir to the entire estate, ex dodrante, to three-fourths, etc.* So *senus ex triente factum erat bessibus* (Cic.), *interest had risen from  $\frac{1}{3}$  per cent. (per month) to  $\frac{2}{3}$ ; or from 4 to 8 per cent.* (Madvig.)

§ 930. From being originally a full pound in weight, the *as* was gradually reduced, till, in the time of Augustus, it was a small coin, of little more than nominal value (comp. "*vilem redigatur ad assem*," Hor. Sat. 1, 1, 43). The *dēnārius* was a silver coin, first coined five years before the first Punic war, and was originally equal to 10 asses. But in the later times of the republic the unit of business calculations was the *sestertius* (*sesterce*), being the fourth part of a denarius, and equal to  $2\frac{1}{2}$  asses, or a little more than 2*d*. The *sesterce* was also a silver coin, and both it and the denarius maintained a uniform value, notwithstanding the depreciation of the unit on which both were based.

*Obs.* *Sestertius* is a contraction for *sēmis tertius*, lit. *the third is minus a half*, i. e.  $2\frac{1}{2}$ . This was often written *IIS*, whence the common abbreviation *IIS* or *IIS̄*.

§ 931. Sums of 1000 sesterces and under are counted regularly: *as, mille sestertii*, 1000 *sesterces*; *trecenti sestertii*, 300 *sesterces*. But in expressing several thousand sestertii, the neuter plural *sestertia* was employed, with which *millia* must be understood, unless expressed: *as duo sestertia* or *duo millia sestertium*, 2000 *sesterces*.

§ 932. To express sums of a million of sesterces and upwards the multiplicative Numeral Adverbs, *dēcies*, &c., are used with *sestertium* or *IIS*, the words, "*centēra millia*" being understood. Thus

dēcies sestertium (= decies centēna millia sestertium, *ten times a hundred thousand sesterces*) is *one million sesterces*. (Sometimes we find only decies centena, "millia sestertium" being understood.) In like manner sexāgies sestertium is *six millions of sesterces*.

In such expressions sestertium must have been originally a Gen. Pl.; but it came to be regarded as a Neuter Substantive in the Singular, and was declined accordingly: as,

Argenti ad summam sertertii dēcies in aerārium rettūlit, *he brought into the treasury up to the sum of one million of sesterces*.—Liv. 45, 4.

Serviliae sexāgies sestertio margaritam mercātus est, *he bought Servilia a pearl for six millions of sesterces*.—Suet. Caes. 50.

Greater and smaller sums may be combined in one statement; as, accēpi vīcies dūcenta trīginta quinque millia quadringentos dēcem et septem nummos, *2,235,417 sesterces*.—Cic. Terr. 2, 1, 14.

#### APPENDIX IV.—ROMAN NAMES.

§ 933. A Roman citizen had ordinarily three names, as Marcus Tullius Cicero, Caius Julius Caesar. Of these the middle one was properly called *nōmen*, being *the name of his gens*; the third, *cognōmen*, being that *of his family* (*fāmilia*); the first, *praenōmen*, or *fore-name*, being that by which he was known from the other members of the same family, and answering to our "Christian name."

In addition to these, some persons had what was called *agnōmen*, or *an appendage* to the name proper: as, Publius Cornelius Scipio *Africanus*. When a person was adopted into another gens, he took the entire name of the individual adopting him, but appended to it that of his former gens as an *agnomen*, with the adjectival termination, -anus. Thus, the son of L. Aemilius Paullus, adopted by P. Cornelius Scipio, became P. Cornelius Scipio *Aemilianus*.

Obs. 1. The same individual might have more than one *agnomen*. Thus the P. Cornelius Scipio Aemilianus mentioned above, was also called P. Cornelius Scipio Africanus Aemilianus.

Obs. 2. The name of father and grandfather were often added by way of distinction. Thus C. Fannius (Cic. Am. 1, 3) is called M. F., *i. e.* Marci filius; and Cn. Pompēius Strabo, father of the triumvir, is called Cn. Pompēius, Sex. F., Cn. N. (nepos) Strabo; *i. e.* son of Sextus, grandson of Cnaeus.

Obs. 3. Women are designated by the gentile name of their family, as Julia, Pompēia, Sempŕonia.

Obs. 4. In some cases an individual had only two names: as, C. Marius.

§ 934. The whole of a man's name was of course rarely, if ever, used in speaking to him, though it was employed in the headings of letters, and in documents generally. The family name (cognomen) was mostly used in addressing those not of the same family; the use of the gentile name (nomen) had something formal and respectful about it; that of the fore-name (praenomen) was confined to members of the same family or intimate friends. Even an honourable agnomen, like Magnus, Africanus, was transmitted to his family by the person who bore it.

§ 935. When a slave was manumitted by a citizen, he took the praenomen and gentile name of his manumitter, and added to it some other appropriate name (often that by which he was before called), as cognomen. Thus Cicero's freedman, Tiro, is called M. Tullius Tiro. As additional names of freedmen, may be mentioned, Q. Horatius Flaccus (the father), P. Terentius Afer; L. Cornelius Chrysogonus, etc.

## APPENDIX V — ABBREVIATIONS.

### § 936. A. PRAENOMINA.

A.	Aulus.	Mam.	Mamercus.
App.	Appius.	N. or Num.	Numerius.
C.	Caius.	P.	Publius.
D.	Decimus.	Q.	Quintus.
Cn. (Gn.)	Cnaeus.	S. or Sex.	Sextus.
K.	Kaeso.	Ser.	Servius.
L.	Lucius.	Sp.	Spurius.
M.	Marcus.	T.	Titus.
M'.	Mamius.	Tl.	Tiberius.

### § 937. B. TITLES, &c. (ANCIENT).

Aed.	Aedilis.	O. M.	Optimus Maximus
Cos.	Consul.		(surnames of Jupiter).
Cons.	consules.	Pont. Max.	Pontifex Maximus.
Des.	Designatus.	Q. R.	Quirites.
D.	Divus (applied to deceased emperors).	S. P. Q. R.	Senatus Populusque Romanus.
Imp.	Imperator *	Tr. Pl.	Tribunus Plebis.
P. C.	Patres Conscripti.		

\* In republican times this was an honorary title, bestowed by the Senate upon victorious generals. By the emperors it was used to signify their possession of supreme power. In the former case it was used after the name, as, M. Tullius Cicero Imperator; in the latter it was prefixed, as Imperator C. Julius Caesar.

## 938. C. MISCELLANEOUS (ANCIENT).

A.	Absolvo, <sup>1</sup> Antiquo. <sup>2</sup>	F. F. F.	Felix, faustum, fortunatum.
C.	Condemno. <sup>1</sup>		
N. L.	Non liquet. <sup>1</sup>	Il. C. S. E.	Illic conditus, situs est. <sup>2</sup>
U. R.	Uti Rogas. <sup>2</sup>	Il. M. Il. N. S.	Hoc monumentum heredes non sequitur. <sup>3</sup>
A. U. C.	Anno urbis conditae.		
D. D.	Dono dedit.	L.	Libertas.
D. D. D.	Dat, dicat, dedicat.	M. P.	Mille Passuum.
D. M.	Dis Manibus. <sup>3</sup>	N.	Nepos.
D. O. M.	Deo optimo, maximo.	Ob.	Obiit.
F.	Filius.	Resp.	Respublica.
S. D. or S. only.	Salutem dicit.	S. C.	Senatus consultum.
S. P. D.	Salutem plurimam dicit. <sup>4</sup>	S. V. B. E. E. V.	Si vales bene est, ego valeo. <sup>4</sup>
F. C.	Faciendum curavit. <sup>3</sup>	Pot.	Potestas.
		V.	Vixit. <sup>3</sup>

<sup>1</sup> Judicial formula.<sup>2</sup> Used in voting (with respect to laws).<sup>3</sup> Sepulchral.<sup>4</sup> Epistolary.

## § 939. D. MODERN.

A.B. or B.A.	Artium Baccalaureus.	leg.	lege, legendum.
A.M. or M.A.	Artium Magister.	LL.B.	Legum Baccalaureus.
A.C.	Ante Christum.	LL.D.	Legum Doctor.
cet.	cetera.	M.B.	Medicinae Baccalaureus.
cf.	confer, conferatur.	M.D.	Medicinae Doctor.
cod. codd.	codex, codices.	MS., MSS	Manuscriptus (liber), or pl.
D.	Doctor.	Mus. D.	Musicae Doctor.
del.	dele, deleatur.	N.B.	Nota bene.
ed., edd.	editio, editiones.	N.T.	Novum Testamentum.
c.g.	exempli gratiâ.	Obs.	Observe.
etc.	et cetera.	P.S.	Post scriptum.
h.e.	hoc est.	q.v.	quod vide.
I.H.S.	Jesus Hominum Salvator.	sc.	scilicet.
I.N.R.I.	Jesus Nazareus Rex Judaeorum.	sq., sqq.	quod sequitur, or pl.
J.C.	Jesus Christus.	S.T.B.; S.T.D.; S.T.P.	Sanctae Theologiae Baccalaureus, Doctor, Professor.
I. ctus (Ictus).	Juris consultus.	V. cel., V. cl.	Vir celeberrimus, clarissimus.
ibid., ib.	ibidem.	V.D.M.	Verbi Divini Minister.
id.	idem.	V.T.	Vetus Testamentum.
J.U.D.	Juris Utriusque Doctor.		
l.c., ll. cc.	locus citatus, loci citati.		

N.B.—A doubled letter denotes the plural: see examples given above.

## INDEX.

(The Numbers indicate the Sections. The Words in Italics are contained in the Accidence.)

- A changed to e in comps., 206, 1, 2.  
     to i                   "       206, 1.  
     to u                   "       206, 3.
- a, ab, 557, 1;—in sing., 715.
- abhine, constr. 325, obs. 2.
- abbreviations, 936.
- ablative, of 1st Decl., in *abus*, 17, obs. 4.  
     of 3rd Decl., in *i*, 32.  
     of 3rd Decl., in *i* and *e*, 33.  
     of 3rd Decl. (pl.), in *is*, 45.
- Ablative, syntax of, 102, *sqq.*; of Separation, 303, *sqq.*; of motion from, 261; after opus, 308; of Origin, 309, *sq.*; after ortus, etc., 310; of Cause, etc. 311, *sqq.*; after pass. verbs, without ab, 311, obs.; after verbs denoting feelings, 313; of Price, 316; of duration, 249, obs. 2; Absolute, 312, *sqq.*; absol. without subs., 313; without participle, 314; of Quality, 318; of comparison, 319; of comparison, after alius, 630, obs.; measure, 321; Time when, 322; Time, within which, 323; Time, how long ago, 324; Place, 326, *sqq.*  
     formation of, 881 (*sing.*), 892 (*pl.*)
- Absque, 557, 2.
- Abstract subs. In plur., 593, 594;—in Tac., 721, 6.
- Abstract, expr. by *plur.* of concrete, 591.  
     for concrete, 592; 610, obs.; in Tac., 724, 1.
- ac, atque, 563.
- acatalectic verse, 782, obs.
- accent, where placed, 8.
- accusative of 3rd Dec., in *im*, 31.  
     (pl.), in *is* and *es*, 37.  
     Greek, in *u*, 40, 1.  
     in *in*, 40, 2.  
     in *en* (1st Dec.), 40, 3.  
     (pl.), in *as*, 41.  
     syntax of, 214, *sqq.*, cognate, 235, double, 243; after intrans. verbs, 236; 251; after passives, 243, obs. 4; 244, obs. 3; 251, obs. 1 after verbs comp. with prep 219; factitive, 245; of motion towards, 249; in Tac. 729, 1, of time, space, 249, in exclamations, 240; of closer definition, 251; Greek, 252; of neuter prons, 253; used adverbially 254; after verbs of remembering etc., 278, obs. 1.  
     and Infinitive, 507, *sqq.*  
     formation of, 860 (*sing.*), 886 (*pl.*)
- acer, acris, are, 48.
- acens, term of adj.; 187, 2 obs.
- acum, 173, 1.
- ad, 536, 1; in Livy, 715; used adverbially, 556, 1, obs.
- adeo, emphatic, 614, 3; 653.
- adipiscor, 171, 16.
- p. part. in pass. sense, 101, obs. 2.
- Adjectives, 55, *sqq.*  
     in *er* (*e*)*ra*, (*e*)*rum*, 56, obs. 1.  
     in *ur*, 56, obs. 2.  
     derivative, 186, 190.  
     governing genitive: of capacity, 276; of guilt, 279, obs. 3; of fulness, etc., 276, 317; of price, 316; of origin, 310; of feeling, 314.  
     governing dative; of advantage, etc., 298.  
     peculiarities of: equiv. to subs. (*imus*-*ummus*), 341; equiv. to genitive case, 611, 1; in Tac., 721, 5; in neuter—abstract subs. 342; with force of adverbs, 343; neuter = adverbs, 344.  
     compared together, 350.  
     position of, 671; when emphatic, 672.  
     two, requiring conjunction, 340.
- Adonian verse, 791.
- adulor, constr. of, 291, obs. 1.
- Adverbs, termin. of, 196, *sqq.*  
     compared, 129; irregular, 130.  
     classified, 131.  
     derivative, 196.  
     derived from numerals, 72, 73.  
     pronouns, 131.  
     joined with subs., 546; compared together, 549.  
     position of, 678.
- adversus (prep.), 416, 2.
- ae (diphthong), 6, obs.
- changed to *i* in compounds, 206, 5.
- aedes, sing. and pl., 51.
- aemulor, constr. 291, obs. 4.
- agnomen, 931.
- agnosco, 167.
- ago and comps., 148, 41.
- ago, agito, in Sall., 694.
- aito, 121.
- at term. of subs., 182, 6.
- Aleic verse, 802.
- alio, 144, 11.
- alienus, constr. of, 198, obs. 5.
- aliquis, 82, obs. 1.
- aliquis and quis, 181.

-*alis*, term. of adj., 187, 5.  
*alius*, 57.  
*alius* . . . *alius*, 390, 629.  
*alius* in diff. cases, 629.  
 sequence of, 630; foll. by abl., 630, *obs.*  
*alo*, 160, 1.  
 Alphabet, 819, *sqq.*; whence derived, 820.  
*alter*, 57.  
 alternating verse, 804.  
*alteruter*, 82, *obs.* 6.  
*ambage*, 52, 3.  
*ambio* (irr.), 116, *obs.* 5.  
*amicio*, 168, 13.  
*amphibrachys*, 763.  
*amphimacer*, 763.  
*amplexus* in pass. sense, 101, *obs.* 1.  
*amplius*, constr. of, 349.  
*-anus*, term. of adj., 187, 8; 188; 189, 3;  
 190, *obs.*  
*an*, in direct double questions, 414.  
 in simple questions, 415.  
 after *haud scio*, etc., 438.  
*anacrusis*, 794.  
*anapaest*, 763; *anapestic verse*, 789.  
*ango*, 158, 21.  
*anhelo*, with acc., 236.  
*animi*, constr. of, 237, *obs.*  
*ante*, 556, 3.  
 verbs comp. with, 292, *obs.* 3.  
 or post, constr. of, 325, *obs.* 1.  
*antequam*, 300, 501.  
*antibacchius*, 763.  
*antispastus*, 763.  
*antithesis*, in Sallust, 695.  
*apage*, 124.  
*aperio*, 168, 14.  
*apiscor*, 171, 16.  
*apodosis*, what, 424; expr. by *debeo*, etc.,  
 428, *obs.*; suppressed, 426.  
*apposition*, 214; of adjectives, 216; in case  
 of *urbs*, *civitas*, 215 (comp. 229); equiv.  
 to *as*, *when*, 217.  
*apud*, 556, 4; = *at*, *ib.*, *obs.*  
*aqua*, -ae, 51.  
*-ar*, term. of subs., 182, 6.  
*ar* = *ad*, 832, 2.  
*arceo* and comps., 156, 1.  
*arcesso*, 162, 6.  
*Archilochus*, imitated by Hor., 807, *sqq.*  
*ardeo*, 154, 4.  
*arguo*, 163, 2.  
*-aris*, term. of adj., 187, 5, *obs.*  
*-arium*, term. of subs., 182, 2.  
*-arius*, term. of adj., 187, 9.  
 of subs., 182, 1.  
*arsis*, 762.  
 Article, none, 10.  
 Arval brothers, chant of, 817.  
 Aryan family of lang., 819.  
*-as*, term. of adj., 189, 4.  
*as*, parts of, 929.  
 Asclepiadean verse, 794, *obs.*  
 asking, verbs of, 244.  
*assentior*, 172.  
*assis*, 281, *obs.* 2.  
*assuefacio*, *assuesco*, constr. of, 292, *obs.* 1.  
*asynartete metre*, 799.  
*asyndeton*, 565, *obs.* 2; in Sall. 689.  
*at*, 575; in sudden transitions, 576.  
*atque*, ac, 563.  
 after compar., 352.

*atqui*, 577.  
 attraction of dative, 295, *obs.*; 296, *obs.* 1, 2.  
 of relative (in gender), 380; in  
 case, 380, *obs.*  
 after infinitives, 513.  
*-atus*, term. of subs., 182, 4.  
 of adj., 187, 12.  
*audeo*, 119, B.  
*augeo*, 154, 1.  
*ausim*, 111, 3.  
*aut* and *vel*, 570.  
*autem*, 572.  
 authors, Latin, 919, *sqq.*  
*auxilium*, -a, 51.  
*ave*, 124.  
*aveo*, 156, 2, 1.  
*-ax*, term. of adj., 186, 4.  
 B, power, and changes of, 827.  
*bacchius*, 763.  
*Barbaria*, -ies, 53, 3.  
 being, verbs of, constr., 232.  
*belli*, constr., 258; *bello*, 328.  
*bene* (compar.), 131.  
*bibo*, 157, 13.  
*-bilis*, term. of adj., 186, 3.  
*bonus* (compar.), 66.  
*bos*, 30.  
*-bulum* } term. of subs., 181, 9.  
*-brum* }  
*-bundus*, term. of adj., 110, 3.  
 C, original power of, 822; lost before *n*, *nt*,  
 etc., 822, 2; = *t* before *ia*, *io*, etc., *ib.* 3.  
*Cado* and comps., 159, 13.  
*caedo* and comps., 159, 14.  
*Caesar*, style of, 695; his commentaries, 695.  
*obs.*; his freq. use of abl. absol., 698; long  
 periods, 699.  
*caesura*, in hexameter, 771; penthemimeral,  
 etc., 773; in pentameter, 773; in iambic  
 trimeter, 783. (See under the diff. metres.)  
*calendar*, Roman, 922, *sqq.*  
*calleo*, 156, 2.  
 calling, verbs of, in passive, 232.  
*callus*, -lum, 53, 1.  
*calveo*, 156, 2, 2.  
*cando* and comps., 159, 20.  
*caneo*, 156, 2, 3.  
*cano* and comps., 160, 14.  
*capesso*, 162, 7.  
*capio* and comps., 157, 11.  
*capite*, *capitis*, constr., 280.  
*carbosus*, -a, 54.  
*carcer*, -eres, 51.  
 cardinal numerals, 69, 73.  
*carpo* and comps., 157, 1.  
 Cases, meanings of, 15; formation of, 841,  
*sqq.*  
*castrum*, -a, 51.  
 catalectic verse, 783, *obs.*  
 cause, in abl., 311.  
*caveo*, 153, 1.  
*caveo*, constr. of, 291, *obs.* 7-  
*-ce*, with prons., 78, *obs.* 1.  
*cedo*, *cette*, 124.  
*cedo*, 159, 10.  
*ceto*, constr. of, 243; see *obs.* 3-  
*censco* and comps., 150, 6.  
*cerno*, 111, 1.  
*certe* and *certo*, 659.  
*ceterum*, 573.  
 change of *a* to *i*, *e*, *u*, in comp., 206.

- change of *ae* to *i* in comp., 206, 5.  
*au* to *o* in comp., 206, 6.  
*e* to *i* in comp., 206, 4.  
*e* to *i* in subs., 21, obs. 2.  
*e* to *u* in subs., 28, obs. 2.  
*i* to *e* in subs., 29, obs. 1.  
*o* to *i* in subs., 25, obs. 1.  
*o* to *u* in subs., 28, obs. 2.  
*u* to *i* in subs., 28, obs. 3.  
 consonants: see the several letters.
- eholiambus, 786.  
 choriambic metre, 794, *sqq.*; the foot, 763.  
*ci*, how pronounced, 822, 3.  
 Cicero, style of, 700, *sqq.*; doubles words, 701; uses abstr. subs. for concrete, 702; his diminutives, 703; various senses of *versor* ratio, 704, 705.
- cico*, 151, 6.  
*cingo*, 158, 4.  
*circa*, circum, 556, 5.  
*circiter*, 556, 7.  
*circum*, in comp., 240, 246.  
*circumdo*, constr., 272, obs. 3.  
*cis*, *citra*, 556, 8.  
*citerior*, compar., 66.  
*civitas*, constr. of, 215; 257, obs. 2.  
*clam*, 558, 5.  
 Claudius, adds to alphabet, 824.  
*claudio* and comps., 159, 1.  
*coelum*, -i, 54.  
*coeno*, -atus, 119, B. obs.  
*coepi*, 120.  
 cognate accusative, 235.  
*cognasco*, 167.  
 collective subs., constr., 222.  
 collective use of sing., 593.  
*colo*, 160, 2.  
 comic tetrameter, 787.  
*commentarius*, -um, 53, 1.  
*comminiscor*, 171, 17.  
*como*, 160, 15.  
 comparative degr., 63; formation of, 893, *sqq.*  
     of adj. in -ius, 64, IV.  
     = "too" or "somewhat," 351.  
     of adv., constr. of, 548.
- comparison of adj. and adv. together, 350, 549; in Tac., 720, 2.  
 composition of words, 204-208.  
 concealing, verbs of, 243.  
 concord, 218.  
     of Verb, 219, *sqq.*; of Adj., 223, *sqq.*; of Rel., 228.  
 concrete for abstr. subs., 589.  
 conditio, etym. of, 822, obs. 4.  
*congruo*, 163, 15.  
 conjugations, how distinguished, 89.  
     1, 2, 3, 4, 92-98; 3 and 4, 100.  
     periphrastic, 102.
- conjunctions, 139.  
     with subj., 487, *sqq.*  
     connective, 561, *sqq.*  
     adversative, 571, *sqq.*  
     hypothetical, 579.  
     causal, 581.  
     conclusive, 582.  
     final, 586.  
     temporal, 587.  
     as particles, 652.
- connoise, 157, 8.  
 consonants classified, 821.
- consulo*, 160, 3.  
*consulo*, constr. of, 291, obs. 7.  
*contentus*, with *abl.*, 314.  
*contio*, orthog. of, 822, obs. 1.  
*contra*, 556, 8.  
 contracted verbs, 104, 106.  
     syllables; quant. of, 728.
- copula*, 213, obs.; omitted in Sall., 687, obs.  
*coquo*, 158, 3.  
*coram*, 557, 3.  
*correlatives*, 83; syntax of, 379.  
*credo*, 159, 18.  
*crepo* and comps., 149, 1.  
*cresco*, 167, 1.  
*creticus* (foot), 763.  
*cubo* and comps., 149, 2.  
*cudo*, 159, 21.  
*cujas*, 77, obs. 4.  
*cujus*, -a, -um, 77, obs. 3.  
*(cumbo)* and comps., 157, 9; 149, 2.  
*-cundus*, term. of adj., 126, 4, obs.  
*cupio*, 157, 16.  
*cupressus*, -i and -ūs, 53, 4.  
*cum*, 557, 4; plural Verb after, 220, obs. 3;  
     denoting manner, 312.  
*cunque*, 661; tmesis of, 661, obs.  
*cur*, 133.  
*curo* takes acc., 291, obs. 2.  
*curro* and comps., 161, 6.  
*D*, lost before *s*, 23, obs. 2.  
     final nearly = *t*, 830.  
     final often lost, 830, 3.  
     termination of *Abl.*, etc., 881.  
     changed to *l*, 831, 2.  
     changed to *r*, 832, 2.
- dactyl, 763.  
 dactylic hexameter, 768.  
     pentameter, 779.  
     tetrameter, 812.
- (days), 52, 1.  
 dative in -abus, 17, obs. 4.  
     -is for -ibus, 47.
- dative, syntax of, 287, *sqq.*; of remeter object, 287, 292; of advantage, 288; after Adjectives, 298; *dativus ethicus*, 290; after various Verbs, 291, *sqq.*; after *sum* = *habeo*, 296 denoting agent after Passive Verbs, 293; esp. after gerundive, 294; after Impers. Verbs, 295; double, after licet, etc., 295, obs.; of names, by attraction, 296, obs. 1; of purpose or result, 297; esp. in Tac. 721, 2; after idem, 620; after adverbs, 299; exceptional uses of Greek dative, 300, denoting motion towards, 301; of reference, 288, obs. 3.  
     formation of, 874, *sqq.* (sing.), 891 (pl.).
- dativus ethicus*, 290.  
*de*, 557, 5.  
*deet*, 126; constr. of, 242.  
 declensions, 17, *sqq.*  
*dedeet*, constr. of, 242.  
 defective comparison, 66.  
     substantives, 52.  
     verbs, 120.
- defetiscor*, 171, 19.  
*definition*, genitive of, 275.  
     accus. of closer, 251.
- deleo*, 151, 1.  
*demo*, 160, 16.  
 demonstrative pronouns, 364, *sqq.*





*flecto*, 153, 31.  
*fleo*, 151, 2.  
*(fugo)* in comps., 153, 5.  
*floci*, con-tr. of, 281, *obs.* 2.  
*floreo*, 156, 4.  
*fluo*, 158, 51.  
*fodio*, 159, 24.  
*foet-o*, 156, 2, 5.  
*foras*, 132.  
*(fors)*, 52, 2.  
*fortuna*, sing. and pl., 51.  
*foveo*, 151, 3.  
*frango* and comps., 153, 43.  
*fremo*, 163, 7.  
*frendo*, -eo, 159, 34.  
*frenum*, -i and -a, 54.  
*frequentative verbs*, 194, 1.  
*fretus*, with abl., 314.  
*frico*, 149, 9.  
*frigeo*, 154, 14.  
*frigo*, 153, 6.  
*fruo*, with abl., 315.  
*(fruz)*, 52, 1.  
*frugi* (as adj.), 60, *obs.* 3.  
     compared, 66.  
*fruor*, 171, 1.  
*fuat*, constr. of, 242, *obs.*  
*fulness*, or want, Adjectives denoting, 276, 317.  
*fungor*, with abl., 315; with acc., 315; *obs.* 3.  
*future tense*, 390; = Imperative, 420, *obs.* 2.  
*future Infinitive*, how expr., 518.  
*future-perfect*, 405; of what is to be done instantly, 406; sign of often not expr. in English, 407.  
*O*, when added to the alphabet, 820, *obs.* 3;  
     when elided, 824, 2.  
*Galliambic verse*, 797.  
*gaudeo*, 119, B.  
*geno*, 160, 8.  
*genders of subs.*, 141.  
*generalization with rerum*, 595.  
*generic plural*, 591.  
*genitive sing.*, -as, -ai (1 Dec.), 17, *obs.* 2.  
     pl. -um (1 Dec.), 17, *obs.* 3.  
     pl. -um (2 Dec.), 19, *obs.* 4.  
     sing. -i = li (2 Dec.), 19, *obs.* 2.  
     pl. -on, 20, 4; 43.  
     -ium and -um, 21, *obs.* 1; also  
     35, 36; and 891.  
     (Greek), -i, 39, 1.  
     -os, 19, 2.  
     -us, 39, 3.  
*genitive*, constr. of, 263, *sqq.*; after substantives, 261; of the possessor, 265; after sum, 266; Subjective, 267; Objective, 268; Objective, after Adjectives, 276, *obs.* 1; Partitive, 269; of Quality, 274; of Definition, 275; after Adjectives, 276, *sqq.*; after Verbs, 278, *sqq.*; after *to accuse*, etc., 279; Genitive of price (tantū, etc.), 281; (flect, etc.), 281, *obs.* 2; after verbs of feeling, etc., 282; with interest and refert, 283. Exceptional uses of, 284; of separation, 284; Greek genitive, 285; in apposition with possessive Pronoun, 267, *obs.* 2; in Tac. after Adjectives, 721, 1; in Livy, 703.  
*genitive*, formation of, 862, *sqq.* (*sing.*), 889, *sqq.* (*pl.*).  
*gero*, 161, 4.

*gerund*, 86, 3.  
*gerund*, constr. of, 532; governs a case, 533; foll. by genitive, 540; converted to Gerundive, 537; where preferred to Gerundive, 537, *obs.* 2; as abl. absol., 541.  
*Gerundive in undus*, 110, 3.  
*gerundive*, ord. use of, 534; as imperf. part. pass. 522, *obs.* 2; with est, impers., 536; of Purpose or Result, in dat., 538; also in gen., 539.  
*gerundive and gerund*, freq. use in Livy, 714.  
*gignentia*, intrans. in Sall., 694, 2.  
*gigno*, 160, 11.  
*glisco*, 167, 2.  
*gloria*, etym. of, 824, No. 2, *obs.*  
*glubo*, 157, 2.  
*Glyconian metre*, 795.  
*government*, syntactic, 217.  
*gradior* and comps., 171, 3.  
*grandinat*, 126.  
*gratia*, sing. and pl., 51.  
*gratia*, constr. of, 264, *obs.*  
*gratis*, 132.  
*Greek Subs.* (1 Dec.), 18.  
     (2 Dec.), 20.  
     (3 Dec.), 38.  
*Greek usage of Genitive*, 284, 285.  
     of Dative, 300; (296, *obs.* 2).  
*guberno*, governs acc., 291, *obs.* 6.  
*gutturals*, 822, *sqq.*  
*H*, power and uses of, 825.  
*habeo* in Sall., 694.  
*haereo*, 154, 5.  
*haurio*, 168, 3.  
*hebeo*, 156, 2, 6.  
*hand scio an*, 438.  
*hei and vae*, with dat., 250, *obs.* 2.  
*Hendecasyllabics*, 792.  
*hendiadys*, 602.  
     in Tac., 724, 2.  
*heteroclita*, 53.  
*heterogenea*, 54.  
*hexameter verse*, 788.  
     endings of, 776.  
*hic* (pron.), use of, 364.  
*hic and ille*, 366, 367.  
*Hipponactean verse*, 786 (*note*), 806, *obs.* 1.  
*historical present*, 393; foll. by past-Subj., 423, *obs.*  
*historical Infinitive*, 517; in Sall., 691; in Tac., 721, 7.  
*horreo*, 156, 5.  
*humco*, 156, 2, 7.  
*humi*, constr. of, 258.  
*hypercatalectic verse*, 782, *obs.*  
*hypermeter lines*, 778.  
*hypothetical sentences*, 424, *sqq.*; with Indic., 424, 1; with Subj., 424, 2, *sqq.*; and Indic. in apodosis, 428, *obs.*; without regular protasis, 429.  
*I* as vowel of connexion, 207.  
     changed to e, 29, *obs.* 1.  
     dropped in stems in -al, -ar, 29, *obs.* 2.  
*-ia*, term. of subs., 185, 1.  
*Iambic trimeter*, 781, 807; scæzon, 786.  
     dimeter, 784, *obs.* 2.  
*iambus*, 763.  
*-ianus*, term. of adj., 188.  
*-icius*, or -itius, do., 187, 2.  
*ico*, 158, 45.

- icus, term. of adj., 187, 3; 188, *obs.*; 190.  
 -icus, *du.*, 187, 3, *obs.*  
 id quod, constr. of, 230.  
 idem, 79.  
 idem, attendant of qui, 372, 379, *obs.* 3;  
   emphatic after Relative, 373; = *also, and*  
   yet, 375; sequence of, 620; foll. by dat.,  
   620.  
 -idus, constr. of, 186, 2.  
 -ies, term. of subs., 181, 10.  
 igitur, 584; often first in its sentence in  
   Sall., 693.  
 -ile, term. of subs., 182, 8.  
 -ilis, term. of adj., 186, 3; 187, 4.  
 ille, of celebrity, 365; distinguished from  
   hic, 366, 367; repeated pleonastically,  
   615; with adj. or adv., 616; position of,  
   675.  
 -im, term. of adv., 861, 8, *obs.*  
 imbuo, 163, 3.  
 impedimentum, -a, 51.  
 Imperative, Pres., 417.  
   Future, 418.  
 imperfect: see Past-imperf.  
 imperfect part., 523; as substantive, 638.  
 impero, foll. by acc. and infin., 451, 3.  
 impersonal verbs, 125.  
 impersonal verbs, with acc., 241, 242; with  
   dat., 295.  
 in, prep., 558, 1.  
 -ina, term. of subs., 182, 3.  
 inceptives, 164-167; 194, 2.  
 indeclinable subs., 42; gender of, 141, 3.  
 indef. pronouns, use of, 383, *sqq.*  
 Indicative, used predicatively, 392, *sqq.*:  
   interrog., 408; for Subj. in oratio obliqua,  
   710.  
 indirect questions, 434.  
 Indo-European lang., 819.  
 indulgeo, 154, 2.  
 induo, 163, 4.  
 indutiae, orthog. of, 822, *obs.* 3.  
 inferior, 66.  
 Infinitive in ier, 111, 1.  
 Infinitive, as Subject, 505; as Object, 506;  
   Accusative and Infinitive, 507, *sqq.*; after  
   verbs of *willingness, ability, etc.*, 512, *sqq.*;  
   in exclamations, 516; Historical, 517;  
   circumlocution for future Inf., 518; in  
   oratio obliqua, 465; in questions in oratio  
   obl., 469; after adjectives, 506, *obs.* 2.  
 infra, 556, 11.  
 ingratia, 132.  
 inquam, 122.  
 inquit, ellipsis of, 635, 2.  
 instar, constr. of, 264, *obs.* 3.  
 instrument, in abl., 311.  
 inter, 556, 12; repeated, 650.  
 interest, constr. of, 283 (see *ubs.*).  
 interior, 66.  
 interjections, 140.  
 internecio, 52, 1.  
 interrogative particles, 409.  
   sentences: see questions.  
 inira, 556, 13.  
 intransitive verbs, of 2nd Conj., 193.  
   of 3rd Conj., 195.  
   in pass., 84, *obs.* 2; 234.  
   *obs.* 2.  
   with trans. sense, 236.  
 -inus, term. of adj., 187, 7; 188; 183, 2.  
 invideo, constr. of, 291, *obs.* 5.  
 iuvitus, used adverbially, 343.  
 -io, term. of subs., 181, 3.  
 Iunius a minor, 796.  
 ipse = *very just*, 376.  
 ipse, constr. of, 377, 617.  
 (et) ipse, 618.  
 is, ea, id, use of, 370; dative and acc. of,  
   omitted, 371; the attendant on qui, 372,  
   379, *obs.* 3; et is, isque, 374, 619.  
 iste, force of, 368; used contemptuously,  
   369.  
 ita, use of, 551; = *very*, 644, 1; in adjura-  
   tions, 644, 2.  
 itaque, 585.  
 J, power and changes of, 838.  
 Jacio and comps., 158, 46.  
 jam dudum, pridem, with pres., 392, *obs.*  
   cf. 394, *obs.*  
 Janus = Dianus, 841.  
 jocus, -i and -a, 54.  
 Jovis = Diovis, 841.  
 jubeo, 154, 6.  
 jubeo, takes acc. and infi., 451, *obs.* 2.  
 jagerum, 53, 6.  
 Jungo, 158, 7.  
 Jupiter, 30.  
 juro, -atus, 119, B, *obs.*  
 jussive. see Imperative.  
 jussu, etc., 313, *obs.* 1.  
 jurat, constr. of, 242, *obs.*  
 juvenis (compar.), 66, *obs.* 1.  
 juvo, 149, 2, 1.  
 juvo, takes acc., 291, *obs.* 2.  
 juxta, 556, 14.  
 K, when used, 5, *obs.*  
 L, power of, 831, changed to r after another  
   l, 831, 2.  
 labials, 827, *sqq.*  
 labor, 171, 4.  
 lacerio, 162, 9.  
 lacio and comps., 158, 20.  
 laedo and comps., 159, 3.  
 lambo, 157, 14.  
 last word in sent. emphatic, 667.  
 lateo, 156, 6.  
 lateo, constr. of, 242, *obs.*  
 Latin, when and where spoken, 1.  
   languages derived from, 819.  
 Latin authors, lists of, 919, *sqq.*  
 laurus, -i and -us, 53, 4.  
 lavo, 149, 2, 2; 163, 12.  
 lego and comps., 158, 47.  
 -lentus, term. of adj., 187, 11.  
 letters introduced by Claudius, 820, *obs.* 4.  
 iibens, used adverbially, 343.  
 liber, constr. of, 307, *obs.* 2.  
 libet, 126.  
 liceor and comps., 170, 2.  
 licet, 126.  
 licet, libet with dat., 295.  
   conj. with Subj., 502.  
 lingo, 158, 9.  
 lino, 160, 26.  
 linquo, 158, 48.  
 liquet, 126.  
 liquids, 867, *sqq.*  
 liquor (dep. verb), 171, 5.  
 littera, sing. and pl., 51.  
 liveo, 156, 2, 8.  
 Livy, style of, 706, *sqq.*; his Patavinity, 706,

- obs.; his use of metonymy, 707; of the Genitive, 708; of collective singular, 709, of Indic. in *oratio obl.*, 710; of fut. part. hypothetically, 713; of Gerund and Gerundive, 714.
- ll, power of, 831, 3.
- locative, 256, *obs.* 1.
- locus, -i and -a, 54.
- locus, via, in abl., 329.
- logaoedic verse, 798.
- longe, with superlative, 354.
- loquor, 173, 6.
- luceo, 154, 16.
- lucescit, 136.
- ludo, 159, 4.
- ludus, sing. and pl., 51.
- lugeo, 154, 17.
- luc, 163, 16.
- luxuria, -ies, 53, 3.
- M, power and changes of, 834.
- maereo, 156, 2, 9.
- magni, parvi, constr. of, 281, *obs.* 1; 316, *obs.* 2.
- magnopere, (compar.) 131.
- magnus (compar.), 66.
- Maius, etym. of, 838, 3.
- male (compar.), 131.
- male = non, 646.
- malim, malle, 446, *obs.*
- malo, 113.
- malo, with subj., 447.
- malus (compar.), 66.
- mando (3 Conj.), 159, 26.
- maneo, 154, 7.
- manner, abl. of, 311.
- matrīa, -ies, 51, 3.
- meā, tuā, etc., 283, *obs.* 1.
- medeor, 170, 3.
- medeor, medicor, with dat., 291, *obs.* 3.
- mediocris, in Sall., 694.
- medius fidius } 133.
- mehercle }
- mei, tui, use of, 268, *obs.* 4.
- memini, 120.
- memini, constr. of, 278, *obs.* 1.
- men, term of subs., 181, 7.
- menuta, -um, 53, 2.
- mentum, term of subs., 181, 8.
- mercor (-eo), and comps., 170, 4.
- mergo, 158, 27.
- met, with prons, 77, *obs.* 2; 614, 1.
- melior, 172, 7.
- meto, 159, 35.
- metonymy, 604; also, 592, 2; in Livy, 707.
- metres, 764.
- metuo, 163, 18.
- meus, tuus, position of, 673.
- mico and comps., 149, 7.
- middle use of verbs in Latin, 232.
- militiae, constr. of, 238.
- millē, 69.
- millia, orthog. of, 831, 3.
- mingo, 158, 24.
- minuo, 163, 6.
- minus = non, 646.
- misceo, 150, 3.
- miseror, 170, 5.
- miseret, 126.
- miseret, constr. of, 241; 282.
- miseror, with acc., 282, *obs.* 3.
- mitto, 149, 11.
- modal subs., constr. of in abl., 312, *obs.*
- moderor, constr. of, 291, *obs.* 6.
- (non) modo... sed etiam, 567.
- mollitia, -ies, 53, 3.
- molo, 160, 4.
- money, Roman, 939, *sqq.*
- monia, term. of subs., 185, 5.
- monometer, 764.
- moods, 85.
- mordeo and comps., 152, 5.
- morior and comps., 171, 7.
- mortales, in Sall., 694, 1.
- motion towards, in acc., 259; in dat., 301.
- moreo, 153, 4.
- mulceo, 154, 8.
- mulgeo, 154, 9.
- multiplicative numerals, 71, *obs.* 2.
- multum (compar.), 131.
- multum, etc., with gen., 270.
- multus (compar.), 66.
- (mungo), *emungo*, 158, 9.
- N, power and changes of, 833.
- nam, namque, 581; used elliptically, 581.
- obs. 1; = *namely*, 654, *obs.* 2; second in sentence, 581, *obs.* 2.
- names, Roman, 933, *sqq.*
- names of towns, constr. of, 256, *sqq.*
- nanciscor, 171, 22.
- nascor, 171, 23.
- national names used adjunct., 608.
- natus, with abl., 210; with acc., (annos), 249, *obs.* 3.
- nauti, constr. of, 281, *obs.* 2.
- nē, in single direct questions, 410; in double, 414, 416; in indirect questions, 436.
- nē, neve, with imperat., 417, *obs.*; with subj., equiv. to imperat., 420.
- nē, after verbs of commanding, etc., 451; of purpose, 454; combined with ut, 455.
- ne... quidem, 656.
- neque, 414, *obs.*
- neco, 149, 11.
- necto, 158, 32.
- nemo = nullus, 599.
- nen, 151, 3.
- nequam, 60, *obs.* 3.
- compared, 66.
- neque, nec, 568; with plur. verb, 569.
- nequeo, 118.
- nequis, 82.
- nescio an, 438.
- nescio quis, 626.
- neuter, *tra, trum*, 57.
- neuter of adj. as adv., 199.
- neuter adj. in predicate, 227.
- neuter-passives, 119.
- neut.-pl. in -ia (3 Dec.), 34.
- ni (nisi), 425.
- nihil, as adv., 254; of persons, 624, *obs.*
- ningit, 126; 158, 22.
- niteo, 156, 7.
- nitōr (dep. verb), 171, 8.
- nitōr, foll. by *Intm.*, 451, *obs.* 2.
- nix, stem of, 22, *obs.*; 824, 2.
- "No": how expr. in Lat., 133, C. *obs.*
- noctū, 132.
- noll, periphr. for imperat., 420, *obs.* 1.
- nolo, 113.
- nolo, foll. by subj., 447, 2.
- non, pl. in -es, 42.
- nominative, as subject, 231; after *Intm.*

233; by attraction with *Infün.*, 507, *obs.*  
 nominative, formation of, 244, *sqq.* (*sing.*), 882, *sqq.* (*pl.*).  
*non*, position of, 678, *obs.*  
*non modo* (*solum*). . . *sed*, 567.  
*nonne*, 401.  
*nos*, precise meaning of, 221.  
*nos*, *noster* = *ego*, *mens*, 358.  
*nosco* and comps., 167.  
*nostras*, 77, *obs.* +  
*nostri*, *nostrum*, 359.  
*nōvi*, 120.  
*novus* (*compar.*), 66.  
*nubo*, 157, 2.  
*nubo*, with *at.*, 289.  
*nullus*, 57; *gen.* of in *-i*, 82, *obs.* 6.  
*nullus* = *non*, 612.  
*num*, in direct questions, 133; in indirect, 413; in double questions, 416, *obs.* 2.  
 numerals, 73.  
 numerical adverbs, 72, 73.  
*nuntins*, *etym.* and *orthog.* of, 822, *obs.* 2.  
*nuo* and comps., 163, 17.  
*nuper* (*compar.*), 131.  
*nuper*, *etym.* of, 839, 4.  
*O*, lighter than *a*, 917; changed to *u*, 28, *obs.*  
 2; dropped in *carnis*, 23, *obs.* 2; 848, *obs.*  
*-o*, term. of *adv.*, 197.  
*ob*, 556, 15.  
*object*, case of, 234.  
*objective genitive*, 268; combined with *sub-*  
*jective gen.*, 268, *obs.* 3.  
*obliqua oratio*, 464, *sqq.*  
*obliscor*, 171, 24.  
*ocior* (*compar.*), 66.  
*odi*, 120.  
*oe* (*diphthong*), 6, *obs.*  
*oleo* (*to smell*), 156, 8.  
*oleo*, *constr.* of, 237.  
*oleo* (*to grow*), in comps. 151, 5; see also, 165, *obs.*  
*olli* = *illi*, 78, *obs.* 3.  
*omnis* = *ullus*, 386.  
*opera*, *sing.* and *pl.*, 51.  
*operio*, 168, 15.  
*opis*, *sing.* and *pl.*, 51.  
*oportet*, 126.  
*oportet*, *constr.* of, 242, *obs.*  
*opporior*, 172, 4.  
*(ops)*, 52, 2.  
*opto*, *constr.* of, 447, 1.  
*opus*, with *abl.*, 308; as *adj.*, 308, *obs.*  
*-or*, term. of *snbs.*, 181, 1.  
*oratio obliqua*, 464, *sqq.*; questions in, 463.  
*order of words*, 662, *sqq.*  
*ordior*, 172, 9.  
*ordinals*, 70, 73.  
*orior* (3 and 4 *Conj.*), 100, *obs.* 3; 172, 10.  
*oriundus*, with *abl.*, 310, *obs.*  
*ortus*, with *abl.*, 310.  
*-osus*, term. of *adj.*, 187, 10.  
*otium*, *orthog.* of, 822, *obs.* 3.  
*P*, power and changes of, 826.  
*paciscor*, 171, 25.  
*paeon*, 763.  
*pando*, 159, 27.  
*pango* and comps., 153, 35.  
*parco*, 153, 36.  
*pario*, 161, 8.  
*pars*, *sing.* and *pl.*, 51.

particip. form in *-bundus*, 110, 4.  
*participles*, 26.  
*ful. act.*, how formed, 109; irreg., 109, *obs.* 2.  
 deficiency of in *Lat.*, 522; how supplied, 526; frequent use of, 530; used substantively, 637, *sqq.*; become adjectives, 277.  
*imperf. act.*, 523.  
*future act.*, 527.  
 perfect: see perfect participle.  
 gerundive: see gerundive.  
 particles, 652, *sqq.*  
*partim*. . . *partim*, 547.  
*partitive genitive*, 269.  
*parts of speech*, 9.  
*parum* = *non*, 646.  
*parvus*, comp., 66.  
*pasco*, 167, 5.  
*passive voice*, inflected, 95, *sqq.*  
 followed by *a*, *ab*, 234, *obs.* 1;  
 used reflect., 251, 633.  
*passive of intrans. verbs*, 234, *obs.* 2; when used, 632.  
*past tenses foll. by pres.*, 473, 2.  
*past-imperf. tense Indic.*, 394; of what is customary, 395; of what is attempted, 395; epistolary, 398.  
*past-imperf. of sum* = *perf.*, 397.  
*past-imperf. Subj.* = *past-perf.*, 429, *obs.*  
*past-perfect or pluperfect Indic.*, 402; for *Subj.*, 403; epistolary, 404.  
*past-perf. Subj. in hypoth.*, 427; cf. 473, 1.  
*patro*, 156, 9.  
*patior*, 171, 9 (see comps.).  
*patronymics*, 184.  
*patronymics*, use of, 609.  
*pause*, in *Hexameter*, 775.  
*paveo*, 153, 6.  
*pecto*, 158, 33.  
*pello* and comps., 160, 13.  
*pendeo* and comps., 152, 6.  
*pendo* and comps., 159, 15.  
*penes*, 556, 16.  
*pentameters*, 779.  
*per*, 556, 17.  
*percello*, 160, 20.  
*perfect Indic.*, its twofold meaning, 400;  
 after *postquam*, *simul atque*, 401; for  
*pluperf. subj.*, 428; used *Aoristically*, 634.  
*perfect Subj. after past indef.*, 423 (*note*);  
 in *Livy*, 712.  
*perfect participles with act. sense*, 524; of  
 deponents, with *pass. sense*, 525; equiv.  
 to verbal *snbs.*, 595; used substantively,  
 640, *sqq.*; *nenter of* = abstract *snbs.*, 528.  
*personal ending*, formation of, 898, *sqq.*  
*Phalaecian metre*, 792.  
*Pherecratian metre*, 795.  
*piget*, 126.  
*piget*, *constr.* of, 281, *obs.* 2.  
*pinso*, 162, 2.  
*pinus*, *i* and *us*, 53, 4.  
*piso*, 162, 3.  
*placet*, 126.  
*plango*, 158, 10.  
*plaudo* and comps., 159, 5.  
*plebs*, *plebes*, 51, 5.  
*plecto*, 158, 34; see also 171, 15.  
*pleo* and comps., 151, 4.

- placo* and comps., 149, 8.  
*pluit*, 126; 163, 19.  
 plural of 5th Decl., 47, *obs.* 4.  
     with diff. meaning from sing., 51.  
 pluperfect, see past-perfect.  
 plural of concrete subs. for abstr. sing., 591.  
     of abstr. subs., 593, 594,  
     for singular, 603.  
     nos = ego, 358.  
     of verb after sing. subject, 222 (see  
     *obs.*).  
*pluris*, minoris, constr. of, 281.  
*plus*, amplius, constr. of, 349.  
*poenitet*, 126.  
*poenitet*, constr. of, 241, 282.  
*polleo*, 136, 2, 10.  
 polysyndeton, 565, *obs.* 2.  
*pone*, 556, 18.  
*pomo*, 162, 4.  
*popina* = coquina, 823.  
*populares*, in Sall., 694.  
*posco*, 158, 40.  
 position, syll. long by, 729.  
 possessive pronouns, 77.  
 poss. prons., constr. of, 363.  
*possum*, 112.  
*post*, 555, 19.  
*posterior*, compar., 66.  
*postquam*, with perf., 401; with pluperfect,  
     401, *obs.*; with Indic. and Subj. 501.  
*potential*, Subj., 429.  
*potior*, constr., 315.  
*potus*, part., 119, B., *obs.*  
*prae*, 557, 7.  
     quant. of in comp., 727.  
*praedicate*, 213; concord of, 215.  
*praenomen*, 933.  
*praeter*, 556, 20.  
*praeterit*, constr. of, 242, *obs.*  
*prandeo*, 152, 1.  
*pransus*, 524.  
*precis* (*prez*), 52, 2.  
 prefixes, 178.  
*prehendo*, 159, 28.  
*premo*, 160, 25.  
*prepositions*, 134, *sqq.*; inseparable, 138.  
*prepositions*, gov. of, 533, *sqq.*; separated  
     from case, 620; two prep., constr. of,  
     649; repeated before 2nd subs., 651; gov-  
     ernment in comp., 238, *sqq.*; repeated  
     after comp. verb, 329, *obs.* 2; 648.  
*present tense*, 392; historical, 393; after  
     dum, 393, *obs.* 2; with Jam dudum, 392, *obs.*  
*present Subj.* in hypoth., 426.  
*priapean verse*, 814.  
*primary words*, 130.  
*primus*, constr. of, 341.  
*prior*, compar., 66.  
*prior*, primus, with verb, 343.  
*prius*, compar., 131.  
*priu-quam*, constr. of, 500, 501.  
*pro*, 557, 8.  
     quant. of in comp., 727.  
*proficiscor*, 171, 26.  
*promo*, 160, 17.  
*pronouns*, 74, *sqq.*  
*pronouns*, uses of, 357, *sqq.*; personal, not  
     expr., 357; reflective, 360; possessive,  
     363; often not expr., 363, *obs.*; demon-  
     strative, 364; determinative, 370; rela-  
     tive, 378, indefinite, 383.  
     peculiarities in use of, 614, *sqq.*  
*prope*, compar., 131.  
*prope*, prep., 556, 21.  
*proper names*, peculiarities in use of, 606.  
*propior*, compar., 66.  
*proportionals*, 71, *obs.* 3.  
*propter*, 556, 22.  
*prosody*, 725, *sqq.*  
*prospicio*, provideo, constr. of, 291, *obs.* 7.  
*protasis*, 424; not fully expr., 429.  
*psallo*, 160, 21.  
*pyrrhic foot*, 763.  
*Pythiambic metre*, 813, *obs.*  
*Q*, power of, 823; without n, 823, *obs.* 2.  
*quaero* and comps., 161, 9.  
*quasco*, 124.  
*quality*, gen. of, 274; abl. of, 318.  
*quam qui*, with superl., 355.  
*quamvis* with Subj., 502; with Indic., 502, *obs.*  
*quando* (causal), 495.  
*quanquam*, with Indic., 503; with Subj.,  
     503, *obs.*  
*quantity*, 726; of contracted syllables, 728;  
     of radical vowels, 731; of connecting  
     vowels, 733; of derivatives and com-  
     pounds, 734; of the reduplication of verbs,  
     736; of final vowels, 745, *sqq.* of final  
     consonants, 750.  
*quantity*, marks of, 7.  
*-que*, diff. from et, 563.  
*questions*, direct single, 428, *sqq.*; direct  
     double, 414, *sqq.*  
     indirect, 434; appy. so, 437.  
     in oratio obliqua, 468, 469.  
*qui*, 81.  
     comps. of, 82, *obs.* 5.  
*qui*, concord of, 228.  
     with Subj.: hypothetical, 475; causal,  
     476, 477; of purpose (= ut), 478;  
     after dignus, etc., 480; after is, talis,  
     tantus, 481; in such phr. as, sunt  
     qui, 482; in parenthetical clauses,  
     621.  
*qui*, adv., 81, *obs.* 2.  
*quia*, with Indic. and Subj., 486.  
*quicumque*, 80, *obs.* 2.  
*quid* = "and then," 623; referring to per-  
     sons, 624.  
*quidam*, use of, 385; as softening an expr.,  
     385, *obs.*  
*quidem*, 656; after ille, 616.  
     (ne) quidem, 656.  
*quiesco*, 167, 6.  
*quin*, 461, *sqq.*  
*quippe*, 492; ironical, 493.  
*quis* and *qui*, 81, *obs.* 1.  
*quis*, comps. of, 81, *obs.* 3; 82, *obs.* 2.  
*quis*, as enclit., 383, 625; nescio quis, 623;  
     si quis, 627; used impatiently, 622.  
*quisnam*, 81, *obs.* 3.  
*quispiam*, 384.  
*quisquam*, 82, *obs.* 4.  
*quisquam* and *ullus*, 386, 387.  
*quisque*, plur. after, 222, *obs.* 2; with superl.,  
     356; used distributively, 388.  
*quisquis*, 80, *obs.* 2.  
*quo*, conj., 453; in connexion with comp.,  
     453.  
*quod*, a quasi Rel., 491; after verbs, 488;  
     after imper. expressions, 489; hypoth.,  
     with subj., 490.

(non) quod (quo), 497.  
 quod sciam, 475, *obs.*  
 quodsi, quodui, 491, *obs.*; 572  
 quoi, quouis, 80, *obs.* 1.  
 quotus, use of, 628.  
 quum with Subj., of historical sequence,  
 484; causal, 483; with Indic., 485.  
 quum. . . tum, 566.  
 R, power and changes of, 832.  
 radical vowels, quant. of, 731.  
 rado, 159, 6.  
 rapio and comps., 157, 8.  
 ratio, in Cic., 705.  
 rastrum, i and a, 54.  
 re-, quant. of, 738.  
 refert, constr. of, 283.  
 reflect. pronouns, 360, *sqq.*  
     verbs, 84, *obs.* 1; comp. 252.  
 rego and comps., 158, 11.  
 rego, with acc., 291, *obs.* 6.  
 relative, concord of, 228; govt. of, 228, *obs.*;  
     diff. gender from anteced., 229; with  
     superl. clause, 381; has its ant. in a poss.  
     pron., 267, *obs.* 3; attraction of, 380.  
 relative adj., govt. of, 382.  
 reliquus, constr. of, 341.  
 remembering, verbs of, 278.  
 reminiscor, 171, 18.  
 renideo, 156, 2, 11.  
 reor, 170, 7.  
 repetition of verb, 636; in part. form,  
 636, 3.  
 repo, 157, 4.  
 requies, 51, 5.  
 result, dat. of, 297.  
 rhythm, 761.  
 rideo, 154, 10.  
 rigro, 156, 10.  
 ringor, 171, 11.  
 rodo, 159, 7.  
 roots, 176.  
 rostrum, -a, 51.  
 ruling, verbs of, 291, 17.  
 rumpo, 157, 12.  
 ruo, 163, 7.  
 rure, ruri, rus, 258, *sqq.*  
 S, power and changes of, 835.  
 saepe, compar., 131.  
 saepio, 168, 7.  
 salio and comps., 168, 10.  
 Sallust, style of, 687, *sqq.*; brevity of, 687;  
     asyndeton, 689; antithesis, 690; use of  
     hist. Inf., 691; of alius. . alius, 642;  
     begins sentences with igitur, etc., 693;  
     favourite words, 694; archaisms, 695.  
 salve, 124.  
 sancio, 168, 4.  
 Sapphic metre, 800; long, 805; joined with  
     Adonian, 801, *obs.* 4; in Sappho and Hor.,  
     801, *obs.* 5.  
 sapio and comps., 157, 17.  
 sarcio, 168, 5.  
 satis = admodum, 645.  
 Saturnian verse, 815.  
 satus, with abl., 310.  
 scabo, 157, 15.  
 scalpo, 157, 5.  
 scando and comps., 159, 29; scaleo, 156,  
 2, 12.  
 scazon, Iambus, 786.  
 scindo, 159, 33.

scribo, 157, 6.  
 se, sui, 360; in subord. propositions, 362  
 seco, 149, 10.  
 secundum, 556, 23.  
 secus, compar., 131.  
 sed, autem, 572.  
 sedeo and comps., 152, 2.  
 semideponents, 101, *obs.* 3.  
 semivowels, 838, *sqq.*  
 senarius, 782.  
 senex, decl., 30; compar., 66.  
 sentio, 168, 6.  
 separation, abl. of, 303; gen. of, 284.  
 sepelio, 168, 11.  
 sequence of tenses, 423.  
 sequor, 171, 12.  
 sero, 161, 10.  
 serpo, 157, 7.  
 sestertius, 930.  
 seu, sive, 570, *obs.* 3.  
 sexcenti, indef., 613.  
 si, 425, *sqq.*  
 si quis, force of, 627.  
 sibilants, 835, *sqq.*  
 sic, 551; in adjuration, 644, *obs.*  
 sideo, 159, 17.  
 sileo, 156, 11.  
 similis, constr. of, 298, *obs.* 2.  
 simul atque, with pers., 401.  
 sine, 557, 9.  
 singular, wanting in subs., 50.  
     after two or more subs., 220, *obs.*;  
     equiv. to plur., 590, 607.  
 sino, 160, 27.  
 sino, with Subj., 447, *obs.* 1.  
 sis = si vis, 113, *obs.* 3.  
 sisto and comps., 159, 19.  
 sitio, with acc., 236.  
 sive, seu, 570, *obs.* 3.  
 soleo, 119, B.  
 solus, 57.  
 solvendo esse, 538, *obs.* 2.  
 solvo, 163, 13.  
 sono, 149, 4.  
 sorbeo, 150, 5.  
 spargo, 158, 28.  
 specio and comps., 158, 12.  
 sperno, 162, 2.  
 spondaic lines, 770.  
 spondee, 763.  
 spondeo and comps., 152, 7.  
 sponte, 52, 4.  
 spuo, 163, 8.  
 squaleo, 156, 2, 13.  
 statuo, 163, 9.  
 stems, 104, 179.  
 sterno, 161, 3.  
 sternuo, 163, 20.  
 sterto, 159, 38.  
 (stinguo), 158, 17.  
 sto and comps., 149, 3, 2.  
 strepo, 157, 10.  
 strideo, 152, 4; and -o, 159, 30.  
 stringo, 158, 26.  
 struo, 158, 52.  
 studeo, 156, 12.  
 styles of prose authors, 687, *sqq.*  
 suadeo, 154, 11.  
 subject and pred., 210, 211; enlargement  
     of, 210, *obs.*; case of, 231; position of,  
     663.

- subjective gen., 267; 268, *obs.*  
 subjunctive, 421; = Imperat., 419; hypo-  
 thetical, 425; potential, 429; *optativus*,  
 430; 443; *sqq.*; *concessivus*, 432; *dubi-*  
*tativus*, 440; after *ut*, *ne*, 449. *sqq.*; in  
*oratio obliqua*, 467. *sqq.*; how translated,  
 475, *obs.*; of repetition, 481.  
*subord.* clauses, position of, 682.  
 substantives, peculiarities in use of, 589,  
*sqq.*; concr. for abstr., 529; abstr. for  
 concr., 592; used collectively, 590; plur.  
 = abstr., 591; governing case of verbs,  
 597; used adjunct., 598; repeated after 2nd  
 prep., 649.  
*subter*, 558, 4.  
*suesco*, 167, 7.  
 suffixes, 177.  
*suggestus*, -um, 53, 4.  
*sugo*, 158, 13.  
*sui*, *suis*, 360, 361.  
*sum*, 90; stem of, *obs.* 2; comps. of, *obs.* 3.  
*sumo*, 160, 18.  
*suo*, 163, 10.  
*super*, 558, 3.  
*superior*, compar., 66.  
*superlative*, 62; formation of, 296.  
*superlatives*, use of, 353, *sqq.*; with *quam*,  
*quantus*, 353; with *unus*, 354; with *quis-*  
*que*, 356; with *rel.*, 381.  
*supines*, 86, 2; 108.  
*supines*, constr. of, 542, 1.  
*supplico*, constr., 289.  
*supra*, 556, 24.  
*synaeresis*, 766.  
*synaloepha*, 765.  
*syncope* in *perf.*, 110, 11.  
*synecdoche*, 605.  
 SYNTAX, 209, *sqq.*; of concord and govt., 218.  
 SYNTAXIS ORNATA, 588, *sqq.*  
*T*, power of, 829; sibilated before *i* and  
 vowel, 822; lost in 3rd pers. sing., 829.  
*Tacitus*, style of, 717; its variety, 720; pec-  
 uliar idioms, 721; abruptness, 722; sug-  
 gestiveness, 723; poetical complexion, 724.  
*taedet*, 126.  
*taedet*, constr. of, 241, 282.  
*tango*, 158, 38.  
*tanti*, etc., constr. of, 281, *obs.* 2.  
*tantum*, etc., gen. after, 270.  
*Tartarus*, -a, 54.  
*-tas*, term. of subs., 185, 3.  
*-te*, suffix of prons., 614, 2.  
*teaching*, verbs of, 243.  
*tego*, 158, 14.  
*telianbic verse*, 818.  
*temno*, 160, 19.  
*temperi*, compar., 131.  
*tempero*, constr. of, 291, *obs.* 6, 7.  
*tempestas*, in *Sall.*, 694.  
*tempta*, orthog. of, 826, *obs.* 2.  
*tendo* and comps., 159, 16.  
*teneo* and comps., 152, 2.  
*tenses*, formation of, 900, *sqq.*  
 sequence of, 423.  
*-ter*, term. of adv., 198, 196, *obs.* 2.  
*tergeo*, 154, 12.  
*tergo*, 158, 29.  
*tero*, 161, 12.  
*tetrameter*, trochaic, 787.  
*tetrameter*, dactylic, 812.  
*texo*, 158, 50.  
*thesis*, 762.  
*-tia*, term. of subs., 185, 2.  
*-tim*, term. of adv., 200.  
*timeo*, 156, 11.  
*tingo*, *tingua*, 158, 15.  
*-tio*, term. of subs., 181, 3.  
*tollo*, 160, 33.  
*tonot*, 126.  
*tondeo* and comps., 152, 8.  
*tono*, 149, 6.  
*-tor*, -triz, term. of subs., 181, 2.  
*torqueo*, 154, 23.  
*torreo*, 150, 4.  
*totus*, 57.  
*towns*, constr. of names of, 256, *sqq.*  
*tribrach*, 763.  
*trimeter*, iambic, 782, 807.  
*trochaic dim.*, 806.  
 tetram., 787.  
*trochee*, 763.  
*-tudo*, term. of subs., 185, 4.  
*tuor* and comps., 170, 8.  
*tundo* and comps., 159, 17.  
*tum*, .tum, 566.  
*-tura*, term. of subs., 181, 5.  
*turgeo*, 156, 18.  
*-tus*, term. of subs., 181, 4.  
*traho*, 158, 18.  
*tremo*, 160, 9.  
*tribuo*, 163, 11.  
*trudo*, 159, 8.  
*-trum*, 181, 9.  
*u* interchanged with *i*, 918.  
*ulciscor*, 171, 27.  
*ullus*, 57.  
*ultra*, 556, 26.  
*ulterior*, compar., 66.  
*-ulus*, adjunct. term., 186, 4, *obs.*  
*ungo*, *unguo*, 158, 16.  
*unus*, 68; in plur., 68, *obs.*  
*-ura*, term. of subs., 182, 4.  
*urgeo*, 154, 19.  
*uro*, 161, 5.  
*ut*, of purpose, etc., 450, *sqq.*; concessive, 432.  
*ut non*, 456.  
*ut qui*, *utpote qui*, 477.  
*uter*, 57.  
*utercunque*, 80, *obs.* 3.  
*uterque*, plur., after, 222, *obs.* 2.  
*utinam*, 444.  
*utique*, 637.  
*utor*, 171, 3.  
*utor*, with *abl.*, 315.  
*V*, power and changes of, 839.  
*vaco*, with *dat.*, 289.  
*vacuus*, constr. of, 307, *obs.* 7.  
*rado*, 159, 9.  
*vae*, with *dat.*, 250, *obs.* 2.  
*vapulo*, 119, 2.  
*vas*, 53, 6.  
*-ve*, *vel*, 568.  
*reho*, 158, 19.  
*vello*, 160, 22.  
*reneo*, 119, 3.  
*renio*, 168, 12.  
*venit* in *mentem*, constr. of, 278, *obs.*  
*verb*, 84; irreg., 111; defect., 120; impers.,  
 125; derivative, 191, *sqq.*  
*verbs*, of being, etc., constr. of, 212; teach-  
 ing, 243; concealing, 243; asking, 244;  
 remembering and forgetting, 278; of ac-



- cusing, etc., 279, of assisting, resisting, favouring, envying, etc., 291 (and see the several cases) of fulness, want, 317.
- verbs with diff. constr., 271, *obs.*  
     repetition of, 636.
- verbere*, 52, 3.
- vereor* and *comps.*, 170. 9.
- vero*, *verum*, 573: *tum vero*, 660; *vero* affirmative, 574.
- verro*, 161, 13.
- versor*, in *Cic.*, 705.
- versus*, prep., 556, 27.
- versus*, *Hipponacteus*, 786 (*note*).  
     *octonarius*, 787.
- verum* and *vero*, 573.
- vescor*, 157, 28.
- vescor*, with *abl.*, 315: with *acc.*, 315, *obs.* 3
- vesper*, *vespera*, 53, 2.
- vesperascit*, 126.
- vestras*, 77, *obs.* 4.
- vestri* and *-um*, 273, *obs.* 2.
- veto*, 149, 5.
- veto*, with *inf.*, 451, *obs.* 2.
- vicis*, 52, 2.
- video*, 152, 3.
- videor*, constr. of, 232, *obs.*; redundant, 704.
- vigeo*, 156, 14.
- vincio*, 168, 8.
- vinco*, 158, 49.
- vireo*, 156, 15.
- vis*, 52, 2.
- viso*, 162, 4.
- viro*, 158, 53.
- vocative of 2nd decl. in *i*, 19, *obs.* 3.
- vocative*, synt. of, 335; same as *nom.*, 337  
     with *O*, 336; formation of, 848.
- volo*, 113.
- volo*, foll. by subj., 447, 2.
- romo*, 160, 10.
- roveo*, 153, 5.
- vowels, 840.
- wish, subj. of, 443, *sqq.*
- X, an addition to *alph.*, 820; where first found, 837, *obs.*; its changes, *ib.* 2.
- yes, how expr., 133, *obs.*; 574.
- Z, found in earliest *alph.*, 820, *obs.*; its power and uses, 836.
- zeugma, 643.

THE END.



## MR. MURRAY'S LIST OF SCHOOL BOOKS.

### THE STUDENT'S MANUALS:

A Series of Class-books for advanced Scholars.

FORMING A CHAIN OF HISTORY FROM THE EARLIEST AGES  
DOWN TO MODERN TIMES.

"We are glad of an opportunity of directing the attention of teachers  
to these admirable schoolbooks."—*The Museum*.

**THE STUDENT'S OLD TESTAMENT HISTORY.** FROM THE CREATION OF THE WORLD TO THE RETURN OF THE JEWS FROM CAPTIVITY. With an Introduction to the Books of the Old Testament. By PHILIP SMITH, B.A. With 40 Maps and Woodcuts. (630 pp.) Post 8vo. 7s. 6d.

**THE STUDENT'S NEW TESTAMENT HISTORY.** With an Introduction, containing the connection of the Old and New Testaments. By PHILIP SMITH, B.A. With 30 Maps and Woodcuts. (680 pp.) Post 8vo. 7s. 6d.

**THE STUDENT'S MANUAL OF ECCLESIASTICAL HISTORY.** A HISTORY of the CHRISTIAN CHURCH from the TIMES of the APOSTLES to the FULL ESTABLISHMENT of the HOLY ROMAN EMPIRE and the PAPAL POWER. By PHILIP SMITH, B.A. With Woodcuts. Post 8vo. 7s. 6d.

**THE STUDENT'S MANUAL OF ENGLISH CHURCH HISTORY.** From the ACCESSION of HENRY VIIIth to the Silencing of Convocation in the EIGHTEENTH CENTURY. By G. G. PERRY, M.A. Post 8vo. 7s. 6d.

**THE STUDENT'S ANCIENT HISTORY OF THE EAST.** From the Earliest Times to the Conquests of Alexander the Great, including Egypt, Assyria, Babylonia, Media, Persia, Asia Minor, and Phœnicia. By PHILIP SMITH, B.A. With 70 Woodcuts. (608 pp.) Post 8vo. 7s. 6d.

**THE STUDENT'S HISTORY OF GREECE.** FROM THE EARLIEST TIMES TO THE ROMAN CONQUEST. With Chapters on the History of Literature and Art. By WM. SMITH, D.C.L. With 100 Woodcuts. (640 pp.) Post 8vo. 7s. 6d. \* \* \* *Questions on the "Student's Greece."* 12mo. 2s.

**THE STUDENT'S HISTORY OF ROME.** FROM THE EARLIEST TIMES TO THE ESTABLISHMENT OF THE EMPIRE. With Chapters on the History of Literature and Art. By DEAN LIDDELL. With 80 Woodcuts. (626 pp.) Post 8vo. 7s. 6d.

**THE STUDENT'S GIBBON; AN EPITOME OF THE HISTORY OF THE DECLINE AND FALL OF THE ROMAN EMPIRE.** By EDWARD GIBBON. Incorporating the researches of recent historians. With 200 Woodcuts. (700 pp.) Post 8vo. 7s. 6d. [Continued.]

*MURRAY'S STUDENT'S MANUALS.*

---

- THE STUDENT'S MANUAL OF ANCIENT GEOGRAPHY. By REV. W. L. BEVAN, M.A. With 150 Woodcuts. (710 pp.) Post 8vo. 7s. 6d.
- THE STUDENT'S MANUAL OF MODERN GEOGRAPHY, MATHEMATICAL, PHYSICAL, AND DESCRIPTIVE. By REV. W. L. BEVAN, M.A. With 120 Woodcuts. (684 pp.) Post 8vo. 7s. 6d.
- THE STUDENT'S HISTORY OF EUROPE DURING THE MIDDLE AGES. By HENRY HALLAM, LL.D. (650 pp.) Post 8vo. 7s. 6d.
- THE STUDENT'S CONSTITUTIONAL HISTORY OF ENGLAND. FROM THE ACCESSION OF HENRY VII. TO THE DEATH OF GEORGE II. By HENRY HALLAM, LL.D. (680 pp.) Post 8vo. 7s. 6d.
- THE STUDENT'S HUME; A HISTORY OF ENGLAND, FROM THE EARLIEST TIMES TO THE REVOLUTION IN 1688. By DAVID HUME. Incorporating the Corrections and Researches of recent Historians, and continued to 1863. With 70 Woodcuts. (780 pp.) Post 8vo. 7s. 6d.
- \* \* Questions on the "Student's Hume." 12mo. 2s.
- THE STUDENT'S HISTORY OF FRANCE. FROM THE EARLIEST TIMES TO THE ESTABLISHMENT OF THE SECOND EMPIRE, 1852. With Notes and Illustrations on the Institutions of the Country. By REV. W. H. JERVIS, M.A. With Woodcuts. (724 pp.) Post 8vo. 7s. 6d.
- THE STUDENT'S MANUAL OF THE ENGLISH LANGUAGE. By GEORGE P. MARSH. (538 pp.) Post 8vo. 7s. 6d.
- THE STUDENT'S MANUAL OF ENGLISH LITERATURE. By T. B. SHAW, M.A. (510 pp.) Post 8vo. 7s. 6d.
- THE STUDENT'S SPECIMENS OF ENGLISH LITERATURE. Selected from the BEST WRITERS. By THOS. B. SHAW, M.A. (560 pp.) Post 8vo. 7s. 6d.
- THE STUDENT'S ELEMENTS OF GEOLOGY. By SIR CHARLES LYELL, F.R.S. With 600 Woodcuts. (692 pp.) Post 8vo. 9s.
- THE STUDENT'S MANUAL OF MORAL PHILOSOPHY. With Quotations and References. By WILLIAM FLEMING, D.D. (440 pp.) Post 8vo. 7s. 6d.
- THE STUDENT'S BLACKSTONE. AN ABRIDGMENT OF THE ENTIRE COMMENTARIES. By R. MALCOLM KERR, LL.D. (670 pp.) Post 8vo. 7s. 6d.
- THE STUDENT'S EDITION OF AUSTIN'S JURISPRUDENCE. Compiled from the larger work. By ROBERT CAMPBELL. Post 8vo. 12s.
- AN ANALYSIS OF AUSTIN'S LECTURES ON JURISPRUDENCE. By GORDON CAMPBELL, of the Inner Temple. Post 8vo. 6s.

## DR. WM. SMITH'S SMALLER HISTORIES.

*These Works have been drawn up for the lower forms, at the request of several teachers, who require more elementary books than the STUDENT'S HISTORICAL MANUALS.*

### A SMALLER SCRIPTURE HISTORY OF THE OLD AND NEW TESTAMENTS. Edited by WM. SMITH, D.C.L. With 40 Woodcuts. (370 pp.) 16mo. 3s. 6d.

"Students will know the value of Dr. Wm. Smith's larger Scripture History. This abridgment omits nothing of importance, and is presented in such a handy form that it cannot fail to become a valuable aid to the less learned Bible Student."—*People's Magazine*.

### A SMALLER ANCIENT HISTORY OF THE EAST, from the EARLIEST TIMES to the CONQUEST OF ALEXANDER THE GREAT. By PHILIP SMITH, B.A. With 70 Woodcuts. (310 pp.) 16mo. 3s. 6d.

"Designed to aid the study of the Scriptures, by placing in their true historical relations those allusions to Egypt, Assyria, Babylonia, Phœnicia, and the Medo-Persian Empire, which form the background of the history of Israel. The present work is an indispensable adjunct of the 'Smaller Scripture History;' and the two have been written expressly to be used together."—*Preface*.

### A SMALLER HISTORY OF GREECE, from the EARLIEST TIMES to the ROMAN CONQUEST. By WM. SMITH, D.C.L. With 74 Woodcuts. (268 pp.) 16mo. 3s. 6d.

### A SMALLER HISTORY OF ROME, from the EARLIEST TIMES to the ESTABLISHMENT OF THE EMPIRE. By WM. SMITH, D.C.L. With 70 Woodcuts. (324 pp.) 16mo. 3s. 6d.

### A SMALLER CLASSICAL MYTHOLOGY. With Translations from the Ancient Poets, and Questions on the Work. By H. R. LOCKWOOD. With 90 Woodcuts. (300 pp.) 16mo. 3s. 6d.

### A SMALLER MANUAL OF ANCIENT GEOGRAPHY. By Rev. W. L. BEVAN, M.A. With 36 Woodcuts. (240 pp.) 16mo. 3s. 6d.

### A SCHOOL MANUAL OF MODERN GEOGRAPHY, PHYSICAL and POLITICAL. By REV. JOHN RICHARDSON, M.A. (400 pp.) Post 8vo. 5s.

### A SMALLER HISTORY OF ENGLAND. From the EARLIEST TIMES to the year 1868. By PHILIP SMITH, B.A. With 68 Woodcuts. (400 pp.) 16mo. 3s. 6d.

### A SMALLER HISTORY OF ENGLISH LITERATURE; giving a sketch of the lives of our chief writers. By JAMES ROWLEY. (276 pp.) 16mo. 3s. 6d.

### SHORT SPECIMENS OF ENGLISH LITERATURE. Selected from the chief authors and arranged chronologically. By JAMES ROWLEY. With Notes. (368 pp.) 16mo. 3s. 6d.

## DR. WM. SMITH'S DICTIONARIES.

BIBLICAL, CLASSICAL, AND LATIN.

---

**DICTIONARY OF THE BIBLE; ITS ANTIQUITIES, BIOGRAPHY, GEOGRAPHY, and NATURAL HISTORY.** With Illustrations. 3 vols. Medium 8vo. 5*l.* 5*s.*

**CONCISE BIBLE DICTIONARY.** Condensed from the above. With Maps and 300 Illustrations. (1030 pp.) Medium 8vo. 2*1s.*

**SMALLER BIBLE DICTIONARY.** Abridged from the above. With Maps and 40 Illustrations. (620 pp.) Crown 8vo. 7*s.* 6*d.*

**DICTIONARY OF CHRISTIAN ANTIQUITIES.** COMPRISING HISTORY, INSTITUTIONS, AND ANTIQUITIES, FROM THE TIME OF THE APOSTLES TO THE AGE OF CHARLEMAGNE. With Illustrations. Vol. 1. (910 pp.) Medium 8vo. 3*1s.* 6*d.*

**DICTIONARY OF CHRISTIAN BIOGRAPHY, LITERATURE, SECTS, AND DOCTRINES.** FROM THE TIME OF THE APOSTLES TO THE AGE OF CHARLEMAGNE. Vol. 1. (930 pp.) Medium 8vo. 3*1s.* 6*d.*

**DICTIONARY OF GREEK AND ROMAN ANTIQUITIES.** Including the Laws, Institutions, Domestic Usages, Painting, Sculpture, Music, the Drama, &c. With 500 Illustrations. (1300 pp.) Medium 8vo. 2*8s.*

**DICTIONARY OF GREEK AND ROMAN BIOGRAPHY AND MYTHOLOGY.** Containing a History of the Ancient World, civil, literary, and ecclesiastical. With 564 Illustrations. (3720 pp.) 3 Vols. Medium 8vo. 8*4s.*

**DICTIONARY OF GREEK AND ROMAN GEOGRAPHY.** Including the political history of both countries and cities. With 530 Illustrations. (2512 pp.) 2 Vols. Medium 8vo. 5*6s.*

**CLASSICAL DICTIONARY OF MYTHOLOGY, BIOGRAPHY, AND GEOGRAPHY.** With 750 Woodcuts. (840 pp.) 8vo. 1*8s.*

**SMALLER CLASSICAL DICTIONARY.** With 200 Woodcuts. (472 pp.) Crown 8vo. 7*s.* 6*d.*

**SMALLER DICTIONARY OF GREEK AND ROMAN ANTIQUITIES.** With 200 Woodcuts. (474 pp.) Crown 8vo. 7*s.* 6*d.*

**COMPLETE LATIN-ENGLISH DICTIONARY.** With Tables of the Roman Calendar, Measures, Weights, and Moneys. (1220 pp.) Medium 8vo. 2*1s.*

**SMALLER LATIN-ENGLISH DICTIONARY;** with Dictionary of Proper Names and Tables of Roman Calendar, etc. (672 pp.) Square 12mo. 7*s.* 6*d.*

**COPIOUS & CRITICAL ENGLISH-LATIN DICTIONARY.** (976 pp.) Medium 8vo. 2*1s.*

**SMALLER ENGLISH-LATIN DICTIONARY.** (720 pp.) Square 12mo. 7*s.* 6*d.*

## DR. WM. SMITH'S LATIN COURSE.

"The general excellence of the books included in Mr. Murray's educational series, is so universally acknowledged as to give in a great degree the stamp of merit to the works of which it consists.—*Schoolmaster.*"

---

**PRINCIPIA LATINA, PART I. FIRST LATIN COURSE.** A Grammar, Delectus, and Exercise Book, with Vocabularies. (200 pp.) 12mo. 3s. 6d.

\* \* This work contains the Accidence arranged as in the "ORDINARY GRAMMARS" as well as in the "PUBLIC SCHOOLS LATIN PRIMER."

**APPENDIX TO PRINCIPIA LATINA. PART I.;** being Additional Exercises, with Examination Papers. 12mo. 2s. 6d.

**PRINCIPIA LATINA, PART II. READING BOOK.** An Introduction to Ancient Mythology, Geography, Roman Antiquities, and History. With Notes and a Dictionary. (263 pp.) 12mo. 3s. 6d.

**PRINCIPIA LATINA, PART III. POETRY. 1.** Easy Hexameters and Pentameters. **2.** Eclogæ Ovidianæ. **3.** Prosody and Metre. **4.** First Latin Verse Book. (160 pp.) 12mo. 3s. 6d.

**PRINCIPIA LATINA, PART IV. PROSE COMPOSITION.** Rules of Syntax, with Examples, Explanations of Synonyms, and Exercises on the Syntax. (194 pp.) 12mo. 3s. 6d.

**PRINCIPIA LATINA, PART V. SHORT TALES AND ANECDOTES FROM ANCIENT HISTORY, FOR TRANSLATION INTO LATIN PROSE.** (140 pp.) 12mo. 3s.

**LATIN-ENGLISH VOCABULARY,** arranged according to Subjects and Etymology; with a Latin-English Dictionary to Phædrus, Cornelius Nepos, and Cæsar's "Gallic War." (190 pp.) 12mo. 3s. 6d.

**THE STUDENT'S LATIN GRAMMAR. FOR THE HIGHER FORMS.** (406 pp.) Post 8vo. 6s.

**SMALLER LATIN GRAMMAR.** Abridged from the above. (220 pp.) 12mo. 3s. 6d.

**TACITUS. GERMANIA, AGRICOLA, AND FIRST BOOK OF THE ANNALS.** With English Notes. (378 pp.) 12mo. 3s. 6d.

**A CHILD'S FIRST LATIN BOOK,** Including a Systematic Treatment of the NEW PRONUNCIATION; and PRAXIS OF NOUNS, ADJECTIVES, and PRONOUNS. By T. D. HALL, M.A. (68 pp.) 16mo. 1s. 6d.

---

## DR. WM. SMITH'S GERMAN COURSE.

**GERMAN PRINCIPIA, PART I. FIRST GERMAN COURSE.** Containing Grammar, Delectus, Exercises, and Vocabulary. (164 pp.) 12mo. 3s. 6d.

**GERMAN PRINCIPIA, PART II. A READING BOOK.** Containing Fables, Stories, and Anecdotes, Natural History, and Scenes from the History of Germany. With Grammatical Questions, Notes, and Dictionary. (272 pp.) 12mo. 3s. 6d.

**PRACTICAL GERMAN GRAMMAR.** With a Sketch of the Historical Development of the Language and its Principal Dialects. (240 pp.) Post 8vo. 3s. 6d.

## DR. WM. SMITH'S GREEK COURSE.

*This Series has been prepared on the same plan as the 'Principia Latina.' The great object is to make the study of the Greek language as easy and simple as possible, by giving the grammatical forms only as they are wanted, and by enabling the pupil to translate from Greek into English and from English into Greek as soon as he has learned the Greek characters and the First Declension.*

---

**INITIA GRÆCA, PART I. FIRST GREEK COURSE,** containing Grammar, Delectus, Exercise Book, and Vocabularies. (194 pp.) 12mo. 3s. 6d.

**INITIA GRÆCA, PART II. READING BOOK ;** containing short Tales, Anecdotes, Fables, Mythology, and Grecian History. With a Lexicon. (220 pp.) 12mo. 3s. 6d.

**INITIA GRÆCA, PART III. PROSE COMPOSITION ;** containing the Rules of Syntax, with copious Examples and Exercises. (210 pp.) 12mo. 3s. 6d.

**STUDENT'S GREEK GRAMMAR FOR THE HIGHER FORMS.** By PROFESSOR CURTIUS. (386 pp.) Post 8vo. 6s.

**SMALLER GREEK GRAMMAR.** Abridged from the above work. (220 pp.) 12mo. 3s. 6d.

**GREEK ACCIDENCE.** Extracted from the above work. (125 pp.) 12mo. 2s. 6d.

**ELUCIDATIONS OF CURTIUS' GREEK GRAMMAR.** Translated by EVELYN ABBOTT, M.A. Post 8vo. 7s. 6d.

**PLATO. THE APOLOGY OF SOCRATES, THE CRITO, AND PART OF THE PHÆDO ;** with Notes in English from STALLBAUM and SCHLEIERMACHER'S Introductions. (242 pp.) 12mo. 3s. 6d.

---

## DR. WM. SMITH'S FRENCH COURSE.

**FRENCH PRINCIPIA, PART I. FIRST FRENCH COURSE,** containing Grammar, Delectus, Exercise Book, and Vocabularies. (180 pp.) 12mo. 3s. 6d.

**FRENCH PRINCIPIA, PART II. READING-BOOK,** containing Fables, Stories, and Anecdotes, Natural History, and Scenes from the History of France. With Grammatical Questions, Notes, and a copious Etymological Dictionary. (364 pp.) 12mo. 4s. 6d.

**FRENCH PRINCIPIA, PART III. PROSE COMPOSITION,** containing a systematic Course of Exercises on the Syntax with the Principal Rules of Syntax. 12mo. [In the press.]

**THE STUDENT'S FRENCH GRAMMAR:** a Practical and Historical Grammar of the French Language. By C. HERON-WALL. With an Introduction by M. LITTRE. (490 pp.) Post 8vo. 7s. 6d.

**A SMALLER GRAMMAR OF THE FRENCH LANGUAGE.** For the Middle and Lower Forms. Abridged from the above. (230 pp.) 12mo. 3s. 6d.



## Dr. WM. SMITH'S ENGLISH COURSE.

PRIMARY HISTORY OF BRITAIN. FOR ELEMENTARY SCHOOLS. Edited by WM. SMITH, D.C.L. 368 pp. 12mo. 2s. 6d.

"The modest title of this history scarcely indicates its real value. It is an admirable work, one of the best short school histories of England we have seen."—*Educational Times*.

SCHOOL MANUAL OF ENGLISH GRAMMAR; with Copious Exercises. By WM. SMITH, D.C.L., and T. D. HALL, M.A. (256 pp.) Post 8vo. 3s. 6d.

"The use of this book will render unnecessary that of many others. It is really a serviceable school-book."—*Nonconformist*.

PRIMARY ENGLISH GRAMMAR FOR ELEMENTARY SCHOOLS. With Exercises and Questions. Based upon the above work. By T. D. HALL, M.A. 76 pp. 16mo. 1s.

"We doubt whether any grammar could give an introduction to the English language more clear, concise, and full than this does."—*Watchman*.

SCHOOL MANUAL OF MODERN GEOGRAPHY, PHYSICAL AND POLITICAL. By JOHN RICHARDSON, M.A., Diocesan Inspector of Schools. (400 pp.) Post 8vo. 5s.

"After a careful examination of Mr. Richardson's manual, we are bound to say that it is the most comprehensive, accurate, and methodical geography with which we are familiar."—*School Guardian*.

---

## STANDARD SCHOOL BOOKS.

KING EDWARD VI.'s LATIN GRAMMAR; or, An Introduction to the Latin Tongue. (324 pp.) 12mo. 3s. 6d.

KING EDWARD VI.'s FIRST LATIN BOOK. THE LATIN ACCIDENCE. Syntax and Prosody, with an ENGLISH TRANSLATION. (220 pp.) 12mo. 2s. 6d.

OXENHAM'S ENGLISH NOTES FOR LATIN ELEGIACS, designed for early proficients in the art of Latin Versification. (156 pp.) 12mo. 3s. 6d.

HUTTON'S PRINCIPIA GRÆCA. AN INTRODUCTION TO THE STUDY OF GREEK. A Grammar, Delectus, and Exercise Book, with Vocabularies. (154 pp.) 12mo. 3s. 6d.

MATTHIÆ'S GREEK GRAMMAR. Abridged by BLOMFIELD. Revised by E. S. CROOKE, B.A. 412 pp. Post 8vo. 4s.

LEATHES' HEBREW GRAMMAR. With the Hebrew text of Genesis i.—vi., and Psalms i.—vi. Grammatical Analysis and Vocabulary. (252 pp.) Post 8vo. 7s. 6d.

## MRS. MARKHAM'S HISTORIES.

"Mrs. Markham's Histories are constructed on a plan which is novel and we think well chosen, and we are glad to find that they are deservedly popular, for they cannot be too strongly recommended."—*Journal of Education*.

---

**A HISTORY OF ENGLAND, FROM THE FIRST INVASION BY THE ROMANS.** By MRS. MARKHAM. Continued down to 1867. With Conversations at the end of each Chapter. With 100 Woodcuts. (528 pp.) 12mo. 3s. 6d.

**A HISTORY OF FRANCE, FROM THE CONQUEST BY THE GAULS.** By MRS. MARKHAM. Continued down to 1861. With Conversations at the end of each Chapter. With 70 Woodcuts. (550 pp.) 12mo. 3s. 6d.

**A HISTORY OF GERMANY, FROM THE INVASION OF THE KINGDOM BY THE ROMANS UNDER MARIES.** On the plan of MRS. MARKHAM. Continued down to 1867. With 50 Woodcuts. (460 pp.) 12mo. 3s. 6d.

**LITTLE ARTHUR'S HISTORY OF ENGLAND.** By LADY CALLCOTT. Continued down to the year 1372. With 36 Woodcuts. (286 pp.) 16mo. 1s. 6d.

"I never met with a history so well adapted to the capacities of children or their entertainment, so philosophical, and written with such simplicity."—*Mrs. Marcett*.

**ÆSOP'S FABLES. A New Version.** By REV. THOS. JAMES. With 100 Woodcuts. (163 pp.) Post 8vo. 2s. 6d.

"Of ÆSOP'S FABLES there ought to be in every school many copies, full of pictures."—*Fraser's Magazine*.

**THE BIBLE IN THE HOLY LAND: BEING EXTRACTS FROM DEAN STANLEY'S SINAI AND PALESTINE.** With Woodcuts. (210 pp.) 16mo. 2s. 6d.

---

## NATURAL PHILOSOPHY & SCIENCE.

---

**NEWTN'S FIRST BOOK OF NATURAL PHILOSOPHY;** an Introduction to the Study of Statics, Dynamics, Hydrostatics, Light, Heat, and Sound, with numerous Examples. *New and enlarged edition.* Small 8vo. 3s. 6d.

**NEWTN'S ELEMENTS OF MECHANICS,** including Hydrostatics, with numerous Examples. (374 pp.) Small 8vo. 8s. 6d.

**NEWTN'S MATHEMATICAL EXAMPLES.** A Graduated Series of Elementary Examples in Arithmetic, Algebra, Logarithms, Trigonometry, and Mechanics. (378 pp.) Small 8vo. 8s. 6d.

**BUCKLEY'S POPULAR HISTORY OF NATURAL SCIENCE,** and Progress of Discovery from the time of the Greeks to the Present Day, for Schools. With 60 Illustrations, Post 8vo. 9s.

---

JOHN MURRAY, ALBEMARLE STREET.









LaL.Gr  
S6642g

Smith, (Sir) William and Hall, T.D.

A grammar of the Latin tongue. 18. p.

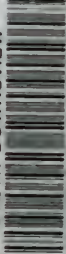
156

University of Toronto  
Library

DO NOT  
REMOVE  
THE  
CARD  
FROM  
THIS  
POCKET

Acme Library Card Pocket  
LOWE-MARTIN CO. LIMITED

UTL AT DOWNSVIEW



D RANGE BAY SHLF POS ITEM  
39 12 03 05 06 009